The Prophet and the Age of the Caliphates

THE ISLAMIC NEAR EAST FROM THE SIXTH TO THE ELEVENTH CENTURY

Second edition

Hugh Kennedy

Harlow, England • London • New York • Boston • San Francisco • Toronto
Sydney • Tokyo • Singapore • Hong Kong • Seoul • Taipei • New Delhi
Cape Town • Madrid • Mexico City • Amsterdam • Munich • Paris • Milan

PEARSON EDUCATION LIMITED

Edinburgh Gate
Harlow CM20 2JE
Tel: +44 (0)1279 623623
Fax: +44 (0)1279 431059
www.pearsoned.co.uk

First published in Great Britain in 1986
Second edition 2004

© Pearson Education Limited 1986, 2004

The right of Hugh Kennedy to be identified as author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

ISBN 0 582 40525 4

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A CIP catalogue record for this book can be obtained from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
A CIP catalog record for this book can be obtained from the Library of Congress

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without either the prior written permission of the Publishers or a licence permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom issued by the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, 90 Tottenham Court Road, London W1T 4LP. This book may not be lent, resold, hired out or otherwise disposed of by way of trade in any form of binding or cover other than that in which it is published, without the prior consent of the Publishers.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Typeset in 10.5/13pt Galliard by 35
Printed and bound in Malaysia

The Publishers' policy is to use paper manufactured from sustainable forests.

CONTENTS

LIST OF GENEALOGICAL TABLES viii

LIST OF MAPS ix

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION x

PREFACE xi

NOTE: NAMES, TITLES AND DATES xiii

chapter one THE MATRIX OF THE MUSLIM WORLD: THE NEAR EAST IN THE EARLY SEVENTH CENTURY 1

chapter two THE BIRTH OF THE ISLAMIC STATE 15
Arabia in the Sixth Century 15
The Early Life of Muḥammad 29
Muḥammad in Medina 33

chapter three CONQUEST AND DIVISION IN THE TIME OF THE RĀSHIDŪN CALIPHS 50
Abū Bakr and the *Ridda* Wars 11–13/632–634 50
ʿUmar and the Early Islamic Conquests 13–23/634–644 57
ʿUthmān and the Beginnings of Internal Strife 23–35/644–656 69
The Caliphate of ʿAlī 35–40/656–661 75

chapter four THE UMAYYAD CALIPHATE 82
The Sufyanid Caliphs: Muʿāwiya and his Family 41–64/661–684 82
The Foundation of the Marwanid Caliphate and the Achievement of ʿAbd al-Malik 64–86/684–705 90

	The Sons of ʿAbd al-Malik and ʿUmar II: Consolidation and Division in the Marwanid Caliphate 86–125/705–743	103
	The Collapse of the Umayyad Caliphate 125–132/743–750	112
chapter five	THE EARLY ʿABBASID CALIPHATE	123
	The Coming of the ʿAbbasid Caliphate 132–145/750–763	123
	The Golden Age of the ʿAbbasid Caliphate 145–193/763–809	132
	The Great ʿAbbasid Civil War 193–218/ 809–833	147
chapter six	THE MIDDLE ʿABBASID CALIPHATE	156
	The Rise of the Turkish Army and the Caliphate of Sāmarrā 218–247/833–861	156
	The Anarchy at Sāmarrā 247–256/861–870	169
	The Revival of the ʿAbbasid Caliphate 256–295/870–908	173
	The Disastrous Reigns of al-Muqtadir and his Successors 295–334/908–946	185
chapter seven	THE STRUCTURE OF POLITICS IN THE MUSLIM COMMONWEALTH	198
chapter eight	THE BUYID CONFEDERATION	210
	The Origins	210
	Expansion and Conflict	215
	The Years of Decline: 372–440/983–1048	234
	The Buyid Kingdom of Rayy	243
chapter nine	THE KURDS	248
chapter ten	THE HAMDANIDS	265
	The Hamdanids of Mosul	265
	The Hamdanids of Aleppo	273
chapter eleven	BEDOUIN POLITICAL MOVEMENTS AND DYNASTIES	283
	Origins	283
	The Qarāmiṭa	285

The Bedouin Dynasties 290
The Mazyadids 292
The ʿUqaylids 295
The Mirdasids 300
Other Bedouin Tribes 304

chapter twelve EARLY ISLAMIC EGYPT AND THE FATIMID EMPIRE 307

POSTSCRIPT: THE COMING OF THE SELJUKS 343

PRINCIPAL SOURCES FOR THE HISTORY OF THE NEAR EAST, 600–1050 346

SUGGESTED FURTHER READING 385

GLOSSARY 393

GENEALOGICAL TABLES 395

MAPS 401

INDEX 407

LIST OF GENEALOGICAL TABLES

1	Muḥammad and the Descent of the Caliphs	396
2	The Umayyad Caliphs	397
3	The ʿAbbasid Caliphs	398
4	The Principal Buyid Rulers	399
5	The ʿUqaylids of Mosul	400
6	The Hamdanids of Aleppo and Mosul	400

LIST OF MAPS

1	Provinces of the Early Islamic world	402
2	Syria, Palestine and the Western Jazira	404
3	Iraq and Western Iran	405
4	Egypt	406

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION

I have taken advantage of this new edition to incorporate the results of research published since the 1986 edition, especially in the chapters on the Rashidūn, the Umayyads and the Middle ʿAbbasids. The discussion of the sources has been revised and the bibliographies have been brought up to date.

I am grateful to many reviewers and colleagues who have drawn my attention to deficiencies in the first edition. I owe a very great debt of gratitude to Paul Cobb who generously took the time and care to bring numerous glitches to my attention and suggest improvements: I have acted on almost all of them.

H. Kennedy
St Andrews
April 2003

PREFACE

This work is intended as an introduction to the history of the Near East in the early Islamic period, from the time of the Prophet to the vast upheaval caused by the arrival of the Seljuk Turks in the mid-fifth/eleventh century. In it I have attempted to strike a balance between too dry presentation of factual material and speculative interpretation. Some will no doubt find this approach traditional and unadventurous but I have tried to bear in mind the needs of the reader who is approaching the history of the Near East for the first time and who requires a basic framework of chronological narrative. At the same time I have tried to avoid the impression that Islamic history is full of ephemeral rulers and pointless battles and to devote space to long-term social and economic changes and to the positive aspects of Muslim government and the immense achievements of the period which are too often neglected in Western writing. Whether I have reached the right balance is for the reader to judge.

In writing this book, I am deeply conscious of the debt I owe to many scholars who have worked on the period. I have been especially helped by the works of W. M. Watt on Muḥammad, F. M. Donner and M. Morony on the Islamic conquests. The articles of G. M. Hinds on the reign of ʿUthmān and the battle of Ṣiffīn are of fundamental importance. For later periods, I have been greatly helped by the work of J. Lassner and F. Omar on the ʿAbbasid caliphate, R. M. Adams on the economic and archaeological background to the break-up of the caliphate and the works of R. Bulliet and R. Mottahedeh. Although we may disagree on some interpretations, I owe much to the teaching of M. A. Shaban. I should also draw attention to the excellent and wide-ranging studies of W. Madelung and C. E. Bosworth, both of whom have contributed greatly to our understanding of the period.

It is inevitably invidious to single out individual authors and there are many others to whom I owe much. The list of secondary sources at the end of this volume gives details of works I have found useful. I must emphasize that all the errors in this work are my own.

I owe particular debts of gratitude to Professor P. M. Holt who has edited this volume with the greatest care and saved me from numerous mistakes. I would also like to thank friends and colleagues who have

encouraged me and especially Helen and Robert Irwin for friendship and hospitality in London.

H. KENNEDY
St Andrews
February 1985

NOTE: NAMES, TITLES AND DATES

Names and titles

There was an elaborate system of nomenclature among the Arabic-speaking peoples in the early Islamic period. In full each individual's name could consist of four elements:

1. The personal name (Arabic, *ism*). This was most commonly Arabic, e.g. Aḥmad, Fāṭima, or Qur'anic, e.g. Ibrāhīm, Mūsā. With the arrival of Turks in the service of the caliphate, Turkish names became common among the military, e.g. Utāmish, Alptakīn; the correct form of these names is often difficult to determine and variant spellings may be encountered. The Buyid family often used Persian names, e.g. Bakhtiyār, and a particular problem attaches to the transliteration of Persian names ending in -ūya; this can also be transliterated -wayh, so Būya becomes Buwayh, Ḥasanūya becomes Ḥasanwayh, etc. In general the -ūya usage is becoming more common but readers should be aware of both forms.
2. The *kunya*, sometimes inaccurately called the patronymic, which takes the form Abū —— and Umm ——, i.e. "Father of ——", "Mother of ——". In early Islamic times this usually denoted actual parentage, e.g. the Prophet's *kunya* was Abū'l-Qāsim from the name of his son al-Qāsim who died in infancy. This was a more intimate way of addressing a ruler than a formal title and some ʿAbbasid caliphs with very common *ism*s were generally known by their *kunya*s, e.g. al-Manṣūr, whose *ism* was ʿAbd Allāh, was generally known as Abū Jaʿfar after his eldest son. Likewise al-Muʿtaṣim, whose *ism* was Muḥammad, was known as Abū Isḥāq.
3. The patronymic (*nasab*) indicating the individual's father or extended pedigree. This takes the form *ibn* —— or *bint* ——, i.e. "son of ——", "daughter of ——", abbreviated to *b.* The plural form *banū*, literally "sons of", indicates a tribe or clan.
4. The generic epithet (*nisba*) indicating a tribe or area to which an individual belonged, e.g. al-Sulamī meaning "from the tribe of Sulaym", al-Khurāsānī, meaning "from the province of Khurāsān". The *nisba* was an adjective ending in -ī (masc.) or iyya (fem.) and several might be appended to a name.

A ruler, a member of a ruling group or a dignitary might have a title or honorific (*laqab*) prefixed to his name. The Rāshidūn and Umayyad caliphs were simply known by their *ism*s but both ʿAbbasids and Fatimids adopted regnal titles indicating the fact that they were supported by Allah or that they were upholders of the Faith (*dīn*) and it is by these titles, or shortened versions of them that caliphs are generally known, e.g. al-Manṣūr, al-Muʿizz. From the fourth/tenth century onwards members of successor dynasties used titles of the form ʿImād *al-Dawla*, Rukn *al-Dawla* meaning "Support or Pillar of the (ʿAbbasid or Fatimid) State" and this nomenclature became widespread. For a full discussion of titles and their development see the article *Laḳab* by C. E. Bosworth in the *Encyclopaedia of Islam* (new edition).

The part of the name which is conventionally used by modern writers, including this one, is quite arbitrary and is more dependent on convention than logic.

Dates

The Muslim era opens with the *Hijra* (often spelt *Hegira*), i.e. the emigration of Muḥammad from Mecca to Medina in AD 622. Muslim years are therefore indicated by the abbreviation AH (*Anno Hegirae*). The Muslim year consists of twelve lunar months and is therefore approximately eleven days shorter than the solar year of the Western calendar. This also means that the months do not always occur in the same seasons of the year. There is no Muslim equivalent of BC dating. To find the AD equivalent to Muslim AH dates and vice versa, conversion tables are necessary. A useful compendium is G. S. P. Freeman-Grenville, *The Muslim and Christian calendars*, London 1963. It should be noted that the Muslim day begins at sunset and thus straddles part of two Western days.

chapter one

THE MATRIX OF THE MUSLIM WORLD: THE NEAR EAST IN THE EARLY SEVENTH CENTURY

The Near East before the coming of Islam was dominated, as it had been for the previous half-millennium, by two great empires, the Roman–Byzantine to the west and the Persian to the east. The frontier between these two empires had fluctuated considerably during this time. In the last period of stability before the upheavals of the seventh century, in the late sixth century, the frontier line had run roughly from north to south, through the wild uplands of eastern Anatolia and bisecting the fertile and well-populated plains of the land between the middle Tigris and Euphrates rivers, the prairie and steppe country which the Byzantines called Mesopotamia and the Arabs were to know as al-Jazīra, the "Island" between the two great rivers. On the Byzantine side of the frontier lay the massively fortified towns of Amida (now Diyarbakır) and Dara, while the Persians held the ancient cultural centre of Nisibis (Niṣībīn). On the Euphrates the frontier zone was marked by the sixth-century Byzantine fortress of Zenobia. It was in this zone of the frontier that campaigns between the armies of the two empires took place; the heavy slow-moving forces could not hope to cross the waterless stretches of the Syrian desert to the south.

South of the Euphrates, there was no firm frontier. During the second half of the sixth century both Byzantines and Sasanians had reached arrangements with leading clans among the Arab bedouin tribes, the Ghassanids and the Lakhmids respectively, who provided an element of administration in the frontier areas as well as defence against their opposite numbers on the other side of the desert. This reliance on pastoral peoples for the defence of the empires testifies to their growing importance along the desert margins and the inability of the settled people to provide their own defence.

In the year 600, the Byzantine empire presented a superficial picture of ageless continuity. The emperor of the day, Maurice, bore the title of Augustus and claimed to be the successor of that first Augustus who had

established his personal power in Rome over 600 years before. It is true that the capital had since moved to Constantinople and that Christianity had become the official religion of the empire, but the emperor still ruled with the assistance of the senate, consuls were still appointed, the laws of the empire were based on Justinian's great codification of classical practice and Latin was still used as an official language, although it was increasingly being replaced by Greek for administrative purposes.

This impression of continuity, however, masked a large number of changes and the Roman empire was continually evolving in response to changing circumstances. Many of the features which had seemed central to the classical empire were no longer in evidence. Until the fourth and fifth centuries, the eastern half of the empire had at least in theory, boasted a large number of self-governing towns, managing their own affairs with their own councils and collecting taxes from the surrounding countryside. This urban government had brought great prosperity to some cities and resulted in a burst of civic architectural activity which can have had few parallels and which created the great monumental baths, theatres and colonnaded streets whose ruins remain so impressive today. By the sixth century this picture had substantially changed; the cities had lost their political and financial autonomy; their councils had been superseded by governors appointed by the imperial authorities and their civic revenues had been confiscated for the benefit of the imperial treasury. While churches and monastic buildings continued to be constructed, large-scale civic building effectively came to a halt.

The sixth century saw further blows to the urban culture of late antiquity. In 541 bubonic plague struck the eastern empire for the first but by no means the last time; it was to recur with horrifying frequency throughout the sixth and early seventh century. Mortality is impossible to gauge with any accuracy but using contemporary accounts and comparing it with the much better documented Black Death of 1348 onwards, it seems probable that at least a third of the population was lost. Furthermore it is likely that the highest mortality was in densely populated urban areas while the nomad populations were comparatively unaffected. There certainly seems no evidence that the plague spread into the Arabian peninsula. This massive loss of population was compounded by a further series of disasters, both natural and man-made. The mid-sixth century saw a number of devastating earthquakes which effectively destroyed Beirut, until then a flourishing intellectual and legal centre, and other cities on the Lebanese coast. At the same time, the Persians launched a series of very destructive invasions of the Syrian provinces, including the sack of the great city of Antioch in 540, and of Apamea in 573. In 582 the major provincial capital of Bostra (now Buṣrā) in the

Ḥawrān was sacked by the followers of the Ghassanids protesting at the arrest of their chief by the Byzantine authorities. These incursions were paralleled elsewhere; in Italy most of the lands which Justinian had painstakingly retaken from the Visigoths were lost to the empire when the Lombards invaded from the north in the second half of the sixth century. Nearer the capital, the Balkan provinces were devastated by the attacks and settlements of Avars and Slavs.

These catastrophes had a fundamental effect on the Byzantine empire. Most obviously it was weakened militarily, the loss of population and the constant wars reduced the army greatly; the system of *limitanei*, frontier guards who performed military service in exchange for land, was largely abandoned, and it seems that by the early seventh century, imperial armies were increasingly composed of people from the fringes of the empire, Armenians and Arabs, rather than the settled inhabitants of the central areas. In addition, the empire was becoming a rural and agrarian society, not just in Italy and the Balkans, but also in the Near East, where urban life was slightly more resilient. There was still Mediterranean trade until the end of the sixth century, notably in grain from Egypt and in pottery, but the cities of the Syrian and Palestinian coasts seem to have lost much of their commercial vitality. In so far as trade was carried on, it was likely to be centred on fairs attached to pilgrimage centres rather than to large urban markets and it is possible that monasteries and churches had replaced urban notables as the most important landowners. Nor were there any traces left of local self-government. For both administration and defence, the people of the Byzantine Near East were dependent on imperial armies and officials. By the end of the sixth century the Byzantine Near East had effectively lost its classical aspect and was going through a series of profound economic and social changes not dissimilar to those which occurred in western Europe at the same time. It is against this background that the achievements of the Islamic conquest and Muslim state-building must be measured.

In addition to these general changes, Syria and Egypt had a number of problems which made them rather different from the rest of the empire. The first was one of language and ethnic identity. Both countries were essentially lands of two cultures, the one urban, Greek-speaking and influenced by classical cultural norms and life-styles. This culture was at its strongest in the great urban centres like Antioch and Alexandria, but thrived also in many lesser coastal and inland towns. The other culture was vernacular, Coptic in Egypt, Aramaic or, increasingly, Arabic-speaking in Syria. This was the culture of the villages and the pastoral peoples, who had no access to the traditions of the classical world and little taste for the amenities of urban life. For almost a millennium, since the conquests

of Alexander the Great, these two life-styles had coexisted in mutual incomprehension. Now, with the relative decline of urban populations and prosperity, the vernacular world was in the ascendant.

These cultural differences were reflected in religious ones. During the sixth century, the bulk of the rural populations of Egypt and Syria (but not, it would seem, of Palestine) became attached to the Monophysite faith, in distinction to the official, imperial, Diophysite view. The differences between these two views concerned the nature of Christ. The Diophysites maintained that He had two complete natures, one human, like our humanity, and one divine, miraculously fused in one person. The Monophysites refused to accept this, holding that Christ had one, divine, nature, that His humanity was not as ours, to them a blasphemous idea, but only an aspect of His divine nature. Superficially, the differences may seem to be trivial, but in fact they show a fundamentally different way of looking at the Incarnation, and they stem from different religious traditions: the Diophysite looks back to the Hellenistic tradition of humanizing the divine whereas the Monophysite looks to aspects of the Jewish tradition with its deep distrust of any representations of divinity.

The differences of theological opinion would probably have remained a talking point among theologians if they had not reflected the broader cultural distinctions. The Monophysite church used vernacular languages for liturgy, theological debate and more general literature, Syriac (a literary form of the Aramaic dialect of Edessa) in Syria and Coptic in Egypt; both of these languages, incidentally, remain in use as liturgical languages to the present day. The Monophysite church, too, was essentially rural, at least in Syria, where, although its leaders took the ancient title of patriarch of Antioch, they always lived in monasteries far from the city itself. The differences were greatly exacerbated by the fact that the Byzantine authorities, in a struggle to enforce ideological uniformity, began the systematic, and often brutal persecution of the Monophysite church, especially in Syria. The Monophysite church had, however, powerful lay supporters in Syria, notably the Ghassanids who controlled the desert frontier and who provided both money and refuge for persecuted members of the sect when they were forced to flee from the centres of population. The significance of this for the longer-term history of the Near East was that it meant that a significant proportion of the population was alienated from the ruling class both culturally and because the church they were devoted to was regarded as heretical and subject to dire official sanctions. It is important, at the same time, not to overestimate the significance of this: there is no evidence that either the Copts or the Monophysites of Syria actually co-operated with the Islamic

conquests. What can be said is that they felt little enthusiasm for the Byzantine cause. In some parts of Syria the conquerors were actually welcomed, in no part was there significant and prolonged resistance from the local population as there was, for example, in the Anatolian highlands, Armenia, or the province of Fārs in southern Iran.

The long-term weaknesses of the Byzantine empire in the Near East were revealed in the series of catastrophes which followed the death of the Emperor Maurice in 602. Maurice, a capable and energetic soldier, if a slightly ham-fisted politician, had devoted his reign to the maintenance of the frontiers of the empire. In doing so he had been greatly aided by a long-term alliance with the Persian King Khusrau II Parvēz, whom he had previously helped to the throne. This breathing space in the east had allowed Maurice to devote his attentions to securing the frontiers of the state in the Balkans. In 602 he was murdered, along with all his family, by a brutal and incompetent usurper called Phocas. Not only did Phocas prove totally unable to continue his predecessor's work in the Balkans, but his action gave Khusrau II the pretext to launch a major invasion of the Byzantine empire to avenge his dead benefactor. The effect was catastrophic: the Persians penetrated much further than ever before; not only were Antioch (613) and Jerusalem (614) taken, and with them all the provinces of Syria and Palestine but so was Egypt, and much of the Anatolian uplands was devastated by raids; recently discovered archaeological evidence testifies to the extent of destruction of Anatolian cities at this time. Meanwhile, Phocas had, in 610, himself been deposed by a soldier from the Byzantine territories in North Africa, Heraclius. Heraclius was altogether more effective than his predecessor. In 622, the same year that Muḥammad made his *Hijra* from Mecca to Medina, he set off from the beleaguered capital at Constantinople and led an expedition through the Black Sea to take the Persians from the rear. In a series of brilliant campaigns he destroyed the Persian army and marched into the heartlands of the Sasanian empire in Iraq. Khusrau was deposed and in 628 (the year Muḥammad reached agreement with the people of Mecca), Heraclius entered the Sasanian capital at Ctesiphon. The Persian conquests in Syria and Egypt were restored to Byzantine control and the relic of the True Cross, taken by Khusrau, was restored to Jerusalem.

The appearance of a return to normality was deceptive. The long years of warfare had accelerated and confirmed the tendencies of the previous century, demographic and urban decline. Many previously settled areas on the fringes of the Syrian desert were now deserted, their inhabitants being dead, in exile or converted to pastoral life-styles more easy to sustain in the chaotic conditions. Furthermore a whole generation had

grown up which had no memory or experience of Byzantine rule: those who were adults at the time of Heraclius's triumphs had been children when the wars began, and they can have had little residual loyalty to the Byzantine state. Heraclius was faced with a multitude of problems, none of which he had time to solve. The military and administrative organization of the recovered provinces can hardly have been developed and, apart from Arab tribesmen, taken on as allies, there was no chance to develop the sort of local defence unit, the theme, which was to prove so effective in Anatolia. City walls and fortifications were probably in drastic need of repair. The emperor also failed to resolve the religious issue. In Syria he attempted to reach a compromise between Diophysite and Monophysite views, putting forward a formula known as Monotheletism. This was to form the intellectual basis of Maronite Christianity, and as such still survives to this day, but at the time it served to please no one, least of all the wild and truculent monks who led the Monophysite party. In Egypt he was unwise enough to appoint, as both patriarch and governor of Alexandria, a militant Diophysite, Cyrus, bishop of Phasis, in the Caucasus (hence his Arabic name, al-Muqawqis). Cyrus proved to be both incompetent and intolerant and the restoration of Byzantine rule in Egypt was marked, not by the restoration of Christian unity but by the systematic alienation of the majority of the population from the government. If Heraclius and his successors had been able to enjoy the fruits of their triumph for a few decades, it is possible that a new structure would have emerged in the Byzantine Near East. But this was not to be; the Islamic armies arrived when Byzantine rule was recent, shaky and widely resented. The Islamic conquest of Syria and Egypt was as much a product of the decline of Byzantine civilization in the area as the blow which destroyed it.

The Sasanian empire of Persia of the late sixth century was, like the Roman–Byzantine empire, heir to an ancient imperial tradition. The great Achaemenid empire of Cyrus, Darius and Xerxes had flourished when Rome was a village and the Sasanian family were well aware of the fact that the Persian empire had existed since remotest antiquity. The ruling family had come to power over 300 years before; the first member of the dynasty, Ardashīr Pāpagān, was the sub-king of Fārs, the area of southern Iran which had been the cradle and centre of the Achaemenid dynasty. Even though Achaemenid power had vanished 600 years previously when Alexander the Great took and burned Persepolis, Ardashīr chose to have his achievements commemorated among the great monuments of that vanished supremacy.

Unlike the Byzantine empire, power in the Sasanian empire was essentially dynastic. In Byzantium, it was possible for families, like that of

Constantine in the fourth century, to establish control of the empire for several generations but a dynastic ideology never developed. In Iran, on the other hand, by the sixth century, the Sasanian house was held to have a divinely given right to the throne and when, from the late sixth century, this right was challenged and usurped by generals of non-dynastic origins, they could not command the necessary prestige to hold the empire together. In Byzantium, a successful usurper like Heraclius could be, and was, accepted as legitimate sovereign. In the Sasanian empire, rebels like Bahrām Chōbīn (590–91) or Shahrbarāz in 628, although both were of aristocratic descent and proven military ability, failed to win general acceptance because they were not of the ruling dynasty. In the crisis conditions which prevailed in the empire after the deposition and death of Khusrau II Parvēz in 628, this weakness made it difficult for an effective sovereign to emerge; in the four years 628–32 there were at least ten different kings or would-be kings and by the time that Yazdgard III, a scion of the Sasanian house who had been discovered hiding in the ancient capital of Iṣṭakhr in Fārs, had been established on the throne, the Muslim armies were already attacking the empire.

There were other ways in which the Sasanian imperial style differed from the Byzantine. Both claimed to rule by divine pleasure, and the Sasanian sovereigns claimed the support of Ahurā Mazdā, the Good God. But they also claimed divinity for themselves and the ancient Near Eastern idea of the God-King remained very much part of the imperial ideology. With it went a vastly elaborate court ceremonial, a hierarchy of offices at least as formal as anything devised in Constantinople and a concern to distance the sovereign from even the greatest of his subjects. There was also a different imperial iconography: the Byzantine emperor, like Justinian in the Ravenna mosaics, tends to appear as a formal, distant, immobile figure, almost always in civilian dress. Khusrau II Parvēz, in the rock reliefs he caused to be carved at Ṭāq-i Bustān, had himself portrayed as a mighty hunter, on horseback in pursuit of game; it was an imperial image which dated back to the Assyrian monarchy of the first half of the first millennium BC. In a real sense the Sasanian was the last of the great monarchies of the ancient Near East.

At the end of the sixth century, the Persian empire controlled virtually the whole of the Iranian plateau and all of modern Iraq. On the west its frontiers coincided with the edge of the settled lands and the Sasanian clients and allies, the Banū Lakhm of Ḥīra, extended this influence over a confederation of bedouin tribes. To the north, the Persians held Nisibis (Niṣībīn) and their influence was preponderant in Armenia. Under Khusrau I Anūshirvān (531–79), the northern frontier had been established in the Araxes valley, at Tblisi in Georgia and at Darband, the great

fortress on the Caspian coast which controlled the eastern flanks of the Caucasus; in this area the Muslims inherited Sasanian political geography, manning the same frontier fortresses and settling in the same cities as their Persian predecessors. The north-eastern frontier was always disturbed and far from the heartlands of Iranian power. The lands of the Oxus valley and beyond had been invaded from the fourth century by a Hunnic people known as the Hepthalites. In around 560, Khusrau I, in alliance with the Turkish nomads who also inhabited the region, defeated the Hepthalites and their kingdom was broken up. From this time the Sasanian frontier was established at Marv where a frontier official called the *marzbān* was established. Beyond that, various independent principalities were ruled by Hepthalites or Soghdians, a largely settled people of Iranian origin. The steppe lands and deserts of this area were the province of the Turks, pagan, horse-based nomads, whose domain stretched as far as the borders of China and who were destined to play an immensely important part in Islamic history. In the south-eastern direction, the frontiers of the empire seem to have coincided roughly with those of the eastern frontiers of modern Iran, including Sīstān, where there was a *marzbān* at the capital Zaranj when the Arabs arrived, and Kirmān.

In the sixth century, Sasanian influence was not confined to Iran and Iraq. Some areas of the Arabian peninsula, notably Baḥrayn and al-Yamāma and from 572 Yemen in the south-west, were also controlled by the Sasanians or their allies and they encouraged a trade in the Gulf which was to continue after the Muslim conquest.

Despite the impression of great antiquity and the appeals to a great imperial past, the Sasanian empire, like the Byzantine, was by no means static; during the sixth century it had gone through remarkable and deep-rooted changes. The history of the Sasanian monarchy can be interpreted as one of constant tension between the attempts of the dynasty to establish a centralized authority on the one hand and the determination of the higher aristocracy and local kinglets to maintain their rights and independence. The Parthian monarchy, which had preceded the Sasanians, had been little more than a confederation of minor kingdoms. The early Sasanian monarchs tried to create a more centralized regime but during the fifth century, this process was largely reversed and there was something of an aristocratic reaction. This, in turn, provoked the Mazdakite uprisings of the late fifth and early sixth centuries. Mazdakism seems to have been a religious movement with strong social overtones. Its enemies, whose accounts are the only ones we have, portray the Mazdakites as campaigning for the abolition of private property and class distinctions, and for the holding of women in common;

the last is probably in part a malicious slander, but may also reflect opposition to the conventional Iranian aristocratic view of marriage as vital for the transfer of property and the production of heirs. At first perhaps surprisingly, the movement had the backing of the then king, Kavād I (488–531), who saw it as a way of re-establishing royal control over the fractious aristocracy. However, he was temporarily deposed and on his return to power, with the help of the Hepthalites he began to distance himself from these revolutionaries.

During the last part of his reign he came increasingly under the influence of his son and heir, Khusrau, who persuaded him to take serious measures against the Mazdakites who were outlawed and many of them massacred. The movement is of great interest, however, partly because of its avowedly egalitarian ideology but also because it gives an all too rare insight into the social discontents of Iran. It is worth, perhaps, noting in this context that the Western Roman empire had been disturbed by a series of peasant revolts during the fifth century but that these do not seem to have had any counterparts in Syria, Anatolia or Egypt. The Mazdakite movement also left an ideological legacy. In Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid times there were a number of revolts, the most famous of these being the one led by Bābak in Adharbayjān at the beginning of the third/ninth century which are usually referred to by the name of Khurramiyya or Khurramdīniyya and which seem to have been influenced by radical Mazdakite ideas.

Khusrau I Anūshirvān (The Immortal Soul) who came to the throne in his own right on the death of his father in 531 was essentially the architect of the Sasanian state as it existed in the second half of the sixth century. He was determined to crush the Mazdakites without allowing the aristocracy to take over again. In order to do this, he introduced a series of administrative reforms which seem to have been, ultimately, dependent on the reforms Diocletian had introduced into the Roman empire in the late third century and which were reflected in contemporary Byzantine practice. Basically this consisted in a systematization of the land-tax, which had probably existed before. This was now collected, not as a proportion of the harvest, but at a fixed rate depending on the area. With the money, he began to institute a paid army of horsemen and foot in place of the unreliable feudal levies which had existed before. The details of the reforms are vague, but it seems clear that the system of taxation paying for a regular army now became central feature of Sasanian administration and as such was to have a profound effect on early Islamic practice.

Much of the land, especially in Iraq however, was state land on which the cultivators paid up to a third of their produce, since this was both

rent and taxes, a forerunner of the *ṣawāfī* of the early Islamic state. In addition, Khusrau organized the payment of a poll-tax which was to be levied according to their wealth on all members of society except the aristocracy and the priests of the official religion. In this way paying the poll-tax acquired a social stigma which seems to have remained after the Muslim conquest, when the basis for paying the poll-tax became religious (that is to say that only non-Muslims paid) rather than social.

At the same time he regularized the system of provincial administration. The whole empire was divided into four quarters – north, east, west and south – under supreme military commanders. These quarters disappeared at the time of the Muslim conquest with the exception of the eastern quarter, known as Khurāsān, which remained virtually intact under early Islamic rule and was consequently larger and more powerful than the other provinces of Iran. Below the quarters were some thirty-seven provinces, known as *ōstāns* or, in Iraq, as *kūras* and these units tended to survive the Muslim conquest, with modifications, and became the basis of the new Muslim provincial organization. He also extended the system of appointing *marzbāns* along the frontiers and of settling populations of marginal people as peasant soldiers in vulnerable areas, again a reflection of Byzantine practice.

Urban life and institutions probably played a smaller part in the life of the Sasanian empire than of the Byzantine. Before the coming of the Sasanians, some towns had had some administrative autonomy, inherited from Seleucid days when Greek urban institutions had been spread in the Macedonian colonies of Asia. By the sixth century, however, such institutions had long since vanished. In the Sasanian empire, as in Byzantium, the cities were centres of local government and sometimes of upper-class social life but they had no self-governing institutions. It is perhaps necessary to stress this because it is often suggested that Islam is somehow hostile to the development of local councils and urban autonomy, but before accepting such assertions, it is worth noticing that no such institutions existed in the cities the Muslims conquered. Khusrau I took pains to develop towns, notably the Iraqi capital at Ctesiphon (Ar. al-Madā'in) which became the effective capital of the empire, a fact still witnessed by the surviving ruins of the great palace at the Ṭāq-i Kisrā. He did this at least in part by settling prisoners taken from the Byzantine empire when he conquered Antioch in 540 and it would seem that they brought not just increased population and no doubt industrial skills, but also ideas of urban life, including public bath-houses which had not until then been widely known in the Persian empire but which were, of course, an important part of urban life in both the Roman and Muslim worlds. By and large, Sasanian cities seem to have

been small country towns rather than great metropolises and it is indicative that for nearly a quarter of a century Khusrau II Parvēz did not live in his capital but at a rural palace at Dastagird in the Zagros mountains; it would have been unthinkable for a Byzantine emperor to leave the city of Constantinople in that way.

If the towns were not especially important, the aristocracy was. The Sasanian aristocracy was divided into many different classes, but apart from the royal family they can be divided into two distinct groups. The first was the upper aristocracy composed of a few great families, some of whom claimed that they were descended from the Parthian kings and could claim the title of sub-kings. Among these were the Suren family based in Sīstān, the Kāren family of Media and the Mihrān family from the Rayy area. It was against these families that the sixth-century rulers had to be on their guard and it was one of them, Bahrām Chōbīn from the Mihrān family, who temporarily deposed Khusrau II at the start of his reign. This suspicion of the great magnates may account for Khusrau's subsequent, and very ill-advised, decision in 602 to abolish the Lakhmid buffer kingdom of Ḥīra which guarded the desert frontier of Iraq. The second group were the lesser aristocracy of *dihqāns*, a word which can almost be translated as gentry. Some of these were urban, absentee landlords but many others lived in villages and formed a link between them and the government. Unlike the higher aristocracy, some of them, especially in Iraq, were not Persian at all but Aramaean or even Arab. They seem to have provided a counterweight to the higher aristocracy and it was they who formed the foundation of Sasanian power. It was also the *dihqāns* who were the main mediators of Persian culture and administrative systems to the Arabs, since, unlike the higher aristocracy and the royal family, they retained much of their power after the Islamic conquest. Many administrators as late as the third/ninth century were drawn from *dihqān* families of Iraq.

Like the Byzantine empire, the Sasanian had a state religion, Zoroastrianism, which was administered by a caste of priests called Magi, from which the followers of the religion are sometimes called Magians. Worship and ritual concentrated on the fire-temples, fire being a pure and sacred element, and were much concerned with ritual purity and formal practice. The Magi themselves administered vast estates which were attached to the fire-temples and on which they were responsible for justice in these areas as well as the collection of rents and revenues. The Magian religion was attached to a number of practices, especially the exposure of the dead to be picked clean by birds and beasts, and the encouragement of incestuous marriages, which were deeply repugnant to members of other faiths. The religion seems to have had only limited popular support;

somewhat like the paganism of imperial Rome, it was more concerned with the proper performance of ceremony and the administration of its properties than it was with the more personal needs of the worshippers. Hence, again like the religion of Rome, it was increasingly challenged by other faiths, notably Christianity, and it would seem likely that, in Iraq at least, practising Magians were in a minority by the sixth century.

Of the religions which challenged the Magian state organization, the most widespread was Nestorian Christianity, especially in Iraq, but also as far east as Sīstān and the eastern frontiers of the empire. By the sixth century, the Nestorians had developed an organized hierarchy of bishoprics and a network of monasteries and religious schools. In the main, the Sasanian rulers tolerated the Nestorians and while none of them were themselves converted, they married Christian wives. Evidence suggests that by the end of the sixth century, Nestorian Christianity was making converts from Zoroastrianism in Iraq even from those, the Persian upper class, who might have been expected to remain loyal to the imperial faith. These conversions, along with the fear that the Nestorians were secret sympathizers of the Byzantines (unlikely in reality, for Nestorianism was a heresy even more severely proscribed than Monophysitism in Byzantium), led to intermittent outbreaks of persecution and martyrdom which culminated in a more general attack during the long struggle with Byzantium between 602 and 628. The Nestorians were also challenged, at least in northern Iraq, by the rival Monophysite church which began making numerous converts during the sixth century but which does not seem to have spread widely elsewhere in the empire.

Along with the Christians, there was a well-established Jewish community which seems to have been in existence since the time of the Exile and which produced the great commentary on Jewish law known as the Babylonian Talmud. It would seem that Jews formed a majority of the population around the ancient city of Babylon, in the lands later known as the Sawād of Kūfa. Like the Christians, their relations with the Sasanian authorities in the sixth century were not always easy. There had been intermittent persecutions in the fifth century which were renewed from 581 onwards by Hormizd IV. This led Jewish leaders to join the revolt of Bahrām Chōbīn in 590–1 and when this failed, they were subject to more violent attacks from the triumphant Khusrau II.

Other religious communities consisted of pagans and Manichaeans who had survived the persecutions of their dualist faith. Christianity had almost entirely eliminated paganism in the Byzantine empire by the sixth century, but it is likely that ancient beliefs lingered on in Iraq and many areas of upland Iran. In their great struggle with the Muslims after the loss of Syria and Egypt, the Byzantines were sustained by the

possession of a common faith; no such shared beliefs inspired the Sasanian resistance.

This mixture of religious beliefs was paralleled by an ethnic and linguistic diversity more widespread than anything in the Byzantine world. The Persians formed the ruling class but they were almost certainly a minority in the empire. Even today, there are large numbers of non-Persian-speaking people within the borders of Iran and there can be no doubt that this was the case under the Sasanians; we know that there were Kurds in the Zagros mountains and Daylamites in the north of Iran, no doubt there were Lurs and Baluchis as well as other ethnic minorities in rural areas. In Iraq the position is much better documented. Here most of the settled population were Aramaic speaking, including most of those who were Jewish and Christian by religion. There were also considerable numbers of Arabs, in the Lakhmid-controlled kingdom of Ḥīra and in the pastoral lands of al-Jazīra. In Iraq the Persians seem to have been confined to the cities and to certain frontier areas like Niṣībīn in northern Iraq where they were settled as garrisons against the Byzantines.

For most of the people in Iraq, and many of those in Iran, the Sasanian empire with its attendant religion was alien and often oppressive and hostile. Many, if not most, of the people shared neither language nor religion nor custom with their political masters. It is unsurprising therefore that few of them, except in areas like Fārs where the Persian element was dominant, were prepared to struggle to preserve the old order once the imperial armies had been defeated.

As in Byzantium, these long-term weaknesses had been exacerbated by short-term problems, notably the violent and unpredictable policies of Khusrau II Parvēz and the struggle for his succession. Khusrau II Parvēz, unlike his great namesake Khusrau Anūshirvān, was not a great administrator or politician. His attempts to assert the power of the central monarchy led to the alienation of much of the upper class; even after the suppression of the rebellion of Bahrām Chōbīn at the outset of his reign, he faced a ten-year rebellion in Khurāsān and later executed the governor of Nimruz (Nēmrōz), the southern quarter of the empire, so making an enemy of his family. Most damaging of all, his determination to assert his authority led to the arrest and eventual execution of al-Nuʿmān, the last of the Lakhmid kings of Ḥīra, and his replacement by a Persian governor. It was perhaps to deflect attention from these internal problems that Khusrau began the great war with the Byzantines from 602 which was to prove so catastrophic for both empires. The initial stages of the war saw the extension of Persian power to Syria, Palestine and Egypt, but after 622 the tide began to turn. In 627–8

Heraclius advanced through Iraq. Unlike his great rival, Khusrau was not himself a distinguished general and he failed to lead any effective resistance to the enemy, who took the capital at Ctesiphon. There were other problems too; extensive floods in the irrigated area of southern Iraq, and it is possible too that the resistance of the empire had been weakened by the plague which caused so much devastation in Byzantium. As if flood, plague and foreign invasion were not enough, a murderous rivalry for succession began between the ailing king's sons. The details are obscure but it seems that Khusrau's failings as a military commander eventually led to his deposition and the proclamation of the ten different kings already mentioned. Ten years previously, the Persian empire had seemed stronger than at any time since the Achaemenids 1,000 years before, now it was ruined and bitterly divided. In the circumstances it is perhaps surprising not that the Persian armies were defeated but that they fought as well as they did.

In the territories it inherited from the Sasanians, as in those it took over from Byzantium, Islam came into contact with a rapidly changing society. Despite the superficial continuity of empire and monarchy, both Byzantine and Sasanian states had undergone far-reaching and fundamental changes in the century before the coming of the Muslims. Many of the social, economic and structural developments, like the increased importance of pastoral peoples and the absence of civic autonomy, which are usually associated with the development of Islamic society, were in fact already under way in the sixth century if not before. The idea that the Muslim conquest broke up an age-old, changeless, deeply conservative world order, is far from the truth; it would be more accurate to say that it entered an already changing world and shaped and accelerated some of the existing trends. The dynamic development of the Islamic world can only be understood against this background.

chapter two

THE BIRTH OF THE ISLAMIC STATE

The Islamic state was created by the Arabs during the course of the seventh century AD, and its political organization and the dissensions which troubled it had their origins in the Arab background. In order to understand the development of this state, we have to begin with a discussion of Arab political society as its existed at the time of the coming of Islam.

Arabia in the Sixth Century

At the beginning of the seventh century the Arabs inhabited the Arabian peninsula and its northward extension, the Syrian desert. Apart from some areas of south Arabia, where pre-Arabic languages were still spoken, Arabic was the language of the pastoral peoples throughout the Arabian peninsula and as far north as the Euphrates. There was also some limited Persian settlement in Yemen and on the eastern, Gulf shore of Arabia. In the north, the frontier of the Arabic-speaking peoples coincided roughly with the borders between the steppe lands and the areas of settled agriculture. In southern Iraq, Arabs lived in the deserts along the lower Euphrates and colonized a few towns, like Ḥīra along the fringes of the alluvial plains. Further north Arab nomads were found in the area between the Tigris and the Euphrates known as the Jazīra or "Island", a vast expanse of sparse grazing which could support a considerable population of pastoralists. On the western, Syrian edge of the desert, the picture is complicated by the fact that many Arabs had become more or less integrated into the Byzantine state and mingled with non-Arabic-speaking groups. In the century before the Islamic conquest, Arab nomad tribes had penetrated into previously settled areas in northern Syria around Aleppo (Beroea) and Qinnasrīn (Chalcis), in the lands to the east of the Jordan and the southern borders of Palestine. In addition much of the population of such cities as Damascus

and Homs on the edge of the desert was of Arab origin. The divisions between Arab and non-Arab in these areas were blurred and while we can probably assume that most of the nomadic pastoralists in the area were Arabic speakers, so too were the inhabitants of some of the settled areas. Some regions by contrast seem to have been almost completely unaffected by Arab immigration before the coming of Islam. These include the alluvial plains of southern Iraq, known as the Sawād, the mountain and coastal areas of Palestine and Syria and, in the north, the mountains of south-eastern Anatolia. Neither Egypt nor Iran was in any sense an Arab country at this time.

These Arabic-speaking populations were united by a common language and the idea of a common kinship. There must have been widely differing dialects of Arabic over so vast an area, although little evidence of them has survived in the literary sources, but during the sixth century there had developed, partly at the court of the Arab kings of Ḥīra, a common poetic language, generally understood throughout the Arabic-speaking lands. The possession of this common language was of vital importance for the development of the Islamic state. It meant that the fundamental teachings of Islam, as enshrined in the Qur'ān, were comprehensible to many different tribes and that communication was possible between groups from many different areas. If the Arab tribes had not enjoyed this common language the achievements of the conquests and the Muslim empire would have been impossible. The Arabs also seem to have shared the idea that they came from one, or perhaps two, common ancestors, the second being introduced to account for the widespread cultural and later political differences between the northern (Qays/Muḍar) and southern (Yaman) Arabs. Later genealogists worked out elaborate structures to explain the kinship between different groups and, though these were in part later rationalizations, they could only have been developed if there was already an idea of common kinship.

Despite this linguistic and ethnic unity, the Arabs had no central political organization or administration. In previous centuries there had been Arab kingdoms with some form of government but these had usually been on the fringes of the Arab lands and under the patronage or protection of outside powers. The most famous of these were the Nabatean kingdom of Petra, taken over by the Romans in AD 106 and the third-century kingdom of Palmyra (Tadmur), both states which derived much of their wealth from the control of caravan routes and both of which were heavily influenced by Greek and Roman culture. In the extreme south of the peninsula, there were other kingdoms, based on the settled lands of south Arabia and Yemen but, like their northern counterparts, deriving much of their wealth from the organization of

trade. In the fifth century AD, with the support of the Himyaritic rulers of south Arabia, the kings of Kinda established control over the tribes and commerce of much of central Arabia. By the second half of the sixth century, however, the kingdom of south Arabia had disintegrated and been taken over by Ethiopian and Persian invaders while the tribes of central Arabia lacked any form of political authority. On the frontiers of the great empires, Arab client states had been established in the sixth century, the Ghassanids in Syria and the Lakhmids on the frontiers of Iraq. The Ghassanids, who organized much of the Syrian steppe for the Byzantines, were the leaders of a confederation of Arab tribes who lived a pastoral, nomadic existence along the borders of the settled lands. The Lakhmids had a fixed capital at Ḥīra, their kings enjoyed close relations with the Sasanian rulers of Iran and they managed the trade routes of much of eastern and central Arabia. By the beginning of the seventh century, however, these systems had been swept away because of changes of policy by both the Byzantines and the Sasanians and by the long gruelling war between the two great powers from AD 602 to 628. The nascent Islamic state was faced by no rival power among the Arabs and indeed it arose in part to fill the recently created political vacuum.

Such organized kingdoms were always, however, marginal to the lives of most nomad Arabs for whom the tribe was the largest grouping to which they owed allegiance. In theory the tribe was considered to be the descendants of a remote common ancestor from whom its members took their names. Thus the descendants of a, probably mythical, Tamīm were referred to as the Banū Tamīm or sons of Tamīm, and individuals would take the tribal designation al-Tamīmī as the last element in their names. Anthropological research suggests that, in practice, tribal connections and genealogical links are developed to explain existing alliances and that if two groups wish to establish close links for pastoral, commercial or political reasons they will tend to do so by "discovering" a common ancestor.

Not all tribes were equal in numbers, status or internal organization. Some tribes, notably those with a settled focus or nucleus, like the Quraysh of Mecca or the Banū Ḥanīfa of Yamāma in eastern Arabia seem to have had a considerable degree of group solidarity. Others, like the Tamīm in north-east Arabia or the Ghaṭafān in the Ḥijāz, for example, lacked any common unity of leadership or purpose. Some tribes seem to have been in the process of disintegration; the Bakr b. Wā'il, again in north-east Arabia, never acted as a unit and the most important groups were subdivisions like the Shaybān whose leaders played a dynamic role in the conquest of Iraq. In the circumstances of pre-Islamic Arabia, most tribes never acted together, either for defence or for seeking pasture,

nor was there any meeting place for the entire group. Instead, for most purposes the bedouin of the seventh century, like the bedouin of the present day, identified with the much smaller lineage or clan which claims a common descent, often for five generations, and may share the ownership of wells vital for survival through the rainless summer, or with the tenting group who may or may not be related but who camp together and defend their members against attack. Early Islamic history is often described in terms of tribal rivalries, as if tribes had a common purpose and ambition. In fact both detailed study of the early sources and the experience of modern anthropologists make it plain that tribes have no such unity and that, while tribal loyalties may help to cement an alliance, lineages and tenting groups make decisions according to their own perceived interest, rather than out of blind allegiance to a tribal leadership. Converts to Islam, for example, usually came as individuals or small groups, almost never as entire tribes. On the other hand, the ideological justification for alliances is often given in terms of kinship and a genealogical explanation produced. Thus early Muslim writers may present in genealogical terms, that is in terms of tribal solidarity and rivalry, conflicts that are in reality more concerned with down to earth matters like grazing and access to political power.

This kinship system, the identification of each individual with a group which will protect him against another, rival, group, is a logical response to the condition of ungovernment. In pre-Islamic Arabia, there was no law enforcement agency to protect persons and property, and safety was provided not by the state but by the kin and the principle of retaliation; if a man was robbed or murdered, then his kin were obliged to seek revenge or compensation. In this way a measure of security for life and property was obtained without any formal structure of government but it meant that the obligations of kinship were very important since no one could survive without being a member of, or protected by, an effective kin. This system applied not only to the bedouin but also to the settled populations of such towns as Mecca and Yathrib (Medina) as well. One result of this method of maintaining order was that Arab society was a society geared to warfare; among full members of the tribe (as opposed to slaves and others of low status) there were no “civilians”. All adult males, and sometimes females, could be mobilized to defend the camp or participate in raids. At the time of the Islamic conquests, most Arab men would have had military training and experience, in contrast to the peoples of much of the Byzantine and Sasanian empires, where the peasant and urban populations took little part in military activities.

Power within the tribe was invested in the hands of chiefs. Leadership in traditional Arab society was both hereditary and elective. Leaders

were chosen from a ruling kin or lineage within the tribe but among the members of the lineage, power was exercised by the most able and effective, rather than by the eldest son of the previous holder of power. Chieftainship might be held jointly among several members of the same clan, while a large tribe might have a number of different leaders as the Tamīm seem to have done in Muḥammad's time, and no paramount chiefs at all. In other cases there were rival lineages which contested the chieftainship of the tribe, as in the Shaybān where the different leaders sought alliance with either Muḥammad or the Persian authorities to strengthen their positions. The powers of the chief were very limited and were dependent on his abilities for their maintenance. His functions were to arbitrate in disputes, to find adequate grazing for his followers and to defend their wells and beasts against the depredations of rivals. He was also expected to be generous, to entertain visitors and his followers, and to this end he was sometimes allowed to collect contributions from the tribe. A reputation for generous hospitality had an important function, encouraging visitors who would provide information about grazing, the movement of other groups and other news vital for making effective choices of action. In general there was not, in purely pastoral societies, an overwhelming difference in wealth between chiefs and others since vast flocks and large sums of money were difficult to safeguard and provided no great advantage. A reputation for wisdom and generosity brought more power and influence than the accumulation of treasure or animals. The tribal chief had no coercive power. He could, if called on, give judgement in a case involving two parties within his own tribe but there was no mechanism for enforcing it except in so far as public opinion sustained his verdict and put pressure on the parties concerned, since a man who consistently defied the opinion of his kinsmen would find himself friendless and exposed in time of danger. This lack of effective power has led to desert society being described as democratic and egalitarian and there is some truth in this. Each family head had his own means of subsistence, his flocks, and could make his own decisions about where he camped and with whom he arranged marriage alliances. At the same time, there was a significant difference between the chief who was able to entertain guests to feasts and his poorer followers who could only scrape a meagre and insecure subsistence.

The pattern of tribal life was drastically changed by the Islamic conquests and the settlement often in large urban communities which followed. In some ways tribal solidarity was enhanced because of government policy of settling members of the same tribe in the same quarters of cities. Thus Tamīmīs settled in the Tamīm quarter of Kūfa might find themselves next door to fellow tribesmen they had never met before but

with whom they now had, for the first time, interests in common. As time passed, however, and Umayyad government became more effective tribal solidarity became less important, and men could pursue their own economic interests protected not by their kinsmen but by agents of the government.

The other important change caused by the post-Islamic settlement was to increase the distance between the ordinary tribesmen and the chiefs, the men the early Muslim writers refer to as the *ashrāf* (sing. *sharīf*). The *ashrāf* were able to take advantage of the opportunities presented by the newly won lands and wealth and above all from their position as intermediaries between the government and their followers. It was they who arranged for the distribution of salaries and assignment of land while they acted as a channel through which their followers could bring their complaints and petitions to the governor or caliph. They also had opportunities for acquiring great wealth from government office and military campaigns and investing it in land, much more secure and easier to safeguard than flocks. In some cases tribal chiefs seem to have bartered tribal lands in Arabia for estates in Iraq which became their own property. All this led to the development of social tensions within the tribe which had seldom existed in the circumstances of pastoral life. Especially in Iraq, hostility to the newly acquired power and wealth of the *ashrāf* was a constant source of violent discontent.

In inner Arabia, most of the Arabs were pagans. The paganism took different forms and seems to have been fairly basic, the worship of local idols and the practice of various techniques of divination. As far as the bedouin were concerned, attachment to the honour of both individual and kin and to the ideals of generosity and military prowess, a set of ideals sometimes referred to as "tribal humanism" were probably more important than attachment to any deity. The pagan deities seem to have been very localized and to have demanded favours and gifts more than worship and commitment. In Mecca itself, ideas of monotheism were not unknown before the coming of Muḥammad but the worship of the idols of the Kaʿba was too important to the prosperity of the community to be challenged seriously. Elsewhere, Christianity was by far the most important religion among the Arabs. The tribes of the Syrian steppe and those of the Jazīra seem to have been almost entirely Christian, mostly of the Monophysite creed, indeed the Ghassanids had been among the most important patrons of Monophysite Christianity when it had been under attack from the Byzantine authorities in the sixth century. There were both Christians and Jews in the Ḥijāz as well, the Christians mostly in the south at Najrān on the Yemeni borders while the Jews were concentrated in Yathrib and the nearby oases.

Most of the Arab population in pre-Islamic times depended on pastoralism, the rearing of camels or sheep and goats for their subsistence. The camel nomads were mostly found in the heartlands of Arabia and the literature of the period makes very clear the importance of camels for both transport and subsistence. We hear much less about sheep-rearing tribes but it would seem likely that many bedouin then as now, depended on flocks for their living. This is especially true in the semi-desert bordering the settled areas of Syria and Iraq, partly because the sheep are better adapted to the more moderate climate and partly because sheep products need a nearby market. Many members of the shepherd tribes, like the Tanūkh and Taghlib along the Euphrates, probably lived in villages for at least part of the year and the distinction between the nomad and the sedentary was often blurred. But although sheep and camels alike could provide milk, meat and wool, the pastoral life was not self-sufficient and even the camel nomads of inner Arabia needed to be able to acquire dates, weapons and other goods from outside their own circle. This meant that the tribesmen needed a source of wealth apart from their own herds. This wealth could be acquired in a number of ways. They could exchange the products of pastoralism, wool, meat, cheese and hides at market towns. While those who lived near markets could probably provide for themselves in this way, it was much more difficult for the inhabitants of remoter areas. They could raid other tribes. These raids, called *ghazw*, were exciting and served to confirm the unity of the kin and give its members military experience; they could also be profitable but often would result in a pattern of mutual raids which left no one much better off.

Another way of improving the standard of subsistence was by extracting taxes from the settled people, either by raiding and pillaging or by establishing protection and receiving payment in exchange; thus in the century before the advent of Islam, the Ghassanids in Syria had established themselves as protectors of the settled population and their leaders had become wealthy and distinguished chiefs, patrons of poetry and builders of palaces. On a smaller scale many tribes must have collected dues from the peoples of the small oases but opportunities of this sort were limited and settled communities comparatively few. The last option was the taxation of traders. The relationship between traders and nomads was a very close one. Often the merchants were themselves of nomad stock, like the Quraysh merchants of Mecca, but they also needed the protection of the nomads through whose areas they passed. A trade route could only be successful if the organizers could rely on a network of agreements with local tribes to secure the safe passage of goods in exchange for a subsidy. Such arrangements were still in operation as late

as the nineteenth century when the subsidies paid by the Ottoman government to secure the safe passage of the *ḥajj* (pilgrimage) were an important source of income for Ḥijāzī tribes.

The nomad pastoral society was inherently unstable for economic reasons. Any government which sought to pacify the tribes and establish peace in Arabia and abolish the *ghazw*, had to find a substitute; if the tribesmen were not to attack each other, then they had to attack someone else.

It would be wrong, however, to imagine that all the inhabitants of the Arabian peninsula were nomads, that livestock were the only means of subsistence or tribal leadership the only basis of authority. There were areas like Yemen and parts of ʿUmān where the rainfall in the mountains was sufficient to allow settled village agriculture, and even away from the mountains and the water-bearing monsoons of the south coast there were oases where date palms grew in abundance or where crops could be cultivated. Such were settlements like Taymā and Khaybar in the northern Ḥijāz or Yathrib, later known as Medina, further south with its date palms and barley fields cultivated by settled folk living in permanent houses. In the hills just to the east of Mecca lay the town of Ṭāʾif where the upland climate allowed wheat and vines to be grown. In eastern Arabia too there were areas of settled habitation, notably in Yamāma where the Banū Ḥanīfa grew wheat and dates and had a permanent settlement at Ḥajar, both shrine and trading centre, as their capital. Despite their settled way of life, the people of these oases did not produce centralized states of the sort that were common in other settled areas in the Near East; they were too small and scattered. They maintained close contacts with the neighbouring nomads and a pattern of society divided into tribes and lineages, indeed some tribes, like the Banū Ḥanīfa of Yamāma for example, had both a nomad and settled division. On the whole, the agriculturalists were looked down on by their nomad neighbours and were not regarded as truly noble. Thus in the early Islamic period, the people of Medina, despite their great contribution to the success of Islam, were never able to produce an important political leader from their own ranks.

However, it was neither a nomad community nor an agricultural community which produced the Prophet Muḥammad. Probably since the beginning of the first millennium BC, Arabia had been an important highway for commerce and this commerce had profoundly affected the history and society of the people of the area. In classical times the commerce was of two main kinds. The first was transit trade in goods imported to the Roman empire from the Indian Ocean basin. This meant above all spices but also other sorts of perfumes and high-value

luxury products. The routes by which these goods reached the shores of the Mediterranean varied according to political circumstances. The easiest and most logical was by ship to the head of the Gulf and thence by the Euphrates route and entrepôts like Palmyra or Edessa to the cities of Syria and the Mediterranean ports. But this route lay through the heart of the Persian empire; it was frequently interrupted by war and even in times of peace, the Persians extracted considerable tolls. It was this which made the harder, western routes more attractive. The Red Sea could be used for shipping but navigation was very hazardous and much of the commerce passed overland from south Arabia, through the Ḥijāz to the Syrian markets, Petra during the early Roman empire, but later Gaza and Bostra (or Buṣrā, on the edge of the desert, about 80 miles south of Damascus).

The other kind of trade was in the products of south Arabia, called Arabia Felix by classical writers on account of its great prosperity. This meant above all frankincense and myrrh which were in vast demand in the Roman empire for ritual and funerary purposes. These precious perfumes were gathered from the trees of the south Arabian hills and there is no doubt that their cultivation contributed greatly to the prosperity of the inhabitants of the area and those who controlled the camel caravans which transported it from there to the markets in the north.

These traditional trades in high-value luxury products seem to have declined by the end of the sixth century. The economic problems of the Byzantine empire in the second half of the sixth century coupled with the almost complete collapse of the Italian and western European urban economies can have left little money for importing incense, cloves and pepper and even where such commerce did survive it was on a much reduced scale. The sources for the late sixth and early seventh centuries give few details about the nature of the trade but it seems to have been essentially the exchange of locally produced goods; Hāshim, Muḥammad's great-grandfather, is said to have received permission to bring skins and textiles (probably from Yemen) to Syria and the Prophet himself is said to have traded in skins. In exchange the merchants brought back grain and wine from Syria. In Iraq too, we are told that the tribes along the borders of the settled lands bought supplies from the kings of Ḥīra, presumably in exchange for animal products. In fact, the trade of Muḥammad's time seems to have been more the exchange of the products of pastoralists and agriculturalists than the large-scale international trade of previous centuries. It seems likely, however, that trade was vital to the livelihood of the people of Mecca among whom the Prophet grew up and that he himself went on trading expeditions to Syria.

Recent research suggests that there may have been another factor at work. Historical and geographical sources mention a number of gold and silver mines in the Arabian peninsula, mostly, but not entirely, in the Ḥijāz area. Archaeological work has confirmed the existence of extensive mining operations which flourished from the fifth century AD to the early ʿAbbasid period. More research is needed to substantiate the evidence but it appears as if the development of precious metal mining was a fundamental part of the emergence of Mecca as a commercial centre: the Arab population of the area now had money to spend on importing agricultural products and other luxuries. This supply of gold and silver certainly would account for the frequent mentions of large cash sums which we find in the traditional Arab accounts of the early history of Islam.

The control of these trade routes and the enjoyment of the profits they produced were perhaps the most important factor in the pre-Islamic politics of the Arabian peninsula. The main problem faced by anyone attempting to organize the caravan traffic was to assure the passage of valuable goods through the lands occupied by nomad tribes. Because of the vast distances and the difficulty of finding supplies, sending a large armed escort with each party was not a practical proposition. The alternatives were to reach some sort of agreement with the tribes whereby the caravans would be allowed to pass in exchange for favours, support or protection.

At the beginning of the sixth century, the south Arabian kingdom was strong enough to be able to organize the caravan trade. To do this, a client tribal kingdom of Kinda was supported in central Arabia and seems to have arranged for the passage of caravans. During the first half of the sixth century, however, this system broke down. This was partly because Ghassanid–Lakhmid rivalry in the Fertile Crescent made trade unsafe but it may also have reflected the impoverishment of the Mediterranean market which resulted in reduced profits. The kingdom of Kinda disappeared leaving central Arabia in chaos, while in south Arabia itself the indigenous Himyaritic kingdom was taken over by the rulers of Ethiopia, probably acting in alliance with the Byzantines to forestall an attack by the Persians or their Lakhmid protégés. The period of the Ethiopian rule, from about 530 to 575, saw attempts by various parties to reconstitute the system. The Lakhmid rulers of Ḥīra attempted to maintain a series of agreements with neighbouring tribes, notably the Tamīm and Bakr b. Wā'il in their own immediate vicinity but also with the Sulaym who could ensure the passage of Lakhmid caravans to the Ḥijāz and the markets of western Arabia. The Lakhmid system was based on treaties, subsidies and diplomacy backed up by occasional

raids, but despite Persian military support the kings of Ḥīra could never enforce their authority much beyond the boundaries of the settled lands.

In the Yemen, the Ethiopian viceroy, Abraha, attempted to revive a system based on the old Sabaean kingdom. Abraha was essentially independent of the ruler at Axum, and despite his attack on Mecca, he receives a good reputation in the Muslim sources. He repaired the great dams at Mārib in an attempt to revive the agricultural economy and his attack on Mecca was a clear indication of his intent to bring eastern Arabian trade under his control. In the 570s, however, his successors were removed by a rebellion of the local people aided by a Persian fleet under one Vahrīz who eventually stayed on as Persian viceroy until after 628. Persian rule does not, however, seem to have been as strong as Ethiopian and an attempt to control Arabian trade on a Ḥīra–Yemen axis and so bring it all under the indirect control of the Sasanian empire, was frustrated by the feebleness of Ḥīra and the Persian rulers of Yemen as well as the rising power of a new trading centre, Mecca.

The site of the sanctuary at Mecca is without doubt an ancient one. The role of the sanctuary, known in Arabic as the *ḥaram*, was a very important one in pre-Islamic Arabia and similar institutions, under the name of *ḥawṭa* still exist in many areas of south Arabia today. In the conditions of tension and hostility which often existed between neighbouring tribes, it was essential to have some neutral area where members of different groups could meet to exchange goods and settle disputes: the *ḥaram* or *ḥawṭa* fulfilled this role. The *ḥaram* was originally founded (often on the borders between tribal territories or at the junction of several *wādīs*) by a holy man who declared it a neutral ground. This inviolability extended not just to the shrine itself, usually a very simple structure, but also to the immediately surrounding area, often demarcated by stone posts. Within this area, no violence or killing were permitted and enemies could meet together confident of their security. The holy man (*manṣab* is the modern term) could also be resorted to for arbitration and accepted as a judge. Naturally markets grew up in the *ḥaram* where the property of the various merchants would be safe. Those who used the *ḥaram* and were attached to it were obliged to pay the holy man dues for his services and in exchange the holy man would feed and entertain the tribesmen. In a country without a centralized law enforcement system, the *ḥaram* played a vital role in the social and economic life of the people and the holy man could become a man of great political power and influence. After his death, the authority usually passed to his family who become thereby a "holy lineage". They took over the duties of guarding the *ḥaram*, ensuring its inviolability and entertaining visitors and pilgrims. The foundation of the *ḥaram* at Mecca

is ascribed by the Muslims to Abraham but though the original founder had long since passed away, the *ḥaram* was held and administered by a series of lineages which became holy families for several generations before being replaced by new lineages who felt that they had a better right to the position. This happened, probably in the first half of the sixth century when the existing guardians of the *ḥaram* at Mecca were replaced by one Quṣayy who installed himself and his tribe, the Quraysh, as guardians and whose descendants became the new holy family. Among his direct descendants was Muḥammad b. ʿAbd Allāh, the Prophet of God, and it is impossible to understand his background or success without remembering his position with regard to the *ḥaram*.

Although the *ḥaram* at Mecca was very ancient, the commercial network of which it was the centre by the early seventh century was comparatively recent. It does not seem that there was any city to speak of when Quṣayy and the Quraysh took over the *ḥaram*, and the urban development of Mecca must be seen as a phenomenon of the second half of the sixth and early seventh centuries. The foundation of the trading network probably belongs to the generation of Quṣayy's grandsons. Under the protection of the *ḥaram*, fairs were held at ʿUkāẓ a few miles east of Mecca where goods, and also poetry and ideas, could be exchanged between groups who would normally be at war. The traditional Muslim account, which probably has at least a symbolic accuracy shows the four brothers all establishing commercial relations with different areas; ʿAbd Shams in Abyssinia, Hāshim in Syria, al-Muṭṭalib with Yemen and Nawfal with Iraq, and all the brothers except ʿAbd Shams are said to have died in the countries they made contact with, Hāshim in Gaza. Until this point the *ḥaram* at Mecca had been simply one of a number serving the surrounding tribes; even in the immediate vicinity there were others like that managed by the Thaqīf at Ṭa'if and one at Nakhla between Mecca and Medina where the holy family came from the tribe of Sulaym. The commercial expertise of the Quraysh, both the direct descendants of Quṣayy and other clans, most notably the Makhzūm, transformed this position. They made the city the centre of what has been described as the "Meccan commonwealth", a commercial and diplomatic network which enabled caravans organized in Mecca under Quraysh patronage to travel to Syria, Iraq and Yemen in comparative security. This was done by a variety of means. There were tribes which recognized the religious status of the *ḥaram* and the sanctity of the holy months, when violence was not supposed to be practised; these included not just the Quraysh but probably the Khuzāʿa, Thaqīf and Kināna who controlled the route south to Yemen as well although the lists given in the sources are somewhat contradictory. Among those tribes who were

not attached to the Kaʿba in this way the Quraysh entered into partnership. The alliance with other tribes who considered themselves part of the Muḍar group, like the Asad and especially the Tamīm, with whom the Quraysh established close links and who frequently acted as judges in the fair at ʿUkāẓ, helped in this process. With them and other tribes, the Ṭayy for example, they entered into profit-sharing agreements, called *īlāf*, with the chiefs who were guaranteed payment in exchange for securing the passage of the caravans. The commonwealth was held together by the prestige of the sanctuary at Mecca and of its holy family, diplomacy, tact, payment and self-interest. The Quraysh had no army with which to enforce their rule although they did occasionally go to war to defend their interests, as, for example in the case of the war of Fijār, which occurred when the Prophet was a young man, the object of which was to ensure that caravans from Yemen to Iraq came under the patronage of the Quraysh.

External circumstances seem to have increased the importance of the Meccan commonwealth in the early seventh century. In 602 with the assassination of the Emperor Maurice there began a generation of savage warfare between the Byzantines and the Sasanians which meant that direct trading links across the frontier between the two empires must have become impossible. In 602 as well the Persians executed al-Nuʿmān III, the last of their client kings of Ḥīra, and Ḥīra ceased to be an important independent political force in the north-east of Arabia. Tribes, like the Tamīm which had had close contacts with Ḥīra, now began to look to Mecca and the Quraysh for trading partners and even for arbitration in their quarrels. The victory of the Arab tribes over the Persian armies at Dhū Qār in 611 meant the final end of any pretensions of the Persians to exert authority over north-east Arabia and left the way open for the expansion of Quraysh influence. So during the lifetime of the Prophet, the Quraysh network, based on the *ḥaram* at Mecca had become the leading commercial organization in northern and western Arabia but it must be remembered that their success was ultimately based on the prestige of the *ḥaram* and the popularity of the fairs that took place under its protection at ʿUkāẓ; if the position of the *ḥaram* were to be challenged in any way then the whole position of the city would be put in jeopardy.

Trade was no luxury for the people of Mecca. The site of the city is barren and rocky and no agriculture was possible except with great expense and difficulty. The water supply was dependent on wells, notably the sacred well of Zamzam, the maintenance of which played a large part in city life. This meant that virtually all food had to be imported. In the early days of Quraysh domination no doubt much of

the population remained nomadic pastoralists living from the produce of their herds, and the agriculture of the neighbouring towns of Ṭā'if and Yathrib probably sufficed for their needs. In about 570, for example, the Prophet's grandfather possessed a herd of 200 camels as well as commercial interests in Mecca. But during the life of Muḥammad there is no doubt that much of the population consisted of sedentary townspeople and merchants who produced no food themselves. The population was probably increasing with the prosperity of the city and in addition there was the burden of feeding the visitors and pilgrims whose visits were so vital to the prosperity of the town. These factors meant that Mecca was dependent on imported foodstuffs, not just from the surrounding area but from as far afield as Yamāma in the east and Syria and even Egypt to the north. Keeping the trade routes open was vital to the survival of the people of Mecca.

The inhabitants of Mecca were not, of course, a homogeneous group. There were many slaves and others who were not members of the Quraysh and therefore did not share in the wealth and prestige of the tribe. Among the Quraysh there were lineages with greater or lesser prestige and wealth and there can be no doubt that by Muḥammad's time there were very sharp divisions between the richer and poorer members of the tribe. Despite their urban and sedentary way of life, the Quraysh still retained their tribal organization. There was no system of public justice, no police and no courts; safety and security of goods and person depended, as it did in the desert, on the lineage, and a man from a weak lineage or one who lost the support of his close relations was in a very vulnerable position. Among the clans or lineages of the Quraysh, the descendants of Quṣayy held pride of place, and it was they who had inherited responsibilities in the *ḥaram* though there were other clans, notably the Makhzūm, whose commercial success had put them among the leaders of Meccan society. Quṣayy had left the guardianship of the *ḥaram* to his son ʿAbd al-Dār, but ʿAbd al-Dār and his descendants had failed to sustain their position against the claims of the more dynamic clan of ʿAbd Manāf and by the time of the Prophet they had largely fallen out of the leading group. As always in Arabia, leadership was both hereditary and elective. No one who was not of the Quraysh and the clan of Quṣayy could claim to lead the holy family but among that group leadership lay with the strong and the shrewd, not necessarily with the eldest or with the father's choice. ʿAbd Manāf in turn had four sons whom tradition credits with establishing the fortunes of the Quraysh, ʿAbd Shams, Nawfal, Hāshim and al-Muṭṭalib. These four shared out among themselves the various offices connected with the *ḥaram* and the pilgrimage. As might be expected, there developed a rivalry between the

clan of Hāshim, supported by the weaker descendants of al-Muṭṭalib on one hand and the clan of ʿAbd Shams, later called after his son Umayya, usually but not always supported by the Nawfal and Makhzūm, a conflict for power and influence in Mecca which was to have profound and far-reaching effects on the early Islamic state.

The Early Life of Muḥammad[1]

Muḥammad belonged to the clan of Hāshim. The status of the clan in the years immediately before the emergence of Islam is not entirely clear and Western historians have suggested, perhaps wrongly, that the early Islamic sources exaggerated its importance in an attempt to magnify the social position of the Prophet. Hāshim was certainly a man of great importance among the Quraysh; besides being connected with the opening-up of the Syrian trade route, he is also said to have been responsible for the feeding and watering of the pilgrims and people of Mecca, a man of wealth and generosity in contrast with his brother ʿAbd Shams who was constantly away on trading expeditions and was said to have been a poor man with a large family. After Hāshim's death, however, the status of the clan seems to have declined. In contrast with the increasing commercial success of ʿAbd Shams, the clan of Hāshim suffered a number of disappointments. His son ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib was clearly a person of some consequence however; at the time of Abraha's expedition against Mecca known to the Muslims as the Day of the Elephant (probably around 570), he appears as the spokesman for the Quraysh in negotiations with Abraha. He was also responsible for the reopening of the well Zamzam, again emphasizing the close connections of the clan with the *ḥaram*. ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib had four sons, ʿAbd Allāh, who died young, al-Zubayr, Abū Ṭālib and Abū Lahab who succeeded each other as head of the clan. It was shortly after ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib's death (in the late 570s?) that the clan became one of the leading members of the *ḥilf al-fuḍūl* or "Confederation of the Virtuous". This was probably an association of the less successful clans to ensure fair trading and prevent the establishment of trading monopolies by ʿAbd Shams and other dominant clans. This suggests that despite their close association with the *ḥaram*, the Banū Hāshim were no longer among the wealthiest or most politically powerful of the Meccan clans and that considerable social tensions were developing in the city between the richest clans and their poorer kinsmen.

It was into this family, direct descendants of Quṣayy, members of the holy family of Mecca and closely connected with the *ḥaram* that Muḥammad b. ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib b. Hāshim was born

probably around the year 570 when Abraha the Abyssinian made his ill-fated attack on Mecca. Despite his illustrious family background, his immediate circumstances were not especially prosperous. His father had died before he was born, on a trading expedition to Syria, and his mother Amīna and his grandfather ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib supervised his early childhood. In accordance with Quraysh customs he was found a wet-nurse, Ḥalīma, from the Hawāzin bedouin tribe and spent his early years with them in the desert; the Muslim sources relate how reluctant the bedouin women were to take on an orphan with no economic prospects. His early life was further clouded by the deaths of his mother when he was six and his famous grandfather, ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib, when he was eight but the clan looked after him and his uncle Abū Ṭālib, now its head, saw to his upbringing. We have few details of his early life. He lived through a period of growing Meccan prosperity and influence; he is said to have taken part in the war of Fijār to secure the Quraysh hold over the trade route of western Arabia and is pictured on a caravan expedition to the Syrian city of Bostra where his future greatness was recognized by the Christian monk Baḥīra. It was also a period of increasing social tensions and as a child he was said to have been present at the foundation of the *ḥilf al-fuḍūl*.

It was natural that the young man sought to make a career for himself in commerce. Because of his honesty and trustworthiness he was taken on, when in his twenties, as business manager for a wealthy Qurashī widow Khadīja whom he married shortly afterwards. His marriage to Khadīja brought him material security, and children, including Fāṭima whose descendants were to prove so important in later Islamic history. It also seems to have been a genuinely companionate marriage, Khadīja bringing him comfort and moral support in times of difficulty.

Thus far Muḥammad's career had been quietly successful and he was clearly one of the leading young men of the Quraysh. We cannot be certain of the exact chronology of events but it was probably in about 610 when he was around forty years old that Muḥammad began to receive the revelation of the Qur'ān. The circumstances are recorded by a number of early sources; the Prophet had retired from Mecca, probably for a period of meditation and reflection to the neighbouring mountain of Ḥirā' and it was here that the command came to him to recite the first *sūra* or "verse" (almost certainly 96: 1–5).

> *Recite: In the name of thy Lord who createth,*
> *Createth man from a clot.*
> *Recite: And thy Lord is the Most Bounteous,*
> *Who teacheth by the pen,*
> *Teacheth man that which he knew not.*

The dating of the Revelation of the Qur'ān is problematic but it is generally accepted that the earliest *sūras* are those which come towards the end of the received text of the Qur'ān. Short and simple but very powerful, they stress the glory and majesty of Allah, his mercy and generosity, the importance of doing good, particularly the obligations of the rich to the poorer members of society, and the inevitability of the day of judgment.

In the year which followed the Revelation, Muḥammad began his public preaching, calling on people to acknowledge the glory of Allāh and pray to him. His first convert was his wife, followed by people closely related to him, his cousin ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib and his freedman Zayd b. Ḥāritha. But the message soon spread beyond his immediate household and Abū Bakr, certainly one of the first Muslims, was a prosperous merchant from the Quraysh clan of Taym. Most of the early converts came, as might be expected, from his own clan of Hāshim, and others, like Saʿd b. Abī Waqqāṣ and ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. ʿAwf from his mother's clan of Zuhra. Most of them were young men and they seem to have come from clans of some standing in Mecca who had missed out on the great commercial successes of the recent years. It has been described as a movement of the "nearly hads" rather than of the "have nots" and there were few representatives of the wealthy clans of ʿAbd Shams (Umayya) or Makhzūm. It is interesting to note as well they were all converted as individuals not as clans. Even within Hāshim itself there were important figures, Abū Ṭālib, the head of the clan and his brother Abū Lahab for example, who did not accept the Revelation, while on the other hand there was no clan of standing which did not provide at least one recruit for the new movement.

At first there is no evidence that the preaching aroused any opposition among those who did not accept it but as the Revelation became more specific and more widely accepted, conservative elements in Mecca began to see it as a threat to their position. A challenge to the *ḥaram* and its idols could be seen as a challenge to the religious and hence commercial standing of Mecca and to acknowledge Muḥammad as the Prophet of God meant to accept that he had a status within the community superior to that of rich merchants like Abū Jahl of the Makhzūm and Abū Sufyān of the Umayya who were the leading figures in Mecca at the time. In addition, Muḥammad's insistence that those who did not recognize Allāh were consigned to hell meant that many feared for the souls of their ancestors. At one stage Muḥammad was persuaded to introduce the "Satanic verses" into the Revelation which gave some status to the goddesses of neighbouring sanctuaries and this may represent an attempt to come to terms with the Meccan leaders. If so, Muḥammad

soon realized that he had been led astray and repudiated the verses, thus confirming that Allāh was the only God and that idols could have no place in the religion of Islam.

This seems to have marked the end of the period when Muḥammad's activities had been tolerated and his followers now found themselves under increasing pressure. This mostly took the form of ostracism, verbal attacks, commercial sanctions and, in the case of lower-class Muslims without influential protectors, of actual physical violence. Against this background a number of Muslims left Mecca to settle in Ethiopia, probably in 615, where they enjoyed the protection of the Christian ruler. There does not seem to have been any intention of removing the entire Muslim group from Mecca, however, and Muḥammad himself and the most prominent of the early converts remained in Mecca. That they were able to do so was because of the solidity of the clan system; Muḥammad himself was protected by the clan of Hāshim and its leader Abū Ṭālib. Even though Abū Ṭālib was not himself a Muslim, he felt it part of his duty to support a member of the clan who was under threat despite the fact that prominent Meccans urged him to disown the trouble-maker. People became Muslims as individuals but they did not at this stage become a separate community, and when persecuted Muslims needed protection they still turned to their non-Muslim blood-relatives rather than to their fellow Muslims. All that was to change when the community moved to Medina. The next stage of the opposition was to try to isolate the whole clan of Hāshim and to boycott them both commercially and socially. This attempt does not seem to have lasted very long and began to disintegrate when members of other clans who were related by marriage and other ties to Hāshim began to resume contacts.

The collapse of the boycott was not, however, the end of the Prophet's troubles. In 619 his beloved wife Khadīja and his uncle Abū Ṭālib both died. It had been Abū Ṭālib who had united Hāshim in their support of Muḥammad but he was succeeded as head of the clan by his brother Abū Lahab who had different ideas. Abū Lahab was not prepared to protect his nephew in the same way and Muḥammad's position in Mecca soon became increasingly difficult. In response to this pressure, Muḥammad began to look outside his native city for support. The first and most obvious area was the neighbouring city of Ṭā'if where many of the Quraysh had property and contacts. However Ṭā'if was no more welcoming than Mecca had been. The Prophet then tried to approach some of the neighbouring bedouin tribes with the intention of preaching to them but once again he was rebuffed. The period from 619 to the *Hijra* in 622 was really the crisis of Muḥammad's ministry and the biggest test he faced since he had begun to preach his message.

At this crucial point, however, Muḥammad was approached by the inhabitants of the settlement of Yathrib (known after 622 as Medina meaning "the city"). The people of this community made their living from agriculture in their oasis. Despite their sedentary life, they, like the Quraysh, had maintained their tribal distinctions and their systems of clan security. The Arabs of this oasis were divided into two main tribes, the Aws and Khazraj, who were said to have migrated from south Arabia to settle the area in the mid-sixth century. In addition to these two main groups, there were three small tribes of Jews or Judaized Arabs, the Banū Qurayẓa, the Banū'l-Naḍīr and the Banū Qaynuqāʿ. The Aws and Khazraj had been feuding for many years but in the years before the *Hijra* these feuds had become more serious and general, culminating in the battle of Buʿāth in about 617 which had resulted in a peace of exhaustion. Clearly it was a community in need of a leader and arbitrator to put an end to this murderous internecine strife. Clearly too, this leader would have to be an outsider since no local person would be acceptable to the entire population.

It was in these circumstances that a group of Medinese first approached Muḥammad, probably in 620. They went home to Medina and returned the next year for the pilgrimage. In 622 about seventy people from Medina, all converts to Islam, met the Prophet by night at ʿAqaba outside the city, Muḥammad was careful to ensure that they swore to obey him and fight for him and to ensure that he was invited by men of both Aws and Khazraj and so would not be the candidate of only one party. He also insisted that twelve *naqībs* were appointed to represent his interests in Yathrib. Muḥammad then was careful to safeguard his position in advance and be sure that his position would be accepted by a considerable proportion of the population. The Muslims then began to move in small groups, careful not to attract attention to themselves, while the Prophet remained behind until he and Abū Bakr made their way by obscure paths to Medina which they reached on the 24 September 622. A new era had begun.

Muḥammad in Medina

The *Hijra*, or migration of the Prophet from Mecca to Medina during the summer of 622, marked a major turning-point in the history of the Islamic movement. His followers in Mecca, later known as the *Muhājirūn* or Emigrants, some seventy in number, had left in small groups through July, August and September. The *Hijra* meant that the Muslims were now free of the hostility of the leaders of the Quraysh and the restricting atmosphere of Mecca and were now settled among people who had

invited them and at least some of whom were Muslims; Muḥammad could preach and they worship with an openness which had been impossible before. But the emigration from Mecca also meant that the *Muhājirūn* had abandoned the traditional clan links which had guaranteed their security and clearly they could no longer rely for protection on relatives they had left behind. The traditional system may not have been perfect and in the case of the Prophet himself it had become increasingly ineffective, but it had provided a framework in which they could live. The early converts had become Muslims as individuals, not in clans, and even after they had adopted Islam, the clan remained the basic social link. Now with the move to Medina a new form of social organization was required.

To begin with the Emigrants were quartered in the houses of those among the people of Medina who had invited them, now known as the *Anṣār* or Helpers of the Prophet, but if this arrangement had continued, they might have become little more than hangers-on, constantly needing help and protection. To avoid this, a series of agreements were drawn up in the first two or three years after the *Hijra*, agreements which are known collectively as the "Constitution of Medina". This takes the form of agreements between the *Muhājirūn* and the people of Yathrib. All the believers are described as *umma*, a community apart from the surrounding pagan society, and they are to make war as one. The bond between members of the *umma* transcends any bonds or agreements between them and the pagans and they are all to seek revenge if any Muslim is killed fighting "in the way of God". If, however, one Muslim kills another, then the normal rules of retaliation continue to operate, with the proviso that the *Muhājirūn*, who had no close relatives in the city, were to be considered as a clan like any of the native clans of Medina. There are also clauses dealing with relations with the Jews, who are partners in the affairs of Medina and bear their share of the expenses of warfare as long as there is no treachery between them and the Muslims, although both Muslims and Jews will keep their own religion. Muḥammad is only mentioned twice, both times to emphasize that the arbitration of any disputes belongs to God and Muḥammad; no other arbitrators are mentioned. The documents, then, tried to solve the problems of justice within the city and relations with outsiders, but they do not suggest that the power of Muḥammad was absolute or lay any emphasis on religious affairs. Medina was to be a *ḥaram* as Mecca was, for its people, and Muḥammad was to be its founding holy man.

Clearly the Constitution of Medina only illustrates some aspects of Muḥammad's authority in the early years after the *Hijra*. In the eight momentous years which followed, his energies and those of his followers

were devoted to establishing his unquestioned authority within Medina, conducting an effective struggle against Mecca, attracting the alliance of as many of the surrounding nomad tribes as would co-operate and working out the rules and role of the Muslim community. All these processes went hand in hand and the struggle against the Meccans was instrumental in the establishment of power within Medina, while the support of outside tribes contributed materially to his eventual success.

The stages by which Muḥammad established his power in Medina are difficult to distinguish and both traditional accounts and modern commentators have tended to lay more emphasis on the external conflicts since here the issues and chronology are clearer. Muḥammad seems to have begun the struggle against the Meccans almost as soon as he arrived at Medina; he must have realized that successful aggressive warfare was one of the best ways of providing for his supporters and of attracting new recruits, but he also knew that until the Quraysh, with their great prestige and widespread contacts were subdued and won over, Islam would never be more than a local cult in Medina; the struggle against Mecca was essential for the success of the new religion. Attacking the city of Mecca was impractical and so it was to the trade caravans to Syria which were forced to pass fairly close to Medina that Muḥammad and his followers turned their attentions. This would not only destroy the commerce on which the prosperity of the enemy depended but would also eventually starve the city into surrender since it relied on imported food.

Preliminary raids by small numbers of Muslims took place during the first eighteen months of the *Hijra* but the first real trial of strength came in the spring of 2/624 when a large caravan with some 50,000 *dīnārs* worth of goods set out from Gaza to Mecca. It was led by one of the most important figures in Meccan politics at the time, Abū Sufyān, of the clan of Umayya and father of the future Caliph Muʿāwiya who had with him an escort of about seventy men. Even by the standards of Meccan commerce this was a very valuable convoy indeed and its safe passage was vital to the continuing prosperity of the city. Alarmed by the prospect that Muḥammad might intercept it, the Meccans gathered a large force of 950 men under the leadership of Abū Jahl to come and protect it on the last, difficult stages. The caravan passed along the coast road and as a result of Abū Sufyān's quick thinking escaped without injury to Meccan territory. The relief force, however, continued to advance determined to put an end to the menace of Muḥammad for good and all. Muḥammad, with a much smaller force of 86 *Muhājirūn* and 230 *Anṣār* was waiting for them by the wells at Badr and, as a result of their possession of the water-source and the Prophet's leadership

they were able to score a major victory, Abū Jahl himself was killed and numerous valuable prisoners and animals were taken.

Badr was a total triumph and for later Muslims marked a decisive turning-point; participation in the battle of Badr was a sure sign of early commitment to Islam and the names of those who had been prepared to risk their lives for Allāh and his Prophet were immortalized in tradition. The victory solved many of the Prophet's immediate problems; the profits of the ransoms and booty provided for the needs of both Emigrants and Helpers and the fifth of all the spoils, which was the Prophet's share, was used to provide for the needs of those Muslims who were in distress. The victory did not dispose of the Meccan threat; the caravan had got through and the number of dead had not been crippling, but it must have destroyed much of the prestige on which the reputation and trade of the Quraysh rested; bedouin tribes would no longer look on Meccan leaders with the same respect. But the most important result of the victory was the consolidation of Muḥammad's position within Medina. In the aftermath of the *Hijra*, the attitudes of the population towards their new leader were varied. Some, like the important leader, Saʿd b. Muʿādh, became enthusiastic adherents of the new religion but there were others who were less convinced. Some no doubt remained pagans, though they do not seem to have been a very significant group, but many more remained sceptical or half-committed. Among these was ʿAbd Allāh b. Ubayy, an important figure in the town before the arrival of Muḥammad and a man who might have aspired to the role of arbiter and leader himself. He had adopted Islam, no doubt hoping it would benefit his position, but he resented the authority of the newcomer and his allegiance was doubtful. Such doubters, *Munāfiqūn* or Hypocrites the Muslim sources call them, were temporarily silenced by the Prophet's success; many of them were no doubt permanently won over to Islam and even those who remained sceptical were silenced for the time being. The success at Badr also allowed Muḥammad to move against the Jews. The Jewish clans of Medina had been invited to accept Islam but few had responded. Unlike the pagans, they provided a real ideological challenge to Muḥammad and in the years which followed Badr, acceptance of his political authority became impossible without also accepting his claims to Prophethood. It was impossible for Muḥammad to allow Jews to coexist with Muslims in Medina without putting his whole achievement and position in jeopardy.

The first of the Jewish groups to be attacked in the aftermath of Badr were the Banū Qaynuqāʿ, the silversmiths who controlled much of the commerce of the town. There were good reasons why they should be singled out; there were Muslims, like ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. ʿAwf, who

had early shown an interest in commerce which offered a livelihood to Emigrants who had no agricultural land. In addition they were allies of ʿAbd Allāh b. Ubayy, the one man in the oasis whom Muḥammad could still fear as a rival. A trivial quarrel in the market, a dead Jew and a dead Muslim, was the occasion for Muḥammad to demonstrate his power. He ordered the execution of the entire clan and ʿAbd Allāh b. Ubayy was able to secure no more for his allies than the commutation of the sentence to banishment and confiscation of property.

The Meccans meanwhile could not afford to sit back and do nothing. Their prestige had been severely damaged and the trade route cut. An attempt to find an alternative route through Iraq proved disastrous when the caravan was captured by Muḥammad's forces after the defenders had fled. Besides, the dead of Badr had to be avenged and it was unthinkable that retribution should not be sought. Accordingly, the next spring when there was ample grazing for the Meccan cavalry and the crops of Medina would be especially vulnerable, a large-scale expedition was organized in Mecca, led by Abū Sufyān, who had taken over Abū Jahl's role as leader of the city. The army also had with it some volunteers from the Thaqīf, the leading tribe of Ṭā'if, a sign that the conflict was beginning to take on a wider dimension. The army of about 3,000 camped on the outskirts of Medina, near the hill of Uḥud, where they could raid the crops of the townspeople but would not become involved in fighting among the palm groves or attacking the fortresses of the oasis where their superiority in cavalry would be useless; probably their objective was to destroy Muḥammad's prestige and his offensive power rather than to conquer the city; if they defeated him in battle, the Medinese might no longer accept him as their leader. The arrival of the Meccans put Muḥammad in a quandary; if he failed to take action against them they would destroy the crops and the townspeople could well accuse him of failing to protect them. If, on the other hand, he went out to meet them, he was risking battle against a superior enemy on terrain of their choosing. In the end he decided to do battle but many people in the oasis, including ʿAbd Allāh b. Ubayy and a number of his followers doubted the wisdom of the strategy and did not join in. In addition the two main Jewish clans who remained, stayed neutral; the strain of the Meccan attack showed how deep the rifts within the city still remained and how Muḥammad was far from being accepted as the unquestioned leader. The fight (Shawwāl 3/March 625) was bitter and hard but the Meccan cavalry, under Khālid b. al-Walīd, later famous for his role in the Islamic conquests, drove the Medinese from the plain and forced them to take refuge among the lava-flows where the horses and camels were unable to penetrate. The Prophet himself was cut off with a

small band of followers on the hill of Uḥud and was forced to defend himself vigorously, sustaining slight injuries; his uncle Ḥamza, one of the heroes of early Islamic tradition, was killed. At nightfall the Meccans retired from the scene and made their way back to their home town, unwilling to press their victory. The scattered remains of the Muslim army made their way back to the oasis while a party set out as if in pursuit of the Meccans, although they were careful to keep their distance.

The indecisive result of the battle made the Prophet's position less secure than it had been at any time since Badr, and his enemies in Medina, especially ʿAbd Allāh b. Ubayy and the Jews, were anxious to take advantage of this setback. On the other hand, the Meccans had failed to dislodge Muḥammad or secure the caravan route to the north and both sides realized that there was more fighting to be done. Within Medina the Prophet realized that he had to reassert his authority in a decisive manner; not to do so could see his position gradually eroded. Muḥammad felt that the main obstacle to his overall control lay in the Jews who could not accept the religious message which was the basis of his position. As long as they remained, he could never be totally secure in Medina. The Qur'ān laid increasing stress on the differences between Muslim and Jew and accused the Jews of spurning their prophets and falsifying the revelation. It was probably shortly after Uḥud that he decided to take positive action against the Banū'l-Naḍīr, the most wealthy among the surviving Jewish clans. Claiming that they were plotting treachery against him, Muḥammad and his followers besieged the clan in its fortresses while the allies they had relied on, Ibn Ubayy and the bedouin Ghaṭafān tribe, failed to make any move to help them. After a short time, terms were arranged, the Jews were to leave Medina with all they could carry except their arms, and 600 camels, laden with goods set out for the oasis of Khaybar to the north where there was a large Jewish population. The vacant lands were divided up, mostly among the *Muhājirūn*, many of whom, like Muḥammad himself, became land-owners in the oasis for the first time. This show of strength also humiliated Ibn Ubayy who had been unable to save his allies and his attempt to exploit the setback at Uḥud to restore his position had failed.

Apart from Muḥammad's assertion of authority within Medina, the two years between the battle of Uḥud in March 625 and the siege of Medina in Dhū'l-Qaʿda 5/March 627 were spent by both sides in trying to win over the hearts and minds of the bedouin of the surrounding areas. Uḥud had shown neither side was strong enough to eliminate the other entirely and only with overwhelming nomad support could either side be victorious. The spring raiding season of 4/626 was spent by both sides in a show of strength at the annual fair held by the wells at

Badr; armies from both sides put in an appearance, no doubt to convince the bedouin that they were still powerful but they seem to have been careful not to come into conflict. Apart from this both Muḥammad in Medina and Abū Sufyān in Mecca attempted, by alliances, raids and bribery, to find allies among the Ḥijāzī tribes. The dispute was no longer confined to the two cities and the settled populations but now embraced most of the nomads of western Arabia as well.

The results of these manœuvres became apparent in the spring of 5/627. Abū Sufyān had by this time gathered an impressive coalition of some 10,000 men, from Quraysh itself, and from the Sulaym and Ghaṭafān. As at Uḥud two years before, the attackers tried to assault the city from the north, the only side on which it was not protected by lava-flows, those choppy seas of almost impenetrable black stone which are so common from Syria south to the Ḥijāz. This time, however, the battle was different; the coalition had arrived at Medina slightly later, the barley crop was already in and Muḥammad was not under pressure to risk taking the offensive. With only about 3,000 men under his command, he could not afford an open conflict so he caused a trench, or *khandaq*, to be dug (the Persian word was used, perhaps suggesting that this was an un-Arab technique of warfare). The besiegers had no equipment or supplies for a siege, they had come for battle and for booty, not for a war of attrition. Insults were exchanged for about three weeks and there were some sporadic skirmishes but there was no serious attempt to breach the trench which protected the city. The Meccans may well have hoped that dissident elements in Medina, notably the remaining Jewish tribe of Qurayẓa and perhaps Ibn Ubayy as well would give them aid from within the city and attack the Muslims from behind. But nothing happened and the vast force, unable to supply itself for long and unwilling to continue what was clearly a profitless campaign, simply melted away.

The failure of the Meccans at the *khandaq* was the last episode in the struggle that established Medina as an equal rival power to Mecca; neither side could win absolute victory but both could make life intolerable for the other. But the *khandaq* marked an important stage in Muḥammad's battle for undisputed authority within the city as well. He had obviously been anxious at the prospect that the Jews would in fact co-operate with his external enemies and he was determined that such a weakness should not be allowed to continue. Besides, their continuing presence in the city where Muḥammad was regarded not just as a secular leader but also as a Prophet and the chosen spokesman of God was a continuing irritation. After the threat from outside had disappeared, the Muslims attacked the Jews, eventually forcing them into unconditional

surrender. Muḥammad appointed a member of the Aws, the tribe to which they were traditionally allied, to be their judge but the man he chose, Saʿd b. Muʿādh, one of the earliest and most influential converts to Islam in the oasis, was no friend of theirs. He was already dying from wounds received at the *khandaq* but he ordered that all the male Jews should be executed while the women and children were sold into slavery. When the sentence had been carried out, Muḥammad could consider himself undisputed master of Medina. Apart from a few individuals, the Jews had been expelled or killed. ʿAbd Allāh b. Ubayy, the one man in the city who had by his personal status and charisma been a serious rival to the Prophet, was now powerless and ageing, and was finally reconciled a couple of years later. From now on Muḥammad could negotiate with the Quraysh, confident that Medina and the Muslim *umma* there were entirely behind him.

The events of the *khandaq* had shown that neither the Muslims nor the Meccans were in a position to overcome their opponents by military force and that Muḥammad would not be removed by internal dissension in Medina. Furthermore both sides had good reason to seek some sort of compromise. The Meccans were suffering serious trading losses, caravans were unable to get through and were having difficulty over securing food supplies. Although Muḥammad was in a strong position, he realized that he too needed to reach an agreement. He was always far-sighted in practical matters and knew that the Islamic community would never reach its full potential without the energy and expertise of the Meccans. Without the talents of the Quraysh, Islam might be no more than a local Medinese cult. But despite these incentives, one major stumbling block remained, Muḥammad's claim that Allāh was the one and only God and that he, Muḥammad, was his Prophet; for many in Mecca, attached to the cults of their ancestors and remembering the modest beginnings of Islam and the contempt in which Muḥammad had been held by the Meccans, this was very difficult to swallow, while for Muḥammad this was the corner-stone of his position, an item of faith on which no compromise whatever was possible. These considerations meant that two more years of hostility, struggle and diplomacy were necessary before Muḥammad could again be accepted in his native city.

In the immediate aftermath of the *khandaq*, Muḥammad, free of the dangers of internal subversion and Meccan attack, began to spread his interests further afield. The main object of his policy was to bring the trade route to Syria under Medinese control, perhaps with the object of developing Medina as the centre of western Arabian trade. Muḥammad sent a messenger to arrange terms with a Byzantine official, probably the

governor of Bostra, the normal market for Arabian goods in the north, and he began to reach agreements with some of the tribes, mostly Christian, who controlled the south-eastern marches of Syria. Some of the Judhām, a tribe which was to play an important role in southern Palestine for several centuries to come, were converted to Islam while ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. ʿAwf, the Muslim merchant *par excellence*, led an expedition to the desert market centre of Dūmat al-Jandal, where the Christian ruler, from the tribe of Kalb, was prepared to make a treaty and marriage alliance. There is no evidence that at this stage Muḥammad was doing more than trying to reconstruct the Meccan trading commonwealth using Medina as a centre, but there were important differences; the Meccan commonwealth had worked on partnership and diplomacy while Muḥammad's men were summoning the tribes not just to alliance but to Islam, which meant submission to the will of Allāh and, more immediately, the authority of His Prophet. While Muḥammad was engaged in these northern expeditions he also took care to win over or at least secure the neutrality of the local Ḥijāzī tribes, especially those who had joined the Meccan alliance at the *khandaq*; but there was no attempt at this stage to launch an attack on the enemy city itself; Muḥammad was more keen to win over Mecca than to destroy it in bitterness and violence.

The next spring (6/628) Muḥammad decided to take the initiative and lead an expedition to Mecca. This was not to be a military attack but a peaceful pilgrimage to the Kaʿba. The Muslims had originally prayed in the direction of Jerusalem but during the break with the Jews, the direction of prayer (*qibla*) had been changed to Mecca. Furthermore the status of the Kaʿba was assured in the Qur'ān which explained how the shrine had been founded by Abraham and his son Ismāʿīl, the ancestor of the Arabs. True it had been profaned in more recent times by the worship of idols but it still remained the dwelling place of the "friend of God" Abraham and deserved the reverence of true believers. This being so, Muḥammad requested permission for himself and his followers to come and pay their respects and a large party of about 1,500 set out and reached the outskirts of the Meccan *ḥaram* area and camped by the well at Ḥudaybiyya. Their arrival put the Meccans in a difficult position and it seems to have exacerbated existing tensions within the city. To accede to Muḥammad's request would be an admission of weakness and an acceptance of his status but to oppose him by force was probably beyond their military power. So a truce was worked out; there was to be peace between Muḥammad and the Meccans for the next ten years. The Muslims were not to enter Mecca that year for the pilgrimage but the next year the Meccans were to abandon their city for three

days while the Muslims were permitted to visit the Kaʿba. No doubt there were people in Mecca who felt that too much had been given away and there were certainly Muslims who had hoped for an outright victory, the humiliation of the Quraysh and booty for all. But the Prophet's political instinct was sounder than theirs and he was well aware how valuable the Quraysh could be to him as supporters not enemies.

In the aftermath of Ḥudaybiyya Muḥammad continued his previous policies, continuing to make converts and allies among the local tribes but also continuing the northward expansion. The trade blockade against Mecca may have lifted and there is some evidence that the Quraysh of Mecca tried to resume their commercial activities as before. Muḥammad on the other hand continued his policy of securing the routes to the north with vigour and determination. In order to secure the acquiescence of the Arab tribes, settled along the southeastern marches of the empire, he sent a large expedition of some 3,000 men in the autumn of 8/629 commanded by his adopted son Zayd b. Ḥāritha. According to the Muslim sources, they found that the Emperor Heraclius himself was campaigning in the area but most of the fighting seems to have been with the tribesmen of Judhām, Lakhm and Balī. The Muslims met the opposition near the village of Mu'ta on the edge of the cultivated lands east of the Dead Sea and were severely defeated. Zayd himself and the second in command, Jaʿfar b. Abī Ṭālib, brother of ʿAlī were both killed and it was left to Khālid b. al-Walīd, a recent defector from the Meccan camp, to lead the remains of the army back to Medina.

Despite this reverse, the pressure on the Meccans was growing and divisions began to appear in their ranks. When in the spring of 8/629 the Muslims performed the pilgrimage agreed on at Ḥudaybiyya, the Meccans abandoned their city for three days but refused his proffered reconciliation. Clearly this was a position which could not last. Some leading citizens, like Abū Sufyān, favoured a compromise, attempting to enter into secret negotiations with the Prophet while others, like the brilliant military leader, Khālid b. al-Walīd and ʿAmr b. al-ʿĀṣ were actually converted to Islam and moved to Medina. There remained, however, a diehard party, mostly from the clan of Makhzūm, led by Ṣafwān b. Umayya and Abū Jahl's son ʿIkrima who were opposed to any concessions. But they could only postpone the inevitable; the next January (Ramaḍān 8), Muḥammad set out from Medina with 10,000 men, including allies from some of the local tribes. The Meccans do not seem to have known of the expedition until it was almost upon them and there were few who refused to accept his offers of security of life and property. The Muslim army divided and entered the city from several different directions; only Khālid b. al-Walīd, commanding a group of

bedouin allies encountered any resistance but this was crushed and the diehard leaders, Ṣafwān b. Umayya and ʿIkrima fled. The Prophet's attitude was conciliatory; the *ḥaram* was cleansed of idols but the Kaʿba remained, as it is today, the focus of Muslim worship and the Prophet demonstrated openly how important the Meccan shrine was to be. There were few killings and those in the Muslim army, like Saʿd b. ʿUbāda, the leading figure among the *Anṣār* after the death of Saʿd b. Muʿādh, who wanted a bloody war of conquest and pillage, were restrained. There was a small number of executions, not of leaders of the Quraysh but of men who had apostatized from Islam or singers who had mocked the Prophet. Even Ṣafwān and ʿIkrima soon returned from exile to be reconciled. It was a great triumph for Muḥammad; the Quraysh had been won over and even the most sceptical of them were to use their talents in the service of the new movement.

The importance of this was demonstrated very shortly afterwards. Muslim Mecca was threatened barely three weeks later by a great confederation of bedouin tribes called the Hawāzin, led by the Thaqīf, the ruling tribe of the nearby city of Ṭā'if. The concentration of power in the hands of Muḥammad seriously threatened the position of Ṭā'if, which had frequently been a rival to Mecca in the past. But Muḥammad and his followers were equal to the task and the vast nomad army, said to have numbered 20,000, was decisively defeated at Ḥunayn. This victory was almost as important as the capture of Mecca. Not only did it confirm Muḥammad's prestige among a large group of tribesmen among whom he had not hitherto had many contacts but it also cemented his alliance with the Quraysh. Meccan leaders like Abū Sufyān could see how the new movement had enabled them to humiliate a traditional enemy whom their own forces had been unable to crush and the Prophet went out of his way to be more than generous to the Meccan leadership when dividing the spoils.

The fall of Ṭā'if followed soon after Ḥunayn. The idols of the town were destroyed and it lost its religious status. On the other hand, members of the ruling clans of the Thaqīf were incorporated into the *umma*. Here they made use of their new opportunities and the Thaqīf were to play a major role in the conquest and administration of Iraq. Once again Muḥammad had secured the allegiance and services of an able and experienced group.

In this triumph, there was one group of Muslims who had some reason to feel uneasy about the way things had gone; these were the *Anṣār* of Medina. We have already seen how one of their leaders, Saʿd b. ʿUbāda, had wished to destroy Mecca. Was this new-found closeness between Muḥammad and his fellow-citizens and relatives to leave the

Medinese out in the cold after all they had done for Islam? After the victory at Ḥunayn, Muḥammad had given most of the spoils to the Quraysh and the Meccans, and the *anṣār*, led by Saʿd b. ʿUbāda, held a protest meeting, complaining that the Prophet was neglecting them, but they were mollified when he announced that he would continue to live in Medina and, but for the accident of birth, he would have considered himself a true Medinese in every way.

The last two years of his life, from the victory at Ḥunayn in Shawwāl 8/January 630 to his death in 11/632, Muḥammad devoted his energies to expanding his influence among the Arabs.

While Muḥammad devoted most of his military efforts to securing the control of the road to Syria, the Islamic community began to find friends and allies in other areas of the Arabian peninsula. This was accomplished more by diplomatic means than by military expeditions, and often it was the other tribes which took the initiative, anxious to enter into friendly relations with so powerful an organization as the new *umma*. In the year 9/630 numerous tribes sent delegations (*wufūd*) to make terms with the Prophet. They came to acknowledge Muḥammad as the Prophet of Allāh and, in many but by no means all cases, agreed to pay the *ṣadaqa* or alms to Medina. In many cases, like the Tamīm in north-east Arabia for example, these were tribes which had long enjoyed good relations with the Quraysh and some of whose members now saw the necessity of regularizing their position with Muḥammad. The collapse of Persian influence in the area also helped attract men to alliance with the rising power in the Ḥijāz. Among the ʿAbd al-Qays in Baḥrayn, for example, it seems to have been the pro-Persian party which now appealed to Muḥammad for an alliance while the Bakr b. Wāʾil and Taghlib, along the frontiers of settled Iraq, negotiated a treaty, probably so that they and the Muslims could launch joint raids on the Persian territory. In Yamāma the major tribe, the Banū Ḥanīfa, seems to have been split between the larger, settled group who supported Musaylima, the "local" prophet of the area, and a smaller nomad faction who joined the Muslims. Even in far away ʿUmān there was a faction in the leadership which was prepared to accept Islam and a Muslim finance officer, ʿAmr b. al-ʿĀṣ, in order to secure Muḥammad's alliance against their rivals.

Among the more settled peoples of south Arabia, the Muslim cause was spread by letters and messengers and, as in the east, tribal leaders and others came on delegations to the Prophet. In many cases this was a result of struggles for leadership within a tribe, or the attempt of one tribe to gain advantage over another. Farwa b. Musayk al-Murādī, for example, came to visit the Prophet as his own tribe had recently been worsted in a tribal encounter. In return for his conversion, he was made

the Prophet's governor over the neighbouring tribes of Zubayd and Madhḥij as well as his own Murād. Like the Azd of ʿUmān, he was assigned a Qurashī Muslim finance officer, Khālid b. Saʿīd b. al-ʿĀṣ, to manage the *ṣadaqa*. Also from south Arabia was a delegation of Kinda, led by al-Ashʿath b. Qays, with their make-up and their silken clothes, who were obliged to put away their finery on accepting Islam. In Yemen proper, the position was very complex with the disintegration of Persian rule allowing native Arab leaders to assert themselves once more. Here it seems that many of the local Persian *abnā'* (i.e. sons), that is the descendants of the Persian settlers of the late sixth century, turned to Islam to find support against the local Arab rebels and their leader, Fayrūz al-Daylamī, was to play an important role on the Muslim side in the *Ridda* wars which followed the Prophet's death.

By the end of his life the Prophet had secured a measure of acknowledgement in most of the Arabian peninsula. Propaganda and diplomacy had played a much bigger part in this process than warfare and Muḥammad had certainly used the diplomatic talents and experience of the Quraysh to good effect. But this does not mean that all Arabia was under the control of Muḥammad or that all its people had become Muslims. To begin with, Muḥammad had spread his influence in many cases by supporting one faction in a local dispute and this inevitably made their opponents into enemies of Islam as well. Nor is it entirely clear how far the people of these areas acknowledged Muḥammad as the Prophet of Allāh. In the case of the Bakr b. Wā'il and Taghlib on the Persian frontier, for example, the tribes seem to have made an alliance with Medina while retaining their own, mostly Christian faith. In the early campaigns to Syria as well, it had been possible for tribes to remain Christian and yet be full allies of Muḥammad. Towards the end of his life, however, this became less possible and Christians, like those of Najrān on the northern border of Yemen, were obliged to pay the *jizya* or poll-tax and so adopt an inferior but secure role in the new order of things. Paganism on the other hand was fiercely opposed. Jarīr b. ʿAbd Allāh al-Bajalī, for example, came to the Prophet and accepted Islam and was sent off to destroy the idol, Dhu'l-Khalaṣa, which was worshipped by his own and neighbouring tribes, and there are other stories to show that Muḥammad deliberately tried to break down pagan taboos, about food for example. Despite the efforts of messengers and letters, however, there must have been a vast number of people in eastern and southern Arabia whose knowledge of Islam was effectively non-existent and whose commitment to the Muslim alliance was very tenuous and both these were problems which became apparent as soon as Muḥammad died.

The last two years of the Prophet's life were spent in his adopted home in Medina. In the spring of 632 he announced his intention of making the pilgrimage to Mecca once again. This time, however, it would not be the *ʿumra*, the lesser pilgrimage which he had made the year after the agreement with the Quraysh at Ḥudaybiyya, but the great pilgrimage or *ḥajj*. His behaviour on this *ḥajj*, known as the Farewell Pilgrimage, was to define the correct procedure for this important ritual. On his return to Medina, he set about preparations for another great Syrian expedition, led this time by Usāma, the young son of Zayd b. Hāritha who had been killed by the Byzantines at Mu'ta. It was shortly before this expedition set out that Muḥammad became seriously ill, and he was soon too weak to lead the community in prayers, a responsibility he entrusted to Abū Bakr. On 13 Rabīʿ I/8 June 632 he died in the house of ʿĀ'isha, Abū Bakr's daughter and perhaps his favourite wife. He was about sixty years old.

The Muslim community at the time of his death was an impressive and very personal achievement. In some ways his career had been similar to the guardians who had established and built up *ḥarams* in other areas of Arabia. He himself came from the holy family of the *ḥaram* in Mecca and he himself had established another *ḥaram*, at first in competition, later in alliance, at Medina and moved on to attract tribes which would attach themselves to the *ḥaram* and its ruling group. Muḥammad had also competed with and eventually incorporated the alliances which had formed part of the Meccan commercial commonwealth; especially after the taking of Mecca, many of the tribes which had had links with the Quraysh in pre-Islamic times, shifted those ties to the newly emergent Muslim community and Muḥammad inherited and took over a network of contacts throughout Arabia and beyond. Equally the Muslim *umma* had some of the features of a traditional tribe and it has indeed been described as a "super-tribe"; it defended its members against outside attack, organized raids to supplement their incomes and provided a framework for the solving of internal disputes. The seeking of retaliation or blood-money remained the responsibility of the individual, not of the state, but there was strong emphasis on settling disputes within the community peacefully, accepting arbitration and compensation rather than demanding blood.

Having acknowledged the debt that Muḥammad owed to traditional forms, it must be said that the *umma* by the time of his death was a community which had no parallels in traditional Arabian society. The most important difference of course was Muḥammad's uncompromising monotheism and his own status as the Apostle of God. Previous temples

and their holy families had had an authority limited to their own areas and accepted as natural that there should be others in different places. For Allāh and his Prophet, however, the whole world was their area and other deities had no place in it. It was this factor above all others which distinguished Muḥammad from other "prophets" who appeared in his wake, notably Musaylima among the Banū Ḥanīfa of Yamāma; for them a fair division of influence was only reasonable, for Muḥammad it was totally unacceptable. Pagans could not be treated as equals since anyone who refused to accept the revelation of Islam was thereby damned, but on the other hand no one was excluded for reasons of social status or tribal origin from joining the *umma* and they could do this as individuals. This universality of Islam marked a radical break with the pagan cults which had preceded it and accounts for much of the dynamism of the emerging community.

In the same way, Muḥammad's authority within the *umma* was vastly greater than a traditional tribal leader's among his followers. Muḥammad was the one and only Prophet of Allāh, to disagree with him was to challenge God Himself. This is not to say that Muḥammad acted in a dictatorial or high-handed way. When he first arrived in Medina it had needed all his skill and diplomacy, and considerable determination, to establish his position as undisputed secular leader as well as religious sage. The Muslims were careful to distinguish between the revelation of the Qur'ān which could not be questioned, and decisions on day to day matters on which the Apostle often consulted his closest followers and took their advice. But behind all his pronouncements was the knowledge that Muḥammad was the chosen of Allāh and that there would be divine punishment, horrible and unrelenting for those who disobeyed his command, while those who followed his ways could be sure of everlasting bliss. His practices and decisions, known as the *Sunna*, were to be the future guidelines in the Muslim community. These considerations made Muḥammad as superior to a traditional tribal leader as the *umma* was to a traditional tribe.

The emergence of the *umma* meant the emergence of a new kind of élite. The traditional tribal criteria for choosing chiefs, membership of the ruling clan, skill in warfare, counsel and mediation, bravery and generosity, were only partly applicable to the *umma*. The Qur'ān (49: 13) says, "The noblest of you in the sight of Allāh is the best in conduct"; that is that religious excellence rather than wealth or breeding were going to decide membership of the new ruling class. In practice, since excellence of conduct is impossible for any man to judge, this meant that priority in Islam (*sābiqa*) and closeness to the Prophet were

the most important signs of distinction. It was above all the *Muhājirūn*, those who had endured the persecutions of the Meccans with the Prophet and then left home, clan and security to follow him, who had the highest status. With them were the first of the *Anṣār*, especially those who had fought at Badr when the *umma* was in its infancy. But few of the leaders of the *Anṣār*, Saʿd b. Muʿādh perhaps, and his successor Saʿd b. Ubāda, attained the intimacy with the Prophet which was enjoyed by *Muhājir* leaders like Abū Bakr, ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb, ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān, ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. ʿAwf, and none of the Prophet's wives was chosen from among the women of his adopted home town.

The take-over of Mecca added a new and very important element to the new élite, the Meccan leaders. The incorporation of Quraysh and their rivals the Thaqīf of Ṭā'if into the Muslim *umma* meant that they brought all their expertise, experience and contacts to the service of the community and these talents were to prove vital for the expansion and administration of the Muslim territories. At the same time, their incorporation introduced new tensions since noble families of Mecca, the Umayyads led by Abū Sufyān and his sons Yazīd and Muʿāwiya for example, felt that they had natural rights to positions of leadership while these claims were naturally resented by many among the *Anṣār* and *Muhājirūn* who had endured so much for Islam. The new leadership was also overwhelmingly urban in origin and nomad tribal leaders enjoyed little prestige. Muḥammad and his advisers viewed the bedouin lifestyle with considerable suspicion; those who became Muslims were enjoined to abandon not only their old religion but also their nomad ways and to settle down in urban communities.

Despite the role played by the Meccans, it would be wrong to suggest that Muḥammad had simply restored the old Meccan trading commonwealth under new management. The old system had been a series of agreements among equals whereas the expansion of Islam was to mean the imposition of the authority of the Muslim élite by force if necessary. The *umma* could not stand still, it had to expand or disintegrate. So long as there were Arabs who did not accept the authority of Muḥammad, the ideological position of Islam would be challenged. If raiding within the community was to be abolished another outlet had to be found for the martial energies of the tribesmen and another source of revenue for the impoverished nomad. Muḥammad had understood this well and his expeditions in the direction of Syria pointed the way. But Islam was to be the religion of all humanity, not just the Arabs, and there was no reason why the authority of the *umma* in Medina should be confined to the Arabic-speaking peoples; the Islamic conquests were a natural continuation of the Prophet's work.

Notes

1. This history of the life of Muḥammad is essentially based on that offered by the Muslim sources. While these sources contain many confusions and contradictions, the broad outlines of the account they offer they seem to me to offer the most convincing description of the emergence of Islam. Despite this, details of names and dates should be treated as indicative rather than certain. Readers should be aware that some scholars take a much more sceptical view of these sources, seeing them as much later attempts to account for developments whose real nature had long since been forgotten or to provide exegesis of texts whose contexts were no longer known. For these views see especially M. Cook and P. Crone, *Hagarism* and P. Crone, *Meccan Trade*. See also the discussion of the sources on pp. 346–55 of this volume.

chapter three

CONQUEST AND DIVISION IN THE TIME OF THE RĀSHIDŪN CALIPHS

Abū Bakr and the Ridda *Wars 11–13/632–634*

The death of the Prophet on 13 Rabīʿ I, 11/8 June 632 meant that the Muslim community was faced with a number of problems which had not arisen during his lifetime. He had left no generally acknowledged successor and had made it clear that he was "the seal of the Prophets", the last and greatest, and there could be no question of anyone inheriting his role. The first question which confronted the Muslims, therefore, was one of leadership; who should lead the *umma* and what status and power should such a leader have? Was he to be the first among equals, like a tribal chief, arbitrating and solving disputes, or was he to have a more real and effective power, even a measure of divine sanction for his decisions? Was he to be chosen by the community or to take power by some process of hereditary succession within the Prophet's clan? If the question of leadership was in doubt, so too was the question of deciding who were to form the élite in the new community, whether to choose those who demonstrated their piety and zeal for Islam from an early stage or those who had political experience and status before the coming of Islam. These questions were to become the major concerns of the Muslims in the years which followed Muḥammad's death and the problems they caused, compounded and complicated by the conquests and settlements of the surrounding areas, were to prove extremely intractable. It was a very unusual situation in the history of human societies since there were no precedents, no established and generally accepted ideas of authority and social structure which the community could use as reference points. The political and constitutional issues were entirely new and required new solutions. The experimental nature of early Islamic politics goes a long way to explaining the confusions and difficulties which occurred.

During the Prophet's lifetime, the tensions within the *umma* resulting from the incorporation of the Meccan oligarchy, had been kept under

control and the efforts to subdue and win over the rest of Arabia must have absorbed the energies of the whole community. After his death, however, the divisions came to the surface once more.

The *Anṣār* were concerned lest the *Muhājirūn* should make common cause with their relatives from the Quraysh of Mecca and use their joint strength to control the *umma* and the city of Medina itself, leaving only a subservient role to the *Anṣār*. There was a clear injustice in this, since the *Anṣār* had welcomed both Muḥammad and his supporters at a time when his own people had rejected him; they had stayed with him through the days of adversity, and to be thrust aside in this time of prosperity was wholly wrong. In order to counter this threat the *Anṣār* gathered as soon as Muḥammad's death became known, intent on electing one of their own members, if not as sole leader of the *umma*, at least as an equal partner with a leader from the Quraysh. The *Anṣār* held a meeting in a hall in Medina, the *saqīfa* of the Banū Sāʿida, to decide on their course of action, but old divisions between the different clans meant that they had not reached a decision when events were taken out of their hands by the prompt action of the leaders of the *Muhājirūn*.

Within the Quraysh group of Meccans and *Muhājirūn*, there were also important differences and once again the main problem was the integration of the Meccan leaders into the Islamic élite. Some members of the *Muhājirūn*, among whom ʿUmar b. al-Khaṭṭāb was the most important, remained suspicious and hostile towards these new converts while others, like Abū Bakr, were more prepared to accept them and put their talents to good use. In addition there was the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law, ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib who had married Muḥammad's daughter Fāṭima. He was perhaps too young at this time to be generally accepted as a candidate for leadership but he had known Muḥammad very well and had been brought up in his household. His two sons al-Ḥasan and al-Ḥusayn had been very dear to their grandfather. In the confusion immediately following the Prophet's death, ʿAlī was occupied in washing the body and preparing it for burial and so played no part in the discussions but he was soon to emerge as an important focus for political loyalties, especially among the *Anṣār*.

When Muḥammad's death became known the Muslims were, in the words of a contemporary, "like sheep on a rainy night". While the *Anṣār* debated in the *saqīfa* of the Banū Sāʿida, ʿUmar seized the initiative by swearing allegiance to Abū Bakr as leader. Then the triumvirate of *Muhājirūn* leaders, Abū Bakr, ʿUmar and ʿAbū ʿUbayda b. al-Jarrāḥ, went to the meeting place of the *Anṣār* and put an end to their deliberations, obliging them to acquiesce in their own choice. The next day Abū Bakr was formally acknowledged as leader, probably with the title

of *khalīfat Allāh* (the deputy of God) in the mosque before the whole community. The exact meaning and significance of the title, often Anglicized as caliph, has been much debated,[1] but it was probably intentionally vague; Abū Bakr could not be a prophet but at the same time it was unthinkable that he should take a secular title like king which would deny the unique nature of the *umma* and imply a degree of power which he did not have. The title *khalīfa*, on the other hand, left many questions open and left scope for the office to develop. To this was added the title of *amīr al-mu'minīn* or Commander of the Faithful, a title which expressed the secular side of the office and this was the name by which caliphs were normally addressed in the Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid periods. Like *khalīfa*, *amīr al-mu'minīn* had no precise meaning; it certainly did not imply absolute power, and the nature and scope of the leader's authority remained to be decided. He was acknowledged by the taking of the *bayʿa*, that is an oath of allegiance by the members of the community, and the taking of the *bayʿa*, not a coronation ceremony, was to formalize the accession of all succeeding caliphs. Abū Bakr was the first of the four caliphs (his successors being ʿUmar, ʿUthmān and ʿAlī) who led the community from 11 to 40 (632–61) and are often known as the Rāshidūn or "rightly guided" caliphs to distinguish them from the Umayyads who followed them. During this period the great Islamic conquests were begun and the outlines of the Muslim state were decided.

Abū Bakr was in many ways an ideal choice. Now an old man, he had been one of the first converts to Islam; it was with Abū Bakr as his sole companion that Muḥammad had made the perilous journey from Mecca to Medina at the time of the *Hijra* and it had been Abū Bakr who led the prayers during the Prophet's last illness. He was also related to Muḥammad by marriage since his daughter ʿĀ'isha had married Muḥammad and become his most influential wife. It was not just his close connections with the founder of the *umma* which made Abū Bakr acceptable, however, and he showed qualities which were to prove invaluable to the community in the difficult early years and were to have a profound effect on its development. He was gracious and diplomatic with a vast knowledge of the tribes and tribal politics of the Arabian peninsula, all perhaps a heritage of his Quraysh origin. But, like Muḥammad, he also had a very clear sense of what was really important; he might be polite in his dealings but he never compromised on essentials. It has been said of him that he became caliph because he was everybody's second choice; he was the most acceptable of the *Muhājirūn* to the *Anṣār* of Medina. ʿUmar seems to have tried to secure the appointment of Abū ʿUbayda, a man whose views were closer to his

own, but soon realized that he would not command sufficient support and turned to Abū Bakr. The Meccans also accepted his authority more readily than they would have ʿUmar or one of the *Anṣār*. None the less, hostility did remain, the *Anṣār* still felt that they had been cheated of their rightful status while ʿAlī was very reluctant to accept a *coup d'état* in which he had played no part.

Abū Bakr soon made it clear that he would continue in Muḥammad's tradition. He showed this immediately in the case of Usāma's expedition to Syria. Before his death Muḥammad had arranged an expedition to Syria which was to be led by Usāma, son of his adopted son Zayd b. Ḥāritha who had been killed by Byzantine troops in the area three years before. This expedition aroused some misgivings in Medina, especially among the *Anṣār*, because they felt that Usāma was not a fit person to lead it simply because he was his father's son and, perhaps, because they did not wholeheartedly support the aim of invading Syria. Abū Bakr was determined that the expedition should go, partly because the Prophet had ordered it and to cancel it would lay him open to the charge of betraying Muḥammad's wishes, but partly too to stress his commitment to the same policy, the expansion of the Muslim state towards Syria. In the event, the raid was not a great success, but the whole episode had shown the new caliph's determination and sense of purpose.

His determination was certainly needed. The years preceding Muḥammad's death had seen the extension of some sort of Muslim authority over much of the Arabian peninsula. The nature of this authority had varied greatly from one area to another. The Ḥijāz and its cities were firmly incorporated in the Muslim state, accepting Islam and paying the *ṣadaqa* tax. In the Najd and the areas of north-east Arabia some tribes, like the Ghaṭafān, Asad and Ṭayy had mostly agreed to pay tax and accept Islam while others further from Medina, like parts of Tamīm, paid taxes but were not converted to Islam. The Banū Ḥanīfa of Yamāma had allied with Medina but had never paid taxes or acknowledged the religious nature of Muḥammad's office; with his death they united in opposition to Medinese control around their own prophet, known to history as Musaylima. In Baḥrayn and ʿUmān the position was different again. Here some local leaders had formed alliances with Muḥammad in order to secure their own position against their local enemies. In Baḥrayn, al-Mundhir b. Sāwā, the local king who had previously been the Persian agent in the area, now turned to the Muslims and he may have agreed to send the taxes to Medina instead. In ʿUmān the sons of the Persian agent Julanda sought Muslim support against their local rivals and seem to have agreed that the *ṣadaqa* should be paid and distributed to the local poor. In south Arabia and Yemen, the

situation was more complicated, some tribal leaders making alliances with the Muslims while others remained hostile. In Yemen it was the *abnā'*, the descendants of the Persian garrison, who sought support against their enemies.

The response to the Prophet's death depended on the local circumstances. The tribes of Najd tried to arrange a compromise whereby they remained Muslims but no longer had to pay the tax to Medina. The Tamīm were as divided as always, some supporting the prophetess Sajāḥ while others continued to look to Medina. Musaylima and the Banū Ḥanīfa could simply feel relieved that their most powerful rival in the peninsula was no more. In Baḥrayn and ʿUmān the local supporters of the Medina alliance found their position seriously weakened; al-Mundhir b. Sāwā in Baḥrayn was killed, while the sons of Julanda in ʿUmān were forced to flee to the hills by their rivals. Throughout south Arabia, those who had opposed the Muslim alliance took advantage of the situation while those who had relied on it were temporarily forced on to the defensive; some, like al-Ashʿath b. Qays al-Kindī, even rejected their allegiance to Islam and joined the opposition. Except in the Ḥijāz and the cities of Mecca, Medina and Ṭā'if, the system of alliances and conversions which had been developed during the Prophet's last years, disintegrated.

Attitudes in Medina to those developments seem to have been confused. It seems that the *Anṣār* and perhaps ʿUmar and those among the *Muhājirūn* who shared his attitudes, were unsure as to how far force should be used to restore the position. Abū Bakr, however, showed no such hesitation. The Prophet had punished those who broke their alliances with him and had forced them to surrender to his authority, and his successor was going to follow in the same tradition. In this view he was supported by some *Muhājirūn* and by a number of Meccans. Perhaps to show their zeal for their new-found faith, or because of their wish to restore the Meccan trading commonwealth, new converts, especially from the influential clan of Makhzūm, provided much of Abū Bakr's support in the campaigns which followed. Among the Makhzūmīs were ʿIkrima b. Abī Jahl, son of that Abū Jahl who had led the opposition to Muḥammad in Mecca and who had died at the battle of Badr, and the man who was to prove the greatest of the early Islamic generals, Khālid b. al-Walīd.

Traditionally these various upheavals were known as the *Ridda*. This word is usually translated as "apostasy" and implies that those who were involved had previously been Muslims but had rejected their new faith. As we have seen, this was not the case in many areas and each part of Arabia had rather different problems and attitudes.

Abū Bakr faced these challenges with energy and determination. Almost as soon as Muḥammad was dead, the Najd tribes sent representatives to ask that, while remaining Muslims, they would not have to pay taxes to Medina. While many among the *Anṣār* and the *Muhājirūn* were prepared to accept such terms, Abū Bakr was not and he at once collected an army and marched out to defeat a small section of the Ghaṭafān at Dhū'l-Qaṣṣa, the last time a caliph was to lead an army in person until the disturbances after the death of ʿUthmān, thirty years later. After this small victory, Abū Bakr entrusted the command of the Muslim army to Khālid b. al-Walīd, the Makhzūmī who had commanded the Meccan cavalry at the battle of Uḥud. While the nucleus of his forces was recruited in Medina, many Muslims distrusted Khālid and he faced continuous criticism from the *Anṣār* and, it would seem, from ʿUmar. Nevertheless. Abū Bakr continued to support him and he won a series of brilliant victories. He turned his attention first to the Najd tribes. Here, after the breakdown of negotiations with Medina over the taxation issue, Ṭalḥa b. Khuwaylid al-Asadī, an experienced tribal chief, had put together a coalition of tribesmen from the Ṭayy, Ghaṭafān and Asad. Khālid succeeded in detaching some of the tribe of Ṭayy from the alliance and defeating the rest at Buzākha. Thereafter his progress in north-east Arabia encountered little serious opposition and it seems that he was able to recruit reinforcements for his small army among the Tamīm and other tribes of the area.

With this augmented force, Khālid moved on to attack the most serious problem the Muslims faced, the Banū Ḥanīfa, led by their prophet Musaylima. Yamāma, where the tribe lived, was a settled agricultural area of palm trees and grain growing, an area which sometimes exported grain to the Ḥijāz. Until 630 it had been ruled by a Christian "king" Hawdha b. ʿAlī who had worked in alliance with the Persians. On his death, his place was taken by Musaylima who proclaimed himself a prophet for the Yamāma and Ḥanīfa as Muḥammad had for the Ḥijāz and its people. Unlike Muḥammad, however, Musaylima does not seem to have aspired to more than local power and was able to suggest that the peninsula be divided into two different spheres of influence. In the face of Khālid's advance, the Ḥanīfa were, in the main, united and determined to fight, both for their prophet and for their local independence. In a hard-fought battle at ʿAqrabā' (11–12), Khālid defeated the Ḥanafīs with a great slaughter; while Musaylima was killed in the fighting, the survivors of the defeated army agreed to accept the control of Medina.

Compared with the battles fought by Khālid, the campaigns in the rest of Arabia were on a smaller scale. In Baḥrayn, al-ʿAlā' b. al-Ḥaḍramī, who had been Muḥammad's agent in the area, was able to re-establish

the Medina alliance after some hard fighting. In other areas the Muslim armies were independent of Khālid's. ʿIkrima b. Abī Jahl had been Muḥammad's agent with the Hawāzin tribes, traditionally closely attached to Mecca. When ʿIkrima was instructed to reassert the Muslim presence in ʿUmān, he did so with an army largely raised from among the Hawāzin themselves. In the same way, the army which Muhājir b. Abī Umayya led to Yemen was recruited, not in Medina but in Mecca and among the Bajīla tribes and the people of Najrān *en route*. Muslim authority was soon re-established among the divided peoples of the Yemen, and the tribes of the area were encouraged to participate in the campaigns being launched from Medina towards Syria. In south Arabia, taxation seems to have been the main source of discontent and a rebellion among the Kinda was rejoined, against his better judgement, by al-Ashʿath b. Qays. After the defeat of this rebellion by Muhājir b. Abī Umayya, al-Ashʿath was sent to Medina, where, in honour of his status as a great chief, he married Abū Bakr's sister and, despite his role as an "apostate" was integrated into the Muslim élite.

The Muslim success in Arabia can be ascribed to a number of factors. The most important of these was the continuing loyalty of the people of the Ḥijāz, city-dwellers and nomads alike, to the *umma*. While some may have disagreed with the policies of Abū Bakr and Khālid there was no significant *Ridda*. The *Ridda* wars were, in fact the conquest of Arabia by the urban people of the Ḥijāz, the Quraysh and the Thaqīf, and their allies. While the Ḥijāzīs were united, their opponents were not. Tribal divisions and feuds meant that in every area, even among the Ḥanīfa of Yamāma, there were factions who were eager to make alliances with the Muslims to secure their local position. Not only did the Muslims have powerful forces, they also had the powerful ideological backing of the new religion. Of their opponents, only the Ḥanīfa seem to have had a religious objection to the acceptance of Islam; elsewhere the objections were based on attachment to old traditions, local independence and, above all, the reluctance to pay taxes to Medina. There were substantial Christian populations, not only among the settled folk of Najrān but among the nomad Tamīm and in Baḥrayn and other coastal areas in the east, but the Christians never made any effort to unite against Islam at this stage. Also important were the consequences of the breakdown of the Persian empire; in Baḥrayn, ʿUmān and the Yemen, Muslim power was based on those who had previously looked to the Persian kings and their Lakhmid vassals for leadership and support. With the collapse of the Persian empire under the assaults of Heraclius, these groups looked for new allies and naturally found them in the expanding and dynamic *umma*. In addition to all these factors, many men joined the Muslim

community because of the opportunities it was seen to provide. The *Ridda* wars were the first stage of the Arab conquests and the expeditions to Syria took place at the same time as the campaigns in the Arabian peninsula. They provided an opportunity for those who wished to abandon the old bedouin life and seek new and exciting destinies within the Islamic community, and many left their tribal homelands to join up.

ʿUmar and the Early Islamic Conquests 13–23/634–644

On 22 Jumādā II 3/23 August 634 Abū Bakr died. His reign had been short but his achievement was enormous. He had maintained the traditions of the Prophet and had set the Muslim community on the road to expansion; he had seen the conquest of Arabia almost completed and the conquest of Syria begun. Despite the differences between them, he had maintained ʿUmar as one of his closest advisers and there seems to have been little complaint when he designated ʿUmar as his successor. ʿUmar appears in Muslim tradition as the epitome of the stern, uncompromising, incorruptible ruler. He is famous for his personal austerity and the high standards he expected from those entrusted with office. But, like Abū Bakr before him, he was a man of very considerable practical ability. Not only did he direct the Islamic conquests but he also developed the system of settlement and in particular the *dīwān* system with its arrangements for paying pensions to the conquerors rather than distributing the lands among them, a system which was to have far-reaching results for the political future of the Islamic world. But the most famous achievement of his reign was, of course, the great conquests in Iraq, Iran, Syria and Egypt which transformed the ancient world.

In terms of the internal politics of the Muslim community, ʿUmar showed a marked preference for appointing long-established members of the *Muhājirūn* to the most important posts; his colleague Abū ʿUbayda, for example, was sent to take over command in Syria while another early Meccan Muslim, Saʿd b. Abī Waqqāṣ, was sent to perform the same task in Iraq, and al-Zubayr b. al-ʿAwwām was sent to help the recently converted ʿAmr b. al-ʿĀṣ in Egypt. The *Anṣār* were given few important posts while among the newly converted Meccans, ʿUmar favoured the Umayyad family, Yazīd and Muʿāwiya, sons of Abū Sufyān. The Makhzūmīs whom Abū Bakr had promoted, Khālid b. al-Walīd and ʿIkrima b. Abī Jahl were, by contrast, reduced in power and status.

ʿUmar's domestic policy meant that great prestige was accorded to those with *sābiqa* (precedence in Islam), that is to say that the highest posts were to be entrusted to those who had become Muslims earliest. This did not mean that people who showed great valour or commitment

could not rise above their allotted position on occasion, but in general, long devotion to the cause was regarded as the main qualification for membership of the élite. By contrast, tribal origin and membership of *ashrāf* families was not to be considered important. One result of this was that the early Islamic leadership was drawn almost entirely from the settled people of the Ḥijāz and above all from the Quraysh of Mecca and the Thaqīf of Ṭā'if with the *Anṣār* a poor third. It also meant that some people who had enjoyed great power and influence before the coming of Islam, al-Ashʿath b. Qays al-Kindī or Ṭalḥa b. Khuwaylid al-Asadī, found their position much reduced and their ancient glory considerably diminished. Not surprisingly, they bitterly resented this change of fortune and in this they were joined by many of their fellow tribesmen who preferred to look for leadership to their traditional chiefs than to the new Muslim élite with whom they had little in common. They were not only resentful, but powerful with it, a combination which was to prove dangerous in the long run.

Muḥammad had made Syria his most important objective and it was natural that the early caliphs should consider expanding the Muslim world in that direction. There was no break with the Prophet's policy or with the *Ridda* campaigns and no sharp dividing line between Syria and Arabia. The object of the *Ridda* campaigns was to ensure that all Arab tribesmen accepted the authority of Medina and the Muslim leadership and this applied as much to the bedouin of the Syrian desert and the lands along the Euphrates as it did those in ʿUmān or Baḥrayn.

The expeditions against Syria were organized in Medina. It is sometimes imagined that the Arab conquests of these areas were an unplanned migration of vast numbers of ill-disciplined tribesmen. Examination of the sources, however, reveals a very different picture. The armies were assembled and the leaders appointed, always from leading groups in the Ḥijāz, by the caliph who decided who should be despatched to which front. Men tended to join, not in tribes, but in fairly small groups or as individuals and the different armies always contained men from different tribes. Nor were the numbers vast; there were probably only about 24,000 men involved in the conquest of Syria and considerably fewer than that in Iraq and there is no evidence that they took their families or their herds with them. These first expeditions were not a migration of barbarian tribes driven by pressure of population or moved by religious enthusiasm to invade neighbouring territories; they were organized military expeditions led by an élite anxious to enforce and maintain its authority over the bedouin. After the success of the conquests, there were further waves of immigration and it was then that families and dependants would have arrived.

Apart from the Prophet's example, the reasons for the conquests are fairly clear. It was intolerable that there should be Arab tribes which did not accept the authority of Medina; from there it was easy to argue that the same applied to the Arab inhabitants of such settled centres as Ḥīra and Damascus. At the same time, such conquests were vital for maintaining the hold of the leadership over the bedouin. As has already been pointed out, raiding and warfare were essential for the economic survival of the tribesmen. The establishment of a *pax Islamica* in Arabia meant that such opportunities were no longer available; one Muslim tribe should not raid another. Only by directing the energies of the tribesmen against an outside enemy could the unity of the Muslim state be preserved. The *ghazw* had been an essential part of Arab life in the *Jāhiliyya* (i.e. the times before Islam), now, under Islam, all the Muslims were to co-operate in launching raids against their opponents. In addition, the launching of the conquests gave the Muslim leadership great powers of patronage; only those who were Muslims could participate in the conquests and share the rewards, rewards which were to be determined by the Medina government. Many a tribesman must have felt that joining the armies of Islam was a way to an earthly, as well as a heavenly paradise. The conquests were, in short, a necessary consequence of the unification of Arabia under Muḥammad and Abū Bakr; without this external opportunity, the hold of Medina over the Arab tribes would inevitably have disintegrated; "expand and survive" was the political philosophy.

The Arab conquests in Syria and Iraq pose the historian an unusual problem. The Arab literary sources which describe them are very full, with a great deal of anecdote and circumstantial detail about battles and the heroes who participated in them. They are, on the other hand, hopelessly confused about the chronology and order of the main events. What has come down to us is several apparently authoritative accounts which seem to be incompatible with each other; no amount of comparison and emendation can persuade them to agree on more than a general outline. It would not be helpful, however, to accept one outline, for arbitrary reasons, and claim that all the others were false. No annals were written in the years immediately after the events; details were preserved by oral tradition, just as details of the *ayyām* (lit: "days", i.e. battles) of the Arabs had been preserved in pre-Islamic tradition. By then they had not been preserved as a year-by-year historical narrative but rather as unconnected vignettes, short stories to illustrate the heroic deeds of an ancestor or fellow-tribesman in the great days. When Muslim annalists, like Ibn Isḥāq and al-Wāqidī, came to use this material more than a century later in the early ʿAbbasid period they, like the modern historian, wanted to put these details into a logical order. They knew

the names of the battles and sieges, and the names of many individual participants with records of their doings and they tried to construct a framework which would provide an outline chronology. Like modern historians too, they reached a number of different conclusions. The inevitable result is that none of the outlines can be accepted without hesitation; the details might be more reliable than the general picture.

The conquest of Syria seems to have taken place in three distinct phases. Before the *Ridda* campaigns had ended, Abū Bakr had despatched four armies, each with their own leader. Abū ʿUbayda, Yazīd b. Abī Sufyān and Shuraḥbīl b. Ḥasana all went to the area east of the Jordan while ʿAmr b. al-ʿĀṣ, who had traded with Gaza before the coming of Islam, was sent to the southern borders of Palestine. Each of these armies was probably fairly small, about 7,000, but smaller still in the case of ʿAmr's, and composed mostly of the settled people of the Ḥijāz but also of Najdīs and Yamāmīs as they became available. The object at this stage seems to have been to subdue the Arab tribes of the Syrian borderlands like the Judhām and Lakhm rather than to conquer the entire province. These preliminary campaigns occurred during Abū Bakr's reign, and before his death the caliph ordered that Khālid b. al-Walīd should join the forces in Syria. After the defeat of Musaylima, Khālid had gone to the lower Euphrates area where he offered support to local tribal leaders against the Persian garrisons of the riverain cities. Abū Bakr, however, clearly saw Syria as the more important front and Khālid, with a fairly small force, crossed the desert, perhaps in spring 13/634, to join the armies in Syria. This great march, which has excited the admiration of many subsequent writers, was made either through the oasis of Dūmat al-Jandal in the south or via Palmyra in the north and it is typical of the sources that we have fairly detailed accounts which completely contradict each other. We can, however, be certain that Khālid was transferred from one front to the other and this illustrates again how firm a hold the caliph kept on the conduct of operations.

The arrival of Khālid must have coincided more or less with the death of Abū Bakr, and Khālid was replaced as commander-in-chief by ʿUmar's ally Abū ʿUbayda. Between 13 and 16 (634–7) there occurred three battles of which we have fairly detailed descriptions, Ajnādayn, probably in southern Palestine, Fiḥl (Pella) in the Jordan valley and the greatest of them on the Yarmūk river to the south of Damascus. There were also a number of sieges of towns although it would seem that Damascus, Caesarea and Tripoli were the only centres to put up prolonged resistance. What order these events happened in is not at all clear but it seems that the battle on the Yarmūk was the last decisive confrontation. What we can be sure is that by the year 16/637 the power of the Byzantine

army in Syria was broken and the country lay open to the Muslim armies. In the nature of the sources, we also have a good deal of information about the numbers and composition of the armies, especially on the Yarmūk. The Byzantine force was probably larger than that of the Arabs and besides a contingent of Armenians it also contained a large number of Arabs from the tribes of the Syrian borderlands, the Lakhm, Ghassān and Judhām for example, which had been traditionally allied to the Byzantines; it is possible that there were as many Arabs fighting for the Byzantines as there were fighting for Islam. The Muslim army consisted of large numbers of Qurashīs, volunteers from Yamāma tribes who had been sent up after the end of the *Ridda* in their homeland, and some members of tribes from the northern Ḥijāz who had presumably joined up *en route*. Conspicuous by their absence were the *Anṣār* of Medina and members of Najdī and eastern Arabian tribes. The make-up of the conquering army was to have lasting effects on the political life of the country.

After the defeat on the Yarmūk and the final fall of Damascus, which must have occurred by 16/637, the Byzantines put no more armies into the field. Abū ʿUbayda as supreme commander moved north to Homs from where he sent out Khālid to reduce Qinnasrīn, Antioch and Aleppo, all of which fell without difficulty. Meanwhile ʿAmr seems to have finished operations in southern Palestine. It was at this stage too that the Emperor Heraclius, who had directed campaigns without being present in person at any of the battles finally abandoned Syria, laid waste the frontier lands of Cilicia and retreated to the fastnesses of Anatolia. A few coastal cities, notably Caesarea in the south and Tripoli further north, resisted for a few more years with the aid of naval support from Byzantium.

The fall of Jerusalem was probably the immediate cause of ʿUmar's visit in about 17/638 since it was said that the Patriarch Sophronius would only surrender to the caliph. It was the only time he left Medina to visit the scene of the conquests he had done so much to organize and his ragged and austere appearance made a great impression. Jerusalem was much revered by the Muslims and it was only appropriate that the caliph should come in person to take possession, but there were other more worldly matters which demanded his attention as well. At about this time, the plague, which had been endemic in Syria since the middle of the sixth century, struck at the nomad conquerors and many, including the leading Muslim generals Yazīd b. Abī Sufyān and Shuraḥbīl b. Ḥasana, perished. A new governor was found in the person of Yazīd's brother, Muʿāwiya b. Abī Sufyān. His family had owned estates in the Balqā' in Transjordan in pre-Islamic times and he now supervised the

settlement and organization of the province. ʿUmar attempted to establish a Muslim garrison town at Jābiya, the old Ghassanid centre south of Damascus, where the Muslims were to live separate from the local population as they were to in Kūfa and Baṣra in Iraq. In Syria, however, this scheme soon broke down, perhaps because many of the existing inhabitants of the area were Arabic speaking, and Damascus, rather than Jābiya, became the Muslim capital. The rest of the province was divided into *junds* in which divisions of the conquering army were settled. These were Homs, where most of the settlers were Yamāmīs under the leadership of al-Simṭ b. al-Aswad al-Kindī, Damascus, Urdunn (or Jordan) based on Tiberias, and Palestine. Arabs, both native Syrians and conquerors, were settled in the coastal and frontier areas to defend them against Byzantine attack. This dispersal of the Muslims, under the control of Muʿāwiya avoided many of the tensions which emerged in the Iraqi cities of Kūfa and Baṣra. The settlers in Syria were a fairly close-knit group from the élite groups in Islamic society, and Muʿāwiya was in a position to control any further immigration into the province. Some problems still remained, notably the tensions between old-established Arab tribes like the Judhām and Kalb and newly arrived settlers, but in general, under the presiding genius of Muʿāwiya, Syria remained calm and organized throughout the period of the first four caliphs.

To the north and east of Syria, across the Euphrates river lay the Jazīra, the "island" between the Tigris and the Euphrates rivers. It was natural that Abū ʿUbayda turned his attention in this direction when the conquest of Syria had been completed. He appointed a Qurashī, ʿIyāḍ b. Ghanm, a member of his own clan of Fihr as leader of the expedition. ʿIyāḍ had been involved in the conquests from the beginning when he had accompanied Khālid b. al-Walīd on his early Iraqi campaigns, he had fought at the battle of the Yarmūk, and there are reports that Abū ʿUbayda wished ʿIyāḍ to succeed him as governor of Syria but that he was overruled by ʿUmar who chose Yazīd b. Abī Sufyān and his brother Muʿāwiya instead. As might be expected, there was an important Qurashī element in the small (5,000-man) force and the rest of the troops seem to have been drawn from the *Anṣār* or Ḥijāzī tribes like the ʿAbs and Sulaym, whose members were to be influential in Armenia for centuries to come. The campaign involved no important battles and no long sieges as the defenders seemed to feel that there was no possibility of support from Byzantium. ʿIyāḍ's force crossed the Euphrates in Shaʿbān 18/August 639 and made a show of force outside Raqqa (Callinicum) which soon surrendered. He then went on to the capital Edessa, once Heraclius's headquarters, where the bishop negotiated terms after a short resistance. With the fall of Edessa, most of the other towns soon

surrendered and ʿIyāḍ even went as far as the territory of Akhlāṭ, north of Lake Van, before returning to the plains. His subordinates fanned out across the Jazīra, subduing the other towns until he joined up with Muslim forces operating from Iraq; Sinjār and Niṣībīn were conquered from the Jazīra while Mosul remained in the Iraqi sphere of influence. By 20/641 he was back in Homs, of which he had been appointed governor and where he died later in the same year. In the Jazīra he was eventually succeeded by ʿUmayr b. Saʿd one of the very few *Anṣār* to achieve high office, and in 25/645–6 ʿUthmān incorporated the province into Muʿāwiya's Syrian domains.

The settlement of the province was different from Syria, Iraq or Egypt in that there was no attempt to establish Muslim garrison towns like Kūfa, Jābiya or Fusṭāṭ. Although the details are very uncertain, it seems as if ʿIyāḍ had made a series of treaties with the leaders of the urban communities which guaranteed their property and freedom of worship in exchange for a poll-tax while payments in kind for the support of the Muslims were taken from rural areas. In a few districts where there was more prolonged resistance, Sumaysāṭ for example, ʿIyāḍ left an agent with a few men, but in the main tax collection was left to the local people. A peculiar problem was caused by the Banū Taghlib, Christian Arabs who inhabited the middle Euphrates area. They stubbornly refused to accept Islam but demanded to be taxed as bedouin, that is to pay the *ṣadaqa* demanded of other tribes but not the demeaning poll-tax. ʿUmayr b. Saʿd, who was governor by this time, consulted ʿUmar who was in favour of strong measures until it was pointed out that they might defect to the Byzantines, and in the end a compromise was reached with the Taghlib paying the *ṣadaqa* but at double the rate demanded of Muslim tribes. When ʿUthmān entrusted the area to Muʿāwiya, he ordered him to settle more tribesmen in the Jazīra to relieve pressure in the towns of Kūfa and Baṣra, and quite large numbers of Tamīm, Asad, Qays and other tribes from the north-east of Arabia were moved and were to form the nucleus of the Qays party in the area in Umayyad times. In the end the province was divided into districts named after the tribal groups who had dominated it, Diyār (country of) Muḍar, Rabīʿa and Bakr. In contrast to Iraq, this moving of tribes did not involve their abandonment of the nomad way of life and they were assigned areas of unused land away from existing urban and agricultural communities. The Arab immigration does not seem to have swamped the local culture as it came to do in Iraq, and Syriac Christianity, not to mention the paganism of the Sabaeans of Ḥarrān, continued to flourish throughout the early Islamic period. Muʿāwiya also stabilized the northern frontier, establishing garrisons on the upper Euphrates, notably at

Malaṭya (Melitene) which became an important Muslim base in the wars against the Byzantines.

Contemporary with the conquest of the Jazīra was the extension of the Arab conquests to the west, to Egypt. The sources for the conquest of Egypt are more helpful than in Syria or Iraq; we have an early and full Arab account in the work of Ibn ʿAbd al-Ḥakam and an almost contemporary Coptic account in the work of John, bishop of Nikiou. The conquest of Egypt was also unusual in that it was to a large extent the achievement of one commander, ʿAmr b. al-ʿĀṣ. Arabs from the Ḥijāz had traded with Egypt before the coming of Islam and there are reports that ʿAmr b. al-ʿĀṣ was among them and his military campaigns certainly show a degree of familiarity with the country. When ʿUmar came to Jābiya to settle the affairs of Syria, ʿAmr asked him for permission to lead an invasion of Egypt. ʿUmar seems to have given only grudging and reluctant consent, and the army which accompanied ʿAmr was only some 4,000 in number and recruited among the tribe of ʿAkk from the southern Ḥijāz. No leading companions or important Meccans chose to accompany him.

In Egypt as in Syria, the Persian invasions had severely shaken the Byzantine hold on the country and the invaders had been in control for about ten years when they were finally forced to withdraw to defend their homelands in 627, when Muḥammad was already well established at Medina. In 631 Heraclius entrusted the administration of Egypt, both civil and religious, to one Cyrus, bishop of Phasis in the Caucasus. Cyrus, now patriarch of Alexandria, was determined to enforce the Orthodox faith on the native population of Egypt who were almost entirely Monophysites of the Coptic church. For ten years he persecuted dissenters with great savagery and there can be no doubt that he alienated much of the local population from Roman rule. To some extent this had happened in Syria, where there were substantial Monophysite communities, but there the persecution was sporadic and the Monophysites were balanced by substantial Melkite (i.e. Orthodox) populations, especially in Palestine. In Egypt almost the entire rural population was Monophysite in sympathy, with its own alternative hierarchy, and the persecution was more determined and sustained.

How far ʿAmr was aware of these factors is impossible to gauge. There is no evidence that the Copts invited the Arabs to invade or that they gave them active help. On the other hand, they offered the imperial armies no support or local levies, and this passive attitude of the local people may explain something of the ease of the conquests.

ʿAmr's small troop probably entered Egypt in the late autumn of 18/639 and soon took Faramā (Pelusium), the first port on the Nile delta, before moving on to attack the great fortress known as Babylon, just to

the south of the site where Cairo was later constructed. ʿAmr was clearly anxious not to advance straight across the waterways of the delta to the capital at Alexandria and reckoned rightly that if he could destroy the bulk of the Byzantine army before entering the delta, his task would be much easier. During this time ʿAmr's small forces were joined by a larger number, perhaps 12,000, under al-Zubayr b. al-ʿAwwām and other senior companions of the Prophet; it is noteworthy, however, that ʿAmr retained command. With these new troops he was able to defeat the Byzantine forces at Heliopolis, to the north of modern Cairo, in Rajab 19/June 640 and in September began the siege of Babylon. The siege lasted some seven months while Cyrus, probably in Alexandria, made futile attempts to negotiate with the invaders. The news of the death of Heraclius, in February 641, finally persuaded the defenders to surrender on terms, which they finally did in Rabīʿ II 20/April 641. The Arab forces then advanced on Alexandria, defeating the Byzantines again at Nikiou *en route*. Alexandria, well fortified and easily supplied from the sea, should have been able to hold out for many months but in the event, confusion amounting almost to civil war in Byzantium and in the local garrison, paralysed the resistance and Cyrus made terms for the surrender of the city. After an eleven-month period of grace, it was finally surrendered in Shawwāl 21/September 642 and the Arabs were in control of the whole country. Despite a Greek counter-attack three years later in 25/645 the Muslim hold on Egypt was never seriously threatened again until the time of the Crusades.

Settlement followed conquest. A new town was established for the Muslims at Fusṭāṭ, by Babylon, and this, rather than Alexandria, became the new capital; as usual the Arabs chose a site on the edge of the settled lands in easy communication with Arabia. Outside Fusṭāṭ, Arab settlement was very limited; there was a small garrison in Alexandria and some other towns but no large-scale immigration followed the conquest. The administration of the Byzantines was taken over and streamlined, but many of the old methods and officials continued to be used. The Coptic hierarchy, relieved from persecution, was allowed the same rights as the Melkites. The Arabs remained a small minority, the spread of Islam and the Arabic language was slow and the province played a very limited role in the politics of the early Islamic state.

The conquest of Iraq, an area which was to play a vital and central role in the formation of the Islamic state, began as a side-show, almost by accident. As with the conquest of Syria, exact chronology is difficult to ascertain but here at least, the general outline of events is clear. Iraq had always had a secondary place in the calculations of the Quraysh, and the Prophet had sent no expeditions there. The Sawād of Iraq was

certainly wealthy but its canals and agricultural landscape were much less attractive for nomads than Syria, or the Jazīra with their rich grazing grounds. The first attacks on Iraq were a natural follow-up to the *Ridda* campaigns and it was partly as a result of this that the participants in the conquest were in marked contrast to those in Syria. The Quraysh were hardly represented at all whereas there was a considerable number of *Anṣār* from Medina and Thaqafīs from Ṭā'if. In addition to these settled people, there were many tribesmen from the neighbouring areas of north-east Arabia, Tamīmīs and members of the Bakr b. Wā'il confederation, especially the Shaybān, and there were also some from the southern Ḥijāz, Azdīs and Bajalīs under the command of their tribal leader, Jarīr b. ʿAbd Allāh. In the course of the conquest reinforcements were needed and it was in these campaigns that tribesmen who had joined the *Ridda* against the Muslim community after Muḥammad's death, were allowed to participate and establish their position in the Islamic system. The conquest of Iraq, in short, was largely carried out by those who were already second-class citizens in the new regime while the élite turned their attention to Syria.

The Arab incursions in Iraq had begun before the arrival of any Muslim army. From the dissolution of the Lakhmid kingdom of Ḥīra by the Persian authorities in 602, the nomads had been taking an increasingly aggressive stance towards the settled people. This process was hastened by the catastrophes which affected the Persian empire, Heraclius's invasion of Iraq, the death of Khusrau II in 628 and the consequent civil war. Raids which might otherwise have led to reprisals were now allowed to go unpunished. Among the Arab leaders was Muthannā b. Ḥāritha from the Shaybān tribe who enlisted the help of Khālid b. al-Walīd, who had just finished his campaigns against the *Ridda* in north-east Arabia, to give him support in his raids.

In this way Muslim armies first came into conflict with the Persians. Khālid helped Muthannā to capture some districts along the edge of the desert, notably the largely Arab city of Ḥīra, but Syria remained the priority and Khālid was ordered west, leaving the local tribes to continue their forays on their own. On his accession in 13/634 ʿUmar sent a Thaqafī, Abū ʿUbayd, to take control of this activity with a small army of about 5,000, mostly *Anṣār* of Medina with some recruits picked up from the desert tribes on the way. This army was decisively defeated by the Persians at the Battle of the Bridge and Abū ʿUbayd himself was killed. ʿUmar could not allow such a defeat to go unavenged but for a year or two shortage of manpower meant that there was little he could do about it. As contingents became available he sent them to the front, notably the 1,500 Bajalīs under Jarīr b. ʿAbd Allāh, but eventually he

was forced to relax the principle that men who had joined the *Ridda* could not share in the conquests and for the first time men like Ṭalḥa b. Khuwaylid al-Asadī from the Najd and al-Ashʿath b. Qays al-Kindī from south Arabia, both tribal chiefs who only two or three years before had been in arms against the Muslims, were allowed to participate. These reinforcements were put under the command of a Qurashī of impeccable Muslim credentials, Saʿd b. Abī Waqqāṣ, who had been with the Prophet at Badr and who proved an acceptable leader for this disparate army. Even compared with the forces which conquered Syria, the army Saʿd led was small, probably no more than 12,000 men. Against him the Persians assembled a much larger number under the veteran general Rustam. The battle which followed at Qādisiyya was decisive, the Persian host was totally defeated and very shortly afterwards the Persian capital at Madā'in (Ctesiphon) was occupied by Saʿd and his victorious army (probably 16/637). A further victory at Jalūlā' a few months later, forced the Persian king Yazdgird III to withdraw to the Iṣfahān area and secured the position of the Muslims, small groups of whom now moved to take control of the towns and villages of Iraq as far north as Mosul.

Southern Iraq and the neighbouring province of Khūzistān were taken in a separate campaign by a separate army. The Muslim force seems to have been small, about 4,000, and there was some fierce fighting around the port of Ubulla and the town of Sūq al-Ahwāz but there was no single decisive battle like Qādisiyya. On this front the core of the army seems to have been recruited among the Thaqīf of Ṭā'if; the first commander sent by ʿUmar, ʿUtba b. Ghazwān, had married into the Thaqīf while his successor, al-Mughīra b. Shuʿba, was the first of many Thaqafī governors who were to be influential in Iraq. After al-Mughīra was dismissed by ʿUmar in 17/638 for alleged adultery, he was replaced by Abū Mūsā al-Ashʿarī, a companion of the Prophet who was to prove an important moderating influence in the politics of Iraq.

By the year 17/638 the Muslim armies had taken control of almost all the plains of the Tigris and Euphrates valleys. The Persian king, his court and much of the ruling class had fled to the Iranian plateau but many of the peasants and the small landowners and administrators known as *dihqāns* had remained on the land. At first Saʿd's men stayed in the Persian capital at Madā'in and some of them seem to have been given land. The Caliph ʿUmar, however, soon reversed this policy and he ordered Saʿd and al-Mughīra b. Shuʿba in the south to found garrison towns where the Muslims could be settled, just as he had ordered ʿAmr not to settle in Alexandria but to develop a new town at Fusṭāṭ. Two settlements were founded, both on the edge of the desert. The veterans of the central Iraq campaign were established at Kūfa, near the old

centre of Ḥīra, while those of the southern campaign were settled at Baṣra. A mosque and governor's palace were established in each town to act as a focus and the troops were settled in tribal groups so that they could be more easily administered and controlled through their leaders. ʿUmar's decision was partly made on military grounds; if the Muslims were dispersed throughout the area of the Sawād they would be vulnerable to outside attack whereas kept together they would be in a much stronger position to defend their gains. The threat of a Persian counter-attack was very real. Isolation in Muslim communities would help to prevent the newly converted Muslims from being affected by local beliefs. Settlement in cities was also intended to solve the problem of governing the nomad tribesmen. If they were left to their traditional way of life, the fragile unity which had been encouraged by Islam and enforced by the campaigns against the *Ridda*, would soon be lost and the desert would become as ungovernable as it had been in pre-Islamic times. Only if the tribesmen were settled and involved in further campaigns of conquest could they be controlled.

If the Muslims were not to remain nomads, they were not to become farmers either. The land was to remain in the hands of the previous owners, if they had not fled at the time of the conquest, and they were to pay taxes to the Muslims as they had previously paid to the Sasanian government, basically a land-tax (*kharāj*) based on the area and type of crops cultivated and, for non-Muslims, a poll-tax (*jizya*) on each adult male, although the terminology used to describe these taxes remained fluid until the ʿAbbasid period. Lands which had been abandoned by the Sasanian royal family, the upper aristocracy and the Zoroastrian priesthood were to become the common property of the Muslim community, but the administration of the lands, known in Arabic as the *ṣawāfī*, was to be a subject of controversy for years to come. The government would then distribute this money to the Muslim settlers in the form of salaries known as *ʿaṭā*'. ʿUmar laid down the principles according to which *ʿaṭā*' was to be distributed in a system known as the *dīwān*. The *dīwān* recorded the names of all those entitled to salaries and the rates at which they were to be paid, for not all Muslims were to enjoy the same pay. The different scales were paid according to the individual's *sābiqa*, that is to say his precedence in Islam. We can see this process most clearly in Iraq where the earliest participants in the war against the Persians were to be paid at the rate of 3,000 silver *dirhams* per month while those who arrived later would be paid proportionally less down to those who had only migrated to Baṣra or Kūfa after the conquests, who could not expect more than 200 *dirhams*. This naturally resulted in social tensions and anomalies; a new privileged class was created among those who

enjoyed the highest salaries and it was quite possible for one man to be getting ten times the amount given to his neighbour, even if they came from the same tribe and background, simply because he had joined the armies of Islam five years before. This could be particularly galling if the late arrival belonged to a family which, in the tribal scale of values, had enjoyed high prestige and it was no wonder that ʿUmar's system was defended with enthusiasm by those who had come early but caused strong resentment among many late comers.

The rule of the various provinces was entrusted to leaders called *amīrs*, a term which can be loosely translated as governors. In ʿUmar's reign these were almost always those who had led the original conquest and had naturally stayed on to organize administration and settlement; Saʿd b. Abī Waqqāṣ remained governor of Kūfa, Abū Mūsā al-Ashʿarī who had completed the conquest of southern Iraq stayed in Baṣra. In Syria the position was complicated by the deaths of both Abū ʿUbayda and Yazīd b. Abī Sufyān in the plague but succession passed naturally to Yazīd's brother Muʿāwiya, while in Egypt ʿAmr b. al-ʿĀṣ retained control of the land he had so recently won. These *amīrs* tended to be fairly independent of the government in Medina and responsive to the needs of the men they had led to victory. In particular, despite some pressure from ʿUmar, they seem to have retained most of the revenues of their provinces for the benefit of the Muslims who had settled there, rather than sending any surplus to Medina and this fiscal autonomy was to prove a source of conflict later.

ʿUthmān and the Beginnings of Internal Strife 23–35/644–656

In 23/644 ʿUmar was assassinated by a Persian slave in Medina; there seems to have been no political motivation behind this deed. His ten years as caliph had seen the expansion of the Muslim conquests throughout Egypt and the Fertile Crescent and the beginning of the attacks into Iran. Just as significant, it had seen the development of many important Muslim institutions, the system of taxation, the *dīwān*, the urban settlements and the development of a privileged group of those who received the highest '*aṭā*'. Though he gave orders and guidance to his *amīrs*, there was little in the way of central government or direct control from Medina, where the caliph lived in pious simplicity, avoiding both the power and the pomp of Byzantine emperor or Sasanian king.

On his deathbed, ʿUmar had appointed a *shūrā* or committee to choose a successor. This had six members, all of them *Muhājirūn* from the Quraysh, and neither the *Anṣār* of Medina nor more recent converts

were represented. Two possible candidates emerged, ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib, the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law, and ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān, who came from the Meccan clan of Umayya but who had supported the Prophet from the very beginning of his mission. The election was a question of both personalities and policies. It seems that ʿAlī was offered the leadership if he would guarantee to continue the policies of his predecessors, by which was meant the continued predominance of the Quraysh in the leadership of the Muslim community. He refused, perhaps because he realized that the continued grip of the Meccan aristocracy was dividing the *umma* and he wished to have the power to open the leadership to other groups as well, especially the *Anṣār*, with whom he had forged close links. For ʿUthmān, on the other hand, the conditions posed no problems; despite his early adherence to Islam, ʿUthmān had retained his links with his clan and he benefited from the experience in practical affairs which his upbringing as a Meccan merchant had given him. He became caliph with a definite political programme, to ensure that the Muslim empire, for such it now was, remained under the control of the Quraysh, a policy the origins of which went back to the practice of the Prophet himself. In some ways he reacted against ʿUmar's attempts to build a new Islamic élite based on *sābiqa*, and turned back to the well-tried methods of clan government. He believed in the centralization of power; governors were to be chosen and dismissed by the caliph and both political and the all-important financial affairs of the provinces were to be decided not by local leaders, but in Medina. He also set about producing a single, definitive version of the Qur'ān. Muslim society was to be ordered according to the provisions of the Holy Book and it was essential, therefore, that the text was generally agreed and that variant readings did not develop in different areas. In practice, the differences do not seem to have been very significant, but the fact that the caliph decided that he should organize this process was an important sign of his authority over the whole community. His programme was a bold attempt to create a viable administrative system for the new empire but it naturally aroused opposition from many who regarded it as a breach with ʿUmar's policies and a betrayal of the principles of Islam. The opposition crystallized around two issues; the declining status of the Islamic élite of early converts, especially in Kūfa, and the question of whether surplus revenue from the provinces, that is the residue after the local '*aṭā*' had been paid, should be forwarded to Medina or not and it was a combination of these two grievances which led to the disasters of the end of the reign.

He also saw that the expansion of the Muslim state had to continue if the needs of all the members of the *umma* were to be satisfied. In the

west there were expeditions to Nubia and North Africa as well as the development of Muslim naval power in the Mediterranean under the control of the governors of Syria and Egypt. Cyprus was forced to pay tribute and in 34/655 the Muslims won a decisive naval victory over the Byzantines at the Battle of the Masts off the Lycian coast. In the east ʿUthmān's reign saw the effective conquest of the Iranian plateau. This movement had begun under ʿUmar in 21/642 when the Iranians had tried to mount a counter-attack on the Arabs to regain Iraq. This counter-attack was met and defeated at the battle of Nihāvand in the Zagros mountains. This battle meant the destruction of a large part of the Iranian army and laid much of western Iran open to Arab raids; during the next two years troops from Kūfa took Iṣfahān, Hamadhān, Qazvīn and Rayy and even ventured as far as distant Ardabīl in Āz̲arbayjān but permanent settlement was only gradually undertaken. It is interesting to note that some latecomers to Iraq participated in these conquests and were able to improve their status, and we find tribal chiefs like Jarīr b. ʿAbd Allāh al-Bajalī and al-Ashʿath b. Qays al-Kindī powerful in the newly won territories; neither of these developments was likely to please the early-comers in Kūfa. As before, separate expeditions were mounted from Baṣra under the leadership of Abū Mūsā al-Ashʿarī and from 24/645 these forces were engaged in a long, hard struggle to take Fārs, the heartland of the Sasanian monarchy. The area was defended by many castles and fortified towns and it took five years to subdue it; nowhere else did the Arabs encounter such sustained popular resistance by the local inhabitants.

In the year 30/650 the Arabs began a new series of expeditions in Iran. From Kūfa the governor, Saʿīd b. al-ʿĀṣ, led his men along the north of the Iranian plateau where they attempted to conquer the mountain peoples of that area but the expedition achieved little before it returned to base, thus aggravating the increasing tensions within the city. The Baṣran forces, on the other hand, marched along the southern fringes of the Iranian desert, pursuing the Sasanian king Yazdgird III as he fled eastwards trying to rally support. Detachments were left to make terms for the submission of Kirmān and Sīstān while, in 31/651 ʿAbd Allāh, b. ʿĀmir, the newly appointed governor, reached Nīshāpūr, capital of the rich, north-east Iranian province of Khurāsān. Here he and his men spent the winter and secured the submission of most of the local princes who agreed to pay tribute. The Muslims then returned to Baṣra leaving a small detachment at Marv. This was not a conquest in the sense that the taking of Syria or Iraq were; it was rather a raiding expedition which secured the payment of large annual tributes. The army of Baṣra was to collect this money but it was not to settle in the

area nor was it to set up a new administrative system. The local princes and magnates were to collect the taxes in the way that they always had done and were content to accept a Muslim rule that was certainly no more onerous than that of the Persian kings and which could provide protection for the settled people of the area against the marauding Turks to the north-east.

In much of Khurāsān, and in the mountains to the south of the Caspian in the areas known to the Arabs as Ṭabaristān and Daylam, the indigenous aristocracy retained its power and influence by treaties with the Arabs. This was in marked contrast to western Iran, to Fārs especially, where the prolonged fighting and the defeat of subsequent rebellions led to the virtual extermination of the ancient aristocracy. It is worth noting too, that the Arab conquests mostly affected urban areas and the plains. Arab armies avoided the mountainous areas where traditional rulers, social structures, religions and languages survived almost unchallenged. This contrast was to have profound effects on both the political history of the area and the cultural life, since it was precisely in those areas where the local aristocracy remained, that Persian culture survived most vigorously. For the moment, however, it is enough to note that before ʿUthmān's death, all Sasanian Iran was subdued, either by conquest or by treaty, but that Arab settlement in the areas was very limited indeed. Nor was the conquest totally secure; in western Iran there were rebellions after the death of both ʿUthmān and ʿAlī while in Khurāsān the presence of the Turks along the eastern frontier meant that conditions were often unsettled.

Arab tradition divides ʿUthmān's reign into six good years at the beginning and six bad, the traditional turning-point being his loss of the Prophet's signet ring. From about the year 30/650–1, the problems began to increase; ʿUthmān tried to deal with them intelligently but he totally underestimated the strength of feeling and his attempts to cope with the discontent simply made the position worse. By the year 35/656 the position was so bad that rebellions in the provinces and disturbances in Medina itself led to the caliph's murder in dramatic circumstances. He was killed in his own house, defenceless and unarmed as he sat reading the Qur'ān. The assassination was one of the most traumatic incidents in early Islamic history and its effects were to have a profound bearing on the future development of the Islamic state. It is important, therefore, to examine the causes of this tragedy in detail and to ask the question, who killed ʿUthmān and why?

There were three main regions of discontent, Kūfa, Egypt and Medina. Because of the way the sources were compiled, we know more about the Kūfan events than those elsewhere and it is there that we must start. In

ʿUmar's time Kūfa had been dominated by the early-comers, those who had participated in the first campaigns. In many cases these were not men who came from powerful tribes and they arrived as individuals or in small groups, but as a reward for their commitment to the Muslim cause they had acquired wealth and status. This wealth was based partly on their entitlement to the highest salaries but also their control over the *ṣawāfī*, the state lands of the Sasanian kings, now ownerless and exploited by these early-comers for their own benefit. The very loose financial administration of ʿUmar's reign did not impinge significantly on this comfortable arrangement and there is no evidence that any of the revenues of this vastly rich area found their way to Medina. Under ʿUthmān this status began to be challenged from two directions. The first was from Medina. ʿUthmān's reign saw the appointment of a succession of Qurashī governors to Kūfa, culminating in Saʿīd b. al-ʿĀṣ, who were profoundly unsympathetic to the efforts of these people to maintain their privileged position. On instructions from the caliph, he began to demand that surplus revenue from the province should be sent to Medina and to claim that the *ṣawāfī* belonged to the government which could exploit them directly or give them to its supporters. The treasurer of the Sawād, ʿAbd Allāh b. Masʿūd, an early-comer, resigned in protest at this appropriation of the revenues by the caliph but the policy went ahead none the less. The caliph added insult to injury by his brutal treatment of those who protested, Ibn Masʿūd, for example, being beaten up in the mosque at Medina, despite his status as a respected companion of the Prophet.

The threat from Medina was reinforced by one from much nearer home. Immigration from the Arabian peninsula into the settlements at Kūfa and Baṣra continued for some years after the initial foundation of the towns. Many of the later arrivals and their tribal leaders resented the privileged position the early-comers had acquired and began to put pressure on the governors to abolish the distinctions. Tribal leaders were given key governorates in the newly conquered lands east of the Zagros, including the *Ridda* leader al-Ashʿath b. Qays in Ādharbayjān and the late-comers looked to them for leadership. ʿUthmān also decided to allow al-Ashʿath, among others, to exchange lands in distant south Arabia for territories in the Sawād. As a result the early-comers began to organize in opposition to government policy. They took the name of *qurrā'*, which probably means Qur'an-readers, and drew attention to their Islamic status and found a leader and spokesman in the person of Mālik al-Ashtar. The crisis came to a head in 34/655 when the *qurrā'*, about 3,000 strong, refused to allow the governor, Saʿīd b. al-ʿĀṣ to return to the province after he had been conferring with ʿUthmān in

Medina and chose instead Abū Mūsā al-Ashʿarī. Abū Mūsā had been one of the administrators the Prophet himself had sent to Yemen twenty-five years previously and he had played an important part in the conquest and settlement of Iraq. His Islamic credentials were impeccable and while not himself a member of the *qurrā'*, he was sympathetic to their plight. Having replaced the hated governor, the militants, led by Mālik then marched to confront the caliph in his capital.

The other province where discontent led to rebellion was Egypt. Here the sources are not so abundant but as far as we can tell the problems seem to have been similar. Egypt had been settled by two waves of colonists, those who had formed part of the original, small expeditionary force under ʿAmr in 19/640 and larger numbers of later arrivals. As in Kūfa, many of the first wave of colonists arrived in small splinter groups and had little status in the old tribal system but did lay claim to Islamic status. In ʿUmar's reign, the governorate of Egypt was held by the conqueror ʿAmr. It seems that he looked after the interests of his original followers but it is not at all clear that he forwarded any of the revenues of Egypt to Medina. ʿUthmān deposed ʿAmr almost immediately after his accession and his new man, Ibn Abī Sarḥ, was determined to reduce the privileges of the early arrivals and secure the surplus for Medina. Once again, there were local tribal leaders who were prepared to co-operate with the caliph, notably the south Arabian, Muʿāwiya b. Ḥudayj al-Kindī, whose family were to be prominent in Egypt for the next two centuries and who played a role very similar to that of al-Ashʿath in Kūfa. As in Kūfa, then, there was a small but determined minority who felt their position under attack from the policies of the government. It was these "Egyptians", probably no more than 400–600 who began the violence. They marched to Medina where they presented their grievances; ʿUthmān persuaded them to go home with fair words but sent a message to Ibn Abī Sarḥ ordering that they be harshly treated. Inevitably, the message was discovered and full of righteous indignation they returned to Medina, accusing the caliph of betraying the Qur'ān and Sunna, of despising those who had been among the Prophet's companions and those with *sābiqa* in favour of his own family, and of tyrannical government. It was in this highly charged atmosphere that the violent siege of ʿUthmān's house began.

The old man could count on little support in Medina itself. Many of the Islamic élite there had become increasingly critical of his policies, alienated by his methods and reliance not on the Quraysh as a whole but on the Umayyad clan. Before his death in 32/652–3 ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. ʿAwf, a prominent companion of the Prophet and one of the *shūrā* who had chosen ʿUthmān began to attack him, Ṭalḥa b. ʿUbayd

Allāh and al-Zubayr b. al-ʿAwwām, both important Qurashīs, were hostile, while others, like Saʿd b. Abī Waqqāṣ, the conqueror of Iraq and ʿUmar's son ʿAbd Allāh remained neutral. Nor were the *Anṣār* any more helpful. ʿUthmān had come to rely increasingly on the talents of two of his Umayyad cousins, the brothers al-Ḥārith and Marwān b. al-Ḥakam, the latter subsequently to be caliph himself, and when he appointed Ḥārith to take charge of the market the *Anṣār* felt that they had lost control, not just in the empire as a whole, but even in their own town. Such frustrations and bitterness meant that few in Medina were prepared to take any action to help the caliph in his time of need. ʿUthmān was killed because he was determined to assert the control of the traditional Quraysh élite over the Islamic state, even if this meant trampling on the rights and privileges of many early Muslims. He saw the need for central control, he saw that the Umayyad clan had the experience and ability to undertake it but he failed to make allowances for the interests of others who had different but equally strong claims to enjoy the fruits of the conquests.

The Caliphate of ʿAlī 35–40/656–661

In the aftermath of ʿUthmān's death, ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib was acknowledged as caliph in Medina without significant opposition but the inheritance was poisoned by the memory of his predecessor's death, although he himself had taken no part in ʿUthmān's murder. From the moment of his accession ʿAlī had to face opposition from within the Muslim community from many different areas and shades of opinion. He had no honeymoon period, no breathing space in which to establish himself and the problems came thick and fast.

The first challenge to ʿAlī's authority came from within the Quraysh itself. His close identification with the *Anṣār* and his reluctance to accept the nomination of Abū Bakr had alienated him from many of the Quraysh, who now felt that they had to challenge him to preserve the position their tribe had won. The movement centred around al-Zubayr b. al-ʿAwwām, Ṭalḥa b. ʿUbayd Allāh and the Prophet's widow ʿĀ'isha. Al-Zubayr was a Muslim of unimpeachable standing; he had been among those who took refuge in Ethiopia before the *Hijra* and he and ʿAlī had been sent out as scouts before the battle of Badr. Now, a quarter of a century after the Prophet's death, there were few men left alive who had been so closely involved in the origins of Islam. In addition he had married a daughter of Abū Bakr which gave him a close kinship with ʿĀ'isha, herself a daughter of the first caliph. Ṭalḥa was also an early Qurashī convert, although not as prominent as al-Zubayr. Both had

been members of the *shūrā* which had chosen ʿUthmān. While they had not supported ʿUthmān's policies of concentrating power in the hands of the Umayyad clan, they did not wish to see power pass from the Quraysh as a whole and they were determined to take action. They left the Ḥijāz to seek support in Baṣra, perhaps hoping that the Thaqīf interest which was prominent there would rally to their old allies in the Quraysh. ʿAlī was compelled to follow them to Iraq; to have remained in Medina would have been courting the same fate as ʿUthmān, and he sought support in Kūfa. Al-Zubayr and his party seem to have misjudged the situation badly; they attracted only a modest following from Baṣra while ʿAlī was able to attract much larger numbers of Kūfans to his cause. The two armies met near Baṣra in a confrontation known to tradition as the Battle of the Camel, Jumādā II 36/December 656. The battle was easily won by ʿAlī's more numerous army, al-Zubayr and Ṭalḥa were killed and ʿĀ'isha forced into retirement. But for the first time there had been civil war among the Muslims, the gate of *fitna*, a strife, had been opened and, like Pandora's box, once opened it was impossible to close.

In order to defend his position against al-Zubayr and Ṭalḥa, ʿAlī had sought support in Kūfa, whose people had no wish to see a Qurashī regime of the sort that al-Zubayr had stood for. He now set to work to remove ʿUthmān's appointees from positions of power to reward his supporters for their services.

His authority was accepted in Baṣra and his governor of Egypt, who was Qays, son of that Saʿd b. ʿUbāda who had emerged as the leader of the *Anṣār* in the last year of the Prophet's life, was able to establish himself. In Syria, however, the story was different. The governor, Muʿāwiya, was a member of the Umayyad clan and unlike ʿUthmān's other governors, who had been removed without great difficulty, he had a strong local power base in the country he had ruled without interruption almost since the conquest. He had built up a military following among the Arab population to defend the country against the real possibility of Byzantine attack and he was not a man to be dismissed with ease or to stand by and see ʿUthmān's work undone. Furthermore, he had a moral claim against the murderers of the caliph; as the nearest surviving relative of the dead man, he had a right, even a duty, to see vengeance for the wrong done to his clan. Historians have tended to treat this claim as a feeble pretext for his actions but this does not, perhaps, do justice to Muʿāwiya's position; not to have taken revenge would have proclaimed for all to see the impotence of the Umayyad clan and when ʿUthmān's widow sent him the dead man's bloodstained shirt, he could not afford not to take action. The heart of the problem

was that in Kūfa, ʿAlī was dependent for support on men who had been closely implicated in ʿUthmān's death, especially Mālik al-Ashtar who, although he had not personally attacked the old man, had led the Kūfan delegation to Medina. Muʿāwiya absolutely refused to acknowledge ʿAlī as caliph until he had punished his predecessor's murderers.

ʿAlī's move from Medina to Iraq had been forced upon him by the need to oppose al-Zubayr. Medina was not a place from which to conduct a military campaign; not only was it remote from the main centres of Arab population in Iraq and Syria, it was also dependent on grain shipments from Egypt which made it particularly vulnerable. So ʿAlī moved to Kūfa and became embroiled in its tortuous politics. As far as we know, he had never visited Iraq before, nor had the Iraqis particularly looked to him for leadership in ʿUthmān's reign. He may have reached an understanding with Mālik al-Ashtar at the time of ʿUthmān's death but Mālik was only representative of a small part of Kūfan opinion. From the beginning of his stay in the city, ʿAlī was forced to try to assemble a coalition strong enough to coerce Muʿāwiya into accepting his authority. The problem was to persuade the Kūfans that it was in their interests to march on Syria.

Kūfan politics had become polarized between the early Islamic élite of the *qurrā'* and the tribal leaders (*ashrāf*) supported by their followers, many of them, late, and therefore underprivileged, converts to Islam. ʿAlī's policy was a bold attempt to cut across these problems by stressing the importance of the equality of believers and the importance of the religious role of the caliph or *imām* (spiritual leader); the ruler was not to be a tyrannical tax-gatherer and guardian of existing vested interests but a charismatic figure who would inspire and guide the believers in the formation of a truly Islamic community. This concern for Islamic government and for the problems of underprivileged Muslims was to be the hallmark of the appeal of ʿAlī and his descendants throughout the early Islamic period. The immediate response was varied. ʿAlī was joined by about 10,000 men, many of them early settlers who looked to him to right the injustices which had been done to them. ʿAlī was probably helped in establishing his control in that the most prominent tribal leaders, al-Ashʿath b. Qays and Jarīr b. ʿAbd Allāh, were serving in Iran at that time and did not return to Kūfa until after he had been generally acknowledged. Mālik al-Ashtar was the most determined and militant of ʿAlī's followers and probably persuaded many of the *qurrā'* to throw in their lot with him. He was also vigorously opposed to Muʿāwiya who had expelled him from Syria a few years previously as a trouble-maker.

In the year 37 (spring and summer 657), ʿAlī led his forces, now swollen by the arrival of al-Ashʿath b. Qays and other tribal leaders,

up the Euphrates where they came into confrontation with Muʿāwiya's Syrian followers at Ṣiffīn, near Raqqa. There was a marked reluctance to do battle and for three months the armies confronted each other with little more than occasional skirmishes. It was not at this stage a struggle for the caliphate since Muʿāwiya had made no claims to this office; he wanted the punishment of the murderers of ʿUthmān and the acceptance of his right to continue as governor of Syria. ʿAlī for his part wanted his opponent to acknowledge his authority by taking the *bayʿa* or oath of allegiance, while he was quite unable to punish all those implicated in the murder of ʿUthmān since these included Mālik al-Ashtar, now his right-hand man in Kūfa, and others of his supporters. In Ṣafar 37/July–August 657 a real battle developed but was rapidly brought to a half when the Syrians held up leaves from the Qur'ān and appealed for arbitration. Despite al-Ashtar's determination to continue to fight there was a strong feeling on the Iraqi side against shedding Muslim blood and the battle was halted. There were many reasons for the Iraqis to offer peace, despite what seems to have been a military advantage. Al-Ashʿath b. Qays warned that the enemies of Islam would take advantage of the dispute; Muʿāwiya had not as yet secured a truce with the Byzantines while al-Ashʿath, having been until recently in Iran himself, knew that the country was far from pacified. He also had no wish to see ʿAlī's power increased since the caliph relied so heavily on the *qurrā'* and the rivalry was given a personal edge when ʿAlī patronized a rival leader, Ḥujr b. ʿAdī, within al-Ashʿath's own tribe of Kinda. If the tribal leaders were reluctant to go all the way with ʿAlī, so were many of the *qurrā'*; after all, the Syrians were simply fighting for the sort of political and financial autonomy that the Iraqis had struggled for during the reign of ʿUthmān and they too might have wanted a compromise which left the caliph with very restricted powers of interference.

In this way ʿAlī was obliged to agree to arbitration, not about who should be caliph, but rather over the issues which divided him and Muʿāwiya. However, the arbitration agreement, of which the text survives, did not acknowledge his title of *amīr al-mu'minīn*, simply giving his personal name as it gave Muʿāwiya's. Two arbitrators were then named; Muʿāwiya chose ʿAmr, the conqueror of Egypt, who was his chief adviser at this time while the Iraqis chose Abū Mūsā al-Ashʿarī. This was another blow to ʿAlī's position since Abū Mūsā was not especially attached to his cause but was rather the spokesman for Kūfan and other Iraqi interests. And so it was agreed that the arbitrators should meet in a year's time, probably on neutral ground at Adhruḥ on the borders between Syria and the Ḥijāz.

The arbitration agreement fatally weakened Alī's position. He had been forced to deal with Muʿāwiya on equal terms and abandoned his unchallenged right to lead the community. With this advantage gone, many began to have doubts about his leadership and the hastily assembled coalition began to distintegrate. Tribal leaders listened with interest to Muʿāwiya who offered to guarantee their status in return for support, which many of them secretly gave him.

At the other side of the political spectrum, ʿAlī was rejected by some elements of the *qurrā'* who felt that he had forfeited his rights to their support by agreeing to the arbitration. On his return to Iraq they split off from his army and went to Nahrawān in the heart of the Sawād. ʿAlī was able to persuade some of them to return and the rest were attacked and defeated, but the survivors fled to continue the struggle elsewhere. Probably because they had gone out (Arabic *kharaja*) from ʿAlī's army, they were known as Khawārij (sing. Khārijī) and their influence on Islamic thought and politics was out of all proportion to their small numbers. In the beginning they objected to ʿAlī because he had agreed to arbitration while they held that God was the only true arbitrator and that ʿAlī and those who thought like him were not just wrong, they were unbelievers and not true Muslims, hence the Khawārij should have no dealings with them. In the next half-century the Khawārij established a whole series of little Islamic republics in the area of the Gulf from which they terrorized the surrounding unbelievers. These groups rejected the urban life of Kūfa and returned to the bedouin ways they had so recently left, in the areas of eastern and north-eastern Arabia from which most of them had originally come. The movement must be seen as a fierce protest by small groups who believed that they were the only true Muslims in a world where Islam had become too easy and had become exploited by vested interests who had no understanding of true religion. They were opposed, as all the *qurrā'* were, to the traditional tribal leaders but also to the Quraysh, whose claims to leadership they totally rejected. When a group chose a leader for themselves, they might call him *amīr al-mu'minīn* but his powers were limited and descent was no qualification for office. Thus their ideas reflect the rejection of traditional tribal society and, at the same time, the urban life the Ḥijāzī élite had forced on the Muslims by settling them in Kūfa and Baṣra and paying them pensions. They sought a third way, pious, egalitarian, nomad and independent of establishing Islamic society. Not all Khawārij, however, were violent, nor did all embrace the desert life. In Umayyad times, Baṣra became a centre of Khārijī thought and debate and the centre of missionary activity in ʿUmān and North Africa. But in the Jazīra, the old tradition of Khārijī brigandage lingered on until the fourth/tenth centuries.

The secession of the Khawārij and the coolness of the tribal leaders meant that ʿAlī's strength melted away slowly but steadily. Exactly what happened at the arbitration is not clear since there are many different accounts. It is certain, however, that by the time the arbitrators met, the question of who was to be caliph was a very open one. Muʿāwiya, while not claiming the office for himself, suggested the appointment of a *shūrā*, and compromise candidates like ʿUmar's son ʿAbd Allāh were tried but failed to win general approval. The meeting broke up without agreement but its deliberations were becoming irrelevant. Egypt was the next bone of contention; ʿAlī attempted to secure this rich prize more firmly for himself by despatching Mālik al-Ashtar as governor but he was forestalled. There can be no doubt that ʿAmr had supported Muʿāwiya's cause in exchange for the governorate of Egypt, the land he had conquered but been deprived of by both ʿUthmān and ʿAlī. In the year after Ṣiffīn he returned in triumph and remained in control until his death five years later.

The loss of Egypt to ʿAlī's cause was accompanied by a more serious disintegration of his authority in Kūfa, and his coalition, divided by its own internal contradictions and demoralized by the apparent irresolution of its leader, soon dissolved; only the *Anṣār* and some elements of the *qurrā'*, who like Mālik al-Ashtar had remained loyal, continued to support his case. Meanwhile, after the arbitration, Muʿāwiya openly asserted his claims to the caliphate and reached agreement with many of the tribal leaders. The end came with unexpected swiftness in 40/661 when ʿAlī was assassinated in the mosque of Kūfa, not by one of his rival's agents, but by a member of the Khawārij. His son al-Ḥasan was soon persuaded to abandon any claim to the succession and Muʿāwiya aided and supported by the *ashrāf* of Iraq was able to occupy the country without serious resistance. It was not just a victory of Muʿāwiya over ʿAlī but it was also a victory of the Quraysh and their Syrian followers over the Iraqis and, within Iraq itself, of the *ashrāf* over the *qurrā'*, but the conflicts were by no means over and in different forms they were to plague the Umayyad regime for the next century, and bring about its eventual downfall.

The death of ʿAlī brings to an end the era of the *Rāshidūn*, the four "orthodox" caliphs of Islamic tradition, sometimes also known as the "patriarchal" caliphs. It had been a period of very great achievement. The vast Muslim conquests were by no means complete, north-eastern Iran and Sind in the east, North Africa and Spain in the west were not occupied until the Umayyad period, but a huge area was already under Muslim government; one vast empire had been destroyed, another severely weakened. But Muslim rule was not imposed by brute force

alone: the armies were fairly small and in areas like Egypt, the Jazīra and the Iranian plateau the number of Muslim settlers was insignificant compared with the local population, and yet only in Iran is there any indication of widespread popular resistance. The Muslims may have had serious differences among themselves but the local populations were either unwilling or unable to take advantage of this. Another remarkable achievement was the maintenance of the unity of the Muslim community in the face of regionalist tendencies. Despite their differences, almost all Muslims believed that they should be governed by a single caliph and despite the vast geographical dispersal, they kept a common religion and a common culture.

Not everything had been easy or smooth, however, and problems had developed which divided the community both at this time and in the centuries to come. Essentially they were those which had already been apparent after the Prophet's death and the questions the community had faced at that time, who should be caliph and what powers was he to have and who should constitute the élite of the Islamic state, were no nearer a generally acceptable answer twenty-five years, four caliphs and one civil war later. It was resolution of these questions which was to take all the power and skill of the Umayyad caliphs and their servants.

Notes

1. Crone and Hinds (*God's Caliph*) have shown that the title, which is first securely attested in the time of ʿUthmān was *khalīfat Allāh*, not, as has been argued, *khalīfat rasūl Allāh*, that is successor to the Prophet. The implication of this is that the Umayyads did claim divine sanction for their rule.

chapter four

THE UMAYYAD CALIPHATE

The Sufyanid Caliphs: Muʿāwiya and his Family 41–64/661–684

The assassination of ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib in 40/661 left his rival Muʿāwiya b. Abī Sufyān as the undoubted strongman of the Muslim community. Muʿāwiya was by this time in his fifties, having been born in the first decade of the seventh century. His father, Abū Sufyān, had emerged as leader of the Meccans in the years that followed the battle of Badr and had conducted the negotiations which brought the city to acknowledge the authority of the Prophet. His young son received a political education in the best traditions of the Quraysh. Like his father, he became a Muslim at the time of the conquest of Mecca, later that is, than many over whom he was subsequently to rule, but his education meant that he became one of Muhammad's secretaries and part of the new Muslim élite. After Muḥammad's death, he and his elder brother Yazīd went on the expeditions to Syria, where the family had owned property before the coming of Islam. Yazīd's premature death from plague meant that Muʿāwiya came to be the leader of the family and governor of Syria after the death of Abū ʿUbayda. He remained governor without interruption or challenge for the next twenty years, thus obtaining an unrivalled opportunity to build up and strengthen his power base in the province.

While his place in the affections of the Syrians was secure, even his enemies attested that the problems he faced in the rest of the Islamic world were formidable. He had to assert not only his personal power but also the credibility of the caliphate and the unity of the Muslim community which had been so badly damaged in the preceding years, and he faced opposition not just from people who resented his assumption of power, but people who resented the whole idea of a strong and effective government. Perhaps his greatest achievement was to ensure that, despite the stresses his policy inevitably caused, the Muslim world

remained united enough to resist the attacks of its enemies and to expand its own borders.

Muʿāwiya's character and policies emerge with some clarity from the sources and even hostile commentators paid tribute to his abilities.

His virtues were those of the successful politician, not of the brilliant general or the religious leader; of these the most important was the quality the Arab sources describe as *ḥilm*, the shrewdness, moderation and self-control that the situation demanded. Money was as important a weapon as the support of the Syrian army; he knew that most people have a price and he was prepared to pay it to avoid conflict. The loyalty of the Syrians was assured and their army was the most effective in the Muslim world but he did not use this military power as an instrument to keep control over other provinces; he used it to attack the Byzantines on land and sea. It was there as a reserve, but a reserve that was never needed after the death of his rival ʿAlī. He ruled rather by making agreements with those who held power in the provinces, by building up the power of those who were prepared to co-operate with him and by attaching as many important and influential figures to his cause as possible. It was not an absolute government in which governors were appointed and dismissed by a central authority but almost a confederation of different leaderships acknowledging one overall authority. From his provincial governors the caliph demanded that they accept his authority, that they keep order and that, in some cases, they forward revenues to the central government: it is recorded, for example, that of 60 million dirhams collected in the province of Baṣra, only 4 million were sent to Damascus, all the rest being spent in the province, mostly on paying the local military. Beyond that governors were allowed to establish their own power bases and assure the fortunes of their families and friends. Unlike his own relative and predecessor, ʿUthmān, however, he did not attempt to assert his authority through his own family. The Umayyads were an extensive family and contained a number of figures, notably Marwān b. al-Ḥakam, of great ability and political experience, but few of them were given important roles in the government, either as advisers at the court in Damascus or as provincial governors. They were mostly settled, in luxury, in Medina and the Ḥijāz, far from the real centres of power. Muʿāwiya's father had been a leading figure in the Meccan commonwealth, that system of trading agreements and alliances which had brought such prosperity to the city, and his son seems to have used this, rather than the absolutist models of the Byzantine empire or the religious claims of ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib, as the inspiration for his statecraft.

The most serious difficulties he faced were in Iraq. The death of ʿAlī had not solved any of the deep-rooted problems which the conquest

and the vast flood of immigrants had caused. The Iraqis were resentful of Syrian dominance but this feeling did not lead to any sense of unity. There remained the social divisions between the *ashrāf* and the early Muslim élite, now itself divided between the *qurrā'* and their descendants who clung to the memory of ʿAlī, and the Khawārij who rejected any but their own rigorist interpretation of Islam. There were regional differences as well; the problems of Kūfa were not those of Baṣra and the two cities were more rivals than allies. These tensions and divisions made violence almost inevitable and that it did not break out until after the death of the caliph was a tribute to his own talents and those of the men he chose.

In social terms, Muʿāwiya's triumph was the triumph of the *ashrāf* in Kūfa and the surrounding area. The fortunes of tribal leaders like al-Ashʿath al-Kindī and his son Muḥammad and Jarīr al-Bajalī prospered while those who had challenged their status, like Mālik al-Ashtar and his son Ibrāhīm and Ḥujr b. ʿAdī al-Kindī felt betrayed and resentful. As governor of this most difficult city, the caliph chose a man of ability and experience if of somewhat disreputable morals. Al-Mughīra b. Shuʿba al-Thaqafī came from the holy family of Ṭā'if, just as Muʿāwiya did from that of Mecca. Before the conquest of his city by the Muslims, he had fled to Medina and embraced the new religion in the year 8/629–30 to escape the consequences of a particularly outrageous murder. Islam, as Muḥammad said, cancelled all that had gone before and al-Mughīra, like Muʿāwiya, became one of the Prophet's secretaries. When Ṭā'if fell to the Muslims, al-Mughīra, helped by Abū Sufyān, was the man who destroyed the idol of the town and pillaged the temple treasury. Like many Thaqafīs he joined in the conquest of Iraq and his knowledge of Persian marked him out for administrative office. He became governor of Baṣra under ʿUmar and was removed after allegations of adultery but reappointed as governor of Kūfa at the end of ʿUmar's reign. In the conflict between ʿAlī and Muʿāwiya he had played a moderating role, advising ʿAlī to recognize Muʿāwiya in Syria. Nobody had more experience of the Iraqis and their problems and Muʿāwiya appointed him as governor, a post he held for nearly ten years from 41 to his death in 50 (661–70). He adopted a policy of keeping the peace and turning a blind eye to misdemeanours which did not threaten his authority. The Kūfans were allowed to keep for their own needs the revenues of the district known as Māh al-Kūfa in the Zagros mountains, and the regular payment of salaries, something ʿAlī had never been able to achieve, must have done much to induce co-operation.

In Baṣra Muʿāwiya turned at first to the obvious candidate, the Umayyad ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿĀmir. b. Kurayz who had already held the

office under ʿUthmān and had begun the conquests of Khurāsān and Sīstān. Now reappointed he again opened campaigns in the east, notably in Sīstān, and Arab armies even entered distant Kābul. While his fighting qualities were not in doubt, however, ʿAbd Allāh seems to have been either unable or unwilling to undertake the maintenance of law and order in Baṣra and there may have been some resentment against these distant campaigns. He was dismissed in 44/664 and replaced by the most remarkable of Muʿāwiya's subordinates, Ziyād b. Abīhi otherwise known as Ziyād b. Abī Sufyān. Like al-Mughīra, he came from Ṭā'if, from a Thaqafī background although his exact parentage was obscure as his name implies (Ziyād son of his father). He joined the Thaqīf in southern Iraq in the earliest stages and because of his education he was put in charge of the division of the booty and then became secretary to successive governors, including al-Mughīra who became the patron of this bright young man. He was one of ʿAlī's most consistent supporters, refusing to be reconciled to Muʿāwiya even after ʿAlī's death, and remaining in Fārs until 42/662–3 when, with al-Mughīra acting as intermediary, he was reconciled to the new caliph. Muʿāwiya recognized that he had both the abilities and the all-important local connections to be his right-hand man in Baṣra and he was duly appointed. Ziyād had a very positive view of the governor's responsibilities and his conception of the office was deeply influential in the later development of ideas of government. In a widely reported speech he made to the people of Baṣra on his appointment, he is said to have offered both a carrot and a stick. The good news was that the '*aṭā*' was to be paid regularly and that they would not be forced on long campaigns in distant regions, and he also promised to be accessible at all times to his subjects (he himself never led armies to the east). On the other hand he promised draconian measures to enforce law and order within the city; there was to be a curfew, tribal and clan solidarities were no longer to be used to protect the guilty and the *shurṭa* or police force was to ensure the maintenance of peace. He ended with the celebrated warning, as he surveyed the people gathered before him, that he saw heads tottering on shoulders and they were to make sure that their own stayed in place. The policies seem to have worked and Ziyād enjoyed the favour and confidence of the caliph to the extent that he was acknowledged as Muʿāwiya's half brother and was officially known as Ziyād b. Abī Sufyān as a result.

In 50/670 on al-Mughīra's death, he replaced his former patron as governor of Kūfa as well as Baṣra and hence became a virtual viceroy in the east.

In Kūfa, his firmness contrasted with al-Mughīra's more easy-going ways but the reliability of his financial administration went far to

compensate for this. He reorganized the city into four quarters, each with chiefs appointed by and responsible to him in order to control the population. As governor of Iraq he also controlled appointments in Iran. Here it is clear that he encouraged further conquests as a way of relieving the pressure on resources in Iraq. From 47/667 on he sent a series of armies to Khurāsān. Hitherto the Arabs had maintained a small garrison in Marv but otherwise left the administration in the hands of the local princes. Ziyād decided to change this position in a way which was to have extremely important consequences for Islamic history. In 51/671 he sent to the provinces a large contingent of 50,000 troops from both Baṣra and Kūfa, not as a garrison but as settlers, and they established themselves in the Marv oasis. This meant that Khurāsān had a larger number of Muslim settlers than any other area outside the Fertile Crescent, more than Egypt and certainly more than any area in western Iran. For the moment this emigration solved some of the problems of Iraq but it was the descendants of these settlers who were, in the end, to destroy the Umayyad caliphate itself.

Iraq and the east then were managed by Muʿāwiya through what some must have seen as a Thaqafī mafia. Thaqafīs were experienced in the affairs of Iraq before the coming of Islam, well educated (it is worth noting how important the education of both al-Mughīra and Ziyād was in ensuring their success) and they had close connections with the Quraysh and the Umayyads from before Muḥammad's time. In addition, the Thaqīf had played a major role in the conquest of Iraq; nobody could say they were outsiders, creatures of a distant and unresponsive government. All these factors made for a system which worked for Muʿāwiya's reign; when the great Ziyād died in 53/673 he was succeeded a few years later in all his offices by his son ʿUbayd Allāh, more hasty and given to the use of force than his father, but a man whose devotion to the Umayyad cause could not have been doubted.

Muʿāwiya's power base was in Syria but, compared with Iraq, we are fairly badly informed about the position in the province. The Islamic historical tradition was developed in Iraq under ʿAbbasid rule, and the sources tend to be hostile to the Umayyads and concerned with Iraqi and Khurāsānī affairs. It is clear, however, that Muʿāwiya drew support from a wide cross-section of Syrian tribes, both from those who had arrived at the time of the conquest and those who had been settled in Byzantine times. As yet the feud between the Qays and Yaman which was to plague Syria for so many centuries was not a major problem. He gathered around himself what might be described as a cabinet of Syrian leaders who were his right-hand men; some of these were Qurashīs, including ʿAbd al-Raḥmān the son of the great general Khālid b.

al-Walīd, who was powerful in the Homs area, but none of them were Umayyads and they tended to come from the less important clans of the Quraysh, notably from the Fihrīs like al-Ḍaḥḥāk b. Qays who had played an important role in the conquest of the Jazīra. The others were mostly from Yamāmī tribes, including Shuraḥbīl b. al-Simṭ al-Kindī whose power base was in Homs, and Ḥassān b. Mālik b. Baḥdal, chief of the powerful Kalb tribe. This inner circle assured the loyalty of different groups in Syria and the Jazīra and was occasionally used on difficult missions outside that area. While they were sometimes made governors of the districts within Syria, they were never appointed to Iraq or the east and the Syrian army was kept busy attacking the Byzantines. Rhodes was taken in 52/672 and Crete in 54/674 while during the last seven years of Muʿāwiya's reign, the caliph's son Yazīd led continuous attacks on Constantinople itself (54–60/674–80). These expeditions were mostly raids and even such areas as the Mediterranean islands that were captured and held were used as sources of tribute but not for colonization. The Arabs of the Jazīra led similar expeditions into Armenia but again there was no extensive settlement of new areas such as the Iraqis were accomplishing in Khurāsān. This suggests that the motives for the warfare were to provide the Syrians with military experience and financial rewards rather than to cope with the problem of over-population. Muʿāwiya managed the Syrians with consummate skill and their loyalty to him was famous; it was only after his death that serious divisions began to appear.

Egypt was controlled almost as an appendage of Syria. Arab settlement here was very limited, being confined almost entirely to the cities of Fusṭāṭ and Alexandria. In the struggle with ʿAlī, Muʿāwiya had received the loyal backing of ʿAmr b. al-ʿĀṣ, anxious to regain control of the province he had conquered for Islam, and ʿAmr ruled Egypt almost as a partner until his death in 43/663. For most of the rest of the reign, 47–62/667–82, Egypt was governed loyally by Maslama b. Mukhallad, the only member of the *Anṣār* to achieve a high rank in Muʿāwiya's government.

If Muʿāwiya's caliphate was decentralized politically, it was decentralized administratively as well. No attempt was made to introduce a general, Arabic-speaking administrative system for the whole Muslim world. On the contrary, each province continued the local traditions of the previous rulers. In Syria financial administration was almost entirely in the hands of local Christians, including Sarjūn son of Manṣūr who had held the same office for Heraclius at the time of the Muslim conquest. In Egypt, as we know from the slightly later papyri of Qurra b. Sharīk, the Byzantine system continued almost unchanged with the local headmen

responsible for tax collecting and local administration. In Khurāsān we have already seen that the local magnates continued to manage their own affairs, only paying tribute to the Arabs. Even in Iraq, the area most affected by the Arab expansion, the native landowners continued to play a role in local administration. This local autonomy was typified by the coinage; there was no Islamic coinage as such, rather each province used and supplemented where necessary the existing money supply, the gold *dīnār* of the Byzantine areas and the silver *dirham* of the Sasanian countries. Taxation systems differed as a consequence and there was no uniformity in the dues paid by the native inhabitants of different areas, these being determined by local tradition and the circumstances of the conquest rather than by government policy. Muʿāwiya supplemented the limited income derived from provincial taxation in two ways; the first was by the frontier warfare and there can be no doubt that at this stage, booty and tribute helped to secure the loyalty of the Syrians. The second way was by large-scale agricultural developments. We know most about this in the Ḥijāz around Medina since his activities provoked considerable opposition, but no doubt other likely areas were developed as well. This large-scale farming, using the labour of *mawālī* (freedmen, sing. *mawlā*) or slaves meant a substantial income for the treasury. In Iraq, the extensive *ṣawāfī* lands which had caused so much anger during the reign of ʿUthmān, were taken over as government property, or rather they ceased to be the *māl al-muslimīn* (wealth of the Muslims), controlled by the Muslims, but became rather the *māl Allāh*, controlled by the caliph. The Kūfans were paid their *ʿaṭā'*, regularly and honestly, but they no longer had direct control over the lands which produced it.

The one serious problem which disturbed the later years of Muʿāwiya's reign was the ordering of the succession. Muʿāwiya was determined that his son Yazīd should succeed him and that he should be formally acknowledged by the Muslim community in his father's lifetime. Many were scandalized by the idea. No caliph had been so succeeded by his son and those who opposed the plan were quick to call for a *shūra* or some more open form of decision and accused Muʿāwiya of attempting to set up a hereditary monarchy. Everyone understood that the acceptance of Yazīd would mean the maintenance of the sort of Syria-based regime which his father had set up and the idea was bitterly opposed therefore, not just by the Iraqis but also by those Umayyads and other Qurashīs in the Ḥijāz who had been effectively excluded from power by Muʿāwiya. In the end the opposition was silenced by threats or payments but when Muʿāwiya died in Rajab 60/April 680, his son, although able, well liked and of proven military ability, faced a whole series of challenges.

The Kūfans had not lost their enthusiasm for the house of ʿAlī during the long years of Muʿāwiya's reign since they believed that only the coming to power of the Family of the Prophet would restore Kūfa and the Kūfans to their rightful position. ʿAlī's elder son al-Ḥasan had abandoned his claims to leadership but his younger brother al-Ḥusayn was prepared to take up the cause. On the death of Muʿāwiya al-Ḥusayn left his place of retirement in Medina and travelled across the desert towards Kūfa to seek his supporters, accompanied only by a small band of family and friends. The governor of Iraq, Ziyād's son ʿUbayd Allāh, was waiting for him; he prevented the small party from reaching the settled lands and, after some days of confrontation when al-Ḥusayn and his followers suffered increasingly from thirst, there was a short battle at a place called Karbalā', and al-Ḥusayn and most of his party were killed. The Kūfans had made no effort to support him. It was 10 Muḥarram 61/10 October 680. At the time, the attempt to raise the ʿAlid banner in Iraq was a pathetic failure but the events of the massacre at Karbalā' made a deep impression on the Muslim community. Many felt that the grandson of the Prophet, a man whom Muḥammad loved and had played with on his knee, had been brutally done to death by the forces of godless oppression. Al-Ḥusayn might be dead but his memory lived on; the accounts of his sufferings at the hands of Umayyad troops were elaborated in Kūfa to discredit the regime, and al-Ḥusayn became the symbol for the sufferings of all the weak and defenceless. To talk of Shiʿites in Iraq at this stage is misleading; the development of a Shiʿite "sect" was a much later development, but the death of al-Ḥusayn played an important part in the attachment of people's hopes and political aspirations to the family of ʿAlī.

The death of al-Ḥusayn meant the effective end of trouble in Iraq; much more intractable were the problems of the Ḥijāz. Yazīd was well aware of the strength of feeling against him in the Holy Cities and he made great efforts to be conciliatory, but some refused to take the oath of allegiance, notably ʿAbd Allāh, the son of that al-Zubayr who had died at the Battle of the Camel. An austere and determined figure, he held that the caliphate should not be the plaything of the Sufyanids but that the ruler should be chosen from all the Quraysh. Ibn al-Zubayr established himself in Mecca where he became a rallying point for all those who opposed Yazīd's claims, asserting that there should be a new *shūra*. The Medinese, for their part, were motivated by other considerations as well; it is clear that Muʿāwiya's agricultural activities in Medina had aroused widespread opposition, especially from the *Anṣār*, who felt that their city was being taken over by an absentee landlord and they rallied to the anti-Umayyad party. There were some two years

of negotiation and manoeuvre while Yazīd and a series of governors attempted to defuse the situation. Finally it came to open hostilities; the Umayyads in the city, led by Marwān b. al-Ḥakam, were driven out to Syria while a Syrian expeditionary force marched on the Prophet's city. The Medinese attempted to defend themselves, just as the Prophet had done, by digging a trench around the town but the Syrians were an easy match for them and at the battle of the Ḥarra (Dhu'l-Ḥijja 63/August 683) they were defeated and the city sacked. It only remained now for the Syrians to march on Mecca and eject Ibn al-Zubayr and it was while they were engaged on the unsavoury task of attacking the Kaʿba itself that news came of Yazīd's death and once more the whole situation was changed.

The disasters of Karbalā' and the Ḥarra cast a cloud over Yazīd's brief reign. Yet it was not devoid of achievement. Compared with Muʿāwiya's ambitious raids, he tried to stabilize the frontiers between Syria and Byzantium; outposts on the Sea of Marmara were abandoned while in the north of Syria itself, he carved up the over-large *jund* of Homs to make a new frontier province based on Qinnasrīn which was to include both Antioch and Manbij. Had he lived longer, his reputation might have recovered from the shocks of the early part of his reign; as it was he died in his desert encampment at Ḥawwārīn in Rabīʿ I 64/November 683, when he was only about forty years of age.

Yazīd was succeeded immediately by his young son Muʿāwiya. His accession was due to the influence of his cousin, Ḥassān b. Mālik b. Baḥdal of Kalb, and the prince himself proved sickly. Muʿāwiya II, the last of the Sufyanids, died after only a few weeks.

The Foundation of the Marwanid Caliphate and the Achievement of ʿAbd al-Malik 64–86/684–705

The death of Muʿāwiya II led to a deep crisis in the Umayyad regime; Yazīd's other sons were too young to be generally acceptable and the major provinces of the empire were slipping rapidly from the control of the Syrians. ʿUbayd Allāh b. Ziyād was forced to flee Baṣra, despite a speech in which he not only recalled his own Baṣran connections but promised to retain the wealth of the province for its people. These concessions were not enough, and almost alone he fled along the direct desert road to the Ḥawrān in Syria. On his arrival in Syria he found the Syrians in total disarray. Al-Ḍaḥḥāk b. Qays al-Fihrī, one of the last surviving members of Muʿāwiya's inner circle, held power in Damascus but wavered between acknowledging Ibn al-Zubayr or finding a suitable Syrian candidate. Many other Syrians were willing to acknowledge Ibn

al-Zubayr as well, notably the Qaysī tribesmen of the northern part of the country, and even leading members of the Umayyad family were preparing to go to the Ḥijāz to offer their allegiance to him. Not all Syrians, however, were prepared to surrender their privileged position. The Kalbī chief Ibn Baḥdal was related by marriage to the ruling house and now put his power and that of his tribe firmly behind the continuation of the Umayyad house. ʿUbayd Allāh b. Ziyād had been taught by his experience in Baṣra how closely his own fortunes were linked to those of the dynasty and on his arrival in Syria he too set about organizing the resistance.

The most serious problem facing Ibn Ziyād and the Kalbī chief was that of finding a suitable Umayyad candidate. Ibn Baḥdal favoured Muʿāwiya II's young half-brothers but ʿUbayd Allāh turned to Marwān b. al-Ḥakam. Marwān was by this time an old man. He had served his uncle ʿUthmān as his right-hand man in Medina and after the caliph's assassination had remained to become leader of the Umayyads in the Ḥijāz. He had never moved to Syria and had remained very much in the background during Muʿāwiya's reign, but the troubles which led to the battle of the Ḥarra had forced him to leave along with the rest of the Umayyads in Medina and make their way north as refugees. Marwān seems to have been resigned to accepting Ibn al-Zubayr when he was met by ʿUbayd Allāh, newly arrived from Iraq who persuaded him to change his mind. Ibn Baḥdal then summoned a meeting of Syrian *ashrāf*, not in Damascus where al-Ḍaḥḥāk b. Qays remained in control, but in his own territory at the old Ghassanid centre of Jābiya. Here he presided over a sort of extended *shūra* at which Marwān was finally acknowledged as the candidate of the Umayyad party, in exchange for financial promises. Marwān had no experience or contacts in Syria, he would be entirely dependent on the *ashrāf* from the Yamāmī tribes who had elected him.

Not everyone in Syria could accept this, especially the leaders of the Qaysī party who more and more turned to al-Ḍaḥḥāk b. Qays. They persuaded him not to go to the Jābiya meeting but rather to prepare for battle. The Yamāmīs marched to meet them, Damascus was brought over to their side by the prompt action of a scion of the old Ghassanid ruling family and, in Muḥarram 65/July 684, just nine months after Yazīd's death, the two sides met in a terrible battle at Marj Rāhiṭ, on the road from Damascus to the north. The Yamāmī tribesmen were victorious and the Qaysīs although much more numerous than their opponents were driven from the field with a dreadful slaughter, al-Ḍaḥḥāk himself being killed. While the remnants of the Qaysīs, led by Zufar b. Ḥārith al-Kilābī, fled to Qarqīsiyyā' on the Euphrates, Marwān was acknowledged as caliph in Damascus.

The war had been won but the bloody victory at Marj Rāhiṭ had long-term consequences which were to be fatal for Syria and the Umayyads alike because it divided the Arabs of the province into two separate parties, Qays/Muḍar on one side and Yaman on the other. The basic distinction between northern (Qays) and southern (Yaman) Arabs was an ancient but hitherto fairly harmless one. In theory the allegiance of each tribe was decided according to complicated genealogies but in practice there was considerable confusion and some tribes were claimed by both sides. In Umayyad times the division was in part geographical, the Qaysī tribes being mostly settled in the northern parts of the province, in the newly created *jund* of Qinnasrīn, and the Jazīra, including the Byzantine frontier areas as far east as Armenia. Yamanī tribes occupied the steppes around Homs, the Palmyrena, Palestine and the areas to the east of the Jordan valley. It was also a division arising from the Islamic conquests. Some Yamanī tribes like the Kalb, Tanūkh, Judhām and Taghlib had been in Syria before the coming of Islam, while the majority of Qaysīs like the Sulaym, Kilāb and ʿUqayl were newly arrived from the Arabian peninsula, many of them brought to the Jazīra by Muʿāwiya in ʿUthmān's reign. Some newly arrived tribes from south Arabia, like the Kindīs and Haḍramīs settled in Homs, joined the Yaman group. Much of the hostility must have been the result of disputes over grazing rights. Many of the Yamanīs came from tribes that were still in part Christian, like the ruling house of Kalb where Ibn Baḥdal's grandfather had remained Christian until his death during ʿAlī's caliphate. They had also in many cases been allies of the Byzantines and in some ways the battle of Marj Rāhiṭ was the battle of the Yarmūk refought, with the victory this time going to the old-established Syrian tribes. The confused succession to Muʿāwiya II had led to the emergence of two coalitions, Qaysīs supporting al-Ḍaḥḥāk b. Qays and Yamanīs supporting Ibn Baḥdal and Marwān but the battle meant that the split continued beyond the immediate crisis. Qays had so many dead to avenge and the feud was to continue for generations. As late as the nineteenth century, battles were still being fought in Palestine between groups calling themselves Qays and Yaman.

The newly established caliph had a mass of problems to contend with but he and his supporters, ʿUbyad Allāh and Ibn Baḥdal, set about tackling them with energy and determination. Marwān's son Muḥammad was sent to contain the Qaysīs on the middle Euphrates while ʿUbayd Allāh prepared for the reconquest of Iraq. An expedition to the Ḥijāz ended in failure but the caliph, accompanied by Ibn Baḥdal and another of his sons, ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, had a signal triumph when, with the help of the *ashrāf* of Fusṭāṭ, they seized Egypt from the representative of Ibn

al-Zubayr. Already the characteristics of the new regime were becoming apparent. Marwān looked back for his political guidance not to Muʿāwiya but to the uncle he had served so long and well, the Caliph ʿUthmān. Like ʿUthmān he made the family the basis of his power, just as Muʿāwiya had neglected it; his sons Muḥammad and ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz had been given military commands almost from the beginning while his eldest son, ʿAbd al-Malik, was soon acknowledged as heir to the caliphate. It was a shaky beginning, but a new regime had been born.

Marwān died, an old man by the standard of the day, in Ramaḍān 65/April 685 and he was succeeded immediately by ʿAbd al-Malik, his son and designated heir, the accession being smoothly managed by the Yamanīs. The new caliph had been born in his father's house in Medina about 26/646–7, near the beginning of ʿUthmān's reign, and he was a boy when the old caliph was killed. Like most members of his family, his relations with Muʿāwiya were not close and he grew up, a pious and serious young man, in Medina where he worked as his father's assistant in the administration. He came to Syria with his father after the expulsion of the Umayyads from the Ḥijāz and was one of his closest advisers during the few months of his caliphate. His political experience may not have been very extensive when, now, in his early forties, he found himself caliph, but he was methodical, careful and determined to make his power effective.

The obstacles the new caliph faced were formidable. The Syrians were far from united and he was heavily dependent on the Yamanī leaders, Ibn Baḥdal and Rawḥ b. Zinbāʿ al-Judhāmī, and the support of members of his own family. Egypt was now firmly under Umayyad control again but while it was an important source of income, the smallness of the Arab population meant that it provided little in the way of military support. Ibn al-Zubayr had consolidated his power in the Ḥijāz while his brother Muṣʿab had moved to Baṣra and was working to win over the whole of Iraq to his side. In Kūfa, on the other hand, Mukhtār b. Abī ʿUbayd was trying to turn local discontents to his own advantage and seeking an ʿAlid candidate for the throne. Finally the Qaysīs of northern Syria and the Jazīra, defeated, bitter but by no means powerless, had established themselves under the leadership of Zufar b. al-Ḥārith al-Kilābī at Qarqīsiyyā' on the Euphrates and they continued to acknowledge Ibn al-Zubayr as their caliph.

ʿAbd al-Malik's forces began to take the initiative immediately after his succession. ʿUbayd Allāh b. Ziyād, whose arrival in Syria had done so much to assure the throne for the Marwanids, was now determined to return to Iraq and re-establish control. His progress was delayed by the activities of the Qaysīs in the Jazīra and by the time he approached Iraq

from the north, via Mosul, Mukhtār had consolidated his position in Kūfa. Against ʿUbayd Allāh he sent the son of ʿAlī's old champion, Ibrāhīm b. Mālik al-Ashtar who was to prove his most effective military commander. After some setbacks, the Kūfans defeated the army and killed ʿUbayd Allāh himself at a battle on the river Khāzir, near Mosul (Muḥarram 67/August 686). With ʿUbayd Allāh gone, ʿAbd al-Malik took no further initiatives to retake Iraq for the next five years. He contented himself with consolidating his power in Syria and waited while his opponents destroyed each other.

In Iraq, the social tensions which had led to the murder of ʿUthmān and the problems which confronted ʿAlī, broke out again with renewed virulence. Umayyad rule had tended to favour the interests of the *ashrāf* and there had emerged a new landowning aristocracy in the neighbourhood of Kūfa where families like those of al-Ashʿath b. Qays al-Kindī had become important property-owners. Further to the south, much land had been reclaimed in the marshes of southern Iraq, by Ziyād and Muʿāwiya's *mawlā*, ʿAbd Allāh b. Darrāj, but the beneficiaries of this reclamation had not been the people of Iraq as a whole but the supporters of Ziyād and the Umayyad government. As in Medina, Muʿāwiya's large-scale agricultural developments had proved a major source of discontent. Along with these old disputes about landownership and social status among the Arabs, a new problem had emerged in the generation since ʿAlī had died. Many of the local people, especially in the Kūfa area, had been converted to Islam. While this was no doubt welcome in many ways, it did pose serious problems to the rulers. The real question was how far these new converts, usually referred to as *mawālī* (clients of freedmen) of the Arab tribes, should be treated as first-class Muslims. While in theory all should be equal, objections were raised on two fronts. The non-Muslims paid a higher rate of tax on their landed property, the *kharāj* and a poll-tax on top of that, while the Arab Muslims simply paid the *ṣadaqa*. This meant that conversion would result in a substantial loss of income for the government. Naturally converts tended to be denied the fiscal benefits of their conversion and, equally naturally, they resented it. But the idea of raising the status of the *mawālī* was also opposed by the *ashrāf* who feared that this flood of new converts would escape their power and undermine their privileges. In this way a whole new set of destructive social antagonisms came into being.

As usual it was in the turbulent city of Kūfa that these tensions became most apparent. The weakening of the Umayyad grip had led immediately to unrest. After Muʿāwiya's death the Kūfans had looked to ʿAlī's son al-Ḥusayn to provide leadership and al-Ḥusayn's death had

reinforced, rather than diminished, the loyalty of the Kūfans to the ʿAlid family, now represented by al-Ḥusayn's son ʿAlī and his half-brother, Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafiyya, both in the Ḥijāz and both reluctant to become actively involved in politics in Iraq. The lack of any forceful ʿAlid leader in Kūfa at this moment led to a certain jockeying for position among old associates of ʿAlī until the leadership was gradually taken over by the enigmatic personality of Mukhtār b. Abī ʿUbayd who by Rabīʿ I 66/October 685 had driven out the governors sent by Ibn al-Zubayr and made himself master of the city. Mukhtār was by this time an elderly man; he had been born in Ṭā'if around the time of the *Hijra* but seems to have gone to Iraq when ʿUmar sent his father Abū ʿUbayd b. Masʿūd to command the armies there. Abū ʿUbayd had been killed at the Battle of the Bridge but the family remained in the area, acquired property and Mukhtār himself held minor office during ʿAlī's caliphate. Although a Thaqafī, he does not seem to have formed part of the Thaqīf group enriched by Ziyād and his son and he remained a representative of the old Islamic élite of Kūfa, anxious to regain its prestige. By the time he assumed control in the city, he was very experienced and few could have had as good an understanding of the city and its problems.

At first Mukhtār seems to have tried to enter into partnership with Ibn al-Zubayr but the latter distrusted him and negotiations came to nothing. He then espoused the cause of the ʿAlid family but it was more difficult to find a candidate who would accept the doubtful honour; both ʿAlī b. al-Ḥusayn and Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafiyya were in the Ḥijāz, under the eye of Ibn al-Zubayr, and neither of them were keen to share the fate of al-Ḥusayn; while ʿAlī refused absolutely, Ibn al-Ḥanafiyya's replies were ambiguous but allowed Mukhtār to claim that he enjoyed his support. He proclaimed Ibn al-Ḥanafiyya, not just as caliph but as *mahdī*. This implied that he was a divinely guided saviour, a messiah, who would, with God's support, establish justice for all Muslims. This seems to have been a novel concept in Islam but the idea of the *mahdī* was widely accepted and was to provide the ideological inspiration for many subsequent movements and rebellions. Ibn al-Ḥanafiyya's candidature marked a new departure in other ways. Al-Ḥasan and al-Ḥusayn were both sons of Fāṭima and hence direct descendants of the Prophet as well as of ʿAlī but Ibn al-Ḥanafiyya was not; it was only his descent from ʿAlī that gave him a claim to belong to the Holy Family and his acceptance is a sign of the increasing importance of the memory of ʿAlī among many in Iraq.

Mukhtār's supporters came from many different, largely irreconcilable groups. He took power with the support of Arabs from all the different

tribes represented in the population and some *mawālī* about 500 in number. While it was not originally a movement of *mawālī* their numbers and influence seem to have grown as a result of Mukhtār's success and one of their leaders, Abū ʿAmra Kaysān, was appointed chief of police. Mukhtār's propaganda explicitly claimed that he was acting in the interests of the "weak" and of the *mawālī*. At the same time he tried to win over the *ashrāf* and so create a united Kūfan militia but the nobles were increasingly alarmed by the radical nature of Mukhtār's movement and their support was at best half-hearted.

The threat of ʿUbayd Allāh b. Ziyād attacking Kūfa from the north, and the need to raise an effective army against the menace brought the tensions between Mukhtār and the *ashrāf* into the open. The latter complained that he had given the *mawālī* horses, paid them the '*aṭā*' and generally favoured them unreasonably and this led to fighting in Kūfa itself at which the *ashrāf* were worsted. At the same time, Mukhtār's relations with Muṣʿab b. al-Zubayr also became increasingly problematic and, after Mukhtār refused to accept a Qurashī governor from the Ḥijāz, Muṣʿab and he became rivals in Iraq. The defeated *ashrāf* of Kūfa took advantage of this and, under the leadership of Muḥammad b. al-Ashʿath, they and their followers, 10,000 strong, left Kūfa and joined Muṣʿab in Baṣra. With the Zubayrid forces they then returned to Kūfa, defeated Mukhtār's supporters and finally killed him after besieging him in the governor's palace in 67/April 687.

Mukhtār's revolt had lasted less than two years and his control had never extended beyond Kūfa and its countryside. None the less it is of great importance in illustrating the problems of early Islamic society, showing clearly the antagonism between the *ashrāf* and other Arabs and the *mawālī* who, for the first time, play a significant role in the politics of the community. The idea of the *mahdī* too was to have a lasting importance and many of the ideas which had been developed in Kūfa during Mukhtār's brief, revolutionary rule, survived among small, closely knit groups of Iraqi Muslims and were to provide the inspiration for future rebels. At the time, however, his failure was complete and Muṣʿab and his forces extracted bloody reprisals on his supporters in Kūfa. He had tried to put together a coalition of all the groups in Kūfa, a united front which would once again restore the city to a position of influence in the Islamic community. Despite his attempts at compromise, he had been defeated by the internal divisions. He had also been let down by the ʿAlid family and even Ibn al-Ḥanafiyya's endorsements were ambiguous. Many supporters of the family were dubious about Mukhtār's claims to represent them.

The collapse of Mukhtār's rebellion meant that Ibn al-Zubayr and ʿAbd al-Malik were now the major rivals for power. ʿAbd Allāh b.

al-Zubayr had asserted his claim to leadership on Muʿāwiya's death and had fled to Mecca rather than acknowledge Yazīd. He represented and was supported by those Qurashīs who resented the way in which the Umayyad family had monopolized power which they felt should have been more generally distributed among the Quraysh, especially members of his own clan of Makhzūm, rivals of the Umayyads since the days of Abū Jahl and Abū Sufyān. He himself was an austere, some said a miserly figure, who directed operations from Mecca, gaining a certain prestige from his guardianship of the Holy Places but thereby distancing himself from events in the more populous parts of the Muslim world. In Iraq he was represented by his more dynamic and worldly brother Muṣʿab who attempted to control Iraq. Muṣʿab faced two main problems. In Kūfa there was Mukhtār and in southern Iraq and the areas around the Gulf there were the Khawārij.

The Khawārij, who had deserted ʿAlī, had remained largely quiescent under Muʿāwiya but his death seems to have sparked off new disturbances. Acting in small, fast-moving guerrilla groups they were a constant threat to the government of the settled areas. The two principal groups which threatened Zubayrid control were the Najdiyya and the Azāriqa. The former were based in Yamāma, on the eastern side of the Arabian peninsula and recruited almost entirely from the Ḥanīfa tribe who had supported Musaylima the false prophet at the time of the *Ridda*. They tried, with some success, to assert their control over ʿUmān and even the Yemen, and for a period in 68/687 they had more power in the Arabian peninsula than either Ibn al-Zubayr or the Umayyads. After 72/691, however, internal differences led to a breakup of their power and they were eventually subdued. Even more threatening were the Azāriqa of Ahwāz and Fārs against whom the Zubayrids were compelled to wage a long and exhausting struggle. Fortunately for Muṣʿab, he found a new and important ally to help him in this unrewarding task. Many Azdīs from ʿUmān had moved to Baṣra towards the end of the reign of Muʿāwiya and their chief, al-Muhallab b. Abī Ṣufra, established himself as one of the most powerful men in the area and a very successful soldier. He is also said to have introduced metal stirrups to Muslim armies for the first time. It was he and his men who provided the backbone of the Zubayrid army against the Khawārij and against Mukhtār. Despite his efforts, however, the Azāriqa remained a threat until after the family of al-Zubayr had been defeated.

Throughout this period of confusion and bloodshed in Iraq, ʿAbd al-Malik had consolidated his position in Syria. In 71 (691) he reached an agreement with Zufar b. al-Ḥārith al Kilābī and his Qaysī followers in the Jazīra who agreed to abandon Ibn al-Zubayr in exchange for a

privileged position at court and in the Umayyad army. After this, ʿAbd al-Malik was able to turn his attention to Iraq without any fear of disturbances along his lines of communication. The end when it came was swift. Muṣʿab was beset by troubles and resented by many Kūfans for the bloody way in which Mukhtār's rebellion had been suppressed while al-Muhallab was entirely occupied fighting the Khawārij in the south. The caliph in person led the army which defeated Muṣʿab at Dayr al-Jāthalīq (72/691) and entered Kūfa to receive the homage of the people. In the south, al-Muhallab was reconciled without much trouble to the new regime. The final act was the despatch of a small force under al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf to Mecca where, after the bombardment of the city and the Kaʿba itself, Ibn al-Zubayr was finally killed in Jumādā I 73/ October 692. The unity of the community had been restored. Once again the dissensions in Iraq had allowed the Umayyads and their Syrian supporters to dominate the richer and more populous areas to the east. It now remained for ʿAbd al-Malik to consolidate his gains and make his rule effective.

With the elimination of active opposition, ʿAbd al-Malik could pursue his policy of consolidating his authority. It seems that the events of the early part of the reign and the crisis which had affected the Umayyad caliphate since Muʿāwiya's death, had convinced him that the decentralized system that Muʿāwiya had introduced was not practical; under the control of a highly skilled manipulator like Muʿāwiya, it could be effective but it was not a solid foundation for building a state. He began a policy of administrative and political centralization which was to provide a model for many later Muslim governments. This involved the development of a standard Arabic coinage. Up to this time, the coinage had been essentially regional: in Iraq and the East, the Muslims had begun to issue silver *dirhams* based on Sasanian models with a simple Muslim overstrike from a very early period. As governor of Iraq under Muʿāwiya, Ziyād b. Abī Sufyān had minted *dirhams* bearing his own name. This reflects the early development of the *dīwān* system of paying the military which required large quantities of cash. In Syria, by contrast, there is no evidence that gold or silver were minted before the reign of ʿAbd al-Malik. There is some suggestion that copper coins (*fulūs*) were minted locally but even that remains uncertain. This probably reflects the slower development of systems of military pay in Syria and the absence of any centralized *dīwān*.

After ʿAbd al-Malik's reforms, the old distinction between the silver (*dirham*) areas of the Sasanian empire and the gold (*dīnār*) areas of Syria, Palestine and Egypt was maintained but from now on, after a few experiments with figurative designs including a "standing caliph"

portrait, all Arabic coinage was to be of a standard weight and design, bearing inscriptions but no images. The new gold *dīnārs* were introduced in 77/696–7 and the silver *dirhams* in 79/698–9. The gold *dīnārs*, which were probably produced in Damascus, carried pious phrases and the date, but neither the place of minting nor the name of the ruler. The *dirhams* produced in a number of mints in Iraq and the East gave the name of the mints, but not that of the caliph or governor. From the reign of the caliph Hishām, *dirham* production was centralized in Wāsiṭ, where the Syrian troops were stationed.

Along with this standardization of the coinage went an Arabization of the administration. From now on all the administration in whatever part of the empire was to be conducted in Arabic, once again eliminating local differences and forcing those Persian and Greek officials who wished to continue to work for the government, to learn the new ways. Nor was there any doubt that surplus taxation was to be forwarded to the treasury in Damascus; the Iraqis had lost the battle to retain the revenues of the Sawād in their own hands. All these activities served to introduce a unity and degree of control which had hitherto been lacking.

This administrative centralization reflected a broader political change. ʿAbd al-Malik's authority was based on his own family and on the Syrian army. His own family had been employed from Marwān's reign to govern different areas. His brother ʿAbd al-Azīz was ruler of Egypt for almost the entire reign, from the time of its conquest from Ibn al-Zubayr in 65/685 to the year before the caliph's death, keeping the province loyal and peaceful. Other experiments were not as successful; his brother Bishr b. Marwān does not seem to have been able to control Iraq and, as we shall see, family rule was not continued there. Another brother, Muḥammad b. Marwān, on the other hand, was governor of the Jazīra from its first subjection in 73/692–3 until 91/709–10, some years after the caliph's death. Here again a key province was held by a member of the Marwanid family who secured its loyalty to the regime. One result of this was that the family itself tended to become divided and represent different interests within the Syrian ruling group; Muḥammad b. Marwān, for example, became closely associated with the Qaysīs of the northern Jazīra and the Byzantine frontier region, while the caliph's son Sulaymān, living at Ramla in Palestine, became identified with the Yamāmī interest. These associations were later to lead to differences and divisions within the ruling house itself.

The Syrian army also contained different groups. The Marwanids had been brought to power by the Yaman tribes under the leadership of the Kalbīs, who for the first seven years of the reign remained the mainstay

of the forces. The agreements of 71/691 between the caliph and the Qaysī leader, Zufar b. al-Ḥārith at Qarqīsiyyā', however, broke this monopoly of power. From this point on ʿAbd al-Malik tried to balance the interests of these two groups, both at court and in the army. It was not an easy task. The feud between the Yamanī groups and the Qaysīs which had emerged after Yazīd I's death was exacerbated by raids and counter-raids, at first in the Jazīra and Palmyrena but later as far away as the Ḥijāz and Iraq. Tribes which were not previously involved, and whose genealogical affiliations were obscure, were drawn into this conflict whether they liked it or not. The Taghlib, for example, were a tribe which had lived for many years on the middle Euphrates but in the aftermath of the conquest they found their position threatened by newcomers from Arabia, the Banū Sulaym. The Sulaym were attached to the Qaysī group at Marj Rāhiṭ and so the Taghlib, to defend themselves, were forced to look for protection from Kalbī leaders and so became attached to the Yamanī cause. In this way, the pernicious feud which had previously been confined to Syria alone, was spread through much of the Islamic world. The violence, raiding and counter-raiding was almost impossible to stop; the best that the caliph could do was to keep it under control by threats and himself paying the blood-money demanded to prevent further retaliation. Like the activities of the Khawārij, the Qays–Yaman feud illustrated the problems of transition from a nomad to a settled society and policy.

Iraq of course remained the major problem and it was here that ʿAbd al-Malik employed his greatest and most celebrated helper, al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf al-Thaqafī. He was born in Ṭā'if in 41/661 and was thus some twenty years younger than the caliph and still a young man when he was called to high office. He worked his way up through the military police, the *shurṭa*, and came to the caliph's attention during the preparations for the Iraq campaign of 71–2/690–1. After the fall of Kūfa, al-Ḥajjāj was sent to fulfil the unpopular task of reducing Ibn al-Zubayr in Mecca and his efficiency and loyalty were shown to their fullest. ʿAbd al-Malik's experiments with family rule in Iraq had not been a success so in 75/694, he turned to al-Ḥajjāj and put him in charge of both Baṣra and Kūfa, as Ziyād b. Abīhi had been before. In 78/697–8 Khurāsān and Sīstān were added to his responsibilities, making him effective overlord of all the eastern half of the caliphate. He did not administer Khurāsān directly but appointed the Azdī leader al-Muhallab who had fought the Khawārij so well and now became a major force in the Umayyad east. As soon as he was appointed to Iraq al-Ḥajjāj demonstrated his fierce determination to rule effectively. In this he was helped by his Thaqafī connections and while his origins are usually described as obscure, his mother

was actually the divorced wife of al-Mughīra b. Shuʿba al-Thaqafī, governor of Kūfa for Muʿāwiya.

From the beginning he seems almost to have goaded the Iraqis into rebellion, as if looking for an excuse to break them. Under pain of death he forced the armies of Kūfa and Baṣra into the field, to that most unrewarding of tasks, combating the Khawārij. Furthermore, in an effort at economy he reduced their *ʿaṭā'*, so that they were actually paid less than the Syrians. There was bound to be an explosion and five years after his appointment it came. The issue was an old bone of contention, the reluctance of the armies of Kūfa and Baṣra to go on long campaigns, and in the year 80/699, al-Ḥajjāj obliged ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Ashʿath to lead an expedition to Sīstān. Ibn al-Ashʿath was the greatest of the *ashrāf* of Iraq and a symbol of their pride and independence. His family had done much to undermine the positions of both ʿAlī and Mukhtār. To his army were attached a number of other *ashrāf*, so much so that it was called the "Peacock Army" from the wealth and display of its leaders. The campaign was hard but more difficult for the leaders to bear were the constant rebukes and instructions from al-Ḥajjāj, and this overbearing attitude finally drove Ibn al-Ashʿath to rebellion. He led his army west from Sīstān, through Fārs and defeated al-Ḥajjāj's forces at Tustar, 81/701, before sweeping on to establish himself in his home town of Kūfa. Al-Ḥajjāj maintained himself in Baṣra with Thaqafī support and a Syrian garrison but without massive Syrian aid, he was powerless to take the initiative.

In Kūfa Ibn al-Ashʿath was welcomed by all sections of the population but there must have been many in the city who remembered how he and his family had betrayed the cause of Mukhtār and the rifts soon began to show again. The caliph was seriously alarmed at the turn of events, and, to al-Ḥajjāj's disgust, offered terms. These included the dismissal of al-Ḥajjāj, the appointment of Ibn al-Ashʿath to high office and the raising of the *ʿaṭā'* of Iraqi troops to the Syrian level. Ibn al-Ashʿath wanted to accept these but his more determined followers among the *qurrā'* rejected them and he was forced to continue the fight. With the breakdown of negotiations, al-Ḥajjāj and the Syrians took the initiative again, defeating Ibn al-Ashʿath in a series of battles, notably at Dayr al-Jamājim (Rabīʿ I 82/April 701) and dividing his supporters by generous offers of amnesty to all those who would lay down their arms. Ibn al-Ashʿath himself was forced to leave Iraq and fled to the east where he eventually tried to take refuge with the Zunbīl, the prince of Zābulistān and the man he had originally been sent by al-Ḥajjāj to fight, but his followers were dispersed and he himself died soon after. Once again, the divisions among the Kūfans and the determined use of Syrian military

power by ʿAbd al-Malik and al-Ḥajjāj had frustrated the attempts of the Iraqis to recover their former status.

The aftermath of Ibn al-Ashʿath's rebellion saw the introduction of a new and more rigorous system of government in Iraq. The next year al-Ḥajjāj established a permanent garrison of Syrian troops at a new military centre, Wāsiṭ between Baṣra and Kūfa. Syrian troops seem to have developed effective military tactics: when faced by an enemy charge, they would get down on the ground and use their spears to present a bristling wall to the enemy. It required discipline, nerve and willingness to obey orders, but it proved effective against less well organized opponents. Henceforth these Syrian troops were to be the real ruling class in the area and the Iraqis, whether *ashrāf* or *qurrā'* or *mawālī*, were reduced to subject status. The revolt had been an attempt by the local leadership to assert its control and now it had been defeated, al-Ḥajjāj seemed determined to break them for ever.

There was also a fundamental change in the fiscal system of the state, at least as it operated in Iraq. Originally the *ʿaṭā* had been paid according to the role which the recipient, or his ancestors had paid in the Muslim conquests. It was, in fact, a reward for past service, and many in Iraq believed that it was their unalienable right. Al-Ḥajjāj was determined to change this. He saw clearly that this system meant that the caliph and his governor had very little executive authority and few rewards to offer their loyal supporters. He decided that the *ʿaṭā'* should be a salary, that is that it was a payment for serving in the army now, rather than a reward for what one's ancestors had done. People who did not fight would not be paid. Furthermore, this army was now largely made up of Syrian soldiers. This aroused the passionate hostility of many in Iraq who claimed that the provisions laid down by ʿUmar and supported by ʿAlī, were being destroyed by the impious Umayyads, but in the end al-Ḥajjāj's vision triumphed: by his death the *ʿaṭā'* had become a salary paid for service, not a reward received by ancient right. Thus the Muslim state developed a professional army, paid in cash salaries from the proceeds of public taxation, a structure familiar from the ancient world but virtually unknown in contemporary Western Europe.

Al-Ḥajjāj and members of the Umayyad family, notably the caliph's son Maslama, began a policy of large-scale land reclamations and development in central Iraq, digging new canals and bringing areas under cultivation, but the fruits of this policy went to the Umayyad family and their supporters and the profits were spent in Syria. Investment tended to be concentrated around the new centre of Wāsiṭ while the lands of the *ashrāf* and the *dihqāns* around Kūfa were neglected by the government. Thus both politically and economically, al-Ḥajjāj destroyed the

power of the Kūfan élite; the family of Ibn al-Ashʿath and others like them continued to enjoy a modest prosperity from the area but their political power was broken for ever. The people of Kūfa, which in the time of ʿUmar had been the greatest Muslim city of all, were now leaderless and cowed; only a radical and total revolution could reverse this unhappy state of affairs.

The partnership of ʿAbd al-Malik and al-Ḥajjāj lasted until the caliph's death. Al-Ḥajjāj was not just ruler of Iraq, he effectively controlled Khurāsān and all the east, appointing governors from among his protégés. He had made this control absolute when in 84/704 he had secured the dismissal from Khurāsān of Yazīd b. al-Muhallab, who had succeeded his father as governor in 82/701–2. Despite his affinity with the *ashrāf*, al-Muhallab had resisted all attempts of Ibn al-Ashʿath to involve him in his rebellion and held the province for al-Ḥajjāj. Although they had proved their loyalty, however, the Muhallabīs were suspected because of their independent power base in the Azdī tribesmen and their great prestige. By 84/704 there seem to have been growing differences between them and al-Ḥajjāj, differences which the absolutist nature of al-Ḥajjāj's power could not tolerate.

ʿAbd al-Malik died in Damascus in Shawwāl 86/October 705 at the age of sixty. His reign had been a period of hard-won successes; he had established, in place of the decentralized Sufyanid system, a centralized, bureaucratic empire, dependent in the last resort on the power of the Syrian army. The Islamic community was sharply divided between the rulers and the ruled, while the ruled were no longer the conquered people and *mawālī* alone but included many Arabs, especially in Iraq and Khurāsān, who felt that the regime no longer represented their wishes or needs. It was in many ways an impressive achievement but it was to prove something of a difficult inheritance for the later Umayyads. But ʿAbd al-Malik also left one legacy which we can still delight in today; the Dome of the Rock, the earliest great monument of Islamic architecture, was constructed in Jerusalem on his orders and at his expense.

The Sons of ʿAbd al-Malik and ʿUmar II: Consolidation and Division in the Marwanid Caliphate 86–125/705–743

ʿAbd al-Malik was succeeded by his son al-Walīd, already acknowledged as heir since the death of his uncle, ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Marwān, the long-time governor of Egypt, in the previous year. Al-Walīd's reign was in many ways a continuation of his father's and a period of prosperity and peace in many parts of the empire. He instituted a system of poor relief and public charity in Syria and began many building projects, notable

the great Umayyad mosque in the centre of Damascus. He also attempted to keep the balance, as his father had done, between the different groups in the Syrian élite. The rivalry for power between the Qaysī and Yamanī leaders was as intense as ever and it is at least possible that the caliph kept it on the boil so that one faction should not acquire a monopoly of power. He himself had a Qaysī mother, Wallāda, and seems to have allowed the Qaysīs certain privileges but other members of the Marwanid family attached themselves to the rival party; his brother and heir Sulaymān was governor of Palestine and firmly allied to the Yamanī interest, while his cousin, ʿUmar, son of ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Marwān, maintained the Yamanī contacts his father had built up in Egypt and al-Walīd allowed him the prestigious position of governor of the Ḥijāz, a position he used to afford a refuge to those who wished to escape al-Ḥajjāj's power in Iraq.

The reign of al-Walīd (86–96/705–15) also saw the furthest extension of the geographical frontiers of the Umayyad state. In the west Spain was invaded in 92/711 and was almost entirely taken by 97/716 while parties of raiding Arabs turned their attentions to southern France. In the east the expansion was under the aegis of al-Ḥajjāj who appointed governors whose most important function was to extend the frontiers. In Khurāsān, Qutayba b. Muslim launched in 86–96/705–15 a series of attacks from his base in Marv to the area beyond the Oxus which the Muslims had hardly reached before. Thus he secured the submission of Bukhārā in 87–90/706–9, Khwārazm and Samarqand in 91–3/711–2 and distant Farghānā in 94/713. This raiding did not, however, result in massive settlements of Muslims in the newly conquered areas; Qutayba made treaties with the existing rulers or, if necessary, replaced them by other local candidates but he did not enforce direct government. The effect of this was to draw into the Umayyad network a number of local kings, who, while retaining their own power, paid tribute to and worked in harmony with the Arab governor in Marv. In Sind too, al-Ḥajjāj's policy of expansion was pursued and he appointed a fellow Thaqafī, Muḥammad b. Yūsuf, to lead the Arab advance in the area. This policy of expansion had, since the time of the Prophet, served to absorb the energies of the Arabs and so preserve internal peace and provide an income and opportunities to those who might otherwise feel deprived. It was not, however, popular among all the participants. Conciliatory governors in Iraq from Ziyād's time on had promised that the armies of the area would not be sent on distant campaigns against their will and the revolt of Ibn al-Ashʿath was at least in part a protest against the policy of expansion. Qutayba led his troops to many victories in the east, but when he tried to persuade them to support him in a revolt after the

death of al-Walīd, they demonstrated clearly that these military activities had not won their loyalty and devotion.

Al-Ḥajjāj died in Ramaḍān 95/June 714 aged only fifty-five and the Caliph al-Walīd the next year, 96/715, and the stage was set for a reaction against these policies. ʿAbd al-Malik had settled the succession such that al-Walīd would be succeeded by his brother Sulaymān, and, despite some efforts to alter this arrangement, Sulaymān, a generous and easy-going prince, now duly became caliph. As has already been noted, Sulaymān had been governor of Palestine where he had come in close contact with the local Yamanī leaders, and his tutor and chief adviser was Rajāʾ b. Ḥaywa al-Kindī, a religious figure attached to the Yamanī group who had served ʿAbd al-Malik as, among other things, the manager of the construction of the Dome of the Rock. Sulaymān had used his position to make allies among those who opposed al-Ḥajjāj and his policies, including the deposed governor of Khurāsān, Yazīd b. al-Muhallab, who sought refuge with him in his capital at Ramla. Sulaymān's accession marks the return to power of the Yamanī group and the dismissal of many of al-Ḥajjāj's nominees, including Qutayba b. Muslim in Khurāsān.

There has been much controversy about exactly what the Yaman Qays–Muḍar parties stood for at this time. They certainly represented rival groups within the Syrian élite and army which claimed a common descent. The Arab sources tend to portray the conflict as essentially tribal rivalry, *ʿaṣabiyya*. Attempts to argue that they were really different political parties, the Qaysīs supporting expansion of the empire and an Arab monopoly on political power, while Yamanīs were less imperialist and concerned to make links with non-Arab Muslims, are not convincing. In reality the conflict was between two factions, based on tribal loyalties, which sought to control access to military power and the privileges that went with it. The prizes were the favour of the ruling caliph and the lucrative governorships in the provinces. What may have begun as a struggle in Syria soon spread elsewhere: in Iraq the Azd tribe was drawn into the Yamanī group while their great rivals, Tamīm, became the centre of the Qays–Muḍar group in the province. These rivalries were in turn transported to Khurāsān, where the participation of the Arabs in military forces, meant that the rivalries were especially fierce and violent. By the reign of Hishām, if not before, it was virtually impossible for any political or military leader to avoid relying on one faction or the other.

Sulaymān's reign was only two years long (96–9/715–17). He had a reputation for luxurious living and certainly did not cultivate a pious image. His government appointments reflected his Yamanī leanings. Rajāʾ b. Ḥaywa al-Kindī remained his chief adviser while Yazīd b. al-Muhallab

was appointed to Iraq, Khurāsān and all the east. He himself continued to live in Ramla in Palestine, a clear sign of his continuing commitment to the Yamanī party. The main business of the caliph was the conduct of the Holy War. Maslama b. ʿAbd al-Malik led the great expedition against Constantinople 98–9/716–17 and Sulaymān himself died while on his way to lead an expedition against the Syrian frontier of the Byzantine empire.

Sulaymān's unexpected death meant a crisis for his supporters, since they felt that ʿAbd al-Malik's other prominent sons, Yazīd and Hishām, were committed to their opponents. In this crisis the succession was managed by the caliph's adviser, Rajā' b. Ḥaywa, who persuaded him, just before his death, to nominate his cousin, ʿUmar b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz instead.

It was thanks to Sulaymān's testament and Rajā's organization that ʿUmar II became caliph. He is the most puzzling character among the Marwanid rulers. The Islamic tradition is unanimous in seeing him as a complete contrast with the other rulers of his family; where they are godless usurpers, tyrants and playboys, he alone is represented as pious and ruling like a true Muslim. Recent scholarship has confirmed the view that his reign marks an important break, although from a rather different point of view.

ʿUmar seems to have been determined to reintegrate the Muslim community, to try to break down the barriers between the Arab rulers and their non-Muslim subjects and between different groups of Arabs. Shaban has characterized this as an extreme Yamanī point of view but this is not wholly borne out by the evidence. ʿUmar seems to have tried to get away from this sort of party involvement and appeal to a broader cross-section of the community.

In appointing governors, always a good indication of a ruler's policies, he made radical changes. In the east he broke up the vast eastern governorate which had been developed by al-Ḥajjāj into different units, each responsible to him. Ibn al-Muhallab was deposed and arrested and in his place there were a variety of nominees; Kūfa was ruled by a member of the family of ʿUmar I for example. Few of these people could be described as Yamanīs and indeed ʿUmar II was responsible for appointing to the Jazīra a man who was to typify the hardline Qaysī attitude in years to come, ʿUmar b. Hubayra al-Fazārī. Rather than favouring one party he seems to have chosen governors over whom he had control and whom he believed to be competent. His activities suggested that he intended to keep a close eye on provincial administration. He saw that a major cause of friction between the *mawālī* and the government, especially in Iraq, was the system of taxation which, under

al-Ḥajjāj's iron grip, had meant that converts to Islam continued to be taxed as if they were unbelievers. This bred resentment and it was to counter this that ʿUmar produced his famous fiscal rescript, an attempt to reform the financial administration. The most revolutionary aspect of this was that the *mawālī* were to be taxed as if they were Muslims, that is to say they were only to pay the *ṣadaqa* or alms. On the other hand, they were not allowed to sell their land to Muslims and on conversion, their land became the property of their villages, that is to say that their lands remained *kharāj* lands, paying the full rate of land-tax. In this way the anomaly could be removed without doing great damage to the treasury. It was an ingenious scheme and it is not entirely clear how successful it could have been; the reaction which followed his death certainly meant that it was allowed to lapse. It did establish, however, the fundamental point of Muslim taxation: that *kharāj* land remained *kharāj* land no matter who owned it. Unbelievers were required to pay the *jizya*, or poll-tax, now clearly separated from the *kharāj*, and this lapsed on conversion but the payment of *kharāj* was unaffected by this.

In this way ʿUmar attempted to resolve the tensions which threatened the community. He also forbade any further foreign wars and adventures. His character is difficult to assess. When he was in the Ḥijāz he seems to have had the reputation of luxurious living but on becoming caliph he adopted something of the austerity traditionally ascribed to his namesake ʿUmar I. This piety may well have been genuine, but it was the mark of a skilled and determined politician, trying to find new solutions to long-standing problems.

This programme of reform was brought to an untimely end by his early death in 101/720. His policies had threatened too many interests and the Qaysīs were determined to re-establish the old order. His successor Yazīd II was a caliph in the old tradition, more interested in amusement than the day-to-day business of government and prepared to let the governors of the provinces have their own way. He was content to be ruled by Qaysī advisers but not everyone in the empire was prepared to accept the change gracefully. Yazīd b. al-Muhallab was allowed to escape from prison and immediately raised the standard of revolt in Iraq, pledging a Holy War against Syrian rule. Ibn al-Muhallab was perhaps the only indigenous Iraqi leader to have survived al-Ḥajjāj's rule and he immediately attracted a large following in Baṣra, where his own tribe was based and the provinces dependent on it. Then he took the Syrian garrison town of Wāsiṭ and advanced on Kūfa, attracting some support from that city too. But not all Kūfans rushed to the standard and there is no evidence that he received any support from the Yamanī party in Syria. He was opposed by one of the greatest soldiers of the

age, Maslama b. ʿAbd al-Malik, a hero of the Qays and of numerous wars against the Byzantines. In Ṣafar 102/August 720 Yazīd b. al-Muhallab was defeated and killed on the field of battle, the last of the old-style Iraqi champions. For the final time the divisions among the Iraqis had allowed the Syrians to triumph and to assert their control, once more, over the east.

Maslama remained only a short time as governor, when he was removed, apparently because he had failed to send surplus revenue from the province to Damascus. His replacement was the Qaysī thug ʿUmar b. Hubayra whom ʿUmar II had promoted to be governor of the Jazīra and who proved violent and brutal in his pursuit of the Muhallabīs and the Yamanī leaders.

Fortunately Yazīd himself died after a caliphate of only four years in 105/724 and he was replaced by his much more able, austere and conscientious brother Hishām. Hishām had been born in Damascus in 72/691 and was in his thirties when he became caliph. Little is known of his early career beyond his outspoken opposition to the accession of ʿUmar II but his reign showed him to be shrewd, cautious and, on the whole, conciliatory. Like all the wiser and more successful rulers of his family he attempted to stay above the Qays–Yaman feud and to avoid confrontation if possible. It is a measure of his success that the nineteen years of his reign were among the most peaceful of the entire Umayyad century, at least as far as internal opposition was concerned. In the all-important governorate of Iraq and the east which now again took in Khurāsān and Iran as it had under Ziyād and al-Ḥajjāj, Hishām appointed a new man from the neutral tribe of Bajīla, Khālid b. ʿAbd Allāh al-Qasrī. Khālid does not have the reputation of his great predecessors in the office for statesmanship or ferocity but he was thoroughly competent and totally loyal, conscious that he owed his whole career to the Umayyads and considering that his interests were totally bound up with theirs. For fifteen years he ruled Iraq and it was a period without any serious disturbances.

Hishām's main problems were external invasion and the finances of the government. During his rule the Islamic empire suffered three major challenges. The first of these threats was from the Caucasus area where the Arabs' control of the passes to the west of the Caspian was seriously threatened by the attacks of the Khazars, Turks from the steppes of southern Russia. To combat these threats the Qaysīs of the Jazīra were mobilized as well as local Armenian troops. Command was given first to the veteran general Maslama b. ʿAbd al-Malik and then from 114/732 onwards to another member of the ruling family, Marwān b. Muḥammad b. Marwān, a grandson of the Caliph Marwān. This command gave

Marwān a unique opportunity to build up support among the Qaysīs and others in Armenia and the Jazīra and he became almost the only member of the ruling family with an independent military command. Armenia at this time was somewhat similar to parts of Khurāsān, in that the Arabs ruled through the native princes or *nakharars* who collected tribute and some of whose men were recruited for the army against the Khazars. Marwān took great care to remain on good terms with these local nobles, and ensured that their men received the pay owing to them. He also assured the accession to leadership of the *nakharars* of his own protégé, Ashot the Bagratid, the ancestor of a long and famous line of Armenian kings, by expelling his enemies, the Mamikonian family, from the area. The campaign was difficult but in the end triumphant, the Khazars were driven back from the Muslim lands and in 120/738 Marwān raided as far as the Khazar capital on the lower Volga. After 121/739 he, with the help of his loyal Qaysī assistant, Isḥāq b. Muslim al-ʿUqaylī, concentrated on consolidating his power and influence in the area.

The second threat came from the Berbers in North Africa. The conquest of the Berbers had been very superficial and while Arab garrisons had been established in some centres in what is now Tunisia like Qayrawān, there was very little organized government. The Muslim presence was essentially predatory, slaves and booty being the main concern of Arab raiding parties. As with the *mawālī* in Iraq, it seems that the beginnings of conversion to Islam made the Berbers' grievances more acute and this was brought home to them by missionaries from the Khawārij of Iraq who pointed out how the Umayyad government was exploitative and tyrannical. In 123/740–1 there was a massive rebellion which effectively drove the Arabs out. An expedition sent to retrieve the situation was heavily defeated and it was only with difficulty that the remnants of what had been a large Syrian army fought their way through to Spain where they settled. In 124/742 another force under a Kalbī leader, Ḥanẓala b. Ṣafwān, succeeded in restoring the position to some extent and the rebellion ceased to be a danger. However, this disturbance did considerable damage to the state; Spain was now effectively cut off and the Umayyads maintained no military presence west of Qayrawān. What was more, a large number of Syrian troops had been lost and a further strain put on the Syrian military machine.

The third area of threat was Khurāsān. Here, as in the Caucasus area, the threat came from Turkish nomads, this time a confederation known to western writers as the Turgesh who were active in the areas beyond the Oxus, and increasingly threatening not just the Arabs but the native people of the settled areas around Bukhārā and Samarqand as well. As

governor of the east, Khālid al-Qasrī first sent his brother Asad who attempted to do what Marwān later achieved in Armenia, to persuade the local people to fight alongside the Arabs against their joint enemies. The problem was more difficult here because the Arabs were reluctant to share any of their privileges with the native population and in the end the government had to turn to more traditional means to restore the position. In 113/732 another 20,000 men from Iraq were sent and in the end Asad was able to lead a combined force of Arabs and Iranians who defeated the Turgesh decisively in 119/737 and the threat of invasion was lifted, although the immigration of more Iraqis and the mobilization of the local Iranian population was to lead to problems later.

The external threats were defeated, but at considerable cost in money and manpower. Expansion had effectively ceased, except in France where Arab raiding parties from Spain continued to expand their range. On the Byzantine frontier, the regular summer raids continued but on a limited scale and no more sieges of Constantinople were undertaken.

Apart from defence, Hishām's other major concern was money. The financial administration of the Umayyad caliphate is very obscure. The sources tell us a good deal, not always clearly or comprehensibly, about who paid what taxes on what land. It is much less certain how far this money was used to finance central government. There remained a widespread body of opinion, especially in Iraq, which held that the revenues from taxation, and the *ṣawāfī*, the government lands, was the property of all the Muslims and should be spent in the province where it was raised and the sending of taxes to Damascus was a very contentious issue; governors who were in a weak position or anxious to curry favour with the local people, as ʿUbayd Allāh b. Ziyād had been at the death of Yazīd I in 64/683, always promised that this should not be done. As far as we can tell, even when it was done, only a very small proportion of the money collected was forwarded. ʿUmar II had agreed that the revenues of Khurāsān were to be spent in the province, while Maslama had been sacked from his position as governor of Iraq for not forwarding any revenue. There seems to have been no elaborate central accounting organization of the sort that developed under the ʿAbbasids; the *dīwāns* or offices in Damascus dealt only with the collection of Syrian revenues. The caliphs were partly peripatetic, spending little time in Damascus itself. ʿAbd al-Malik and his entourage usually wintered at his palace of Ṣinnabra at the south end of the Sea of Galilee. In spring he would go to Jābiya on the Golan Heights, then to Dayr Murrān on the western outskirts of Damascus. High summer would be spent in Ba'albak before he returned to Damascus and Ṣinnabra for the winter.

To supplement this meagre income, the Umayyad rulers continued large-scale irrigation and development projects on the *ṣawāfī* and Hishām was one of the foremost organizers of this in both Syria and Iraq. Anecdotes in the sources portray him as having a real enthusiasm for horticulture, and a keen interest in the profits it could bring. In the city of Mosul, Hishām ordered that that vast sums be spent on canal digging and erecting eighteen water-mills. In southern Iraq the development was undertaken by both Khālid al-Qasrī, who is said to have made 20 million *dirhams* out of his agricultural lands and Maslama b. ʿAbd al-Malik whose schemes were on an equally vast scale. The remains of numerous Umayyad palaces and castles in Syria still remain to show the extent of their developments in rural areas. As always these activities benefited the government and the élite but were not always appreciated by the local people. A Syrian Christian commentator, Agapius of Manbij, reckoned that Hishām's profits from his landed estates exceeded the profits from taxation of the empire.

The last years of the caliphate were clouded by concern over the succession and saw a slight but important shift of policy. By previous sworn agreement, the succession was to pass to Yazīd II's son al-Walīd on Hishām's death rather than to his own children. Hishām resented this, not just because he favoured his own line but because he had sons who were competent, sober and hard-working like their father. This al-Walīd was not; the playboy of the Umayyads *par excellence*, he was a talented poet, an enthusiast for architecture (palaces, not mosques) and a heavy drinker. Hishām's attempts to change the arrangement were widely opposed within the Umayyad establishment, even by his closest political friend, Khālid al-Qasrī, and they came to nothing. It was perhaps in order to ensure stability after his death that Hishām seems to have come to rely more on the Qaysīs. Khālid al-Qasrī was deposed from Iraq in favour of Yūsuf b. ʿUmar, a protégé of al-Ḥajjāj's and a member of the Thaqafī tribe which had played such a large part in Iraqi politics. Khālid al-Qasrī may have had Yamanī sympathies, certainly he was later claimed as a Yamanī, Yūsuf on the other hand was a determined and outspoken Qaysī. The change in Iraq was followed by one in Khurāsān where again a committed Qaysī, the veteran military leader Naṣr b. Sayyār, was appointed (both in 120/738). Yūsuf made many enemies at least in part because of his vindictive attitude towards Khālid and his family and his brief spell as governor saw the only real disturbance in Iraq during this period. In 122/740 there was an armed revolt in Kūfa led by Zayd b. ʿAlī, a grandson of al-Ḥusayn who had arrived in the city from the Ḥijāz. The Kūfans promised large-scale support and Zayd agreed to put right all the old grievances, the Qur'ān and Sunna

would be respected, the *ʿaṭā'* would be paid to all, the *fay'* (i.e. the revenues of the Sawād) would be distributed to the local Muslims, the weak protected and there would be no more distant campaigns. And of course there would be a caliph from the house of the Prophet with his rule based in Kūfa. Despite this popular appeal, the revolt came to nothing; the Kūfans deserted Zayd and he was easily killed by the Umayyad forces, but the revolt shows how all the old grievances were still alive.

The Collapse of the Umayyad Caliphate 125–132/743–750

Hishām died in Rabīʿ II 125/February 743. He left a caliphate prosperous and secure. It is true that the differences between Qays and Yaman were not healed and that the majority of the people in Iraq and points east, both Arabs and *mawālī*, remained unenthusiastic about the regime. It is true too that the recent wars in the west had put an additional strain on the Syrian army. It should not be thought that collapse was inevitable or that another Hishām could not have sustained the empire. Such, however, was not to be the case. Al-Walīd II fulfilled Hishām's worse fears. His conduct was increasingly irresponsible, he seldom went to Damascus and paid little heed to normal administrative affairs while squandering vast sums on ambitious if seldom finished palace projects. The administration he left to the Qaysī advisers Hishām had bequeathed to him and they took the opportunity to assert their position. Besides the caliph's generally negligent conduct, as offensive to many Muslims as Hishām's had been pleasing, two major affairs brought resentment to a head.

The first of these was the question of the succession. Spurred on perhaps by the evil genius of Yūsuf b. ʿUmar, he was at once determined to seek the *bayʿa* for his two young sons, al-Ḥakam and ʿUthmān. There was immediate opposition in Syria and al-Walīd took the most drastic action against members of the Marwanid family; some were executed while Hishām's son Sulaymān was flogged and exiled to ʿUmān. Khālid al-Qasrī, now in retirement in Damascus, refused to swear allegiance to the children and for this he was handed over to his enemy Yūsuf b. ʿUmar, who tortured him to death.

According to the historian al-Ṭabarī, al-Walīd arrested his cousins and turned the Yamanīs against him and so was responsible for his own downfall. Certainly a bare year after his accession he had made himself so unpopular that there was serious discussion of removing him by force. It must be emphasized that this was very unusual in the Umayyad family. Despite their differences the princes usually displayed considerable family solidarity and Hishām's respect for his brother Yazīd's testament is simply one example of this. The initiative was taken by a son of

al-Walīd I called Yazīd. He developed the radical line, normally taken by Khārijīs, that al-Walīd's sins were so great that he was no longer fit to be caliph. He was joined by some members of Yamanī tribes anxious to regain their lost position, notably Manṣūr b. Jumhūr al-Kalbī, described as an uncouth bedouin. Many more Umayyads and others were extremely reluctant to support him, however great al-Walīd's crimes. The caliph's negligence and the drunkenness of the chief of police allowed the rebels to take Damascus but it was only with difficulty and considerable expenditure that they were able to persuade an army to search out al-Walīd. True to form, he was in a desert castle at Bakhrā', about 20 km south of Palmyra, almost defenceless. It was there that he was killed by the rebels in Jumādā II 126/April 744 murdered, like the Caliph ʿUthmān, as he sat reading the Qur'ān.

Just as the murder of ʿUthmān led to the destruction of the Medinese regime of the Rāshidūn caliphs, so the death of al-Walīd led directly to the breakup of the Umayyad caliphate. It opened, in a much more vicious form than ever before, the feud between Qays and Yaman which successive caliphs from ʿAbd al-Malik on had tried to control. It would be wrong to imagine that all members of these two groups were implacably hostile; it would seem that the violence was begun by extremists like Yūsuf b. ʿUmar for the Qaysīs and Manṣūr b. Jumhūr for the Yamanīs but once it had begun, it was very difficult to stop and came to involve the whole Syrian army and political élite. It was this fatal division, more than anything else, which destroyed Umayyad government.

On his accession Yazīd III made a number of commitments to redress grievances, almost identical to those that Zayd b. ʿAlī had made in Kūfa, but including the provision that he was to be deposed if he did not fulfil his promises. He also recalled Sulaymān b. Hishām from exile, and appointed the Kalbī leader Manṣūr b. Jumhūr as his governor in the east but soon replaced him by ʿAbd Allāh, son of ʿUmar II. It is difficult to know whether Yazīd III was a genuine reformer in the spirit of ʿUmar II, or whether he was simply an adventurer trying to win popularity. In Iraq, ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿUmar seems to have tried to win over powerful Kūfans by promising them salaries and a position in the army in exchange for their support. Yazīd III died after a reign of only six months and his reforming ideals, if such they were, hardly had time to mature. His place was briefly taken by his unconvincing brother, Ibrāhīm, but he was unable to withstand the new strong man of the Qays, Marwān b. Muḥammad. Marwān had remained governor of Armenia and Ādharbayjān, grudgingly accepting the changing rulers, but keeping his power base intact. He now proclaimed himself the avenger of al-Walīd II and came south with his seasoned troops; the attempts of

Ibrāhīm and Sulaymān b. Hishām, who seems to have recruited a private army of his own from among the *mawālī*, to resist him were futile and in Ṣafar 127/December 744 he was proclaimed caliph in the mosque in Damascus.

In many ways he was an excellent choice. Known as al-Ḥimār (the Ass) for his strength and perseverance, he was a tough military veteran, who might have been able to restore the position, but there were too many factors against success. He was not a member of the ruling branch of the Marwanids and furthermore his mother had been a Kurdish slave, not a freeborn Arab. Whether this was really important is difficult to say but it gave his enemies a reason to attack him. On top of this, he had come to power with the support of only a small part of the Syrian élite, the Qays of the Jazīra and the Byzantine frontier; he had seized the capital by force and driven the Yamanī leaders out of Syria. That there would be no place for them in the new regime was confirmed when he moved himself, the court and the treasure north to Ḥarrān in the Jazīra, to his own territory. At first he was conciliatory in Syria, allowing the *junds* to choose their own leaders, but after a series of rebellions, especially in the Yamanī centre of Homs, he resorted to bloody repression, the Kalbīs were finally humbled and by the end of 129/746 he had established a kind of peace.

In Iraq the situation was extremely confusing and the details do not immediately concern us. In general two main opposition movements appeared, both of them familiar in many ways from the earlier days. In the Jazīra there was a rebellion of Khārijīs led by the Shaybānī leader al-Ḍaḥḥāk b. Qays while in Kūfa there was a rising in favour of a member of the ʿAlid family, ʿAbd Allāh b. Muʿāwiya. What distinguished these movements from similar ones in the past was not that they were more powerful or threatening but rather that the Umayyad response was confused and divided; ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿUmar had tried to forge an alliance of Yamanī groups from Syria and the Yamanīs of Iraq and Kūfa and this group was bitterly opposed to Marwān and all he stood for. So hostile were they that their leaders were prepared to abandon the Umayyad cause altogether and side with their enemies. Sulaymān b. Hishām joined the Khārijīs while Manṣūr b. Jumhūr and ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿUmar ended up with Ibn Muʿāwiya. Nothing could illustrate more graphically the break-up of the Syrian élite.

Marwān was determined to press ahead with his conquest of Iraq, despite troubles in Armenia, where his protégé Ashot the Bagratid had been deposed by his rivals. Armenia was held by his devoted lieutenant, the Qaysī leader Isḥāq b. Muslim al-ʿUqaylī, while Marwān sent another leading Qaysī, Yazīd b. ʿUmar b. Hubayra, son of Yazīd II's governor of

Iraq, to attack Kūfa. Marwān's campaign showed the effectiveness of his troops and his own military skills. In a final last-ditch resistance, all the elements opposed to his rule, Ibn Muʿāwiya, the Khawārij, Syrian and Iraqī Yamanīs and even ʿAbbasid supporters came together for a combined stand. But Marwān's general Ibn Ḍubāra was too strong for them and they were scattered. By the spring of 130/748 peace was restored, Marwān II was caliph while Yazīd b. ʿUmar b. Hubayra in Wāsiṭ was his governor of the east; but it was the peace of exhaustion, the peace of the desert. Plague and famine and a terrible earthquake followed in Syria in the wake of the wars; it was a devastated country, power now lay in the hands of men from the Jazīra and the mountains of Armenia. Recovery might have been possible even yet but there was a cloud on the horizon in the shape of a rebellion in distant Khurāsān, led in the name of the Family of the Prophet by an obscure *mawlā* called Abū Muslim. By Jumādā II 130/February 748 Abū Muslim had established himself in the Khurāsānī capital at Marv having driven out the Umayyad governor, Naṣr b. Sayyār, and was sending his armies to the west to challenge the Umayyads. Marwān was loyally supported by his Qaysī army. From his base in Wāsiṭ, Ibn Hubayra despatched armies under Nubāta b. Ḥanẓala al-Kilābī and ʿAmir b. Ḍubāra al-Murrī to check the advance of the rebels on the Iranian plateau but both were defeated by the opposing general, Qaḥṭabā b. Shabīb. In Iraq itself, the resentment against the Qaysī government of Marwān once more made itself felt; in Baṣra a member of the famous Muhallabī clan, Sufyān b. Muʿāwiya, made an unsuccessful attempt to take the city while Kūfa was held for the rebels by Khālid al-Qasrī's son Muḥammad. Alienated members of the Umayyad élite played a significant role in the triumph of the rebels in Iraq. By Rabīʿ I 132/October 749 the rebel army had occupied Kūfa and a rival caliph, the ʿAbbasid, Abu' l-ʿAbbās al-Saffāḥ, had been proclaimed. Only in Wāsiṭ did Ibn Hubayra continue to hold out.

Faced with this new crisis, Marwān summoned his most loyal Qaysī supporters to march in Iraq but the ʿAbbasid armies were ready to meet him. It seems that the ʿAbbasids were heavily outnumbered but they still defeated Marwān at a battle on the river Zāb in Jumādā II 132/February 750, a battle which effectively broke Umayyad power for ever. Marwān fled west but the Syrians refused to rally to a man who had inflicted so much damage on their land. In Damascus in fact the Yamanī party opened the gates to the pursuing ʿAbbasid forces. Marwān fled on to Egypt, perhaps hoping to reach North Africa but at the end of Dhu'l-Ḥijja 132 (August 750), just six months after the defeat on the Zāb, he and his followers were surprised in the village of Būṣir, south of Fusṭāt and the last Umayyad caliph was killed as he had lived, fighting.

The fall of the Umayyads can be explained in many ways. At an ideological level, they failed because they could not offer the sort of leadership which many Muslims wanted. It used to be accepted that the Umayyads claimed only secular authority but recent work by Crone and Hinds has demonstrated that the Umayyad caliphs did claim a religious authority; the ruler was God's Caliph (*khalīfat Allāh*) and had the authority to make decisions about Islamic law and practice. However, there were many Muslims, especially in Iraq, who felt that charismatic, truly Islamic leadership was necessary to establish the rule of the Qur'ān and Sunna. By the end of the Umayyad period it had become an article of faith among such people that only the Family of the Prophet could supply this authority.

There were also regional problems. From ʿAbd al-Malik's reign onwards, Umayyad government had increasingly meant Syrian government. Despite attempts by ʿUmar II and others to broaden the base of the regime, the Muslims of Iraq were entirely excluded. This narrowness of support became even more pronounced with the Qaysī triumph under Marwān II; at the end even Syria and Palestine were conquered territories and Damascus had been replaced by Ḥarrān in the Jazīra as the Umayyad capital. This restricted nature of support for the regime was made more serious because neither Syria nor the Jazīra was as rich, or had such large Muslim populations as Iraq. In the second eighth century, the revenues from the alluvial areas of southern Iraq amounted to four times those from Egypt and almost five times the revenues from the whole of Syria and Palestine. Constant warfare had certainly drained the resources of manpower in Syria. The wars of Hishām's reign against the Berbers and the internecine disputes which followed his death must have placed a considerable strain on the manpower of the Qaysī tribes who supported the last Umayyad. In addition, Marwān's policies had spread disaffection, not just among elements traditionally hostile to the regime but among people who had previously been loyal servants, like the family of Khālid al-Qasrī and even members of the Umayyad house itself, like Hishām's own son Sulaymān. In these circumstances it is hardly surprising that the Umayyad state was swept away.

In the final judgement, however, it would be wrong to imagine that the fall of the dynasty was inevitable. The Umayyad regime had never been as strong as it had been under Hishām only a decade before the final collapse. It was only the failure of leadership and murderous conflicts which followed his death which led to disaster and even at the end Marwān's Qaysī supporters could raise very formidable armies to oppose the ʿAbbasids.

Julius Wellhausen, in the title of a famous book, described the Umayyad regime as *Das arabische Reich*, the Arab empire, and held that its passing

marked the moment when the Arabs lost control of the movement they had created and the leadership of the *umma* passed to a new élite, some of Arab origin, many others of Iranian or, slightly later, of Turkish descent. Despite the challenges to this picture, it remains basically intact; no one who could not claim Arab descent played a leading role in Umayyad politics or court life, although the talents of non-Arabs in financial or agricultural administration were certainly used. But it was an Arab kingdom in another important sense as well; it was the period when the Arabic language came to dominate the Near East, not in the sense that the majority of the population became Arabic speaking but in the sense that it became the language of bureaucracy, high court culture and, above all, of the religion of the ruling class. The dominance of Arabic was bound up with the dominance of Islam, which retained its identity and separateness in a society where there were numerous ancient and highly developed religious traditions. To see how important this achievement was, we have only to compare the fate of the Arabs and their civilization with that of the Germanic conquerors who came to rule most of the western Roman empire from the fifth century onwards.

This linguistic and religious ascendancy was not achieved by mass conversion. Even at the end of the Umayyad period, Muslims still formed a very small proportion of the population of the Near East and it was probably only in parts of Iraq and Khurāsān that conversion to the new religion had made significant progress. Nor was it achieved by forcible repression. One of the most striking features of the history of the period is the almost total absence of anti-Muslim rebellions. Christians, Jews and Zoroastrians seem to have accepted their role as subject peoples with comparative equanimity and it was not until the pace of conversion began to increase in the early ʿAbbasid period that violent protests developed in parts of Egypt and Iran. Much of this passivity can be put down to the role of these communities before the coming of Islam. The Monophysite Christians of Syria and Egypt, as well as all the Christians of the old Sasanian empire and the Jews everywhere, had been a demilitarized subject population under the old dispensation. Much of the previous ruling class, the natural leaders of any opposition, had disappeared. Many of the Byzantine officials had emigrated at the conquest to Constantinople or further west to Sicily and Italy while others, the scions of the Ghassanid clan or the family of St John of Damascus for example, had either become converted to Islam, as with the Ghassanids, or reached important administrative positions in the government, as with St John. The disappearance of the élite of Sasanian Persia is more puzzling since, apart from the mountainous areas of northern Iran and Khurāsān, remote and uninviting districts, they had nowhere to flee to.

Many may have lost their lives in the battles of the conquests, many more lost their castles, their lands and lives in the long struggle to subdue the province of Fārs, the native territory of the Sasanian regime. Others must have been assimilated and become Muslim, perhaps making careers in the bureaucracy, even while remaining conscious of their descent from the Iranian aristocracy. In the fourth/tenth century, under the Buyids, it once again became a sign of status to claim descent from great Iranian families and when we find in the same period a Fārsī bureaucrat with the Sasanian royal names of Sābūr (Shāpūr), b. Ardashīr it is hard to believe he was not of aristocratic, even royal lineage.

In some ways, the Arabs were in a similar position to the Germanic ruling minorities in western Europe, who equally dominated much larger populations whom they left to maintain their own customs and beliefs as long as they paid the required taxes. Perhaps we can see in St John of Damascus a parallel with those Roman officials like the philosopher Boethius, who made it their business to serve the Ostrogothic kings of Italy, providing a link between the old regime and the new. In Iraq, the *dihqāns*, who had administered much of the country for the Sasanians, now did so at a local level for the Muslims, and once again bureaucratic practice passed from one empire to another; princes and generals might come and go, but those who understood the financial administration could always find employment. Visual evidence of this continuity and adaptation can be seen in early Muslim architecture. The Dome of the Rock in Jerusalem and the Great Mosque in Damascus build on and develop Byzantine architectural techniques and the Umayyad palace at Khirbat al-Mafjar in the Jordan valley looks back to the Roman villa, just as Theodoric's work at Ravenna develops the styles employed when the city was a Roman capital.

This said, however, the Umayyad state was vastly different in many ways. The most important feature of this was a strong cultural self-confidence, born of the possession of Islam and the Arabic language in which God had communicated the Qu'rān. The Germanic rulers of early medieval Europe craved *Romanitas*, sought to integrate themselves in the culture, language and beliefs of the empire they had entered; Franks, Ostrogoths and Lombards alike abandoned their traditional beliefs and languages to acculturate to the Roman norm. It is strong evidence for the early maturity of the Arab-Islamic tradition that the Muslim conquerors felt no need to do this. The Germanic conquerors of the west abandoned their pagan or Arian beliefs in the face of the opposition of the subject peoples. Despite the vitality of Monophysite Christianity in Syria, Egypt and northern Iraq, the Muslims felt no need to accommodate themselves to the beliefs of the majority, indeed all the traffic was

the other way, and it would seem that the more dynamic and ambitious elements in the Christian population soon began to be converted. Nor was there any linguistic imitation; the Arabic the Muslims used was a high-culture written language, the language of the Qur'ān, of a classical poetic tradition and, very soon the language of administration and prose narrative. No one wrote Ostrogothic; when Paul the Deacon wrote a history of the Lombards or Gregory of Tours a history of the Franks, they naturally did it in Latin; when Ibn Isḥāq or Abū Mikhnaf wrote a history of the Prophet and of the caliphs in late Umayyad times they would have not considered doing it in any other language than Arabic. Arabic could never have supplanted the indigenous high-culture and bureaucratic languages unless it had a highly developed written and literary tradition of its own. Where the language of government and culture led, the vernacular soon followed; Greek, Aramaic, Coptic soon ceased to be spoken languages and only in Iran did the language of the conquered, greatly altered in script, grammar and vocabulary, survive to re-emerge in the tenth century as a written tongue.

This cultural and linguistic self-confidence was perhaps aided by the fact that the Muslims were heirs to not one but two cultural traditions, the Byzantine and the Sasanian, not to speak of the Syriac tradition of Monophysite Christianity and the highly developed intellectual and cultural life of Babylonian Jewry. For the invaders of the western Roman empire, there could only be one language of learning and writing, and one religious tradition, Catholic Christianity, and it was very difficult to escape from the spell of this all-pervasive culture. For the Muslims in the Near East, however, there was no such universal norm; indeed the multiplicity of languages and cultures meant that Arabic, far from being overwhelmed, actually became essential; like English in India, it was the only common language in which the peoples of a vast empire could communicate with each other.

The establishment of this culture and civilization owes everything to the Umayyad caliphs. If the Islamic world had broken up, as seemed possible after the death of ʿUthmān, it would have lost not just its political unity but also its cultural and perhaps even its religious identity as small, isolated groups of Muslims became absorbed in the society of those they had conquered. The Umayyads seized the high ground. They made Islam the religion of a cultured court and an imperial administration, they made Arabic the language of literature and commerce; after the reforms of ʿAbd al-Malik, the Copt, Aramaean, Kurd or Iranian only had to look at the coins in his purse to see the proclamation of the religion and language of the élite. Many Muslims, at the time and later, have criticized the Umayyads for betraying true Islam. To an outside

observer, it seems equally clear that Arab-Islamic civilization could never have developed without the achievements of great politicians like Muʿāwiya, ʿAbd al-Malik and Hishām in holding the Muslim world together during the crucial formative century.

It is difficult to discern any clear lines in Umayyad relations with the world beyond the Muslim frontiers or to talk with any confidence of a "foreign policy". Early Muslims divided the world into two zones, the *Dār al-Islām* (House of Islam) and *Dār al-Ḥarb* (House of War) which the Muslims should attack whenever possible; rather than peace interrupted by occasional conflict, the normal pattern was seen to be conflict interrupted by the occasional, temporary truce (*hudna*). True peace (*ṣulḥ*) could only come when the enemy surrendered and accepted Islam or tributary status. This vision of the world was not in conflict with observable reality. Apart from the distant world of Tang China, the Muslims did not come into contact with any powers which were their equals in terms of wealth or military power and like the Romans, they could afford to regard all others as barbarians. It was only towards the end of Umayyad rule that the Byzantines were able to face the Muslims on anything approaching an equal basis. There was therefore little incentive for sending diplomatic missions to establish a *modus vivendi* with other powers or to try to establish permanent relations with peoples who were soon to be defeated and incorporated within the *Dār al-Islām*.

The Umayyad period was a bleak time for the Byzantine empire, when the iconoclast emperors concentrated all their energies on ensuring the survival of the state. The frontier provinces, devastated by war, were a land of ruined cities and deserted villages where a scattered population looked to rocky castles or impenetrable mountains rather than the armies of the empire to provide a minimum of security. The position was very similar at sea, where the Mediterranean was almost entirely a war zone rather than a commercial highway. There are some small signs of cultural and commercial interchange; the mosaic workers from Byzantium who came to decorate the Great Mosque in Damascus for the Caliph al-Walīd are among such. But by and large, fruitful diplomatic and commercial exchanges were limited before the more settled conditions of the ʿAbbasid period.

With the other contemporary Christian powers of Europe, the Lombard kingdom of Italy and the late Merovingian and early Carolingian rulers of France, the Umayyads had no communication at all. It is true that Muslim raiders attacked the Mediterranean shores of both these areas and that Arab expeditions from Spain, which was largely conquered by the Muslims from 92/711 to 97/716, penetrated deep into France where they were finally defeated by the Carolingian Charles Martel at

the battle of Poitiers in 114/732. Muslim raiders maintained themselves in their strongholds in the south of France for two centuries after this. But these were essentially unofficial raids, they led to no government or commercial contacts and the two societies existed in almost total ignorance of each other. Only the occasional pilgrim narrative, like those of Arculf in the first/seventh century and St Willibald at the beginning of the second/eighth would give any indication of the existence of the early caliphate to western Europe and the writers were more concerned with the Christian Holy Places than with the political condition of the country through which they passed.

More positive were the relations between the Muslims and the Christian people of Nubia, to the south of Egypt. At first the Muslims had attempted to conquer this area but resistance proved very fierce and in 31/651–2 they concluded a treaty which allowed the Nubians to live at peace with their Muslim neighbours and obtain food from them on several conditions, notably that they paid a tribute of slaves. This treaty seems to have remained in force throughout the early Islamic period and proved something of a puzzle to Muslim jurists, since Nubia was clearly part of the *Dār al-Ḥarb* and yet the Muslims had signed a permanent and lasting peace treaty with its people, a situation unknown elsewhere on the frontiers.

In contrast with the Mediterranean, the Indian Ocean saw the extensive development of commercial links in the Umayyad period. In Sasanian times, ships had certainly sailed from the Gulf to India and probably to China, but under the Umayyads this traffic seems to have expanded greatly and ports like Ubulla and Baṣra in southern Iraq grew rich on the products of the trade. This in turn led to Muslim commercial settlements overseas, first in Sind (southern Pakistan) which was incorporated as a province of the Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid caliphates, but later in East Africa as well and even as far as distant China where in 141–2/758, clashes between Muslims and local people in Canton resulted in the destruction of much of the city. Not only did these Indian ocean voyages introduce the Islamic world to new products, spices and aromatics from Indonesia and Zanzibar, porcelain from China, but it also provided a setting for imaginative adventure, the background from which the Sinbad the Sailor stories were to grow.

The north-east frontiers of the caliphate were essentially a war zone. In antiquity, the overland "silk route" had been the main means of communication between the West and China but in early Islamic time it seems that this trade had largely dried up. This was partly because silk was now produced in the Near East and transporting porcelain thousands of miles on the backs of pack animals was hardly a practical proposition, and partly because the area was now disturbed by Turkish

nomads raiding the settled areas. It was just after the close of the Umayyad period that central Asia saw the first and only clash between Muslim forces and the army of the Chinese empire under the strong and expansionist rule of the Tang dynasty. In 133/751 Muslim and Chinese armies met at Talas beyond the Jaxartes river (Syr Darya) and the furthest reaches of Muslim settlement. The Muslim armies were victorious but did not pursue their enemies into the fearsome wastes of central Asia. Like the battle of Poitiers twenty years before, the battle at Talas has symbolic importance, marking the end of Arab Muslim expansion in the north-east of the Iranian world. As in the west, the military encounter was not followed up by any diplomatic interchange, and Muslim caliph and Tang emperor remained entirely ignorant of each other.

In a real sense, the Umayyad caliphate, like the Roman empire, was a self-contained social, cultural and economic unit. The distances within it were so vast and there was such diversity within its frontiers, that Muslims did not have the opportunity or the incentive to concern themselves with matters beyond its frontiers. There, in the twilight zone of the *Dār al-Ḥarb*, there were numerous obscure and barbarous peoples like the Franks and Anglo-Saxons, but their lands were too poor, their merchants too few and their armies too weak to attract the attention of the rulers of Islam. This self-sufficiency sometimes makes early Islamic history seem rather remote to outsiders, as if all the events were somehow happening on a different planet, and this impression of separateness is probably correct. Nor was it confined to the Umayyad age. Under the ʿAbbasids, closer relations were developed with Byzantium but it was not until the Fatimids opened up the Mediterranean for shipping from the end of the fourth/tenth century that the affairs of western Europe and the Near East began to interact once again. It was the custom of the Arab Christian annalist of Alexandria, Saʿīd b. al-Biṭrīq to mention the names of all the patriarchs of the great ancient sees of Christendom, Alexandria, Jerusalem, Antioch, Constantinople and Rome. The popes of Rome were duly recorded up to the time of Agatho (678–81) when information was no longer available, and it was not until the early fifth/eleventh century that Saʿīd's continuator, Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd, was once again able to give an up-to-date pope's name. In antiquity, and again in the high Middle Ages, the voyage from Italy to Alexandria was a commonplace; in early Islamic times the two countries were so remote that even the most basic information was unknown and if the affairs of Rome were entirely obscure to the patriarch of Alexandria, they were much more so to the caliphs of Damascus. The early Islamic world was essentially self-contained and it was against this background of cultural self-sufficiency that Islamic civilization developed.

chapter five

THE EARLY ʿABBASID CALIPHATE

The Coming of the ʿAbbasid Caliphate 132–145/750–763

The Umayyad caliphate was overthrown by a movement in favour of rule by the Family of the Prophet, *Āl Muḥammad*. In the nine decades since the death of ʿAlī it had become accepted by many discontented Muslims that the problems of the community would never be solved until the lead was taken by a member of the Holy Family. An *imām* or *mahdī* from the Family would be able to interpret the Qur'ān and Sunna and would have the necessary divine guidance to put right the injustices of Umayyad rule and end the violent disputes between Muslims. A more detailed plan of reform was not necessary; the accession of the just ruler and government according to the Qur'ān and Sunna would solve all problems.

During this period, however, it was not entirely clear who was included within the Family of the Prophet or how the leader would be chosen from among the many men who could claim this relationship. In later centuries, the Family of the Prophet was taken to be the descendants of ʿAlī and Fāṭima, and both Twelver and Ismaʿīlī Shīʿīs alike accepted that the progeny of al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī were the true *imāms*. In Umayyad times, however, this was much less clear-cut and the boundaries of the Family more vague. At the time of Muhktār's revolt, the *imām* from the Family of the Prophet was to be Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafiyya, a son of ʿAlī but not of Fāṭima, showing that direct descent from the Prophet was not considered essential. In the last decade of Umayyad rule there was a large-scale rebellion, supported by many different opposition groups in Iraq and western Iran, in the name of ʿAbd Allāh b. Muʿāwiya, a descendant of ʿAlī's brother Jaʿfar. It was therefore with some justice that the ʿAbbasid family, descendants of the Prophet's paternal uncle al-ʿAbbās, could claim to be members of the Family. They cultivated the idea that the Family consisted of the descendants of

Hāshim, thus including the ʿAlids and ʿAbbasids but excluding the Umayyads. Later Shīʿī writers would restrict the Family to the descendants of ʿAlī, so condemning the ʿAbbasids as frauds and usurpers, but at the time of the ʿAbbasid revolution their claims seem to have met with a wide measure of acceptance.

The second problem was the choice of leader within this extended Family. There were three possible criteria. The first, the one which was later adopted by the Shīʿa, was that of hereditary succession in the line of al-Ḥusayn; but this idea was not universally accepted in Umayyad times. The second idea was the concept of *naṣṣ*, that is designation by the previous *imām*. The person thus chosen would have to be a member of the Family but not necessarily the eldest son of the previous *imām*. The third was the Zaydī view that the imamate properly belonged to any member of the Family who was prepared to take up arms. Zayd b. ʿAlī had rebelled in Kūfa in 122/740. He claimed the leadership of the Family because he alone had the courage to lead them against the Umayyads. The rebellion was a dismal failure, but among some sections of opinion in Iraq the idea persisted that the rightful *imām* was the one who took action against the oppressors.

The claim of the ʿAbbasid family was based on a combination of these elements. They were descendants of Hāshim and so could, in the climate of the Umayyad period, claim to be members of the Family. Al-ʿAbbās himself never seems to have become a Muslim, despite his close relationship to the Prophet. His son ʿAbd Allāh (d. 68/687–8) was an eminent Traditionist (that is to say one who passed on Traditions of the sayings and actions of the Prophet) but seems to have had no political ambitions, and it was not until the time of his grandson Muḥammad b. ʿAlī that the family began to make claims to political leadership. In 98/716–17 Abū Hāshim, the son of Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanafiyya, the *mahdī* to whom Mukhtār had pledged his allegiance, died. He had inherited a claim to the imamate from his father but he left no children to pass it on to. Various parties claimed that they had been designated as his successors, including Muḥammad b. ʿAlī al-ʿAbbāsī. This claim may have brought Muḥammad into contact with small groups of revolutionary activists in Iraq, and perhaps Khurāsān, who treasured the memory of Mukhtār, but it did not win general acceptance in the community. After their accession to power, the ʿAbbasids stressed that their claim was based more on Zaydī grounds, that they alone of the Hashimites had been able to overthrow the godless Umayyads and avenge al-Ḥusayn's martyrdom and that this gave them the right to lead the Family. Later Shīʿī apologists were concerned to portray the ʿAbbasids as usurpers with no real claim to the throne, but by the standards of their time,

their claim was in fact quite good. They were members of the Family, they could claim that Muḥammad b. ʿAlī had been designated by Abū Hāshim and it was clear that they had been able to translate the claims of the Family into reality.

The ʿAbbasids were able to do this because they secured the support of most of the Muslims of Khurāsān, the vast province on the northeastern frontiers of the Muslim world and the only one of the four quarters of the late Sasanian empire to retain its identity after the Muslim conquest. As has already been explained, more Arabs settled in this area than in any other part of Iran during Umayyad times, and the settlement of large numbers of Muslims seems to have encouraged conversion among the local people. The integration of Arabs with local converts was aided by their participation in the long wars against Turkish raiders which led up to the final defeat of the Turgesh in Hishām's reign. The frontier nature of the province also meant that a high proportion of the Muslims of Khurāsān were experienced soldiers, compared with, for example, the Muslims of Kūfa, and the military skill is clearly demonstrated by the series of victories they won over the veteran troops of Marwān II. The Muslims of Khurāsān had many of the same grievances against the Umayyad government as their contemporaries in Iraq; rule by alien governors sent from Damascus, and attempts to secure financial contributions from the province. The Qays–Yaman disputes which had originated in Syria had now spread as far as Khurāsān, producing unrest and uncertainty, and there was a genuine longing to put an end to the *fitna*, the civil strife, which had become so damaging in the years since Hishām's death. In Khurāsān there was considerable integration between Arab and non-Arab, many of the leaders of the ʿAbbasid movement were of Arab origin but spoke Persian and had intermarried with the local people; the efforts of Marwān's Qaysī supporters to preserve their monopoly of power were not popular in these circumstances.

It was natural then that the Muslims of Khurāsān, like their contemporaries further to the west, should look to the Family of the Prophet for leadership. How and when the ʿAbbasid connection with the area developed is uncertain; the traditional Arabic accounts in al-Ṭabarī and elsewhere suggest that the ʿAbbasid *daʿwa* or mission began in the year 100/718–19 when the ʿAbbasids, based on Ḥumayma in southern Jordan, appointed twelve *naqībs* to represent their interests in Khurāsān, just as the Prophet a century before had appointed twelve to represent him in Medina before he arrived in person. Recent research has cast some doubt on this. There had probably been a movement in favour of the Family of the Prophet in Khurāsān for some years, but it was not until the failure and death of Zayd b. ʿAlī in 122/740 that the people of

the area began to turn to the ʿAbbasid branch through the intermediary of a Kūfan supporter of the *Āl Muḥammad* called Bukayr b. Māhān, who won over leaders of the movement in Khurāsān including Qaḥṭaba b. Shabīb al-Ṭayyī. In 127/745 Qaḥṭaba came west for the *ḥajj* and pledged his allegiance in person to Ibrāhīm, who had succeeded his father Muḥammad as leader of the ʿAbbasid clan. On his return he took with him a freedman of the family known as Abū Muslim who was to represent the ʿAbbasids in Khurāsān. Thus the movement had three centres, Ḥumayma where the ʿAbbasids lived, Kūfa, where Bukayr b. Māhān was replaced on his death by Abū Salama, and Khurāsān where Abū Muslim co-ordinated the activities of Qaḥṭaba and other local supporters.

At this time, however, the propaganda simply called for a *riḍā min Āl Muḥammad*, a chosen one from the Family of Muḥammad, without specifying which branch he was to come from; probably very few of the inner circle knew the true identity of the *imām*. The ʿAbbasid cause was also aided in Khurāsān in that the ʿAlids had not really established contacts in the province. In Kūfa the legacy and memory of ʿAlī and al-Ḥusayn were too strong to be replaced but in Khurāsān there was no such attachment to a single branch of the Family. The ʿAbbasid message, like the message of many rebels from Mukhtār's time onwards, seems to have emphasized the equality of all Muslims regardless of race and ancestry; the appointment of a freedman of obscure origins, Abū Muslim, to lead it is an indication of this aspect and it certainly attracted support in Khurāsān and elsewhere. The ʿAbbasid revolution was not a *coup d'état* led by one faction in the ruling élite against another; it was rather an attempt to reconstruct the Islamic polity, to reintegrate rulers and the ruled in the *umma* under the leadership of the Family of the Prophet and the movement brought together many different strands in early Islamic thought.

The eastern frontiersmen of Khurāsān defeated the men from the Byzantine frontier who supported Marwān but this did not automatically mean the triumph of the ʿAbbasid dynasty. The armies were directed by Abū Muslim and led by Khurāsānīs who had in many cases no direct contact with the ʿAbbasid family at all; none of the ʿAbbasids had participated in the long march across Iran and the fierce battles against the Umayyad armies of Nubāta b. Ḥanẓala and ʿĀmir b. Ḍubāra. Their position was made even more marginal when the designated *imām*, Ibrāhīm, was arrested and executed by the Umayyads and their chief contact among the Khurāsānīs, Qaḥṭaba b. Shabīb, was killed during the crossing of the Euphrates shortly before the ʿAbbasid armies took Kūfa. The problem that faced the ʿAbbasids was to have their authority accepted firstly by the Khurāsānīs and then by the wider Muslim world. Abū

Salama, who had co-ordinated the movement in Kūfa, seized the opportunity to establish himself as king-maker and opened negotiations with various members of the ʿAlid family with a view to offering them the caliphate, but he had not counted on the loyalty and efficiency of the ʿAbbasids' man in Khurāsān, Abū Muslim. Abū Muslim had nothing to gain from seeing power pass to the ʿAlids and Abū Salama, and he had clearly instructed his agents in the army to ensure that this did not happen. While Abū Salama negotiated, a small group of Abū Muslim's men made contact with the ʿAbbasids, now in hiding in Kūfa, and selected a member of the family, Abu'l-ʿAbbās, a brother of the *imām* Ibrāhīm, and brought him to the mosque at Kūfa where, in Rabīʿ I 132/October 749 he was publicly acknowledged as the first ʿAbbasid caliph with the title of al-Saffāḥ. Confronted by the *fait accompli*, Abū Salama hastened to make his submission.

The proclamation of al-Saffāḥ as caliph and his acceptance by the Khurāsānīs and the Kūfans only marked the beginning of the establishment of the ʿAbbasids. A number of questions remained to be decided notably whether the ʿAbbasids were to be powerful sovereigns in the way that the Umayyads had been or simply symbolic rulers who would give legitimacy to Khurāsānī military rule, and the nature of the relationship between the Khurāsānī army and other elements in the Muslim community; in other words would the military dictatorship of the Qaysīs simply be replaced by that of the Khurāsānīs. When al-Saffāḥ was acknowledged as caliph the answers to these questions were very uncertain and it would be hard to exaggerate the precariousness of the position of the new dynasty. That ʿAbbasid rule was established and accepted by most of the Muslim community was the achievement of the remarkable group of men who formed al-Saffāḥ's immediate family and particularly of his own brother Abū Jaʿfar, later the Caliph al-Manṣūr. Al-Saffāḥ himself only reigned for four years (132–6/749–54) but this period saw the establishment of ʿAbbasid power as it was to remain until after the death of Hārūn al-Rashīd. The caliph himself is sometimes portrayed as a rather nondescript character, even a weakling, and Shaban has argued that he was chosen by the Khurāsānīs precisely because he was not likely to assert himself. But the historical record suggests a man who was at once cautious and determined and the establishment of the ʿAbbasids owed much to his low-key leadership in the early years.

The key to ʿAbbasid success was to leave eastern Iran in the hands of the Khurāsāniyya (the men from Khurāsān who had made up the ʿAbbasid army) and Abū Muslim, while establishing members of the ʿAbbasid family as commanders of armies and governors of provinces in Iraq, Syria, Egypt and the Arabian peninsula. As soon as al-Saffāḥ became

caliph he sent his uncle ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿAlī to lead the armies opposing Marwān on the river Zāb, while his brother Abū Jaʿfar went to take command of the army besieging the last Umayyad governor of Iraq, Yazīd b. ʿUmar b. Hubayra in Wāsiṭ. Both ʿAbd Allāh and Abū Jaʿfar thus acquired a following among the Khurāsāniyya in the armies who came to associate their interests with those of their ʿAbbasid leaders. But both men also realized that to rely exclusively on the Khurāsāniyya was a recipe for disaster, it would mean that they were little more than puppets in the hands of the military leaders and that they would incur the lasting hostility of all the other groups in the western half of the Islamic world. It would be, in fact, a denial of all the objectives of the revolution. Among the other groups they turned to were of course the Arabs of the Yamāmī party who had opposed Marwān II. The most famous of these were the Muhallabī family whose influence had survived the fall of Yazīd b. al-Muhallab from political power and who had attempted to take their home town of Baṣra for the ʿAbbasids at the time of the revolution. The family was now rewarded by governorships, in Baṣra itself and other areas, notably Ifrīqiya, and they enjoyed a new golden age of prosperity. Also rewarded was the family of another leading figure of the Yamāmī opposition, Hishām's long-serving governor of the east, Khālid b. ʿAbd Allāh al-Qasrī, whose son Muḥammad had brought over the town of Kūfa to the ʿAbbasid cause and was now rewarded with government appointments, although his family never achieved the eminence of the Muhallabīs.

More striking is the efforts the early ʿAbbasids made to win over the leaders of the Qays. Abū Jaʿfar seems to have attempted a compromise with the arch-Qaysī Yazīd b. ʿUmar b. Hubayra, but was thwarted by Abū Muslim who instructed al-Saffāḥ to have Yazīd executed. Both ʿAbd Allāh and Abū Jaʿfar did, however, win over many of the Qaysīs of the Byzantine and Armenian frontier lands, notably Marwān's right-hand man in the area, Isḥāq b. Muslim al-ʿUqaylī, who was to become part of al-Manṣūr's inner circle of advisers. Another Qaysī family which survived to enjoy honour and power were the descendants of Qutayba b. Muslim, the conqueror of Bukhārā and Samarqand, whose associations with the Umayyad cause did not prevent them being recruited to the ʿAbbasids. One group alone was excluded from this general reconciliation, the members of the Umayyad family itself. All the prominent Umayyads were hunted down and many of them executed by ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿAlī when he took over Syria, only one, ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. Muʿāwiya, a grandson of the Caliph Hishām, escaping to join supporters in Muslim Spain where he founded a long-lived and successful branch of the dynasty at the western end of the Islamic world.

The reign of al-Saffāḥ was not without strains and stresses; there were Qaysīs in Syria who refused to accept the new regime and went into open rebellion and there were those among the Khurāsāniyya who were reluctant to acknowledge the growing authority of the dynasty or to share power with other groups, but in the main the policy was extremely successful. Compared with the Umayyad period, the early ʿAbbasid period is free from major internal dissensions; even the Syrians seem to have come to terms with the new government, and much of the credit for this must rest with the members of the ruling family.

Al-Saffāḥ died in Dhu'l-Ḥijja 136/June 754 at a time of growing crisis. This crisis concerned the relationship between the three most powerful men in the state after the caliph himself, Abū Jaʿfar, ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿAlī and Abū Muslim; all three were determined and able, all three could call on numerous committed supporters and a struggle for power was inevitable. Ominous signs were appearing in the months before the caliph's death that all was not well in the relationship between Abū Muslim and the ʿAbbasids; Abū Jaʿfar had been sent on a mission to Khurāsān to see Abū Muslim and was dismayed to find him behaving very much as an independent potentate, and a cruel and violent one at that. Abū Muslim also felt that he should visit the west, perhaps to re-establish his influence among the Khurāsāniyya who had settled there, and announced his intention of making the *ḥajj*. Shortly before al-Saffāḥ died, he and Abū Jaʿfar set off from Kūfa, the temporary capital, to Mecca. It was at this crucial juncture that the caliph died, nominating Abū Jaʿfar as his heir to be succeeded, on his death, by his nephew ʿĪsā b. Mūsā. As soon as he heard the news, Abū Jaʿfar hurried back to secure his position. He had no time to lose; his uncle ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿAlī was preparing a major campaign on the Byzantine frontier when the news reached him and he immediately decided to make a bid for the title of caliph. He could count on the support of many of the Khurāsānī army commanders he had with him and also of many Qaysī tribal leaders from Syria, where he had been governor for the previous four years. He based his claims on the fact that it had been he who had led the ʿAbbasid troops which finally defeated Marwān and this gave him a superior right to his nephew, Abū Jaʿfar.

Faced with this formidable threat, more dangerous because it divided ʿAbbasid supporters, the new caliph turned to the one man whom most of the Khurāsāniyya would accept as a leader, Abū Muslim. It was here that the caliph's political skill began to show; Abū Muslim was persuaded to lead the army against ʿAbd Allāh. In a confrontation near Niṣībīn in Jumādā II 137/November 754 Abū Muslim worsted ʿAbd Allāh who was forced to flee to Baṣra where he was sheltered by a

brother of his, Sulaymān b. ʿAlī. The presence of Abū Muslim had led many among the Khurāsāniyya to abandon ʿAbd Allāh's cause, while many Syrians could feel little confidence in a man who had defeated them at the battle of the river Zāb only four years before. ʿAbd Allāh suspected treachery all round and fled before the battle really developed. The incident showed the continuing power of the Qays and after the victory, al-Manṣūr was careful once again to conciliate them and make peace, a very different and much more successful approach than Marwān's brutal suppression of the Yamāmīs when he had been caliph.

ʿAbd Allāh had been defeated and was later to die in captivity, but al-Manṣūr knew he had to strike against Abū Muslim. After the victory over ʿAbd Allāh, relations between Abū Muslim and the caliph became increasingly strained. Abū Muslim was determined to return to Khurāsān where he would be safe and could count on loyal support but the caliph knew that if he missed this chance to dispose of his rival, he might never get another one. By a mixture of threats and persuasion, Abū Muslim, against his own better judgement and the advice of his counsellors, allowed himself to be lured to the caliph's camp where he was quickly murdered. It is easy to condemn al-Manṣūr for ingratitude after all that Abū Muslim had done for the ʿAbbasids but Abū Muslim had made his own position impossible; the caliph was determined to secure the unity of the Muslim world under ʿAbbasid rule and could not tolerate a virtually independent Khurāsān under Abū Muslim, nor could he allow Abū Muslim to remain as a rival focus of loyalty among the Khurāsāniyya. Once the deed was done, al-Manṣūr took immediate steps to reconcile Abū Muslim's leading supporters; the governorate of Khurāsān and the tax revenues remained in the hands of the Khurāsāniyya and most of the leaders who had supported the dead man are later found in the caliph's service. After the death of Abū Muslim, the Khurāsāniyya looked to the caliph and, increasingly to his son Muḥammad, later the Caliph al-Mahdī, for leadership.

Al-Manṣūr's rule faced a third and more difficult threat. The ʿAbbasids had come to power as representatives of the House of the Prophet, and both al-Saffāḥ and al-Manṣūr had made attempts to win over the ʿAlid branch of the family. To a considerable extent they had succeeded and ʿAlids were now honoured guests at court with high pensions, a marked improvement on their status under the Umayyad caliphs. There were, however, some members of the ʿAlid family who saw the ʿAbbasids as usurpers and refused to give up their claims and preferred to go into hiding instead. From this position they attracted the allegiance of those who were dissatisfied with ʿAbbasid rule. The most active of these was Muḥammad b. ʿAbd Allāh from the Hasanid branch of the ʿAlid family,

and his brother Ibrāhīm. Al-Manṣūr was well aware that these two were plotting a revolt but it was impossible for him to know where or when. The traditional centre of ʿAlid support in Kūfa was kept under very careful watch and the brothers were unable to establish themselves there but in the end they decided on a two-pronged revolt, with Muḥammad in Medina and Ibrāhīm in Baṣra, rather improbably since that city had no record of devotion to the ʿAlid cause. The caliph put pressure on other members of the ʿAlid family and in the end forced Muḥammad to come out in open rebellion, in Rajab 145/September 762, before his brother was ready. Muḥammad was known as the Pure Soul and despite his courage was a somewhat unworldly, even romantic, individual. He attracted considerable support in Medina, both from the *Anṣār* and members of old *Muhājirūn* families who now lived there in virtual obscurity, but he refused to leave the city and seek support elsewhere as his practical advisers urged, preferring, like his distinguished ancestor, to endure a siege in Medina itself. The caliph was delighted that Muḥammad had declared himself in such a vulnerable place; he was able to cut off the grain supplies from Egypt on which the city depended and to despatch an army under the command of his nephew ʿĪsā b. Mūsā. In Ramaḍān 145/November 762 the ʿAbbasid army arrived outside Medina and Muḥammad, with about 300 supporters was killed, fighting bravely.

Only about two weeks before his brother's death, Ibrāhīm finally declared himself in Baṣra. Despite the unfortunate timing, this revolt proved much more threatening than the one in Medina, and attracted widespread support. Why so many should have come out for Ibrāhīm in this traditionally anti-ʿAlid centre is not at all clear, but it would seem that the motives were connected more with local grievances than with commitment to the ʿAlid cause. At first the rebellion was a great success; Ahwāz, Fārs and Wāsiṭ were taken and Ibrāhīm established a *dīwān* in Baṣra which was said to have had 100,000 names on it, but disagreements soon began to emerge. A body of committed ʿAlid activists had slipped away from Kūfa, which remained under government control throughout, and now urged the Basrans to march on their home town. Many in Baṣra, on the other hand, seem to have wanted to stay put and make terms. The delay enabled al-Manṣūr to summon troops from Syria and Iran while the dissension lost Ibrāhīm much support. When the ʿAbbasid and ʿAlid armies finally met at Bākhamrā, on the road from Baṣra to Kūfa in Dhu'l-Qaʿada 145/February 763, Ibrāhīm's force had dwindled to some 15,000. His defeat and death mark the end of large-scale ʿAlid rebellions for the next half-century.

The ʿAlids failed to make good their claim essentially because they failed to attract the support of any powerful military groups; Khurāsāniyya,

Qaysīs and Yamāmīs were alike identified with the ʿAbbasid cause as a result of al-Manṣūr's policies. Furthermore the ʿAlids were divided among themselves. Muḥammad b. ʿAbd Allāh's claims to leadership were rejected by many, including the main Husaynid contender, the sixth *imām*, Jaʿfar al-Ṣādiq, who refused to swear allegiance, not because he felt that his branch of the Family had the only true right to lead but because Muḥammad was so young. Under Jaʿfar's guidance it became possible to accept the spiritual role of the Husaynid *imāms* without committing oneself to open and violent opposition to the government. The old ʿAlid constituency of discontented Iraqis, especially Kūfans, was now hopelessly divided by al-Manṣūr's claims to lead the Family of the Prophet, by the establishment of Iraq as the centre of government, and by differing views among the ʿAlids themselves about their role in the community. Not until ʿAbbasid power began to disintegrate for other reasons were the ʿAlids able to make another serious attempt to mobilize popular support in their favour.

The Golden Age of the ʿAbbasid Caliphate 145–193/763–809

After the disturbances of the early years, the period from 145/763 until the caliph's death in 158/775 was a time of comparative peace and calm. The political foundations which al-Manṣūr had laid proved durable and strong. The early ʿAbbasid state owed much to the Umayyad example and al-Manṣūr himself is said to have acknowledged the debt he owed to the examples of ʿAbd al-Malik and Hishām. The ʿAbbasid family played a part in government very similar to that of the Marwanids. In some cases branches of the family established themselves as property-owners and political leaders in the provinces, like Ṣāliḥ b. ʿAlī and his family who took over many of the Umayyad estates in Syria. At times too, they were appointed as governors of Syria but the post was not hereditary and they could be, and were, deposed by the caliph. The acceptance of ʿAbbasid rule in the area was in part the consequence of there being a resident branch of the ruling dynasty with whose interests the Syrians could identify themselves. The caliph and his advisers also chose provincial governors from other groups like the Khurāsāniyya and the Muhallabīs; although these might be appointed to areas where they had influence, the caliphs were powerful enough to appoint and dismiss governors at will.

In some ways the early ʿAbbasid state seems to have been more centralized than the Umayyad especially in the fiscal administration, and this was a development which gathered pace under the Barmakid rule during the reign of Hārūn al-Rashīd. It is clear that there was an attempt to

ensure that the provinces made substantial contributions to the finance of central government. We are particularly well informed about this in the case of Egypt where determined efforts were made to extract surplus revenue. The large sums of money left by al-Manṣūr and Hārūn al-Rashīd would suggest that the government had some success in this. None the less, the revenues of Iraq, the home province, so to speak, of the ʿAbbasid government, remained of crucial importance. Caliphs from al-Manṣūr to Hārūn also spent money on developing and extending the *ṣawāfī*, the state lands, and these probably continued to be an important source of revenue. Another aspect of government control was the appointment of *qāḍīs* (Muslim judges), a function which was now taken over by the central government. In Egypt under the Umayyads, for example, the *qāḍīs* had been appointed by the local governors but this power was taken out of their hands under the early ʿAbbasids and, from al-Mahdī's reign onwards, *qaḍīs* were appointed from Baghdad.

While the ʿAbbasid state was in many ways a development of the Umayyad, there were important differences. The most obvious of these was the fact that the centre of government moved from Syria to Iraq. The ʿAbbasids seem to have had no hesitation in choosing Iraq as their base. Khurāsān was on the fringes of the Islamic world and was, in any case, quite unfamiliar to them while Syria, with its Umayyad connections, was hardly appropriate. Iraq had had a long tradition of attachment to the Family of the Prophet. There were also sound economic reasons for the shift. Iraq was by far the largest contributor to the revenues of the Caliphate and the revenue from Iraq was now made all the more valuable by the fact that the area was close to the centre of administration and so the revenue was easier to collect. Iraq was the breadbasket of the caliphate.

The shift of the centre of political activity also represented a change in the nature of the political élite. The Umayyad caliphate had essentially been run by Arabs for Arabs. In a time when most Muslims were Arabs, this was justifiable but as conversion to Islam began to gather pace, the Arabness of the regime was less reasonable. The ʿAbbasid revolution was in part an attempt to break down these barriers. The early ʿAbbasid ruling class was much more varied in composition. There were still Arab tribal leaders, like Yazīd b. Mazyad al-Shaybānī who would have seemed quite at home in the Umayyad court, but there were many others as well. The most important of these were the Khurāsāniyya who had come west at the time of the revolution, and later. While many of their leaders seem to have been of Arab descent, and no doubt spoke Arabic, a large proportion of the rank and file were Iranian Muslims and Persian was widely spoken.

These Khurāsāniyya certainly appeared foreign to observers in Syria and they were established in garrison towns like Baghdad and Raqqa and on the Byzantine frontier. These troops and their descendants also became known as *abnā' al-dawla*, sons of the (ʿAbbasid) dynasty or state, or more simply as *abnā'*, a designation which harkened back to the *abnā'* of Yaman, the Persian settlers who were converted to Islam during the Prophet's lifetime and supported the Muslims at the time of the *Ridda* wars. In the administration, clerks of Christian origin from Syria continued to play an important role, but they were joined by Iranians like the Barmakids and, increasingly, by *dihqāns*, small landowners of non-Arab extraction from the Sawād of Iraq whose expertise and local knowledge made them indispensable to the regime. ʿAbbasid government is sometimes said to be Persian in character and personnel in contrast to the Arab rule of the Umayyads. There is some truth in this and it is clear that people of Iranian origin became more important in both army and administration. None the less, Arabs still held very high positions and Arabic remained the language of administration and all court culture. The early ʿAbbasid state was essentially a Muslim state, rather than a purely Arab or Persian one.

In the early days after the revolution, the caliphs had been based in Kūfa or in temporary settlements nearby, each known as Hāshimiyya. In 145/762, however, al-Manṣūr began the construction of a purpose-built capital at Baghdad. The location was at the northern end of the Sawād but, unlike Kūfa, it also lay on the great road from Iraq to Khurāsān, now such a strategic highway. It also had very good river communications with Baṣra to the south, and along the Tigris and the Euphrates with Mosul, Raqqa and the rich grain-growing areas of the Jazīra. Not only did these communications encourage trade, they also allowed Baghdad to import large amounts of food. The city rapidly expanded beyond the size which could be supplied from the immediate hinterland, and the grain of the Jazīra and the dates of Baṣra were vital for its inhabitants, a fact which gave rise to acute crises of supply when civil war or political unrest interfered with communications. The site was ideally chosen and the subsequent prosperity of the city bears witness to the acumen of its founder.

There were also political reasons for the establishment of Baghdad. It was founded to provide a base for the Khurāsāniyya, far from their homeland. They needed houses, obviously, but they also needed economic opportunities. The Khurāsāniyya were paid salaries and were supposed to be available for military service but commerce and property-owning also contributed to their prosperity. Leaders of the Khurāsāniyya were given plots of land to distribute to their followers and to rent out to

merchants. Since the court was established in the city, the economic opportunities were very considerable and the caliph was able to reward his followers handsomely. There was also the need for security, a need which had been graphically demonstrated some four years previously when the caliph had almost been murdered during a riot by some of his troops. To this end he built a round, administrative city, sheltering a palace, a mosque and a garrison of picked troops and defended by a high wall. This was the nucleus of the city, but most people lived beyond the walls of the Round City, in the rapidly proliferating suburbs and the new quarters developed across the Tigris on the east bank by the caliph's son al-Mahdī. Baghdad became the prototype for numerous Islamic "new towns" (of which Sāmarrā and Cairo are the best known) founded by rulers to house their followers and to generate income, and al-Manṣūr's work had a lasting influence on urban development in the Near East.

Another factor which distinguished the early ʿAbbasid state from its Umayyad predecessor was the changed position of Khurāsān. Under the Umayyads, Khurāsān had been a remote frontier province, usually ruled by governors despatched by the Umayyad viceroys in Wāsiṭ. The role that the Khurāsāniyya played in the establishment of the dynasty, and even more, the role they continued to play in the armies of the caliphate, made the province much more important. After the departure of Abū Muslim, it was integrated into the ʿAbbasid state, but the governors were always chosen from among people of local origin, a privilege given to no other area. In 141/758–9 the caliph appointed his son Muḥammad to be governor of Khurāsān, but he supervised the affairs of the province from Rayy on the western borders, prudently allowing local men to exercise authority on the spot. This period was important, however, because it meant that Muḥammad established close links with the Khurāsāniyya, many of whom accompanied him back to Baghdad when he returned ten years later. The support of the Khurāsāniyya was to be of crucial importance in the struggle for the succession. Khurāsān was not peaceful in the early ʿAbbasid period. There were many rebellions, notably those of Ustādhsīs in the Badhghīs area north of Harāt in 150/767 and of al-Muqannaʿ in the mountains between the Oxus and Zarafshān valleys in 159–63/775–80. The accounts of these movements are frequently very confused and it is difficult to explain them all. It seems, however, that most of them were anti-Islamic, usually in the name of a "false prophet" and that they originated in, and were largely confined to, mountainous areas on the edges of Muslim control. We should probably see them as attempts by the local people to maintain religious, political and cultural autonomy in the face of pressure from

the Muslims of the plains, rather than as movements designed to overthrow the ʿAbbasid government. Nevertheless, it meant that the province was frequently disturbed and that the Khurāsāniyya often had to defend their homeland.

The question of the succession to al-Manṣūr was a complex one. When al-Saffāḥ had made him heir apparent, he had stipulated that ʿĪsā b. Mūsā should succeed him. This was probably a precaution in case al-Manṣūr, at that time on the *ḥajj* with Abū Muslim, should be murdered or die suddenly before he could assume control. ʿĪsā b. Mūsā remained heir apparent, however, even after the crisis was passed. He was a friend of Abū Muslim and rendered valuable service to the ʿAbbasid state; he was for many years governor of Kūfa and led the army which suppressed the rebellion of Muḥammad the Pure Soul in Medina. In spite of this, he seems to have been very unpopular with many elements in the Khurāsāniyya and the caliph was determined to replace him with his own son Muḥammad. After threatening demonstrations by the military, ʿĪsā was forced to resign his claim in 147/764 in return for vast compensation and the right to succeed Muḥammad. He then retired from politics to the vast and imposing palace he built himself at Ukhayḍir in the desert to the west of Kūfa.

This meant that when the caliph, now in his mid-sixties, died in Dhu'l-Ḥijja 158/October 775 he was succeeded by his son, who took the name of al-Mahdī, without any overt opposition. In many ways al-Mahdī's reign was a continuation of his father's and he relied on the same supporters, notably the Khurāsāniyya, but there were significant changes of policy. The most obvious of these was the attempt to heal the rift between ʿAbbasids and ʿAlids and restore the unity of the Family of the Prophet. His own regnal title of al-Mahdī was, of course, one that had often been adopted by members of the Family. He sought to win over the ʿAlids by kindness and gifts, by granting them estates and positions at court. He also attempted to win over the supporters of the ʿAlids in the Ḥijāz, and 500 of the *Anṣār* of Medina were recruited as a special guard for the caliph. The caliph also demonstrated his care for Islam by the building of mosques, notably the mosque at Mecca and the Aqṣā mosque in Jerusalem. The concern for religion and the well-being of the Prophet's Family was an integral part of the attempt to gain general approval for ʿAbbasid rule. The move was largely successful, only a small group of ʿAlid supporters, grouped around ʿĪsā b. Zayd, continued to work actively against the government.

The caliph's main intermediary in his efforts to win over the ʿAlids and their supporters was his secretary, Yaʿqūb b. Dāwūd, who had originally been imprisoned as an ʿAlid supporter and now placed his contacts

at the disposal of the caliph. For six years, from 160–166 (777–82/3) he remained the caliph's chief adviser, using his position to secure control over many other aspects of the administration. Never before had a member of the bureaucracy established such control over policy-making. In the end his power made him vulnerable; his ambitions made him many enemies, he failed to discover and reconcile ʿĪsā b. Zayd and his control of the administration was increasingly resented until finally he was trapped by his enemies, dismissed and brutally punished.

The influence Yaʿqūb achieved points to the growing importance of two elements in the ʿAbbasid élite, the secretaries and the *mawālī* (freedmen in this context) of the caliph. All rulers and governors had had secretaries to write their letters since the time of the Prophet. In early ʿAbbasid times, however, these men began to grow in importance. The increasingly centralized nature of the administration and the complexities of revenue collection in the Sawād meant that the number of bureaucrats or *kuttāb* (plural of *kātib* = a secretary) increased until they became an important pressure group, under the leadership of the Barmakid family whose name has passed into English as the Barmecides. The Barmakids, originally guardians of a great Buddhist shrine near Balkh in modern Afghanistan, had converted to Islam in the Umayyad period and had come west with the armies of the ʿAbbasid revolution, soon establishing themselves in the administration. Yaḥyā b. Khālid the Barmakid became a close friend and adviser of al-Mahdī in the days when he had been acting as governor in Rayy, and he also became the tutor to al-Mahdī's young son Hārūn, to whom he was virtually a father. The Barmakids provided political leadership for the *kuttāb* and it was largely through this that the bureaucrats became an important force in the ʿAbbasid state. Long after the fall of the Barmakids the *kuttāb* played a vital role in both the politics and the culture of the period, and in their writings they kept the memory of the family green.

The other group who emerged into prominence at this time were the palace servants led by the ex-slave al-Rabīʿ b. Yūnus who had been the *ḥājib* (chamberlain) and close confidant of al-Manṣūr and continued to advise his son. The fact that the ʿAbbasid caliphs were frequently settled in one place, often in vast labyrinthine palaces like the surviving examples at Ukhayḍir and Sāmarrā, meant that large numbers of servants were recruited to run the establishments and prepare the increasingly complex ceremonial. The *ḥājib* became a very powerful figure since he could control access to the caliph and prevent his opponents being able to put their case, as al-Rabīʿ b. Yūnus did. Palace servants were of little importance at the simple peripatetic courts of the Umayyads; in the

increasingly settled and complex world of the ʿAbbasid palace, they became powerful and influential, although they seldom produced either statesmen or writers as the *kuttāb* did. In the crisis years of the early fourth/tenth century, the ʿAbbasid caliphs were virtually dominated by the *kuttāb* and the palace servants, and these developments can be traced back to the days of the early ʿAbbasid rulers.

A sinister development was the growing tension between the newly emerging civil élite of secretaries and palace servants and the military leaders of the Khurāsāniyya. The dispute was basically about power and control of the administration. The civil party sought to centralize the administration as much as possible since it was above all in the capital that their power lay. The military tended to be more powerful as governors in the provinces, especially those like Khurāsān and Armenia where the situation meant that large numbers of troops were required. Since the civil administration collected the taxes which paid the soldiers' salaries, there was ample cause for disagreement. Increasingly the parties were sharply differentiated; the growing intricacy of the administration meant that most military men were effectively excluded from it, while it was rare for those trained as *kuttāb* (let alone as palace servants) to be given military commands or governorates. This tension between civilian administrators and the military was to be an increasingly important feature of the politics of the ʿAbbasid caliphate until the final triumph of the military with the introduction of the office of *amīr al-umarā'* and the development of the *iqṭāʿ* system in the first half of the fourth/tenth century. It is noteworthy that such tensions are not apparent in Umayyad times but are found in the more sophisticated bureaucratic state of eleventh-century Byzantium.

As so often in early Islamic history, the divisions within the ruling class were reflected in the arrangements for the succession. Two sons of al-Mahdī had emerged as heirs to the throne. The elder was Mūsā, later the Caliph al-Hādī. He had acted as his father's deputy in Baghdad on several occasions and seems to have developed close links with military leaders in the city, links which were certainly strengthened when in 167/783–4 he was given command of a large army sent to pacify the province of Jurjān at the south-east corner of the Caspian Sea. The other candidate was his brother Hārūn, later to become the Caliph al-Rashīd. His education was entrusted to Yaḥyā the Barmakid, and while he was given military training in wars on the Byzantine frontier and overall supervision of the western provinces of the caliphate, his ties remained very much with the court party, with Yaḥyā his mentor and with al-Rabīʿ b. Yūnus the *ḥājib* and head of the palace *mawālī*. He also had another admirer in the person of al-Khayzurān. She was mother to both Mūsā

and Hārūn but, for reasons that are not clear, seems to have favoured Hārūn above his elder brother. The original succession agreement was that Mūsā should be caliph until his death when he would be succeeded by his brother, but there were rumours that al-Mahdī was intending to change these provisions and make Hārūn his immediate heir. Whether this was true can never be known for in Muḥarram 169/August 785 the caliph was killed, apparently in a hunting accident, in the foothills of the Zagros mountains to the east of Baghdad.

Mūsā was still in Jurjān when news came of his father's death but his brother, who was on the spot, made no attempt to usurp the throne and Mūsā succeeded, as the Caliph al-Hādī, without any overt opposition. When he was safely installed, the new caliph showed that he intended to follow different policies from those of his father. The military leaders were naturally to be his closest advisers while Yaḥyā the Barmakid was arrested and al-Rabīʿ b. Yūnus only escaped a similar fate by his death from natural causes. Along with this reliance on the military party went a much harder line towards the ʿAlids. They were deprived of many of their allowances and ceased to enjoy the privileged status at court they had had during his father's reign. In response to this, one ʿAlid leader, al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī, organized a rebellion in Medina in Dhu'l-Qaʿda 169/May 786. In some ways he was following in the steps of Muḥammad the Pure Soul a quarter of a century before but his revolt was much smaller and much less well planned. He found supporters only in Medina and even there many of those groups who had supported Muḥammad, the *Anṣār* for example, and the old *Muhājirūn* families, now remained loyal to the ʿAbbasids. In the end al-Ḥusayn could only recruit about 300 followers to oppose the ʿAbbasid army which arrived shortly afterwards with the *ḥajj*, and his cause, as so often with the ʿAlids, was doomed to failure. Al-Ḥusayn was killed as he fled towards Mecca. It would seem that al-Mahdī's policies had, to some extent, succeeded in drawing the sting of the ʿAlid threat. The failure did, however, have the effect of dispersing the ʿAlid family. One of the participants, Idrīs b. ʿAbd Allāh, fled to Morocco, where he founded an ʿAlid dynasty, while his brother Yaḥyā fled to the mountains of Daylam at the south end of the Caspian Sea where he established a connection between the local people and the ʿAlids which was to last until Buyid times. The spread of ʿAlid loyalties to outlying regions of the Muslim world, a development with lasting and important consequences, was essentially the result of the policies of the early ʿAbbasid caliphs and the failure of the ʿAlids to mobilize widespread, popular support in the central Islamic lands.

It is difficult to assess al-Hādī's policies fairly because he died, in mysterious circumstances, after a reign of only thirteen months. He is

said to have been ill for some time before his death but circumstantial evidence suggests that he was the victim of a plot. Once again the question of the succession dominated political life. Under the terms of the arrangements made by al-Mahdī, Hārūn was to succeed his brother. This was clearly repugnant to al-Hādī's military supporters who realized that the accession of Hārūn would be a victory for Yaḥyā the Barmakid and his supporters in the civil administration. It was not difficult to persuade al-Hādī that Hārūn should be removed from the position of heir apparent and replaced by his own son Jaʿfar, and the proposal was made more tempting because Hārūn himself seems to have been prepared to renounce his rights. But the caliph and his advisers had not counted on the influence of his mother. It seems that relations between al-Khayzurān and her elder son had deteriorated sharply. Towards the end of al-Mahdī's life, she had been an influential figure in the counsels of the caliphate but al-Hādī made it clear, in public, that he would not tolerate any interference. It may have been al-Khayzurān, therefore, who arranged that the caliph should be smothered in his sleep by one of the slave-girls of the palace. Whatever the truth of the matter, al-Hādī died in his sleep in Rabīʿ I 170/September 786 and Hārūn's supporters were able to take rapid action. Yaḥyā the Barmakid was released from prison, al-Hādī's son Jaʿfar arrested and Hārūn proclaimed as caliph. The coup was swift and efficient and al-Hādī's followers were unable to organize any serious resistance.

Hārūn al-Rashīd, the most famous of the ʿAbbasid caliphs, came to power as a result of an effective *coup d'état* mounted by his supporters, most prominent of them being the Barmakid family. It was inevitable, then, that they should have a powerful voice in the new administration, and the first ten years of his rule (170–80/786–96) can fairly be described as the decade of the Barmakids. Yaḥyā, his brother Muḥammad and his two sons al-Faḍl and Jaʿfar effectively monopolized the central administration. Their policy was to concentrate power at the centre in Baghdad. In political terms this meant that provincial governors became much less important. Under al-Manṣūr's rule, the governors of Baṣra, Kūfa and Egypt had enjoyed long terms of office and had been among the most important figures in the state; under Hārūn the governors were changed so frequently that the chronicles often fail to record their names and real power now lay at court. This political centralization was paralleled by fiscal centralization; we can see this most clearly in the case of Egypt where special investigators were sent from Baghdad to root out abuses in the tax collection and the governor was, on two occasions, obliged to bring the revenues and the accounts in person to Baghdad to have them checked.

The weakness of the Barmakid policy lay in the lack of reliable military support. Many of the leading figures in the army of al-Hādī had retired or been disgraced with the accession of Hārūn and they could not easily be replaced. Barmakid fiscal measures aroused considerable discontent which sometimes expressed itself in violent rebellion. The family made an effort to recruit more men, notably when al-Faḍl b. Yaḥyā was sent as governor to Khurāsān and recruited 50,000 new men, of whom 20,000 were sent to the west and used to pacify North Africa. Matters came to a head in 178/794 with the rebellion of Walīd b. Ṭarīf, a Khārijī who was able to dominate much of the Jazīra area and prevent the government collecting any revenues. The success of his movement was partly due to the mobility of his followers, who could seek refuge in the mountains of eastern Anatolia if the need arose, but partly too because government taxation policies assured him a wide measure of sympathy from the local population and the Barmakids had no military force capable of taking on so formidable an opponent. In the end Harun was forced to call on the services of one of al-Hādī's closest collaborators, the bedouin chief Yazīd b. Mazyad al-Shaybānī who, with the support of his tribesmen defeated and killed the rebel. There could not have been a clearer indication of the weaknesses of Barmakid rule and it was after this that their monopoly of power began to be broken, with Yazīd along with other military leaders being returned to favour.

There was another field in which Barmakid policy attracted adverse comment and that was in attitudes to the ʿAlids. Although Hārūn had rejected many of his brother's attitudes, he continued the policy of hostility to members of the ʿAlid family. The Barmakids, on the other hand, advocated a more generous line, similar to that which had pertained in al-Mahdī's time. This did not mean that they were Shiʿites or sought to replace the ʿAbbasid by ʿAlids but rather that they wished to reconcile all the members of the Family of the Prophet. It is not entirely clear why they should have taken this line. The literary assemblies the Barmakids held were notable for the freedom with which unusual opinions were voiced but it may be that there was a political dimension to this as well, that the Barmakids believed that the dynasty should aspire to a more absolute religious authority of the sort that supporters of the ʿAlids advocated. In these ways the views of the Barmakids anticipate those developed by the Muʿtazilī party at court in the next century. At the time, however, these views seem to have incurred the hostility of the caliph as when al-Faḍl b. Yaḥyā gave a binding safe conduct to Yaḥyā b. ʿAbd Allāh to persuade him to leave his mountain refuge in Daylam, a safe conduct which the caliph soon breached by having the unfortunate ʿAlid executed.

From 180/796–7 the power of the family began to decline, although Jaʿfar b. Yaḥyā remained a close friend of the caliph, and when the end came with the famous fall of the Barmakids in 187/803 it was more the last phase of this decline than a radical change. The reasons for the fall of the Barmakids, the imprisonment of Yaḥyā b. Khālid and his son al-Faḍl, and the dramatic murder of his other son Jaʿfar, Hārūn's closest friend, were a mystery to contemporaries and have remained so ever since. Part of the explanation lies in Hārūn's increasing political independence and his reluctance to be dominated by any particular group in the state. Since about 180/796 he had been attempting to balance Barmakid influence by favouring military leaders like Yazīd b. Mazyad and promoting the son of the old *ḥājib*, al-Faḍl b. al-Rabīʿ b. Yūnus, as a rival power in the central government. He now seems to have wished to remove their influence entirely, feeling that they were still overmighty subjects.

The immediate cause of the disgrace of the Barmakids was probably tension over the arrangements for the succession. Hārūn, like his father before him, decided that the caliphate should pass to several of his sons in succession but he was determined that conflict should be avoided by specifying publicly and in great detail the rights which each was to enjoy. To this end he, and most of the leading figures in the ʿAbbasid regime, went to Mecca for the pilgrimage of 186/802 where formal and binding agreements were drawn up. The two most important contenders for the throne were his two sons Muḥammad, later al-Amīn and ʿAbd Allāh, later al-Ma'mūn, although some reports say that a third son was subsequently introduced as well. Muḥammad was the elder of the two, although both were born in the same year, 170/786 and he had originally been nominated as heir as early as 175/791–2. Although his first tutor was al-Faḍl b. Yaḥyā the Barmakid, he had subsequently become closely identified with the *abnā'*, the Khurāsānī soldiers settled in Baghdad, and had been left in the city as deputy during his father's frequent absences. ʿAbd Allāh, on the other hand, had been nominated in 182/798–9 and remained under the influence of his Barmakid tutor, Jaʿfar b. Yaḥyā and his associates. The agreement stipulated that Muḥammad should succeed his father as caliph but that ʿAbd Allāh should have during Muḥammad's lifetime an enlarged Khurāsān as an almost independent principality into which the caliph's agents were not allowed to penetrate.

This was the most elaborate of similar arrangements for dividing the caliphate between the sons of the ruler made by ʿAbbasids from al-Mahdī through to al-Rāḍī. The object was probably to secure the succession should the heir apparent die suddenly, to administer the vast

empire more efficiently and to contain the growing polarization within the ruling class, Muḥammad being effectively the leader of the *abnāʾ* while ʿAbd Allāh became leader of the Barmakid party. The agreement was doomed to failure precisely because these tensions had become so marked and because there were small groups of men on each side who were determined to destroy the other party entirely, but it was not necessarily an unintelligent approach to the problems facing the caliphate. The continuing power of the Barmakids could only be an obstacle to the peaceful working of these arrangements; if Muḥammad was to have any chance of establishing himself as caliph, they had to be removed and the fall of the Barmakids took place as soon as the court returned to Iraq from Mecca.

The fall of the Barmakids caught the imagination of contemporaries and later historians, the suddenness and completeness with which the greatest family in the Muslim state had been brought low typified the uncertainties of political fortune and the unreliability of rulers. But this should not obscure the importance of the contribution they made to the ʿAbbasid caliphate. They were the architects of the centralized administration that was developed to its full under al-Muʿtaṣim and al-Wāthiq in the next century. They may have perished but their influence lived on, in the work of Jaʿfar's pupil ʿAbd Allāh and such bureaucrats as al-Faḍl b. Sahl and al-Faḍl b. Marwān who were their protégés.

The years after the fall of the Barmakids were marked by Hārūn's campaigns against the Byzantine empire and by his attempts to solve the problems of Khurāsān. Under the Umayyads, the Muslims had undertaken major expeditions by land and sea with the object of taking Constantinople and destroying the Byzantine empire. In late Umayyad times, from the reign of Hishām onwards, there was a change in policy. The frontier was stabilized, with the Muslims establishing garrison cities in the Cilician plain at Adana, Maṣṣīṣa and Tarsus, and in the mountains further to the east in Marʿash, Ḥadath and Malaṭya. Settlement was encouraged and the inhabitants of these military outposts received generous tax concessions to persuade them to stay. During his father's lifetime, Hārūn had made two major expeditions against the Byzantines and when he became caliph he took a more direct interest than any previous member of his family in the Holy War, establishing himself in Raqqa much of the time, to be close to the frontier zones. He also established a separate province called al-ʿAwāṣim behind the actual frontier zone (the Thughūr), the resources of which were to be devoted to warfare against the Greeks. In 190/806 and again the next year he led the largest expeditions against the Byzantine empire ever launched by the ʿAbbasids. The results were not spectacular; frontier districts were

raided but no permanent gains were made. The real purpose of the effort was, perhaps, to emphasize the caliph's role as leader of the Muslims against the traditional enemy. Campaigns against the Byzantine empire were the only military activities ʿAbbasid caliphs undertook in person and should probably be compared with the leading of the *ḥajj* as a symbolic affirmation of the caliph's importance in the life of the Islamic community.

The other problem with which the caliph was forced to come to grips was the government of Khurāsān. From the time of the ʿAbbasid revolution the province had been ruled by representatives of the Khurāsāniyya military, the *abnāʾ*, who had originated in the province but were now mostly based in Baghdad and Raqqa. For reasons which are not entirely clear, this policy resulted in growing unrest in the province, led by the local landowners and semi-independent princes of the frontier and mountain areas. This resentment may have been in part social, the *abnāʾ* were thought to be inferior to the established local ruling families, but a more fundamental issue was also raised, the spending of the tax revenues of the province. Since the time of the Caliph ʿUthmān there had been tension between those who believed that the revenues should be spent for the benefit of the Muslims in the province where they were collected, and those who thought that the caliph should control the collection and distribution of revenue. In the early ʿAbbasid period, the *abnāʾ* demanded that the revenues of Khurāsān should be brought west to Baghdad to supply their salaries and pensions, but many notables in eastern Iran objected to this, arguing that the bulk of the money should be kept in the province and spent locally as had happened during the brief governorate of al-Faḍl b. Yaḥyā the Barmakid. This was totally unacceptable to the *abnāʾ* of Baghdad, since they would lose control of the sources of their own livelihood and they were determined to preserve their domination of Khurāsān, by force if necessary.

The grievances recorded in the Arabic sources certainly seem to be connected with taxation rather than class antagonisms. Under the Barmakids, this pattern was changed when in 177/793–4 al-Faḍl b. Yaḥyā was appointed governor of the province. The Barmakids themselves came from an important eastern Iranian family and al-Faḍl's rule was popular among the local notables; he spent money on building projects and military expeditions on the frontiers. This interlude did not last long, however, perhaps because of the opposition it aroused among the *abnāʾ* of Baghdad. In 180/796 Hārūn acceded to this pressure by appointing as governor of Khurāsān one of the leading figures among the *abnāʾ*, ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā b. Māhān. Although the sources are hostile to him and must be treated with caution, it seems that ʿAlī tried to exploit the

resources of the provinces more ruthlessly than any of his predecessors. Inevitably this aroused new opposition. There were Kharijite rebellions on a scale previously unknown in the province and a growing volume of complaint from the notables of the area. For some time Hārūn remained deaf to their pleas, partly because ʿAlī gave him a generous share of his gains, but in 190/805–6 a serious rebellion broke out in Samarqand led by Rāfiʿ b. Layth, the grandson of Naṣr b. Sayyār, the last Umayyad governor of the province. ʿAlī was quite unable to re-establish control and this rebellion, coupled with the growing Kharijite menace, obliged Hārūn to dismiss him. Even in this, he was compelled to act by stealth, sending his right-hand military man, Harthama b. Aʿyan, ostensibly to support the governor, in fact to depose him. In spite of this, the unrest remained and in 192/808 Hārūn decided to go east to investigate the affairs of the province. Perhaps surprisingly considering the important part it played in ʿAbbasid history, Hārūn was the only reigning caliph of the dynasty ever to visit Khurāsān in person. It was while he was on this expedition, in 193/809, that he died near the Khurāsānī city of Ṭūs.

The reign of Hārūn al-Rashīd has gone down in popular memory as the "golden prime" of the ʿAbbasid caliphate. Reading the contemporary annals, it is at first difficult to see why this should have been so. The caliph himself appears as a curiously nondescript character; al-Manṣūr had been famous for his miserliness and cunning, al-Mahdī for his openness and generosity, but Hārūn seems to have had no clear characteristics of that sort. Nor, again unlike his grandfather and father, does he seem to have had any clear and consistent policies; during the first years of his reign he was content to allow the Barmakid family to exercise power in his name and even later on he seems to have taken little interest in the day-to-day business of government. Furthermore, his caliphate was constantly challenged by rebellions which the government often had difficulty in suppressing, even when, like the revolt of Walīd b. Ṭarīf, they were in Iraq itself.

To understand Hārūn's later reputation, it is important to see it against the background of the disturbances and disasters which followed his death, the catastrophic civil war between his sons, and the later domination of the caliphate by Turkish soldiers while the economy of Iraq inexorably declined and provinces slipped out of the control of Baghdad. Hārūn's reign was the last period when all the central Islamic lands from Ifrīqiya in the west to Sind in the east were under the control of the caliph. It was also a period when the caliphate was still extremely wealthy. Hārūn left a vast surplus in the treasury and it seems that the civil war which followed his death saw the beginning of the economic problems which were to plague the ʿAbbasid caliphs in the next century.

Under his rule there were no mutinies by irate troops demanding their pay, a magnificent and cultured court was maintained and golden *dīnārs* were showered on successful poets. Baghdad was an expanding and prosperous city and the caliph in person led the united armies of Islam against the Byzantine foe. It is not surprising that the court and capital of Hārūn al-Rashīd became the setting for the earliest Arabic contributions to the "Thousand and One Nights". It was also the period when the *kuttāb* under the leadership of the Barmakids, established themselves as a major political and cultural force in the caliphate, and since many of the historians on whom we depend for information about Hārūn were themselves *kuttāb* or had links with the bureaucracy it was natural that they would stress their wealth, magnificence and political wisdom. All these factors combined to shed a sort of golden glow over Hārūn's caliphate and for later writers, working against a background of continuous political and financial crisis, when Baghdad was degenerating into a collection of hostile villages and the great Round City of al-Manṣūr was a decrepit ruin, this was a period to look back on with deep nostalgia, and it was easy to ignore the more prosaic reality.

Hārūn's reputation was also known to a wider world. Diplomatic relations between Byzantium and the ʿAbbasids were conducted on a more regular basis than they had been with the Umayyads and were sometimes cordial. In the reign of al-Manṣūr it was a visiting Byzantine ambassador who advised the caliph to move the markets outside the new Round City he had constructed, and in the time of al-Mahdī a visiting Greek dignitary was provided with money by the caliph to build some water-mills in Baghdad and the profits from these were even forwarded to him when he returned to Constantinople. Hārūn's relations with the Byzantines were less friendly, especially when he began raiding deep into Byzantine territory towards the end of his life, but the existence of embassies is a sign that the ʿAbbasids accepted that the Byzantine empire was a power with which they had to deal on equal terms.

More tantalizing is our fragmentary evidence of ambassadors sent to Hārūn by his great contemporary, the Frankish Emperor Charlemagne. These are not recorded in any Arabic source but Latin annals mention that Charlemagne sent envoys in 180–1/797 and 190/807 and that Hārūn returned the compliment on both occasions, including the sending of an elephant as a gift in 185/801. What the purpose of these missions was is difficult to tell, indeed some writers have suggested that they never occurred at all. It does seem, however, that Charlemagne was interested in the Holy Places in Jerusalem, where he founded a hostel and library for pilgrims, and his missions to Baghdad may have been connected with that. The disintegration of the Carolingian empire after

his death in 198/814 meant that these initiatives were not followed up. The only embassy from western Europe to the ʿAbbasids was the mission sent by Berta of Tuscany to the Caliph al-Muktafī in 293/906, mentioned in an Arab source which claims she was seeking friendship or marriage. Once again, however, this was an isolated incident. In no case does it seem that the ʿAbbasids took the initiative in sending messengers to the West.

The Great ʿAbbasid Civil War 193–218/809–833

Soon after Hārūn died, the problems he had tried to avert in the succession arrangements began to appear once more. At first all went according to plan. Muḥammad, who had remained in Baghdad while his father went east, immediately became caliph with the title of al-Amīn and his popularity in the city ensured that there was no opposition. ʿAbd Allāh, on the other hand, had already established himself in the administrative centre of Khurāsān at Marv, where he was planning to campaign against the rebels. Trouble began to develop over the status of the province of Khurāsān. The succession agreements made at Mecca in 186/802 had envisaged that Khurāsān, under al-Ma'mūn, should be effectively self-governing but it is clear that this was totally unacceptable to an important group in the *abnā'*, led by ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā b. Māhān who had been in prison in Baghdad when Hārūn died but was immediately released. They began to put pressure on al-Amīn to re-establish the control of Baghdad over the province, even if it meant deposing his brother and breaking his sworn agreements. ʿAlī was joined in his determination by the *ḥājib* al-Faḍl b. al-Rabīʿ who had become the most powerful figure in the civil administration in Baghdad after the fall of the Barmakids. Many others, senior figures in the army and members of the ʿAbbasid family, were very reluctant to break their oaths or to provoke a civil war but they lacked a leader and were unable to prevent the onset of war.

For two years attempts were made to find a negotiated settlement. Al-Amīn made a number of requests of his brother; that the western areas of Khurāsān should be transferred to him, that he should be allowed to keep agents in al-Ma'mūn's areas and, most important, that the revenue from the province should be sent to Baghdad. Al-Ma'mūn was very ill-equipped to withstand this kind of pressure. His military forces were small and their loyalty doubtful and he would probably have accepted his brother's demands had it not been for the advice of his *wazīr*, al-Faḍl b. Sahl. Al-Faḍl came from a Persian family, small landowners in the Sawād of Iraq. He had risen to importance through the patronage of the Barmakids and after their fall had been attached to the court of

the young al-Ma'mūn. He is credited with strong Persian sympathies in some sources and does not seem to have become a Muslim until the very end of Hārūn's reign. He was determined to preserve the traditions of the Barmakids and it was this resourceful, even over-subtle, politician who showed the vacillating al-Ma'mūn the way out of his difficulties. He persuaded the young prince to make an alliance with those groups in Khurāsān, notably the princes and magnates of the peripheral areas, who had opposed the rule of ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā b. Māhān since both they and al-Ma'mūn had a common interest in opposing control from Baghdad. While his brother continued his attempts to browbeat him into submission, al-Ma'mūn had himself proclaimed, not caliph (that would come later) but *imām*. It was the first time a member of the ʿAbbasid family had adopted this title (although all future caliphs were to use it) and it is probable that it was intentionally ambiguous, demonstrating his independent status without being openly provocative. The title was, of course, essentially a religious one, used of members of the ʿAlid family, and al-Ma'mūn was certainly following in the footsteps of al-Mahdī and the Barmakids in emphasizing the religious nature of his rule, a development which would become more important as his reign progressed.

Fortified by his new alliance with the magnates of Khurāsān, al-Ma'mūn was able to turn a deaf ear to his brother's proposals. In Baghdad ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā and al-Faḍl b. al-Rabīʿ began to organize a massive military expedition which would once again bring Khurāsān under the control of the *abnā'*. Meanwhile the breach had become final when in Ṣafar 195/November 810, al-Amīn had his own son Mūsā acknowledged as heir apparent so removing al-Ma'mūn from his place in the succession. Two months later (Rabīʿ II 195/January 811) ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā was appointed as governor of Khurāsān and an army assembled from the *abnā'*; it was reputed to number 40,000 and people in Baghdad said it was the biggest army they had ever seen. Equipped with silver chains to secure the person of al-Ma'mūn, this mighty force then moved across Iran towards Rayy, the western frontier town of Khurāsān.

The arrival of this vast host threw al-Ma'mūn and his supporters into something of a panic and he himself considered fleeing. Against ʿAlī's army he sent Ṭāhir b. al-Ḥusayn to Rayy. Ṭāhir came from a family of Arab origin which had been settled in Khurāsān since Umayyad times and had become the governing family of the little town of Būshang, near Herāt. The force he commanded was small, probably under 5,000, and many at al-Ma'mūn's court, including Ṭāhir's own father, considered the mission doomed to failure, but when in Shaʿbān 195/May 811 the two armies met outside the city walls of Rayy, Ṭāhir won a decisive victory, ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā was killed and his army fled west in disorder.

The battle at Rayy was a turning-point; the policy of al-Faḍl b. Sahl was totally vindicated and al-Ma'mūn's position in Khurāsān was now secure, so much so that he was proclaimed caliph. For the *abnā'* it was an unqualified disaster, their prestige and power were damaged beyond repair and their most experienced and dynamic leader was dead. From this point they were struggling for survival. Ṭāhir lost no time in following up his victory, defeating another, smaller army of *abnā'* at Hamadhān and establishing himself, before winter set in, in Ḥulwān on the edge of the Iraqi plains, only a few days' journey from Baghdad itself. In Baghdad al-Amīn attempted to raise new armies to supplement the now depleted *abnā'*; he looked first to Arab tribal leaders like the Shaybānīs whom his father had employed to put down the rebellion of al-Walīd b. Ṭarīf, and then to the Qaysīs of northern Syria, but in both cases the *abnā'* proved unwilling to co-operate with their supposed allies while the Arabs were reluctant to fight for al-Amīn without substantial political concessions and payments. All attempts to organize a coalition failed on the rock of *abnā'* intransigence.

The next year (196/812) saw a swift deterioration in al-Amīn's military position. In the spring, Ṭāhir was joined by a large army under the command of Harthama b. Aʿyan and was able to capture the cities of southern Iraq without any real difficulty. In Mosul, Egypt and the Ḥijāz there were coups in favour of al-Ma'mūn while Syria was taken over by different groups of Qaysī or Yamāmī Arabs. Only in Baghdad and the immediately surrounding area did al-Amīn exercise any authority and even there he faced challenges. The pressures of defeat led to an increasing rift between the caliph and the *abnā'*, some of whom felt that he was betraying their interests by trying to raise support among the Arabs. By the summer, the forces of Ṭāhir and Harthama were preparing to attack Baghdad itself and al-Amīn felt that his position was increasingly desperate. In this extremity he turned for support to the people of Baghdad, not the military *abnā'*, but the ordinary civilian population to whom he now gave arms and gifts. The *abnā'* now felt that he had finally abandoned them and turned to Ṭāhir. By the time the siege of Baghdad closed in (Dhu'l-Ḥijja 196/August 812), most of the *abnā'* leaders had joined Ṭāhir's army and the Ḥarbiyya quarter where many of them lived became his base of operations. This alliance between Ṭāhir and his family and the *abnā'* was to continue long after the civil war had ended.

The siege of Baghdad, which lasted slightly over a year, was an episode almost without parallel in the history of early Islamic society. Al-Amīn had taken the decisive step of arming the people of the city and the Arab sources give us a clear picture of the social classes to which these people belonged. Contemptuously referred to as *ʿayyārūn*

(vagabonds), they were clearly the urban proletariat, not large property-owners nor the more substantial merchants but rather people who sold trifles on the streets. They have left their own record in some remarkable poems in which they glory in the fact that they do not come from any noble family, that their "armour" was made of wool and their helmets of palm leaves, and they lament the barbarity of their attackers and the destruction of the city. They fought for al-Amīn and for Baghdad but they do not seem to have had any particular religious viewpoint. We should probably see them as people from the country who had flocked to Baghdad in the previous two generations, and had been unable to establish themselves as merchants or property-owners; many of them are described as sleeping in the mosques and baths. The movement was a genuinely popular uprising and was perhaps the nearest early Islamic history saw to an attempt at social revolution.

In the end military experience, as well as blockade and famine, began to tell. There was much hard hand-to-hand fighting and bombardment of the city by siege engines. In the end it was diplomacy rather than military force which enabled the attackers to triumph. At the beginning of 198/September 813 Ṭāhir persuaded a number of the richer and more established citizens, increasingly apprehensive about the revolutionary situation in Baghdad, to cut the pontoon bridges which crossed the Tigris and provided the besieged with a vital means of communication between east and west Baghdad. This done, the eastern side of the city was easily occupied by Harthama and his men while Ṭāhir launched a new attack on the west. Al-Amīn now attempted to surrender to his father's old friend Harthama who sent a boat across the river to fetch him but Ṭāhir was suspicious of any private deals which excluded him, the boat was overturned and the caliph captured and executed. Most of his misfortunes had been of his own making but his death saddened many supporters of the dynasty, even his own brother, and it is arguable that the prestige of the ʿAbbasid family never fully recovered from the murder of the caliph in this way. And like the murders of ʿUthmān and al-Walīd II, the murder of al-Amīn solved no problems and was simply the prelude to new conflict within the Muslim community.

The years between the death of al-Amīn in 198/813 and the arrival of al-Ma'mūn in Baghdad in 204/819 saw prolonged and destructive fighting throughout the Near East but especially in Baghdad and the surrounding countryside. The local struggles for power seemed to generate their own momentum, and all over the area groups which had coexisted in peaceful rivalry for the previous half-century now took to arms. The fighting once begun was increasingly difficult to stop and *bāb al-fitna*, the gate of civil strife, once opened, proved very difficult to

close. Only a few areas, like Khurāsān under al-Ma'mūn and, perhaps ironically, the Byzantine frontier areas around Tarsus, described as a haven of peace, remained immune.

The fundamental cause of the conflict lay in the policy of al-Faḍl b. Sahl and the influence he exercised over al-Ma'mūn. Al-Faḍl had forged the alliance between al-Ma'mūn and the leading Khurāsānīs which had ensured success in the struggle with al-Amīn. He was now determined not to lose the fruits of victory and, above all, that al-Ma'mūn should remain in Khurāsān and that Marv should be the capital of the caliphate. This was not just a question of geography; it meant that policy and government would be conducted by al-Ma'mūn's supporters and that there would be no place in the new order for groups like the *abnā'* or the Qaysī Arabs, and Baghdad would become no more than a provincial town. It is hardly surprising that these policies aroused strong and active resistance. If al-Ma'mūn had come to Baghdad after his brother's death, he would probably have taken over the caliphate without any serious opposition, but attempts to govern from Marv proved, in the end, wholly impractical. In the attainment of his objective, al-Faḍl b. Sahl showed himself deeply distrustful of others who had contributed to al-Ma'mūn's victory. This included Ṭāhir, who was sent into virtual exile in Raqqa where he remained in retirement until the fall of al-Faḍl, and Harthama b. Aʿyan who was eventually recalled from Iraq and executed, on the *wazīr*'s orders, for treachery. This meant that the supporters of al-Ma'mūn were deprived of their two most experienced soldiers and the two men who could command the allegiance of substantial forces in the west. Furthermore, as time went on and disturbances still raged in Iraq, al-Faḍl b. Sahl was forced to deceive the caliph himself, by assuring him that all was under control. It was not until 202/817 that the caliph was convinced that these policies were leading to disaster. He had al-Faḍl murdered and began the move back to Iraq.

The civil wars in Iraq were confused and prolonged. They were essentially fought by different groups of ex-soldiers trying to establish their rights to government salaries. The main protagonists were the *abnā'* of Baghdad. They demanded that they should be paid regular salaries and that the capital should be returned to Baghdad. In this they were supported by other inhabitants of the area and by many members of the ʿAbbasid family. At first they recognized al-Ma'mūn, while demanding that he should change both his advisers and his policies. From 201/817 onwards, however, they gave allegiance to a rival caliph, Ibrāhīm, son of al-Mahdī, but he proved more successful as a poet than a politician and his caliphate never gained general acceptance. When al-Ma'mūn approached Baghdad, Ibrāhīm was forced into hiding.

Faced by the intransigence of the people of Iraq, al-Faḍl b. Sahl was forced to look for expedients. He tried to govern Iraq through his own brother al-Ḥasan. The attempt was not a success, partly because al-Ḥasan himself seems to have been very inept with little understanding of local politics, and partly because the Baghdadis would not accept an agreement which denied them political influence. The fundamental problem was that al-Ma'mūn's faction had no firm base of support in the area and it was probably in an effort to remedy this that al-Ma'mūn adopted an ʿAlid as his heir apparent. To understand this measure it is important to note that popular enthusiasm for the ʿAlid cause was by no means dead in Iraq and it is likely that the hardships of the war and resentment against the government in Marv encouraged people to look for leadership from that quarter. In Jumādā II 199/January 815 a rebellion broke out in Kūfa, led by an ex-soldier Abu'l-Sarāyā in the name of an ʿAlid, Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm, known as Ibn Ṭabāṭabā. The rebellion was initially very successful, attracting widespread support and the rebels came to control most of southern Iraq, and almost reached Baghdad. Al-Ḥasan b. Sahl was forced to turn to his rival, Harthama b. Aʿyan (shortly to be executed for his help), and the rebellion was crushed. It showed, however, that an ʿAlid candidate to the throne could command a considerable militant following, exactly, in fact what al-Ma'mūn's cause lacked.

In Ramaḍān 201/March 817 in Marv, al-Ma'mūn proclaimed ʿAlī b. Mūsā the ʿAlid, called al-Riḍā, "the Chosen One", as his heir. At first this might seem to have been a handing-over of the state to the ʿAlids and their supporters but this was not quite the case. It has already been pointed out that reconciling the ʿAlids and unifying the Family of the Prophet had been an important objective of the policies of al-Mahdī and al-Faḍl b. Sahl's mentors, the Barmakids. ʿAlī was not adopted as heir because he was a direct descendant of ʿAlī and al-Ḥusayn (which he was) but because al-Ma'mūn had considered all the available members of the house of the Prophet (sc. ʿAlids and ʿAbbasids) and found him the most suitable. Faced with the opposition of almost all the members of the ʿAbbasid family to his policies, this was hardly surprising. Another factor suggesting that a radical break was not intended was that ʿAlī was actually some twenty years older than the man whose heir he was supposed to be, thus while it was not impossible, it was unlikely that he would ever inherit.

In practical terms, the move was a disaster. News of it arrived in Iraq at a time when peace between the Baghdadis and al-Ḥasan b. Sahl seemed possible and it provoked an immediate reaction, a new rebellion in the city led by members of the ʿAbbasid family. Nor did it generate

much popular enthusiasm among ʿAlid supporters, since it promised no change in the unpopular policy of rule from Khurāsān. It also proved the undoing of al-Faḍl b. Sahl. ʿAlī b. Mūsā, who had had first-hand experience of the position in Iraq, managed to persuade al-Ma'mūn that he had, essentially, been deceived by the Sahl brothers as to the scope and severity of the opposition and that only if he came to Baghdad in person, could his government be accepted. In Jumādā II 202/December 817 he decided to leave Khurāsān. This meant a break with al-Faḍl, who was murdered, almost certainly on the caliph's orders. It also proved the undoing of the unfortunate ʿAlī b. Mūsā, who was poisoned, his burial place at Mashhad in Khurāsān becoming one of the great Shiʿite pilgrimage centres.

Al-Ma'mūn's progress to Baghdad took over a year and a half but when he arrived, in Ṣafar 204/August 819, the opposition melted away and the rival caliph, Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī, went into hiding. Almost a decade of warfare came to an end and a start could be made at reconstructing the state.

Al-Ma'mūn's coming to Baghdad was in itself a gesture of compromise and he proceeded to reconcile as many groups as he could. The ʿAlid succession was abandoned and ʿAlid green replaced by ʿAbbasid black as the official colour of the court. The unpopular al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, who was probably ill already, was retired while Ṭāhir was received back into favour and he and his family given important positions at court. Despite the peaceful take-over of Baghdad, formidable problems faced the new administration. Many areas, including all of Syria, Palestine and Egypt remained outside the control of the government. The loss of these provinces and the destruction caused by the fighting in Iraq must have meant that government revenues were severely depleted. Al-Ma'mūn also faced the problem that he did not command a large, loyal army. There was no equivalent of the Khurāsāniyya who supported the early ʿAbbasids. He had had to compromise to be accepted in Baghdad and he had to negotiate for military support.

To aid him in the work, al-Ma'mūn turned to Ṭāhir and his family. Ṭāhir had refused to help al-Ḥasan b. Sahl in his attempts to exercise power in Iraq and had probably watched his discomfiture with quiet satisfaction from his retreat at Raqqa. The contacts which he had made among the *abnā'* during the siege of Baghdad now proved very useful and he was able to secure their acceptance of al-Ma'mūn while he was allowed to choose the administrators of the city. This connection between the Ṭāhirids and the Baghdadis was to last for the next half-century and secured the peace of the city even when the court moved to Sāmarrā. Ṭāhir himself was appointed to Khurāsān as governor in Rabīʿ

II 206/September 821 but remained there for only just over a year before his death in Jumādā II 207/October 822. His return to his native province seems to have brought problems and he found it difficult to reconcile his duties to the caliph with his obligations to old colleagues. At the time of his death he is said to have omitted the caliph's name from the Friday prayers, a sign of rebellion. He was succeeded by his son Ṭalḥa. This did not in any sense mark the independence of Khurāsān which remained an integral part of the ʿAbbasid state, or at least as much an integral part as it had been since the ʿAbbasid revolution, and the Tahirids remained as much concerned with affairs in Baghdad as in the east.

The lead in restoring the power of the caliphate in the west came from another member of the Tahirid family, ʿAbd Allāh b. Ṭāhir. The first objective was northern Syria which was in the hands of the Qaysī tribesmen who had dominated the area since Umayyad times, led by Naṣr b. Shabath al-ʿUqaylī. Naṣr was prepared to accept al-Ma'mūn as caliph but demanded concessions for his Qaysī followers and the end to rule by the *ʿajam* (a contemptuous term for Persians or other foreigners). In the end it took a show of force outside his base at Kaysūm, in 209/824–5, to induce him to accept terms. Even then it was a peace of reconciliation rather than subjection. ʿAbd Allāh moved on from Syria to Egypt. The long civil war had seen Egypt slide into virtual anarchy. There were prolonged and bitter disputes between the garrison of Fusṭāṭ, led by ʿUbayd Allāh b. al-Sarrī b. al-Ḥakam, and the Qaysī Arabs settled in the delta area, led by ʿAlī al-Jarawī. To add to the confusion Alexandria had been seized by refugees from Muslim Spain who maintained their independence. These rivalries meant that ʿAbd Allāh's task was much easier, ʿAlī al-Jarawī hastened to join him and offered his services as a naval commander while ʿUbayd Allāh was forced to ask for terms and was exiled to Baghdad. After this the refugees were forced to abandon Alexandria and remove themselves to Crete, and Egypt was once more effectively under the control of the ʿAbbasid caliphate. ʿAbd Allāh returned to Baghdad in triumph in late 211 or early 212 (827). Despite his slender military resources, his political and diplomatic skill had succeeded in regaining control of these areas with very little fighting or loss of life. The next year 213/828 he replaced his brother Ṭalḥa as governor of Khurāsān while his role in the west was taken over by Abū Isḥāq, the caliph's brother, whose small but efficient private army of Turks was making him one of the most powerful men in the state.

If al-Ma'mūn's reign had its successes, it also had its failures. The province of Ifrīqiya was never regained after the civil war and remained in the hands of the Aghlabid family. Closer to home Āẕarbayjān was

troubled by the anti-Muslim resistance movement led by Bābak among the indigenous mountain people of the area. Significantly al-Ma'mūn lacked the military resources to suppress the rebellion directly. He relied instead on a series of commanders who offered to raise and pay armies at their own expense in exchange for the revenues of the province when it should be captured. Despite their ambitions, none of these entrepreneurs was able to make much headway in the difficult terrain and it was not until al-Muʿtaṣim turned his much more effective military machine in that direction, that Bābak was finally crushed.

The reign of al-Ma'mūn marks the divide between the early and middle phases of the ʿAbbasid caliphate. Many of the groups who had sustained the caliphate during the early years now disappeared from the scene. The most important of these were the *abnāʾ* of Baghdad, the descendants of the Khurāsāniyya who had made the ʿAbbasid revolution and who had continued to form the military backbone of the old regime. They continued to have some influence in Tahirid Baghdad but they no longer formed an important element in the armies of the caliphate and gradually lost both their military function and their group identity. The ʿAbbasid family had been very important under the early caliphs but again they played little part in the new state. Members of the family were no longer given important governorates or the command of armies, and only the caliph and his heir or heirs seem to have had any important political function. Equally many of the old Arab families like the Muhallabīs and the chiefs of Shaybān disappear from the caliphal court.

During the course of al-Ma'mūn's reign, these groups were replaced by new men with a new ideology and new methods of government. The most important and powerful of these was the caliph's brother, Abū Isḥāq, who succeeded in 218/833 as the Caliph al-Muʿtaṣim and began a new era in ʿAbbasid history.

chapter six

THE MIDDLE ʿABBASID CALIPHATE

The Rise of the Turkish Army and the Caliphate of Sāmarrā 218–247/833–861

The rise to power of Abū Isḥāq al-Muʿtaṣim, during the reign of his brother al-Ma'mūn, was to herald a change in the government of the Islamic state as profound as anything which had resulted from the ʿAbbasid revolution. But it was a change of a very different sort. The ʿAbbasid revolution was a broadly based popular movement which aimed to overthrow the established order and to replace it with a society which would more truly reflect the ideals of Islam and its founder. Al-Muʿtaṣim's revolution, on the other hand, was conducted by a fairly small group enjoying virtually no mass support and concerned to preserve ʿAbbasid rule rather than to overturn it. To achieve this the caliph felt that he had to use new men, new methods, to be guided by a new ideology and to found a new capital.

Al-Muʿtaṣim was in many ways a new man himself; one of Hārūn's younger sons, he had been given no place in the elaborate succession arrangements his father had worked out and he was only fifteen years old at the outbreak of the civil war. He remained in Baghdad and in the final stages of the war supported Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī in his opposition to al-Ma'mūn and the Banū Sahl. From 199/814–15 he began to buy slaves in Baghdad from their previous owners and to train them for military service, and both Ītākh, a Khazar who had been a cook for his previous owner, and Ashinās were in his service before 202/817–18. He also entered into an arrangement with the Samanid family who controlled much of the Samarqand area and sent him slaves directly from Turkestan. The private army he built up probably only numbered 3,000–4,000 by the end of al-Ma'mūn's reign but they were well trained and disciplined and formed a formidable fighting force. His leadership of this army meant that al-Muʿtaṣim, alone of all the members of the ʿAbbasid family,

had military support on which he could call and al-Ma'mūn was increasingly obliged to turn to him for help. When in 213/828 ʿAbd Allāh b. Ṭāhir was appointed governor of Khurāsān on the death of his brother Ṭalḥa, al-Muʿtaṣim took over all his responsibilities in Syria and Egypt, thus becoming one of the most powerful men in the caliphate. It was this military power, coupled with al-Muʿtaṣim's own forceful and determined personality which induced al-Ma'mūn to set aside the claims of his own son al-ʿAbbās and to adopt al-Muʿtaṣim as his heir. When al-Ma'mūn died in 218/833 during a campaign against the Byzantines, his brother was accepted as caliph, not without some murmurings of dissent from those who saw clearly what the new regime would bring.

The new order was based firmly on the army al-Muʿtaṣim had built up. Few questions in the history of the period have caused as much controversy as this introduction of "slave soldiers" into the Muslim world, and scholars have seen this as an essentially Islamic phenomenon which was to culminate in the rule of Egypt and Syria by the Mamluk or "Slave Dynasty" in the later Middle Ages. Two major interpretations have been offered in recent years of the emergence of slave soldiers; Crone and Pipes both see this as a major turning-point and for Crone, at least, it represents the bankruptcy of the Islamic polity, the failure of the community itself to produce an acceptable ruling élite. For Shaban, on the other hand, the problem has been misunderstood; he points out, rightly, that many of those who are lumped together as Turkish slaves were neither slaves nor Turks; al-Afshīn for example, one of al-Muʿtaṣim's foremost military commanders in the early years of his reign, was of Iranian extraction and the ruler of an independent principality in Transoxania. Al-Afshīn is a local royal title rather than a personal name. From this he goes on to argue that many of those described as slaves were no such thing, being rather princes in disguise. Neither of these views is wholly adequate. The evidence for the recruitment of slaves cannot be dismissed; al-Afshīn may have been a prince but the servile origins of the three most powerful military leaders to emerge during this period, Ītākh, Ashinās and Waṣīf, are beyond doubt. Gordon, in the most recent discussion of the issue makes the point that many of these soldiers were certainly of servile origin but that the links with the later "mamlūk paradigm" are far from clear.

Too much emphasis should not be put on the slave status of these leaders and the idea that this is a process peculiar to Islam. Contemporary sources do not refer to these men as *ʿabīd* or as *mamālīk*, the two words which clearly denote slave status, but rather as Turks, an ethnic denominator, or as *mawālī*, which means, among other things, freedmen or ex-slaves. It is clear that these men came from the margins of the

Muslim world but recruitment of marginal peoples to form a military élite was rather a process common to many cultures. In the contemporary Byzantine empire, marginal peoples played a major role in the army, even producing emperors like Leo the Isaurian in 717 and Basil the Macedonian in 876. While neither Leo nor Basil were technically slaves, they were from remote frontier areas and as firmly outside the established élite of the empire as Ashinās or Ītākh were in the Islamic world. Certainly there were soldiers who had been slaves, some of whom became very powerful, but at the same time there were many soldiers who were not slaves and there seems to have been no effective distinction between them. The real change was not that the community was ruled by slaves but rather that the army became the preserve of different minority groups, Turks, Armenians, Berbers, recruited from the fringes of empire, rather than from the towns and cities of Iraq and Syria or the bedouin tribes of the Arabian desert. This meant that the military caste became separate from the rest of society; generals did not have brothers who were merchants or teachers in the mosque and Ashinās, for example, though he ruled over half the caliphate, never learned to speak Arabic properly. This divorce of the military élite from the rest of society, by origin, language and custom, was to be a distinctive feature of many Islamic societies.

It seems that these new soldiers brought with them new military technologies. The Turks were well known for their skill as mounted archers. They were famous for their hardiness and their horsemanship, having been brought up to ride from a very early age. It was this ability that enabled them to use their short powerful bows from the back of a fast moving horses to devastating effect. The mounted archers were the most formidable fighters of the day and comparatively small forces of mounted archers came to replace the larger armies of foot soldiers who dominated early Islamic warfare. As always total numbers are very difficult to estimate but the largest number of Turks mentioned in contemporary sources was 10,000 when they all united together to depose the unfortunate caliph al-Muhtadī in 256/870. More typically, Turkish armies of the period numbered between 2,000 and 5,000. This compares with the 40–50,000 *abnā* ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā b. Māhān had led out of Baghdad to attack al-Ma'mūn in 195/811 or the 135,000 soldiers Hārūn is alleged to have led against the Byzantines in 190/806. Like the mounted knights of western Europe, they were few in number but very expensive to maintain and support and providing for them placed a massive strain on state resources.

Many groups which had been influential now lost this status. This can be clearly seen in the case of Egypt. The Egyptian chronicler al-Kindī

says that when al-Muʿtaṣim came to the throne, he dropped the names of the Arabs from the *dīwān*, meaning that they were no longer to be paid the '*aṭā*' (salary) as of right. Members of the old established Arab families, mostly in Fusṭāṭ, had drawn salaries from the revenues of Egypt by virtue of their descent from the conquerors but this was now stopped and the locally recruited *jund* (army) disbanded. Most of the taxes of Egypt were to be sent to Sāmarrā and only the Turkish soldiers employed by the local governors were to receive salaries. This brought to an end the system of payments originated by ʿUmar in the *dīwān* and a link with the days of early Islam was severed for ever.

It also marked the end of another long-running controversy over the extent to which the central government could collect taxes from the provinces. From the time of ʿUthmān, caliphs had tried to do this but a strong body of opinion had held that revenues collected in, for example, Khurāsān should be distributed there. The Umayyads seem to have had only limited success in extracting revenues, the early ʿAbbasids had probably done better but under al-Muʿtaṣim the triumph of the central government was complete. Even Khurāsān, always the most recalcitrant province, sent substantial sums to Iraq.

The new army was the basis of al-Muʿtaṣim's strength and its leaders came to hold important provincial governorates. Ashinās was governor of Egypt and Syria from 219/834 until his death in 230/844, and the Caliph al-Wāthiq put him in charge of all the lands from Sāmarrā to the far west. Ītākh's career blossomed more slowly but in 225/839–40 he was appointed to the Yemen and when Ashinās died, it was Ītākh who took over his powers in the west. These vast governorates did not, however, form independent power bases. Ashinās seldom visited the provinces he was in charge of, but appointed deputies while he himself remained in Sāmarrā. This arrangement may simply have meant that he had charge of the revenues from these areas which he distributed to his military following. It represented a further centralizing of power, for the under-governors of the provinces seldom appeared at court and played little part in the making of political decisions.

The Tahirid family retained their power and influence under al-Muʿtaṣim and his successors. ʿAbd Allāh b. Ṭāhir ruled Khurāsān until his death in 230/845 when he was succeeded by his son Ṭāhir and the family remained firmly in control of the province until the disturbances which followed the death of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil in 247/861. They ruled a "greater Khurāsān" which stretched from Rayy in the west to the north-eastern frontiers of the Islamic world and which also included Sīstān to the south. This was the Khurāsān quarter of the old Sasanian empire, the same area which Abū Muslim had ruled after the

ʿAbbasid revolution and which had been assigned to al-Ma'mūn under Hārūn's succession agreement. The capital was moved west to Nīshāpūr and the Tahirids ruled in alliance with those local magnates, like the Samanid family in the Samarqand area, who had supported al-Ma'mūn in the civil war. Because of their great power and the fact that succession to the governorate ran in the family, the Tahirids are sometimes considered as the first independent Iranian dynasty, but such a view is misleading. The arrangement was effectively a partnership between the ʿAbbasids and the Tahirids. Under Tahirid rule, Khurāsān contributed large sums in taxation to the central government, perhaps more than had ever been collected before, and we also are told of the caliphs providing money for irrigation projects in the province. Far from being the beginning of independence, Tahirid rule was the most successful solution the ʿAbbasids ever devised for integrating the province into the caliphate.

It is important to remember, too, that the Tahirids were as powerful in Baghdad as in Khurāsān itself and it is probable that the revenues of Khurāsān were used to maintain the family's influence in that city. When ʿAbd Allāh b. Ṭāhir had left to take up his position in Khurāsān in 213/828 he was succeeded in Baghdad by his cousin Isḥāq b. Ibrāhīm who remained effective ruler of the city until his death over twenty years later in 235/850 after which he was followed by other members of the family. It was this Tahirid control which secured the loyalty of the Baghdadis to the caliphate, especially after al-Muʿtaṣim had moved the capital to Sāmarrā, and it was the Tahirids who suppressed the only real disturbance in the city during these years, the conspiracy of Aḥmad b. Naṣr al-Khuzāʿī in 231/846. One of the main reasons for the civil war had been the desire of the *abnāʾ* under ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā to have access to the tax revenues of Khurāsān; now, under Tahirid patronage, their children had just that. Baghdad could prove useful to the caliphs as a rival source of power to Sāmarrā with its Turkish population; when al-Mutawakkil wished to dispose of the Turk Ītākh in 235/849 he arranged that the execution should be carried out by the Tahirids in Baghdad, safely away from Ītākh's followers in Sāmarrā.

While the Turks and the Tahirids supplied the military force behind the new government, the administration was carried on by a new generation of bureaucrats in the Barmakid and Sahlid tradition. The government was dependent on the revenues of Iraq, and sometimes of neighbouring areas like Ahwāz and Fārs, and there can be no doubt that these areas had been severely damaged by the fighting in the civil war. It also seems that the tax registers had been largely destroyed by fire in Baghdad. In consequence, the caliphs needed men who knew and understood the collection of taxes in Iraq and to supply this need a new

class of administrators emerged. Like the Sahlids, these were almost entirely drawn from the landowners and merchants of the small towns of the Sawād and they were almost without exception men of Persian or *Nabaṭī* (local Aramaean) extraction. Most of them were Muslims, often newly converted, but Christians played a minor role all through the period. While these men had no soldiers or military power of their own, even the most successful and ruthless Turkish soldiers were dependent on their co-operation, or at least the co-operation of one faction among them. When al-Muʿtaṣim became caliph he kept on his old secretary, the cautious and frugal al-Faḍl b. Marwān, but he was soon replaced as head of the administration by a rich merchant whose father had made a fortune supplying oil in Baghdad, Muḥammad b. al-Zayyāt. Muḥammad became *wazīr* in 221/836 and retained the office all through the reigns of al-Muʿtaṣim and al-Wāthiq, and was only dismissed after the accession of al-Mutawakkil. He was a competent financial expert but a callous and brutal man who made many enemies, not just among taxpayers but among his fellow *kuttāb* as well. As *wazīr* he was not the major force in the formation of government policy as both the Barmakids and Sahlids had been at the height of their power, but he was in undisputed control of financial business.

The new regime used new personnel and it also adopted a new ideology. Throughout the early ʿAbbasid period attempts had been made to reconcile the partisans of the family of ʿAlī and all those who wanted a religious leadership, to ʿAbbasid rule. Al-Ma'mūn had gone furthest in this with the adoption of the ʿAlid heir and the abandonment of ʿAbbasid black for ʿAlid green as the colour of court robes. In the event this total switch generated so much resentment among the Baghdadis and the members of the ʿAbbasid family that it had proved impossible to put into effect. None the less, al-Ma'mūn and his successors remained committed to finding a half-way house between the secular monarchy of the Umayyads and the theocratic state espoused by many ʿAlid supporters. The title of *imām*, originally assumed by al-Ma'mūn, continued to be used by the caliphs, announcing their claims to religious leadership as well as the secular authority embodied in their other title of *amīr al-mu'minīn*. Al-Ma'mūn also came to adopt a theological position known as Muʿtazilism. Muʿtazilism was essentially concerned with the nature of authority in the community, the question at issue being the relationship between the powers of the caliph and the authority of Revelation and Tradition. For some the caliph was no more than an executive who was obliged to rule within the limits laid down by the Qur'ān and Sunna while others allowed the *imām* to interpret and expand on Revelation to accommodate the changing needs of the community. Muʿtazilism stood

somewhere between these two positions and defined itself by declaring that the Qur'ān was created, in distinction from those who believed that it was eternal with God. If it was created in time, then it could be modified to suit different times and the judgment of a God-guided *imām* might supersede it. This position also defined itself in historical terms in the discussion of the conflicts between ʿAlī and his enemies; the Muʿtazilīs favoured neither one side nor the other and withdrew from the conflict (the name Muʿtazila derives from the Arabic word for withdrawal), although ʿAlī, the archetype of the God-guided *imām*, was held in high esteem. It was, in short, a position which could hope to attract support from most shades of the theological and political spectrum and enhance the power of the caliph by giving his word theocratic force.

Muʿtazilism as a system of thought had existed before the reign of al-Ma'mūn and continued to exist after the reign of al-Mutawakkil, but it was only in the first half of the third/ninth century that the issue came to the centre of the political stage, generating all the fervour and passion of a Byzantine theological controversy. The reason for this was the close relationship between Muʿtazilī ideas and the ruling group which surrounded the caliph. It became in effect the philosophy of the Sāmarrā élite; if one opposed the Sāmarrā élite, one opposed Muʿtazilism. The man responsible for the close links between religious belief and political controversy seems to have been the chief *qāḍī*, Aḥmad b. Abī Du'ād, perhaps the most influential of all the caliph's counsellors at this time and a man whose influence continued unabated from the end of al-Ma'mūn's reign to the beginning of al-Mutawakkil's. Al-Ma'mūn and his advisers did not content themselves with proclaiming their own adherence to the doctrine, they also demanded that all other government functionaries should too. The *imām*-caliph had given his view and to question it was to oppose his authority; so belief in the createdness of the Qur'ān became the touchstone of political loyalty. In order to ensure conformity on this issue al-Ma'mūn took the unprecedented step of setting up an "inquisition", the *miḥna*, to examine the views of his subjects. Never before had a caliph claimed the right to decide such matters of doctrine, and entrenched positions were taken up on both sides. The Muʿtazilī position was accepted by many, not just those in Sāmarrā; the adherents of the house of ʿAlī might appreciate the deference Muʿtazilīs paid to the memory of the fourth caliph, and Christians and Jews seem to have enjoyed the benefits of tolerance. But the doctrine aroused great opposition, notably in Baghdad. Here a group of Traditionists, notably Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal, asserted the absolute inviolability of the Qur'ān and Sunna, arguing that no *imām* of the present day should presume to tamper with the reported utterances of the Prophet,

and acceptance of the Sunna in its entirety was the *sine qua non* of true Islam. The resistance to Muʿtazilism was the sign of resentment against the Sāmarrā élite; it is significant that the one serious attempt to challenge the domination of that élite in Iraq was made in opposition to the doctrine of the createdness of the Qur'ān, in Baghdad under the leadership of a scion of one of the most important of the *abnā'* families, Aḥmad b. Naṣr al-Khuzāʿī in 231/846.

To house his new élite, al-Muʿtaṣim decided to found a new city and to leave Baghdad permanently. There were many reasons for this; the most immediate was the deteriorating relationship between the newly important Turkish troops and remnants of the old *abnā'*, resenting their loss of status. But the foundation of a new capital demonstrated the establishment of the new regime. Here the new army could be given land and economic opportunities which were totally impossible in Baghdad with its established landowners and merchants. Besides in Sāmarrā land was virtually free and the caliph could reward his chosen élite generously at virtually no cost to the exchequer; indeed judging by some of the figures given, the government could hope to derive a substantial income from the development of shops and other commercial premises. In fact the move was a sensible and realistic one. At one level it allowed the caliphs to establish their followers, free from the constraints, even the contamination, of the existing city; on the other, it was a sort of gigantic property speculation in which both government and its followers could expect to benefit.

The site of the new city had to be in Iraq, since it was from Iraq that the revenues on which the government depended were drawn. After some debate a site was selected at Sāmarrā about 80 miles north of Baghdad on the Tigris. Unfortunately the planners showed none of the genius of al-Manṣūr which had ensured the success of Baghdad. The site was on a gravelly plain above the Tigris with no naturally flowing water supply and poor river communications. That such a site prospered at all was entirely due to the determination of the caliphs. The plan of the city can still be seen on aerial photographs today; the long straight streets bordered rectangular compounds where different military leaders could be established with their followers. The most important structures were the mosques and the palaces of the favoured members of the ʿAbbasid family and of grandees of the new order like Ashināṣ, the walls of whose palace are still visible. The building materials were those of the Mesopotamian plain, mud-brick buildings, often faced with stucco and roofed with wooden beams. Time has not on the whole dealt kindly with the ruins and they have little of the charm of the Umayyad palaces of the Syrian desert, but the sheer size and obvious planning of the site

remain impressive. The new town was always something of an anomaly; in Baghdad, al-Manṣūr had simply set the wheels in motion and natural economic forces had ensured the survival and growth of the city. In Sāmarrā massive investment by three successive caliphs failed to produce a thriving metropolis and when the government abandoned the site the city dwindled and shrank. But for the half-century of its glory, it was the capital of the caliphate and, just as Baghdad had been the city of the *abnā'*, so Sāmarrā was the city of the new army of al-Muʿtaṣim and his followers.

The years between the death of al-Ma'mūn in 218/833 and the assassination of al-Mutawakkil in 247/861, were on the whole years of prosperity and peace, at least in the heart of the empire. Al-Muʿtaṣim did not let his new army remain idle and he acquired the reputation of being one of the warrior-caliphs of Islam. His most celebrated campaigns, and, as with his predecessors, the only ones in which he himself participated, were the attacks on the Byzantine empire, especially the famous sack of Amorion in 223/838. The strength of the new army and the caliph's devotion to the cause of Islam could be demonstrated for all to see. The victories were certainly notable, even if Amorion was not the most impressive of Byzantine cities, but ʿAbbasid propaganda played them up to the full, and the lengthy accounts of the details of the campaigns in the chronicle of al-Ṭabarī and the poetry of Abū Tammām and others reflect the public relations side of the enterprise. Captives were certainly taken and the frontiers of the Muslim world safeguarded but no new territory was annexed.

The other campaigns for which the reign is famous are usually described as the suppression of rebellions but this gives the impression that the caliphate was being weakened by internal dissent. In reality these were operations of internal expansion; there were many areas within the boundaries of the caliphate where Muslim rule was very ineffective and where the local people and their chiefs retained almost complete independence. One such area was in north-western Iran, in the mountains of Āẕarbayjān. This wild and inaccessible area had been little visited by the early Muslims who had contented themselves by establishing posts at lowland cities like Ardabīl and Zanjān and had left the mountain peoples largely undisturbed. Towards the end of the second century, however, this situation began to change. Arabs began to move into the region, mostly from the Mosul area, attracted by the rich mineral resources of the country. Here they began to settle such cities as Tabrīz and Marāgha. This influx of colonists disturbed the status quo and led the indigenous mountain people to defy the Muslims. This they did under the leadership of one Bābak, a man of obscure origins who by his determination

and ability assumed the leadership. The rebellion had begun during the civil war in 201/816–17 and al-Ma'mūn's government had largely left the local Arabs to fend for themselves. Various expeditions were led by soldiers of fortune, hoping to reap the benefits of subduing the country but Bābak had worsted them all. After al-Muʿtaṣim's accession, he decided that the government should take action against the insurgents and he despatched one of his leading generals, al-Afshīn, to conduct the campaign. That Bābak was not a Muslim gave added justification for the action and attracted volunteers to fight alongside the caliphal army. Al-Afshīn was a cautious and determined commander, the caliph supported him with men and money and he gradually succeeded in subduing the country. Finally in 222/837, after three years of campaigning, Bābak's centre at Budhdh was occupied by al-Afshīn's troops and he himself was forced to surrender.

The second major campaign was that against Māzyār b. Qārin, the ruler of Ṭabaristān at the southern end of the Caspian. Here again was a mountainous region which had never been wholly integrated into the empire. While there were Muslim cities like Āmul and Sāriyya on the plans along the shore of the Caspian, the mountains had remained in the hands of local dynasties who paid some tribute to the Muslims. Māzyār b. Qārin was ambitious and determined to extend his control in the area. He also strongly resented the Tahirids, being content to acknowledge the overlordship of the caliph but not that of a rival princely family. Māzyār was encouraged to defy the government by al-Afshīn, who, it is reported, hoped to use him to discredit the Tahirids and secure the governorate of Khurāsān for himself. Violence began in 224/838–9 when Māzyār's men began to attack the Muslim settlers in Āmul and Sāriyya and destroyed their cities and executed many of the men. The Tahirids responded to appeals from the settlers, and Tahirid forces from Baghdad and Khurāsān, supported by the caliph, succeeded in defeating the rebel who was taken to Sāmarrā and flogged to death. Solidarity between al-Muʿtaṣim and the Tahirids had once again proved effective but it is worth noting that the autonomy of the mountainous area of Ṭabaristān was not destroyed. Māzyār was replaced by a member of his own family who was prepared to co-operate with the Tahirids.

While the wars were the most important events of al-Muʿtaṣim's reign, the caliph faced internal opposition from various quarters. Al-ʿAbbās b. al-Ma'mūn, passed over for the caliphate, was naturally a focus for discontent and in 223/838 on the return from the Amorion campaign, a conspiracy came to light in which al-ʿAbbās and a number of eastern Iranian officers, some of them from very prominent families, were

involved. Many of these were men who had fought for al-Ma'mūn and enjoyed high status but now found themselves supplanted by Ashinās and Ītākh, who, along with the caliph, were the main targets of their anger. The conspiracy was unmasked and the main participants put to death by subtle and ingenious tortures. The other major conspiracy was that alleged to have been undertaken by al-Afshīn. The victor in the war against Bābak enjoyed great favour for a year or two after his triumph but he was an odd man out among the élite; the ruler of the principality of Ushrūsana, he resented Ītākh and Ashinās but he was also a deadly rival of the Tahirids, hoping to challenge their control of Khurāsān. His indiscreet correspondence with the rebel Māzyār came to light and his enemies were quick to strike and a show trial, brilliantly reported by al-Ṭabarī, was arranged in 225/840. He was accused of apostasy, of being a false Muslim and of treasonous relations with Māzyār. Witnesses were called from Transoxania who testified to the divine status he enjoyed among his own people and his disregard for the ways of Islam; he and the other kings of Sughd (Soghdia), it was revealed, actually prevented people from becoming Muslims and flogged would-be missionaries. The discredited leader, who behaved with great dignity throughout, was led away to die in prison.

Al-Muʿtaṣim died in 227/842, after a reign of eight years, aged about forty-six. In many ways his reign had been a success; he had destroyed all the opposition to his rule and the army he had created gave the government an effective authority which it had not known since the days of Hārūn. But it was a highly centralized system, power lay in the hands of a small number of senior army officers and civilian administrators. As long as the loyalty of these men was assured and their differences did not become open, all was well. Al-Muʿtaṣim was succeeded by his son Hārūn al-Wāthiq who reigned from 227/842 to 232/847. No other caliph of the period has left so little trace of the history of his times and it is impossible to form any clear impression of his personality. The government remained almost unchanged, Ibn al-Zayyāt continued as *wazīr*, Ibn Abī Du'ād as chief *qāḍī* and counsellor. Death removed a few of the old élite, notably Ashinās and ʿAbd Allāh b. Ṭāhir, both in 230/844–5, but their places were taken by new leaders Waṣīf and the two Bughās (the Elder and the Younger) among the Turks and ʿAbd Allāh's son Ṭāhir, with the result that the ruling group remained effectively unchanged. The caliph died after a reign of some five years at the age of thirty-six.

He left no designated successor. There was then a sort of *shūra* held by the most prominent men in Sāmarrā to choose a new candidate from among the available princes of the ʿAbbasid house. Ibn al-Zayyāt and

Ibn Abī Du'ād were naturally there along with the two leading Turkish officers, Ītākh and Waṣīf, and two less important bureaucrats. What followed is something of a mystery; Ibn al-Zayyāt hoped to continue the status quo by appointing an infant son of al-Wāthiq but Ibn Abī Du'ād, always a more scrupulous counsellor, objected to the appointment of a child and so they eventually settled on a brother of the dead caliph, Jaʿfar, who took the title of al-Mutawakkil.

If the members of the *shūra* imagined that they had chosen a pliable candidate who would go along with their wishes, they were soon to find they had made a serious mistake. The new caliph was determined to assert his own authority and to break with the policies and personnel who had dominated the government of his father and brother. He moved cautiously, attacking individuals in turn. Ibn al-Zayyāt was the first victim; he had insulted the caliph before his accession, he belonged to no powerful party and was widely disliked because of his cruelty and so when, in 233/847 he died in a torture apparatus of his own design, the caliph had won an easy victory. In 235/849, just over a year later, al-Mutawakkil arranged with the Tahirids that Ītākh should be assassinated in Baghdad. It was a bold move, not without risks since Ītākh, after the death of Ashinās, was the most powerful of the Turkish officers, but there was no general rising of the Turks, many of whom may have hoped to gain from his disappearance.

In the same year the caliph made arrangements for the succession. He appointed three of his sons to succeed each other in turn; in the meantime they were to take over the supervision of groups of provinces which had previously been entrusted to Ashinās and Ītākh. Al-Muntaṣir, the eldest, was in charge of Egypt and the west as well as the Jazīra and the property rents in Sāmarrā, al-Muʿtazz was to supervise the Tahirid areas in the east, while the third son al-Mu'ayyad was given most of Syria and Palestine. There is no evidence that any of the young princes ever visited the areas over which they exercised control but the object was probably to give them experience of administration and the use of tax revenue to build up support. In this way, the leading members of the élite in the next generation would be members of the ʿAbbasid family rather than Turkish officers.

Al-Mutawakkil systematically pursued his policy of dismantling the old structure. In 237/851–2 he dismissed Ibn Abī Du'ād, the most influential of all the advisers of the Sāmarrā period and a man who had been largely responsible for his own accession. Along with this went a change in official ideology, a break with Muʿtazilism. ʿAlī was cursed from the pulpits and the tombs of his descendants destroyed, legislation was introduced to humble Christians and Jews, and the caliph made an

attempt to reconcile Baghdad opinion and the Traditionists; the body of the rebel Aḥmad b. Naṣr was allowed a fitting funeral.

In place of the old élite, the caliph employed new advisers: ʿUbayd Allāh b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān was appointed as *wazīr* in place of Ibn al-Zayyāt while al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān (no relation, apparently) became the caliph's closest personal friend and counsellor. At the same time, new groups were encouraged to join the army to counterbalance Turkish influence. After al-Mutawakkil's death we find ʿUbayd Allāh b. Yaḥyā seeking support against the Turks from, among others, Arabs, the *abnāʾ* of Baghdad, the Qaysīs of northern Syria and the Armenians. This last group seems to have been increasing in importance in the Islamic state at this time, and the campaign which Bughā the Younger conducted in the area may have served to encourage recruitment. These anti-Turkish groups could raise 20,000 horse and 13,000 foot in Sāmarrā itself at the time of al-Mutawakkil's death in 247/861, showing how far the Turkish monopoly of military power had been challenged.

With the change in policy came a change in capital. For much the same reasons as al-Muʿtaṣim had left Baghdad, al-Mutawakkil was determined to leave Sāmarrā. In 244/858 he went to Damascus with the intention of moving the capital there, but the project was abandoned, ostensibly because of the plagues but probably because of violent Turkish protest in Sāmarrā. In the end he compromised and built a new city, complete with palaces and mosques, some miles to the north of Sāmarrā, thus giving him a new site with all the advantages which accrued from that while placating the opposition.

The reign was one of comparative peace. At no time perhaps had the caliph and his government exercised such real and effective control over the provinces. The east remained quiet under Tahirid rule while the Turkish army was used to subdue such unruly groups as the bedouin of the Ḥijāz and the people of the Caucasus areas. And yet the very strength and centralization of the caliphate and the crucial role of the élite army corps in maintaining this unity was to prove a source of weakness. A crisis at the centre would result in the complete collapse of the government structure in the provinces.

The crisis which ended the reign of al-Mutawakkil was largely a product of growing Turkish discontent. The caliph was murdered not because the Turks were so strong that they could dispose of the ruler with impunity but rather because they felt their position being threatened. They were totally dependent on government salaries and support; without these their influence and even their livelihood would disappear. Their coup against the ʿAbbasid caliph was more a product of desperation than a sign of triumph. The immediate cause of the plot was that

the caliph confiscated the estates of the senior surviving Turkish leader Waṣīf and handed them over to his favourite al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān. It was also said that al-Fatḥ and the caliph were plotting to murder Waṣīf and other leaders and they must all have been mindful of the fate of Ītākh. All the killers, who burst in on the caliph on the night of 4 Shawwāl 247/9–10 December 861 and slaughtered him and al-Fatḥ as they sat drinking, were Turks.

The conspiracy might well have failed, however, if the Turks had not found an ally whose position was also slipping and in need of restoration, the heir apparent, al-Muntaṣir. In 235/849–50 he had been appointed heir but by 247/861 it had become clear that his father was considering removing him from this position. ʿUbayd Allāh b. Yaḥyā and al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān seem to have been behind this and they were determined that the second son, al-Muʿtazz, should take his place. Al-Muntaṣir was publicly humiliated by not being allowed to lead the prayers at the end of Ramaḍān and more privately when al-Mutawakkil ordered al-Fatḥ to slap his face as a punishment for his stupidity. Whether the connection between the prince and the Turks was long established is not clear but we can be certain that they came together in a common cause and determined on a coup which would restore all their positions.

The Anarchy at Sāmarrā 247–256/861–870

The assassination of al-Mutawakkil ushered in the long, nine-year night of the "anarchy" in Sāmarrā. It was a period when caliphs succeeded one another with bewildering speed, four different rulers being proclaimed and accepted as caliphs, of whom at least three were subsequently killed by assassination or rebellion. To both contemporaries and later historians it has seemed a time when the office of commander of the faithful was no more than a plaything in the hands of rival military factions, and when the paralysis of the central government allowed disaffection and separatism to flourish unchecked in the provinces.

To understand the reasons for these bewildering events, it is necessary to examine the motives of the main participants, the Turkish military leaders. Almost without exception these were, as far as we can tell, men of obscure origins, slaves or sons of slaves who had risen to power as military commanders. Their fortunes and the livelihoods of their followers were entirely dependent on the favour of the caliph. Furthermore they were mostly aliens in a strange land, cut off from the local people and without experience of trade or agriculture. These leaders needed a ruler who was going to rely on them, to the exclusion of other groups, for his support, and would in turn repay them with estates and gifts for

the leaders and salaries for the rank and file. Bitterness and immediacy were added to the conflict because it seems to have taken place against a background of diminishing resources. Al-Mutawakkil had bequeathed a modest treasure to his successor but this had soon been dissipated, and the confusion soon led to a steep decline in tax yields from the provinces as local governors kept the taxes for their own use. Evidence suggests that both caliphs and military leaders alike were frequently embarrassed for ready money. The military leaders were caught between a government which was either unable or unwilling to pay the necessary sums and their own men who would soon replace a leader who was unable to secure their salaries. The cut-throat competition for diminishing resources led to conflict between the Turks and other groups and, inevitably, among the Turks themselves. The apparently mindless violence bears the hallmark of the action of desperate and often frightened men.

The obstacles the Turks faced included many of the other groups in the state. First there were the caliphs themselves. Without exception the four caliphs of the period took measures to restrict their power and influence. None of them were puppet rulers and at least two of them, al-Muʿtazz and al-Muhtadī, showed courage and determination in their efforts to restore the power of the caliphate. But their room for manoeuvre was limited; almost isolated at Sāmarrā, they found it difficult to raise support outside and even if they did, financial difficulties meant they had no immediate rewards to offer. The Turks also faced the hostility of most of the *kuttāb* class. There were always secretaries prepared to work for Turkish leaders but the most able and energetic of them, like al-Muʿtazz's *wazīr*, Aḥmad b. Isrāʾīl, were determined to prevent the military exercising any direct control over the financial affairs of the caliphates and to restore the wazirate to the position it had enjoyed under Ibn al-Zayyāt and Ibn Khāqān. Then there were other rival groups of soldiers (North African *Maghāriba* are the most frequently mentioned), who were sometimes grouped together under the name of *Shākiriyya*. They seem to have lacked the fierce *esprit de corps* and determined leadership of the Turks but the Turks had to come to terms with them or remove them from influence. Finally and most deadly among the enemies of every Turkish leader were his rivals from his own kind. The triumph of one syndicate of leaders meant exile, disgrace, poverty and even death for another. The Turks showed some unity and common purpose in their action against al-Mutawakkil but almost immediately after that, divisions began to appear and much of the violence of the period occurred between rival Turkish leaders.

The assassination of al-Mutawakkil left his son al-Muntaṣir the unchallenged ruler of the caliphate. The new administration, under Aḥmad

b. al-Khaṣīb the *wazīr*, stressed continuity with the old; it was given out that the caliph had been murdered by al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān, his favourite, who had subsequently been executed by the guard. None the less changes soon became apparent. The Turkish leaders claimed the reward of their support and became much more vocal in the making of policy; under pressure from Waṣīf and Bughā the Younger, al-Muntaṣir's brothers were obliged to resign their position in the succession while the Turks looked for a more amenable heir. Waṣīf was sent to the Byzantine front for four years with an army, largely drawn from the *Shākiriyya*, a connection he was later to make use of. Al-Muntaṣir restored the position of the Turks and he also seems to have restored to favour the ʿAlid family who were to enjoy the status which they had had in the years of Muʿtazilite government under al-Muʿtaṣim and al-Wāthiq but of which al-Mutawakkil had deprived them. How successful this government might have been is hard to tell, but in Rabīʿ II 248/June 862 the caliph died after a reign of six months, possibly of natural causes.

The Turks baulked at the prospect of choosing one of his minor sons and felt that they could not trust his deposed brothers, so they turned to another branch of the family and chose a grandson of al-Muʿtaṣim, who was duly installed with the title of al-Mustaʿīn. From the beginning of the reign, the Turkish leaders tightened their grip on the government; Ibn al-Khaṣīb was sent to Crete in exile while the wazirate passed, for the first time ever, to a Turkish leader, Utāmish. Unusually for a Turk, Utāmish busied himself with the financial administration, aided by his secretary, Shujāʿ b. al-Qāsim. The purpose of this arrangement was probably to ensure that the revenues were used for the benefit of the military without the interference of civilian advisers but the experiment was not a success and many Turks believed that the *wazīr*, and his agent in the palace, along with the caliph's mother, were embezzling money rightfully due to them. In Rabīʿ II 249/June 863 Utāmish was murdered by troops incited by his rivals Waṣīf and Bughā the Younger. After a short period of civilian administration, Waṣīf assumed the position of *wazīr* but he seems to have aroused the same hostility as Utāmish had done before him. Feeling his position in Sāmarrā under attack, he turned to the *Shākiriyya* connections he had forged on the Byzantine front (Waṣīf was the only Turkish leader who seems to have tried to seek military support from non-Turkish groups). He and Bughā the Younger left Sāmarrā for Baghdad where they were followed by the Caliph al-Mustaʿīn in the beginning of 251/865. The Turks remaining in Sāmarrā were well aware that an alliance of the caliph, Waṣīf, Bughā the Younger, the Tahirids and *Shākiriyya* of Baghdad was a formidable threat to their position and they decided on war. They chose a new caliph for themselves,

none other than al-Muntaṣir's brother al-Muʿtazz, and embarked on the siege of Baghdad.

The second siege of Baghdad echoed many of the features of the first during the reign of al-Amīn. Once again it was long and hard fought and once again the *ʿayyārūn* (a word which originally meant vagabonds but seems to have lost its pejorative overtones and might be translated as the irregulars) played an important role. Once again too it was divisions among the defenders which led to the fall of the city. Waṣīf and Bughā the Younger did not wish to destroy the army of Sāmarrā, from which they themselves had sprung, and hand over power to others. Furthermore the Tahirid leader became disillusioned with the rebels and so resistance collapsed, the unfortunate al-Mustaʿīn was exiled to Wāsiṭ but was murdered en route, and once again there was a caliph ruling in Sāmarrā with the support of the Turkish military (252/866).

The new caliph was able and determined. He appointed Aḥmad b. Isrā'īl as his *wazīr* and civil and military administration were once again divided in the old way. He ordered that the names of Waṣīf and Bughā should be removed from the *dīwāns*; in 253/867 Waṣīf was murdered by his Turkish rivals, while the next year Bughā the Younger died in prison and Bughā the Elder's able son, Mūsā, was exiled to Hamadhān. But this operation did not proceed without opposition; predictably many Turks opposed it but so too did the caliph's own brother, Abū Aḥmad, later known as al-Muwaffaq, who had led the armies of Sāmarrā against Baghdad and established close links with many Turkish leaders, notably Mūsā b. Bughā. The caliph's position was further weakened by the decline of Tahirid power in Baghdad in the aftermath of the siege and especially after the accession of Sulaymān b. ʿAbd Allāh b. Ṭahir in 255/869. This meant that the caliph was unable to look for support from that quarter.

In 255/869 the lead was taken by a partnership of Turkish military leaders, Wasīf's son, Ṣāliḥ, and Bāyikbāk. Their first target was the *wazīr* Aḥmad b. Isrā'īl. They began to assume governorships of provinces in their own name, sending deputies to administer them, Bāyikbāk sending Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn to Egypt for example. The object of this was again to avoid civilian control of the revenues and the *wazīr* fought a determined but losing battle to keep the military out of the financial administration. In Jumādā II 255/June 870 Ṣāliḥ launched his attack and forced the removal of Ibn Isrā'īl. Al-Muʿtazz attempted to raise support from other troops, notably the *Maghāriba* but was fatally short of money. Unable to find 50,000 *dīnārs* (the sort of sum Hārūn had given to successful poets) to pay his supporters, he saw them defect to his enemies and a month after the removal of the faithful *wazīr*, he fell a victim to the Turks.

In his place the military appointed Muḥammad, son of al-Wāthiq, who took the title of al-Muhtadī. Once again they found themselves confronted by a caliph determined to take up the fight, against all odds, to restore the dignity of his office. He introduced a new style into caliphal behaviour; he was austere and puritanical, sat in court to listen to grievances in person, and he established a rapport with the common people of Sāmarrā which none of his predecessors seem to have enjoyed. For the first six months, the government was run by Ṣāliḥ b. Waṣīf but he was no more successful in providing adequate revenues than his father and Utāmish before him had been. Despite the execution of Aḥmad b. Isrāʾīl and violent extortion from other *kuttāb* his position continued to weaken until he was supplanted by Mūsā b. Bughā who came from his base in Hamadhān. Friction between the new man and the caliph continued to increase and after eleven months of his reign in Rajab 256/summer 870 led to armed conflict. The caliph appealed to the religious status of his office and the affection of the people but, for the last time for half a century, the military were able to crush an obstreperous ʿAbbasid and he died, fighting bravely.

The Revival of the ʿAbbasid Caliphate 256–295/870–908

The anarchy came to an end with al-Muhtadī's death. This was partly because the feuds among the Turkish leaders had almost played themselves out, leaving Mūsā b. Bughā and his men in unchallenged control. It did not come to an end because an ʿAbbasid caliph defeated and humiliated the Turks (the events of the previous nine years had shown that there was no real substitute for Turkish military power), but because they were assured of a place in the new regime and integrated once more into the structure of the state. This compromise came about as a result of the unusual personality and career of Abū Aḥmad al-Muwaffaq.

Unlike the other members of his family, it seems that from an early stage al-Muwaffaq had embarked on a military career. During the recent civil war he had been in command of the Sāmarrā forces of al-Muʿtazz against al-Mustaʿīn and the Baghdadis. Later he had shown his identification with the Turkish cause by refusing to support al-Muʿtazz's move to curb the military and going into exile instead. He maintained especially close relations with another exiled member of the military, Mūsā, son of Bughā the Elder, who had been sent to Hamadhān, and when Mūsā returned to Sāmarrā during al-Muhtadī's reign to take over from Ṣāliḥ b. Waṣīf, Abū Aḥmad was in a very strong position. After al-Muhtadī's death, however, he did not arrange for his own succession

but allowed the appointment of his brother Aḥmad with the title of al-Muʿtamid. Al-Muʿtamid is often seen as a rather feeble personality, manipulated by his brother but this is probably unfair. His brother, like al-Muʿtaṣim in the reign of al-Maʾmūn, had put himself in an unchallengeable position because he alone of all the ʿAbbasids could call on a reliable military force to support his political ambitions. Until his death in 264/877 Mūsā b. Bughā was al-Muwaffaq's right-hand military man and after this date he continued to rely on Turkish leaders like Kayghalagh and Isḥāq b. Kundājīq who had been associated with Mūsā, so building up a new and reliable army, loyal to the ʿAbbasid cause. For the Turkish leaders the solution worked because al-Muwaffaq assured their status and their position as the army of the caliphate and al-Muwaffaq's role in the civil administration meant that they received their pay. At first Abū Aḥmad was simply governor of Iraq and Arabia but in 261/875 he was given a place in the succession after al-Muʿtamid's son and responsibility for the eastern provinces as well.

The caliph, based in Sāmarrā, tried to maintain the independence of his position by seeking the alliance of the powerful governor of Egypt, Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn, as a counterbalance to his brother. In 269/882 he tried to escape from his tutelage and join up with Ibn Ṭūlūn in Raqqa but was prevented by the governor of Mosul acting for al-Muwaffaq, and he was then brought south to Wāsiṭ where he could be kept under closer watch. The struggle for power between the two brothers was reflected in the struggle to control the civil administration. At the beginning of his reign, al-Muʿtamid enjoyed the services of an experienced and able *wazīr*, ʿUbayd Allāh b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān, who had been al-Mutawakkil's last *wazīr* and responsible for many of that ruler's moves against the Turks. He remained *wazīr* until his death in 263/877 and ensured his master some freedom of action. After ʿUbayd Allāh's death, however, al-Muʿtamid was forced to accept the services of his brother's secretary, Sulaymān b. Wahb, who was closely connected to the Turkish interests. Shortly afterwards Sulaymān was himself disgraced and the caliph was again allowed his own *wazīr*, an Iranian by the name of Ismāʿīl b. Bulbul, but most of the real power lay with al-Muwaffaq's secretary Ṣāʿid b. Makhlad who was his personal assistant from 265/878 onwards, helping in civil affairs and acting as a link between his master and the Turkish leaders, with whom his relations were close. In 272/885 his career was terminated and it was the turn of Ibn Bulbul to become *wazīr* to both brothers with wide powers of appointment and command of a group of Berber troops in Baghdad.

These manoeuvres were the product of a continuing financial stringency and the real questions at issue were firstly, the rivalry between the

caliph and al-Muwaffaq, and secondly the question of whether the civil administration should be independently responsible to the caliph or whether it should be controlled by men appointed by al-Muwaffaq and the military party. In these circumstances, two parties grew up among the *kuttāb*; Ismāʿīl b. Bulbul, faced with the acute financial difficulties, had recruited two immensely able merchants to attempt to increase the revenues from the Sawād, Aḥmad and ʿAlī b. al-Furāt, and they and their followers came to form one party in the administration. Opposed to them were a group of secretarial families, all originating from the countryside of the Sawād and many of them of Nestorian Christian origins. Sulaymān b. Wahb had been one of these but the most important and successful were the family of the Banu'l-Jarrāḥ who became the most important rivals of the Banu'l-Furāt. The financial problems of the time meant that these men enjoyed great power, since even the most successful military leader was impotent unless he could enlist the co-operation and expertise of one of the dynasties of *wazīrs*.

The anarchy in Sāmarrā paralysed the central government and allowed provincial dissent to come into the open. The damage that the fabric of the caliphate sustained in those few years was never entirely repaired. In Iran, the control of the ʿAbbasid–Tahirid partnership was challenged and destroyed by the Saffarids of Sīstān. Sīstān had always been on the fringes of the Islamic world, a natural place of refuge for rebels. Since Umayyad times, the rural areas away from the towns of Zaranj and Bust had been overrun by Khārijī rebels. Originally these had been refugees from Umayyad government but by the third/ninth century Sīstānī Kharijism was a home-grown phenomenon. In order to combat these rural disturbances, the governors and the local people had set up vigilante groups, sometimes known as *ʿayyārūn*. These groups became increasingly independent and in 239/854 the governor of the Tahirids had been driven from Bust by the leader of one group. In 247/861, the year of al-Mutawakkil's assassination, the provincial capital at Zaranj was seized by another *ʿayyār* leader, Yaʿqūb b. Layth, who had been a coppersmith (Arabic *ṣaffār*) from a village in the area. By 251/865, Yaʿqūb al-Ṣaffār had established his authority over all Sīstān, defeating both the Khārijīs and rival *ʿayyār* leaders. There can be no doubt, however, that he incorporated many of their followers into his own armies and the armies of the Saffarids were drawn from all sections of the population of Sīstān.

Once he had established himself in his home province, Yaʿqūb turned his attentions to the surrounding areas. It was in pursuit of fleeing Khārijīs that he first invaded Tahirid Khurāsān but by 253/867 he had defeated the Tahirid army and taken Harāt, and in 259/873 fifty years

of Tahirid rule was brought to an end when the Saffarids took Nīshāpūr. At the same time he led his men against the pagans to the east, in 256/870 he attacked Ghazna, Kābul and Bamyān. But from the point of view of the ʿAbbasids, his most dangerous moves were when he began to turn his attention westwards. In an effort to deflect Yaʿqūb's energies from Khurāsān proper, Muḥammad b. Ṭāhir had invested him with the governorates of Sīstān, Kābul, Kirmān and Fārs and in 255/869 he began to make these claims a reality by taking Kirmān. Then from 255–62/869–75 he was engaged in a three-cornered fight in Ahwāz and Fārs with a local adventurer Muḥammad b. Wāṣil al-Tamīmī and the caliph's brother al-Muwaffaq. The ʿAbbasids were particularly concerned lest the Saffarids should join forces with the Zanj rebels of the Baṣra area, but although they both benefited from each other's activities the Saffarids refused the formal co-operation offered by the Zanj leader, ʿAlī b. Muḥammad. In 262/876 there was a final trial of strength; Yaʿqūb advanced on Baghdad. The ʿAbbasids were prepared to offer him all the offices held by the Tahirids, not only the governorate of Khurāsān and the east but the command of the police in Baghdad as well. Yaʿqūb, however, continued his advance only to be defeated by al-Muwaffaq and Mūsā b. Bughā at Dayr ʿĀqūl, near Baghdad in 262/876.

This set-back and Yaʿqūb's subsequent death near Ahwāz in 265/879 freed Iraq from the Saffarid menace. Yaʿqūb's role was taken over by his brother ʿAmr. His position was less secure and he faced prolonged opposition to his rule in Khurāsān, which meant that he greatly valued the legitimacy which the ʿAbbasids alone could confer on his government, and he was given the title to Khurāsān, Fārs, Iṣfahān, Sīstān, Kirmān and Sind. Relations between al-Muwaffaq and ʿAmr were not always cordial although the Saffarid was prepared to pay irregular but substantial sums of tribute in return for caliphal approval. He made no further attempts on Iraq but Fārs, despite a determined campaign by al-Muwaffaq and his son Abu'l-ʿAbbās, the future Caliph al-Muʿtaḍid, in 271–4/884–7, remained in Saffarid hands. In Iṣfahān the situation was complicated by a struggle between Saffarids and a local dynasty of Arab origin, the Dulafids, the ʿAbbasids supporting the cause first of one party and then the other. While never becoming as close to the ʿAbbasids as the Tahirids had been, the Saffarids under ʿAmr had ceased to be a threat to the existence of the dynasty and, if it had not been for the dispute over Fārs, might have become firm partners.

The Saffarids were outsiders who had become powerful and then received recognition from the caliphs. The main challenge to the ʿAbbasids in the west came from a member of the Sāmarrā ruling group who profited from the anarchy to break away. Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn was governor

of Egypt from 254/868 until his death in 270/884. (See pp. 308–10 below.) During these years, he used the wealth of the country to build up a substantial army which he employed to gain control over Syria and to mount expeditions against the Byzantines from the Syrian frontier lands which usually acknowledged his authority. Ibn Ṭūlūn never ceased to acknowledge the ʿAbbasids as caliphs and he probably continued to make some payments to their treasury. Al-Muʿtamid welcomed him and his financial contributions as it seemed to lessen his dependence on his brother and in 269/882 he made an attempt to transfer to Tulunid territory. Ibn Ṭūlūn's relations with al-Muwaffaq were less friendly and the two men clearly saw each other as rivals. There were territorial clashes as well; the Tulunids occupied not just Syria but the Jazīra as far as Raqqa, uncomfortably close to the centres of ʿAbbasid power. But Ibn Ṭūlūn too had his problems, with dissident generals in his own army and the rivalry of Isḥāq b. Kundājīq, a Turkish general of much the same background as himself, who supported the ʿAbbasid cause in Mosul and the northern Jazīra. In these circumstances he never sought to take over Iraq as well. After Ibn Ṭūlūn's death in 270/884, al-Muwaffaq attempted to retake Egypt and sent his son al-Muʿtaḍid to challenge Khumārawayh b. Aḥmad b. Ṭulūn, but the attempt ended in failure and a compromise under which the Tulunids were to pay 300,000 *dīnārs* in tribute every year in exchange for recognition.

In contrast to the Tulunids or ʿAmr b. Layth, with whom co-operation was possible, were the Zanj of southern Iraq who were the most radical and formidable of the challenges which faced the caliphate after the anarchy. They were a threat not just because of their military prowess, or because they operated in the ʿAbbasid heartland of Iraq, but because they presented a challenge to the whole ordering of society and established religion. They threatened the very survival of the caliphate and the struggle against them was a war to the death.

The Zanj was the name given to the slave population of southern Iraq, most of them of East African origin. It seems that at least since early Islamic times, large numbers of slaves had been used by landowners in the marsh areas of southern Iraq to reclaim land. Under Islamic law, reclaimed land brought under cultivation belonged to the man who made it productive and so it was worth investing large sums in this work. This seems to have been the only area in the Islamic world where this sort of large-scale agricultural slavery was practised; elsewhere farming was conducted by free peasants while slaves were used for domestic, administrative or military purposes. There is no doubt that many of these slaves lived in very bad conditions and there had been at least two minor rebellions before in Umayyad times. The revolt in this period,

however, was made much more formidable by the weakness of the government and the participation of other, non-slave elements.

The rebellion was not a spontaneous explosion but was the work of one rather unusual man. ʿAlī b. Muḥammad had been born of Arab parents in a village near Rayy in central Iran. He had first tried to make his career as a poet in Sāmarrā but it would seem that his talents were not as great as his ambition and, seeing the chaos in the government, he decided to enter politics. He first went to Yamāma in eastern Arabia, where Musaylima had raised the Banū Hanīfa during the *Ridda* wars and which was later to be a stronghold of the Qarmaṭīs. It seems that he too claimed to be a prophet and attracted some following among the tribes of the area, but his supporters were soon routed and with a small number of loyal compansions he went to Baṣra in 254/868. There he made a few more converts to his cause but he soon came to realize the potential of the slaves as a source of support. Quite what his religious position was is not clear; he seems to have abandoned the idea of prophethood for himself and contented himself with claiming to be a member of the ʿAlid family, or rather, according to his detractors, different members of the ʿAlid family on different occasions. What is more clear is the strong social content of his message; the slaves were going to be rich and free and their masters were going to suffer.

The rebellion broke out in Ramaḍān 255/September 869, just under a year before the accession of al-Muʿtamid and al-Muwaffaq. It spread very quickly and for ten years enjoyed an almost unchallenged success. The first attempts to subdue the ex-slaves were made by the Basrans, their former masters, but these were beaten off with ease and the bitterness of the rebels was demonstrated by their policy of executing all prisoners without distinction. The enfeebled and preoccupied government was able to offer little support to the people. The rebels were aided by the difficult marshy terrain, ideal for guerrilla warfare conducted by men who knew the area well but almost impenetrable to a strange, largely cavalry army like the Turks. Aided by nomads of the north-east of Arabia, notably from the Banū Tamīm and Banū Asad, they succeeded in 257/871 in taking Baṣra itself. The city, a great commercial centre and one of the cultural capitals of early Islam, was destroyed by the rebels, the mosques were burned, the inhabitants massacred; once more the ferocity of the war is conspicuous. Their control spread to Wāsiṭ and beyond, and over much of the province of Ahwāz. ʿAlī b. Muḥammad ruled from a new capital he founded, Mukhtāra, on a canal to the east of Baṣra; he minted his own coins and took the title of *Mahdī*. How much power the Zanj themselves enjoyed is not entirely clear. All the known leaders seem to have been Arabs, mostly men who

had joined ʿAlī in Yamāma or in Baṣra before the rebellion started and it may be the slaves, though now slave-owners themselves, had little say in the direction of policy.

When the ʿAbbasid response did come, it was methodical, systematic and effective. From 266/879 al-Muwaffaq and his son Abu'l-ʿAbbās began a slow advance, concentrating on destroying the ships which gave the Zanj such mobility in the marshes. The army was large, perhaps 50,000, but the terrain meant that progress was slow. ʿAlī ordered the evacuation of threatened areas and a retreat to the stronghold at Mukhtāra. There the rebels were eventually besieged before ʿAbbasid forces entered the city, which had to be taken street by street in Ṣafar 270/August 883. ʿAlī b. Muḥammad was killed in the fighting. The rebellion was finally crushed but the damage caused had been enormous. Slave farming and large-scale reclamation of land were never begun again and it seems unlikely that the city of Baṣra ever fully recovered. Trade routes had been disrupted for too long, merchants had found other ways of communicating with the east, via Sīrāf in southern Iran for example, and Baṣra and southern Iraq in general entered a long period of decline. Once again the social antagonisms in the area had led to large-scale popular movements which threatened the order and prosperity of society.

The system of joint rule, the Caliph al-Muʿtamid increasingly a puppet after 269/882 and the effective ruler being al-Muwaffaq, continued until al-Muwaffaq's death in 278/891. This did not, however, lead to a renewal of the caliph's power since al-Muwaffaq was immediately succeeded by his son Abu'l-ʿAbbās who took the title of al-Muʿtaḍid and when the caliph himself died the next year, his son was easily brushed aside and al-Muʿtaḍid, unlike his father, became caliph in his own right (279/892). The new caliph was very much a man in his father's mould, a strong personality who took good care to remain on close terms with the military and who took part in campaigns himself. He inherited the largely Turkish army which had been built up by his father and Mūsā b. Bughā, with which he himself had done his apprenticeship. The army remained loyal to him throughout his reign and became the chief instrument of his policy.

The main objectives of the new caliph were to increase the territory under the effective control of the government and, in order to accomplish this, to establish a viable financial administration. To do this he collected a remarkably able and compatible government team. His *wazīr*, ʿUbayd Allāh b. Sulaymān b. Wahb, was the son of one of al-Muwaffaq's most influential secretaries. Like his father, he was given wide-ranging powers, not just over the civil administration but over military affairs as

well, participating actively in campaigns. This close connection between civil and military leaders had been a major feature of al-Muwaffaq's success and it was continued by his son. The main army commander, Badr, was the son of a freedman of al-Mutawakkil and had served al-Muwaffaq. Under al-Muʿtaḍid he was the most prominent general and the caliph's son married his daughter. He was also a firm friend of the *wazīr*, ʿUbayd Allāh, so eliminating most of the friction which might have arisen.

The *wazīr* was in no position to supervise the day-to-day financial administration, partly because he does not seem to have had the technical knowledge and partly because military campaigns often meant he was away from the capital. Financial administration was therefore left to the Banu'l-Furāt brothers, Aḥmad and ʿAlī, who had served under Ismāʿīl b. Bulbul. Despite this connection, their abilities secured them a position in the new government and they soon made themselves indispensable, reforming the revenue gathering, a process which involved the widespread use of tax-farming, a procedure which was to prove very damaging in the future but was probably inevitable in the circumstances. They also allowed the caliph to build up a separate, private purse, again a development which may have had advantages with a strong and effective ruler like al-Muʿtaḍid but which was to lead to problems later. In 286/899 the Banu'l-Furāt were replaced by the other important family of *kuttāb*, the Banu'l-Jarrāḥ, and control of the finances was entrusted to Muḥammad b. Dāwūd and his nephew, ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā. When the *wazīr* ʿUbayd Allāh died in 288/901, the caliph ensured continuity by appointing his son al-Qāsim to succeed him. The new team was an able one, but there was dissension among them; there grew up a fierce rivalry between the Banu'l-Furāt and the Banu'l-Jarrāḥ for control of the administration, each side being supported by groups of lesser secretaries who attached themselves to one party or another. This seems to have been a simple power struggle but there is some evidence that the Jarrahids favoured a policy of closer co-operation with the military while the Banu'l-Furāt were determined to maintain the supremacy and separateness of the civil administration. Both the caliph and his *wazīr*, however, were strong and these rivalries were not allowed, at this stage, to cause any serious problems.

The reign of al-Muʿtaḍid saw the definitive return of the capital to Baghdad. Until the last months of his reign al-Muʿtamid had continued to live in Sāmarrā but al-Muwaffaq and his army had used Baghdad as their base against the Zanj and remained there even after the rebellion was crushed. It was natural then that al-Muʿtaḍid would continue his father's policy in this as in other matters. The city saw considerable

building activity at this time. Al-Manṣūr's Baghdad had been established on the west bank of the Tigris but during the disturbances of the third/ninth century much of this area had fallen into ruin. Al-Muʿtaḍid moved to the east bank, slightly further downstream than the original city, and the site he chose has remained the centre of Baghdad down to the present day. Both he and his son and successor al-Muktafī devoted large sums of money for the reconstruction of this part of the city and the building of new palaces and mosques. The caliph's concern for civil administration did not end there; we are told that he arranged for the digging-out of the bed of the Dujayl canal and collected contributions to the expense from those who held estates which would benefit from the irrigation work. He also arranged that the tax year should be changed so that the *kharāj* was demanded after the harvest rather than earlier in the year when farmers would find it more difficult to pay.

But it was military activity which absorbed most of the caliph's energies. No ʿAbbasid caliph, not even al-Muʿtaṣim, spent as much time on campaign as did al-Muʿtaḍid. He was also a skilful diplomat, always prepared to make compromises with those who were too powerful to defeat. He was prepared to leave eastern and northern Iran, Syria and Egypt to their own rulers as long as these acknowledged ʿAbbasid sovereignty, but he was determined to assert real control over Iraq, the Jazīra, the Byzantine frontier area and western Iran including Iṣfahān and Fārs.

With the Tulunids, the caliph was friendly but firm. On his accession, Khumārawayh sent presents for the new caliph and contracted a marriage alliance. After the death of Khumārawayh in 282/896 the Tulunid state began to disintegrate. A large number of soldiers defected to the ʿAbbasids and were welcomed by the army minister Muḥammad b. Sulaymān. Within a year, the new sovereign, Jaysh b. Khumārawayh, had been murdered in turn and replaced by his brother Hārūn. In 284/897 there were riots between pro-Tulunid and pro-ʿAbbasid parties in Tarsus, the main base for raids against the Byzantines. The ʿAbbasid faction triumphed, the caliph's authority was acknowledged and the leadership of the *ṣā'ifa*, the summer expedition against the Byzantines, was once again an ʿAbbasid privilege. The new Tulunid ruler was obliged to make other concessions to gain recognition from the ʿAbbasids and agreed to surrender Qinnasrīn and the province of al-ʿAwāṣim, that is all of Syria north of Homs, to the ʿAbbasids and to increase the tribute to 450,000 *dīnārs* per year. By the end of his reign, without striking a blow, ʿAbbasid authority had been restored over an important area.

In the Jazīra, the situation was complicated by the rivalries of different leaders who had established themselves during and after the anarchy, often playing off the Tulunids against the ʿAbbasids to preserve their

independence. The Turkish strong-man of the Mosul area, Isḥāq b. Kundājīq, had died the year before al-Muʿtaḍid's accession and his son Muḥammad was driven out by a rival adventurer, Aḥmad b. ʿĪsā b. Shaykh. Aḥmad's father had been a Shaybānī bedouin leader who established himself first in Palestine and later in the northern Jazīra with his capital at Āmid. He was now the unofficial ruler of the area and was trying to expand his authority northwards into Armenia. A further threat in the area was posed by the Taghlibī leader Ḥamdān b. Ḥamdūn who had numerous contacts among the Khawārij and the Kurds. The caliph began his campaigns with characteristic energy in 280/893 when he travelled north, chastising the Banū Shaybān and restoring ʿAbbasid rule in Mosul. The next year he was in Mosul again (after a stay in Baghdad and a campaign in Iran in the interim) seeking out the elusive Ḥamdān b. Ḥamdūn. During this campaign, he made contact with Ḥamdān's son al-Ḥusayn, who later secured his father's release and a position for himself and his followers in the caliph's army, in return for capturing a Khārijī leader. This marks the beginning of the rise of the Hamdanids, and al-Ḥusayn, with his highly mobile Arab following, was to provide the most effective troops the ʿAbbasids could find against the Qarmaṭī menace.

Aḥmad b. ʿĪsā died in his capital at Āmid in 285/898 and although he was succeeded by his son Muḥammad, al-Muʿtaḍid saw this as the opportunity for a fundamental reorganization in the area. The next year he launched a major expedition which forced the surrender of Muḥammad after a siege. He then left his son ʿAlī al-Muktafī to arrange for the administration of the frontier areas and northern Syria and the Jazīra while he returned to Raqqa. By a mixture of force and diplomacy the caliph had brought the whole area back under the control of the ʿAbbasids. In Armenia and Āẕarbayjān to the north and east, however, the caliph was unable to exercise any real authority at all; the local military commander, Muḥammad b. Abi'l-Sāj, remained effectively independent and the caliph was wise enough not to attempt a campaign in these distant regions. Even the death of Muḥammad in 288/901 and the subsequent dispute between his son Dīvdād and his brother Yūsuf allowed the ʿAbbasids no opportunity for intervention.

In Iran al-Muʿtaḍid's policy was based on friendship with the Saffarid leader ʿAmr b. Layth, with whom he exchanged gifts and courtesies. He was even content to allow the Saffarids to retain Fārs while he struggled to assert ʿAbbasid sovereignty in the Jibāl and Iṣfahān. The leading power in this area was the Dulafids and once again it was the death of an established member of the family, in this case Aḥmad b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Abī Dulaf in 280/893, which enabled the caliph to take action; he

refused to allow Aḥmad's son ʿUmar to succeed and the next year, 281/894, he went to the province in person. Here he divided the Dulafid domains, appointing his son ʿAlī al-Muktafī to govern Rayy, Qazvīn, Qumm and Hamadhān while ʿUmar was restricted to the Dulafids' ancestral lands around Karaj and Iṣfahān. Even here he was subjected to harassment and in 283/896 he was obliged to surrender to the *wazīr* ʿUbayd Allāh b. Sulaymān and the army commander Badr. A member of the Baghdad army, ʿĪsā al-Nawsharī, was appointed governor of Iṣfahān and, despite some guerrilla campaigns by ʿUmar's brothers, Dulafid rule was ended. ʿAbbasid control in Rayy proved ephemeral; pressure from the ʿAlids of Ṭabaristān and others made the city untenable and in 284/897 it was handed over to ʿAmr b. Layth, then at the height of his power, while the young prince ʿAlī made his way west to take up new responsibilities in the Jazīra. Despite this set-back, ʿAbbasid power had notably increased in the Jibāl area and ʿĪsā al-Nawsharī remained governor of Iṣfahān for the rest of the reign.

The end of the reign saw a major change in ʿAbbasid policy in Iran. In 285/898 al-Muʿtaḍid appointed ʿAmr b. Layth to Transoxania, the region then held by Ismāʿīl b. Aḥmad the Samanid. In view of subsequent events, this has been seen as a piece of ʿAbbasid duplicity but in fact it accords well with al-Muʿtaḍid's previous policy of support for ʿAmr. The Saffarid's attempt to assert his power in the area led to disaster; he was totally defeated, captured and sent to Baghdad where, in 289/902 just after the caliph's death, he was killed. Ismāʿīl b. Aḥmad was now acknowledged as ruler of Khurāsān. In some ways this revolution benefited the ʿAbbasids since the Samanids had no ambitions in western Iran or Iraq, but relations were never as close as they had been with ʿAmr and there is no evidence that the Samanids ever sent significant tribute to the caliphs; unlike the Tahirids and the Saffarids, they can be described as truly independent. The fall of ʿAmr encouraged the ʿAbbasids to make another attempt to retain Fārs but despite campaigns by ʿĪsā al-Nawsharī and Badr, the Saffarids, under ʿAmr's grandson Ṭāhir b. Muḥammad, proved unexpectedly resilient and Fārs was not retaken by the ʿAbbasids until the reign of al-Muqtadir.

This picture of gradual and systematic re-establishment of ʿAbbasid power was threatened by the rising tide of discontent among the bedouin Arabs. The first campaign of al-Muʿtaḍid after he became caliph had been to discipline the Shaybān of the Jazīra. When, from 286/899, their activities were co-ordinated by the leaders of the Qarāmiṭa or Carmathians (sing. Qarmaṭī), the tribes began to pose a more serious threat to the state. (See pp. 285–90 below.) As long as al-Muʿtaḍid and his military commander Badr lived, the menace was kept under

control, but under al-Muktafī and his successors they were to prove the most dangerous enemies the ʿAbbasids had faced since the time of the Zanj.

Al-Muʿtaḍid died in 289/902 and his son al-Muktafī, who was in the Jazīra at the time, was proclaimed caliph by the *wazīr* al-Qāsim b. ʿUbayd Allāh. Like his father, the new caliph had had extensive experience of government, in Rayy and the Jazīra, before he became caliph. In general he followed in his father's footsteps but he showed none of al-Muʿtaḍid's amazing energy and does not seem to have exercised the same degree of control or to have led his army in person. It is very similar to the reign of al-Wāthiq after that of al-Muʿtaṣim, a peaceful continuation of the same policies by a less forceful personality.

The reign was marked from the beginning by the determination of the *wazīr*, al-Qāsim b. ʿUbayd Allāh, to secure an effective monopoly of power. As soon as the new caliph was installed, the *wazīr* secured the recall of Badr from the campaign in Fārs and his execution. The death of al-Muʿtaḍid's most important military leader meant that al-Qāsim was free to extend his control over the military. He did this through the agency of the clerk of the *dīwān al-jaysh* (the government office in charge of paying the troops), Muḥammad b. Sulaymān, who had been in charge of paying the army for some years and had welcomed the Egyptian military leaders who defected to Baghdad after the death of Khumārawayh. He was obviously liked and trusted by the military and now, despite his background as a *kātib*, he effectively became commander of the army.

The most critical threat facing the new regime was the Qarāmiṭa of the Syrian desert. Faced by this menace, the ʿAbbasids made peace in Iran, acknowledging Samanid control in Rayy and Saffarid control in Fārs. The first attempts to fight the Qarāmiṭa were heavily defeated and the rebels threatened both Aleppo and Damascus. At the end of 290/903 Muḥammad b. Sulaymān was put in charge of a major expedition to the west to deal with the menace. Early the next year, the ʿAbbasid army won a major victory against the rebels near Ḥamāh and the Qarmaṭī leaders were sent captive to the caliph at Raqqa. Muḥammad and his commanders were given a triumphal reception in Baghdad. The danger from the Qarāmiṭa was by no means over and they continued to raid and pillage in the cities of Syria and Iraq which bordered on the desert, but the most serious threat had now passed.

Having achieved this triumph, Muḥammad b. Sulaymān then set out to retake Egypt from the Tulunids. The Tulunids had been weakened by internal strife since the death of Khumārawayh and many of the officers in Muḥammad b. Sulaymān's army had previously served the Tulunids,

especially Turks, dissatisfied with the favour Hārūn b. Khumārawayh showed to the Berbers and others. Tulunid rule had been further weakened by the Qarāmiṭa. Despite the successful defence of Damascus by Ṭughj b. Juff (the father of Muḥammad b. Ṭughj al-Ikhshīd, the future ruler of Egypt), the Tulunids had proved totally unable to defend the settled people of Syria against the threat from the desert. Muḥammad planned the expedition carefully; his army of 10,000 was very large by the standards of the time and he was aided by naval support from the fleet of Tarsus and further desertions from the Tulunid army. The campaign was something of a triumphal progress and in 292/905, after only a little fighting, the Tulunid dynasty was brought to an end and ʿAbbasid control restored. The triumph was not complete, however, and a revolt flared up under Ibrāhīm al-Khalījī. It was not until another year's fighting, in 293/906 that the province was finally subdued.

This triumph was succeeded the next year by a series of decisive victories over the Qarāmiṭa in the Syrian desert, and although they continued to threaten Iraq from their base in Baḥrayn, their Syrian supporters were dispersed and subdued. Once again the forces of the Hamdanid leader al-Ḥusayn b. Ḥamdān played a vital role in this.

The death of al-Muktafī in 295/908 marks the high point of the ʿAbbasid revival. Not only were Syria and Egypt subdued but the treasury was full and the caliph left 15 million *dīnārs*. The army seems to have been effective and firmly under the control of the caliph and his civilian administrators. When al-Qāsim died in 291/904 he was in a position to nominate his successor. He suggested either the Jarrahid ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā or al-ʿAbbās b. al-Ḥasan al-Jarjarā'ī, another bureaucrat from the Sawād of Iraq, being determined to the last to exclude Ibn al-Furāt. ʿAlī declined the offer and al-ʿAbbās assumed the powers his predecessor had built up. When the caliph died in 295/908 it fell to him to order the succession.

The Disastrous Reigns of al-Muqtadir and his Successors 295–334/908–946

Al-Muktafī had been ill for some time before his death, probably in fact for much of his short reign, and this may account for his failure to give clear guidance on the question of the succession. The choosing of the new caliph reveals clearly where power now lay. When al-Wāthiq had died in 232/847 the choice of the new caliph had been made by a group which consisted of the *wazīr*, two *kuttāb*, the chief *qāḍī* and two important representatives of the military, Ītākh and Waṣīf. In 295/908 however, only the bureaucrats were involved in the decision-making.

The *wazīr*, al-ʿAbbās b. Ḥasan, asked for advice from various quarters; Muḥammad b. Dāwūd the Jarrahid pronounced in favour of the talented and experienced ʿAbd Allāh, son of the Caliph al-Muʿtazz, while the other leading Jarrahid, ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā, would not be drawn. ʿAlī b. al-Furāt, however, persuaded the *wazīr* to appoint a weak candidate, al-Muktafī's brother Jaʿfar. It was a sinister development since Ibn al-Furāt was clearly suggesting a candidate whom it would be possible to manipulate and control. In the end the *wazīr* was persuaded and Jaʿfar was installed with the title of al-Muqtadir. It was an inauspicious beginning to what was to prove one of the most disastrous reigns in the whole of ʿAbbasid history. For a quarter of a century, the place of al-Manṣūr and Hārūn was occupied by a youth who was constantly manipulated, exploited and deceived by his advisers and it was a quarter of a century when all the work of his predecessors was undone.

The accession of the new ruler was a triumph for the civilian aristocracy. By their close relations with the military, al-Muwaffaq, al-Muʿtaḍid and al-Muktafī had prevented army mutinies and rebellions but under the new ruler, this link was lost. In addition the bureaucrats were far from united and the bitter feuds which had divided them in the previous reign were allowed to flourish unchecked. We know a lot about these men and their manœuvres, since their histories were recorded in detail by later administrators, notably Hilāl al-Ṣābī and Abū ʿAlī Miskawayh, half in admiration, half as an awful warning of the consequences of bad government. There were still two main, and many minor, factions among the *kuttāb*. The Banu'l-Furāt were led by Abu'l-Ḥasan ʿAlī. In many ways he was a great man, an extremely able financier committed to the reform of abuse and the raising of state revenues without oppression. He was also highly cultured and extremely wealthy, with all the extravagant and conspicuous generosity which could be expected of such a man. But his character was not without flaws; he was to an extent ruthless and unscrupulous when it came to furthering his own interests; he might have been careful to restrain the corruption of others but his own immense wealth was not all acquired by legitimate means. The leader of the Banu'l-Jarrāḥ, ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā, is portrayed as a perfect foil to this *grand seigneur* personality. He too was a skilled administrator, devoted to the eradication of corruption; but he was austere, pious, even mean. He did not have an affable public manner and made enemies easily. None the less, later generations praised his carefulness and probity and he became known as the "good vizier". He also enjoyed the confidence of the military. The leading figure in Baghdad forces, said to have been 9,000 in number, was now Mu'nis, known as al-Muẓaffar, "the Victorious", after a successful campaign against the Byzantines.

He was the most powerful military officer throughout the reign and remained an ally of ʿAlī and a supporter of his methods. He also acquired vast landed estates, notably in Fārs after its reconquest by ʿAbbasid forces. Around these figures there grouped numerous lesser men, relatives and hangers-on. Each change of government meant not just a change of *wazīr* but changes in many other areas as well. The court was alive with intrigue and competition for favour.

This competition was made much more dangerous by the continuous financial crisis of the reign. The government was always short of money to discharge its immediate obligations and *wazīrs* were often forced to borrow to pay the next month's salaries. It is not entirely obvious why this crisis had become so pressing. It is clear that revenues from the Sawād of Iraq had been declining for at least a century. In early Islamic times the Sawād is said to have produced over 100 million *dirhams* in tax each year and this remained true until the reign of al-Ma'mūn. By the reign of al-Muqtadir, in a survey in 306/918–19, it seems to have yielded only 31 million *dirhams*, a dramatic decline, and it is clear that much of this was never collected or was embezzled before it reached the capital. The decline in revenue from the Sawād was all the more damaging since many other areas like Egypt and Fārs contributed little or no taxes during the second half of the third/ninth century.

War and maladministration probably account for much of this. The agricultural economy of the area was potentially very rich but it was also very fragile; it required constant investment in canals and irrigation if the prosperity was to be maintained. The series of long drawn out campaigns of the third/ninth century must have caused immense damage. In Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid times we hear of large-scale agricultural development in the area. From the third/ninth and fourth/tenth centuries we hear of occasional attempts to restore damaged systems but it would seem no one was prepared to make long-term investments. The problem was aggravated when the government was obliged to grant lands to military officers whose tenure was insecure and whose only concern was to extract as much as possible before moving on. As von Kremer remarked, "One fact appears to emerge with certainty from the list of the tax-payments of Sawād province; it is the decline of the agricultural economy, while simultaneously the grandees of the state, the members of the ruling families, established for themselves widespread latifundia." The problem the ʿAbbasids faced at this time cannot be understood unless the economic and financial problems are given due attention.

Despite the long-term decline in the prosperity of the Sawād, however, al-Muʿtaḍid and al-Muktafī were both able to save about 1 million

dīnārs per year out of current revenue and both left substantial sums in the treasury. Furthermore the revenues available to al-Muqtadir actually increased in some ways; the reconquest of Fārs was said to have brought in an extra 18 million *dirhams* per year, more than enough to pay the salary bill of the troops Mu'nis commanded in Baghdad, and the revenues of Egypt under the administration of the Mādharā'ī brothers were much greater than his predecessors had enjoyed. The caliph also resorted to widespread confiscations of the goods of deposed *wazīrs*, amounting to 2.3 million *dīnārs* on the one occasion from Ibn al-Furāt and his family. Writing at the time of the Buyid ʿAḍud al-Dawla half a century later, Miskawayh blamed the caliph for squandering and wasting this money. Some contemporaries shared this point of view; ʿAlī b. ʿIsā as *wazīr* made sustained attempts to reduce court salaries and cut out extravagant expenditure and in this he was supported by Mu'nis who considered that the palace was responsible for most of the problems. It was here that the private purse of the caliph became such a problem, as the *wazīr* was unable to supervise it while al-Muqtadir (and even more his mother who controlled many of his activities) insisted that all the everyday expenses of court and government be met out of public funds. The army was certainly costly; the 9,000 troops Mu'nis commanded in Baghdad are said to have been paid 600,000 *dīnārs* (approx. 9 million *dirhams*) per year in 315/927 and they had to be paid monthly in cash. The root of the problem was that both the great consumers of public wealth, the palace and the military, were in a very strong position; the palace because the courtiers effectively controlled the caliph and could secure the dismissal of *wazīrs* like ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā who reduced their allowances, and the military because they could threaten mutiny and they were the only people who could hope to defend Iraq from the Qarāmiṭa, although their military abilities and enthusiasm seem to have been very limited. When Ibn Rā'iq finally broke up this army, he found it contained many merchants, women and others who collected salaries but performed no military duties at all. Most attempts to solve immediate problems tended to reduce revenue in the long term and in the end, it was financial disaster which destroyed the great ʿAbbasid caliphate. The overall picture suggests that Iraq was burdened with a military and court establishment out of all proportion to its real wealth.

To deal with these problems, *wazīrs* tried a variety of expedients. The first and most obvious was to extract money from previous holders of the office, and the high turnover of top administrative officials is in marked contrast with the stability of the previous two reigns when ʿUbayd Allāh b. Sulaymān and his son al-Qāsim had both held office until their death. The procedure, frequently repeated, went like this;

there was a financial crisis and some ambitious bureaucrat or businessman would then approach the caliph saying that he was in a position to increase the revenue and extract a vast sum from the present *wazīr*. The caliph would agree, the hapless *wazīr* was dismissed and he and his assistants interrogated, often under torture, and promised to pay huge fines. The new holder of the office would then discover that the fines were mostly unpaid, since the victims did not have the money, and he was wholly unable to raise the promised sums, whereupon the whole dismal cycle began all over again.

The government was supposed to extract the revenue from the Sawād and the provinces. There were three ways in which this could be done. The first was by direct taxation on land, the *kharāj*, which was assessed according to area and collected annually. This was an ideal system and *wazīrs* like Ibn al-Furāt and ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā strove to uphold it, realizing that it was the best method of paying the expenses while maintaining the prosperity of the country, but it was increasingly difficult to sustain. It needed a number of skilled, honest, salaried tax-gatherers who were themselves a strain on the public purse, but more important in the circumstances, it was very inelastic; a sudden demand for money could not be met and deficit financing, borrowing against next year's anticipated income, was very difficult. Equally, a bad harvest one year or a provincial rebellion could reduce tax-yields dramatically and cause a major political crisis. In the circumstances of the time, *wazīrs*, often against their better judgement, were compelled to resort to the second alternative, tax-farming. The collection of revenues was often granted to individuals in return for a guaranteed sum for the exchequer. The entrepreneur was then entitled to collect what he could from the unfortunate local people. Such tax-farmers appear frequently in the chronicles, among them the fabulously rich farmer of Wāsiṭ, Ḥāmid b. al-ʿAbbās. He was at one time made *wazīr* himself, although it soon became apparent that the abilities needed for tax-farming and for being *wazīr* were quite different and he was obliged to leave everyday affairs to ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā. After their reconquest, Syria and Egypt were farmed out to two Iraqi businessmen, the Mādharā'ī brothers, who agreed to pay 1 million *dīnārs* a year to the public purse while paying the Syrian and Egyptian armies themselves. The system solved some problems but led to others; the peasants were often exploited for short-term profits and tax-farmers were often unable to meet their obligations. The Mādharā'īs, for example, made the bargain for Syria and Egypt in 306/918 and paid up for the first year but thereafter the threat of Fatimid invasion diverted the revenues. In 320/932 Syria and Egypt were said to have contributed no revenues to Baghdad for the previous four years.

The third option was the granting of an *iqṭāʿ*. Basically this meant that the revenues of a given area would be assigned to an individual who would undertake to provide the government with a number of troops or a sum of money. It differed from tax-farming in that the person concerned was effectively the governor and military leader as well as the tax officer of the area: Ḥāmid b. al-ʿAbbās as a tax-farmer collected the revenues of the Wāsiṭ area, and forwarded the agreed sum to Baghdad where the *wazīr* used it to pay salaries to troops and courtiers. Security and civil government in the area of the tax-farm were the responsibility of separate officials. By contrast, an *iqṭāʿ* holder like Yūsuf b. Abi'l-Sāj in Armenia and Āẕarbayjān would collect the revenues, pay the army of the area himself and exercise all the powers of government while sending an agreed sum to the government in Baghdad. This *iqṭāʿ* system first seems to have been used in Āẕarbayjān in the time of al-Ma'mūn when the caliph, faced with a prolonged local rebellion, was prepared to offer the revenues and the governorship of the province to anyone who was able to crush the dissidents. Such bargains continued to be made in outlying areas; soon after the accession of al-Muqtadir and his own appointment as *wazīr*, Ibn al-Furāt persuaded Yūsuf b. Abi'l-Sāj to accept the authority of Baghdad, which he had not previously done, and pay the fairly modest sum of 120,000 *dīnars* per annum in exchange for the recognition of his titles, thereby attaching the area, at least in some measure to the caliphate. At the same time, Ibn al-Furāt was attempting to regain control of Fārs, a valuable province which had been taken over by a supporter of the Saffarids called Subkarā. The *wazīr* was prepared to offer Subkarā a bargain but the terms were steep. Subkarā could not offer more than 10 million *dirhams* per annum, after paying for the army and administration in the province, and the *wazīr* would not accept less than 13 million *dirhams*, with the result that a military expedition was sent, the area brought under direct government control and a tax-farmer was appointed. The idea of the *iqṭāʿ* originated as a way of settling the problems of outlying areas, but as time went on it was used nearer home; in 317/929 after an attempted coup against al-Muqtadir, the *wazīr* Ibn Muqla was obliged to sell off state lands to the military at very reduced prices. In addition they were only obliged to pay the tithe, *ʿushr*, not the full *kharāj* to the government, keeping the difference between the two rates of tax for themselves, with the result that those lands had the same fiscal status as the *iqṭāʿ*. In this way financial expediency caused the spread of these concessions into the heartlands of the caliphate.

The political history of al-Muqtadir's reign is full of incident but not very easy to follow. Two attempts were made to depose the useless

caliph. In 296/908 very shortly after his accession, the Jarrahids and elements of the military including the Hamdanid leader al-Ḥusayn b. Ḥamdān, attempted a coup in favour of Ibn al-Muʿtazz. More by good luck and the panic of their opponents than their own abilities, al-Muqtadir's palace servants and retainers were able to defeat the rebels and the Jarrahid leaders were imprisoned and executed, except for ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā who had been careful to distance himself from the whole operation. In 317/929 there was a military coup launched by Mu'nis after his trusted ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā had been removed from the wazirate. For a few days the caliph's brother Muḥammad al-Qāhir was accepted as caliph before another army mutiny resulted in the restoration of al-Muqtadir. The third attempt was decisive. In 320/932 Mu'nis, again exasperated by the failure to curb court expenditure and repeated attempts to remove him from the centre of power, marched south from Mosul, where he had been sent in semi-exile. He was opposed by rival military leaders but once again shortage of money and the caliph's own lack of courage meant that his army dispersed. Mu'nis entered the capital in triumph and installed al-Qāhir as caliph; once again the military were deciding the course of government.

As far as external opposition was concerned, the early years of al-Muqtadir's caliphate were comparatively successful and the gains made by al-Muʿtaḍid, and al-Muktafī were retained. Fārs was retaken, Āẕarbayjān acknowledged the sovereignty of the caliph, the Byzantine frontier was defended and raids were launched against the Greeks, and the Fatimids were prevented from taking Egypt. From 311/923, however, the position began to change. The Qarāmiṭa had been quiescent since the defeats they had suffered during al-Muktafī's reign but, although they did not recover their power in the Syrian desert, the Qarāmiṭa of Baḥrayn began to raid Iraq. This may have been connected with the fall of ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā as *wazīr* and his replacement by Ibn al-Furāt at this time, because ʿAlī believed in paying subsidies to the rebels while his rival favoured military action. Under their new leader, Abū Ṭāhir al-Jannābī, with 1,700 men they entered and sacked the once great city of Baṣra and although Ibn al-Furāt sent troops, they had already disappeared into the desert. Early the next year the *ḥajj* caravan was attacked on the return from Mecca. This disaster led to a crisis in the government. Ibn al-Furāt, now *wazīr* for the third time, was an old man and he seems to have forgotten much of his earlier moderation. In the quest for money he had allowed his son al-Muḥassin to torture government officials with a brutality never seen before, while to maintain his power against the military he had secured the semi-exile of Mu'nis to Raqqa. The sack of Baṣra and destruction of the *ḥajj* led to riots in the streets

and a military take-over. Ibn al-Furāt was arrested, Mu'nis recalled, and the old *wazīr* and his son executed in prison. This coup really marks the end of the civil domination of government; Ibn al-Furāt lost the support of the army because he could not pay the salaries regularly and lost popular support because of his failure against the Qarmaṭīs. He had even alienated most of the *kuttāb* by his tortures and exactions. From now on, the military came to play an ever-increasing role in the nomination first of *wazīrs* and then of caliphs; it was only a matter of time before a general felt it necessary to take over all the government functions himself.

The raids of the Qarāmiṭa continued and, despite an escort 6,000 men strong, the *ḥajj* was attacked again the next year, and the *wazīrs* who followed Ibn al-Furāt were deposed for being unable to meet their financial commitments. In 314/926 the *wazīr* al-Khaṣībī invited the ruler of Āẕarbayjān, Yūsuf b. Abi'l-Sāj, to come to Iraq with his men to fight the rebels who were threatening the Sawād itself. There was no question of paying them salaries, since there was no money, but instead all the revenues of the Jibāl and north-west Iran were to be paid directly to Ibn Abi'l-Sāj "for his table" during the campaign; in effect all the Iranian provinces except Fārs were to be given to him as a vast *iqṭāʿ* in addition to Āẕarbayjān and Armenia which he held already. In the event, the Qarāmiṭa proved too much for him, perhaps because his followers from the mountainous areas of north-west Iran were unused to fighting in the desert terrain. He was captured and killed by the rebels, and Sajid rule in Āẕarbayjān, which had lasted since the days of al-Muʿtamid, was brought to an end with his death. The next year Mu'nis succeeded, against the advice of the courtiers, in securing the appointment of ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā to the wazirate just before the rebels pressed home their attack towards Baghdad in 315/927. For a while it seemed as if the capital must fall but the attack was held off by Mu'nis, with help from the Hamdanids, and the danger passed. In 317/930 the Qarāmiṭa sacked Mecca and removed the Black Stone from the Kaʿba, a serious blow to the prestige of the caliph, but after that the rebels were divided by internal disputes and ceased to be a threat to the ʿAbbasids for some decades.

The disasters of the campaign against the Qarāmiṭa, and the loss of revenue from the devastated Sawād, caused tensions within Baghdad to reach a climax. In 316/928 the court party secured the dismissal of ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā and Mu'nis now felt that he had to take control of the civil administration. For three years there were coups and counter-coups as Mu'nis and his enemies disputed for control of the caliphate until in 320/932 he defeated and killed al-Muqtadir.

As before, the murder of a caliph was the signal for a period of continuing anarchy but, this time, after the death of al-Muqtadir there was to be no recovery. The military take-over of government which had begun with the removal and execution of Ibn al-Furāt, gained momentum with the death of al-Muqtadir, the first caliph to die a violent death since al-Muhtadī, sixty years before. The military leaders never attempted to change the dynasty at this time but from the death of al-Muqtadir onwards the choice of caliphs was decided not by the ʿAbbasids as it had been during the great days of the caliphate, or even by the *kuttāb* as it had been when al-Muqtadir himself was appointed, but rather by the leading military figures in Baghdad at the time. The political history of this new anarchy is dominated by the struggles of military men to control the caliphate and, perhaps more importantly, the revenues of the Sawād which would enable them to satisfy the demands of their followers. In the aftermath of the coup against al-Muqtadir, as has been mentioned, the victorious party put on the throne his brother Muḥammad, who had briefly been caliph three years before after a somewhat similar coup, and as before he took the title of al-Qāhir. The new caliph was a man of some determination and energy but was given to violence and brutality; he put on a show of puritanism to dispel the reputation of extravagant court immorality which had been a major factor in the undoing of al-Muqtadir, but he himself, like many of his contemporaries was frequently drunk and incapable. The first concern of the new regime was to destroy the power of their rivals who had supported al-Muqtadir in his last fight and who had now established themselves in the area of southern Iraq and Ahwāz. They were dispersed by diplomacy and violence but the area became subject to the rising power of the Barīdī family. For some years now, this family had farmed extensive taxes in southern Iraq, around Baṣra and in Ahwāz, but they now aspired to political power. They began by backing different groups in the army but soon developed a military power base of their own. Although they had little military experience, they seem to have been able to raise considerable funds when the need arose, both because of their own financial expertise and because the lands they farmed had been less ravaged by recent wars than other parts of Iraq. In a political situation where everyone else was short of cash, this put them in a strong position and their power in the south was a constant factor up to the consolidation of the Buyid regime.

Mu'nis and his fellow officers hoped that they had secured a monopoly of military power and control over the revenue but they were soon alarmed to find that the caliph they had installed was negotiating with Muḥammad b. Yāqūt and other members of the faction they had

so recently defeated. Feeling their position threatened they decided to depose the caliph, but he was too quick for them and they were arrested and killed, even the veteran Mu'nis, a leading figure in the army since the time of al-Muʿtaḍid, his throat cut "like a sheep" (321/933). Needless to say, these measures merely exacerbated the problems of the caliphate and al-Qāhir was unable to find officers who were as capable and influential among the troops to replace Mu'nis. The violent and brutal nature of the caliph and the distrust now felt against him by many in the army allowed discontent to spread. Inevitably there was a conspiracy, co-ordinated in this case by Ibn Muqla who had been *wazīr* up to the failure of Mu'nis's conspiracy. Al-Qāhir was seized while drunk, deposed and blinded (322/934) by the rank and file of the army who now produced one of al-Muqtadir's sons Muḥammad, who took the title of al-Rāḍī as caliph. They then sent for the ex-*wazīr*, ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā, to explain the proper protocol for proclaiming caliphs. Compared with his predecessor, al-Rīḍī was quiet and affable, given to the company of scholars, but he had little chance to display any political talents he may have had.

The intrigues and conspiracies which surrounded the caliph in Baghdad were becoming increasingly irrelevant to most of the Muslim world. In 305/918–19, during his third and last term as *wazīr*, ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā had caused a list of the revenues of the caliphate to be drawn up. Neither North Africa nor Khurāsān were included, since they made no contributions, but Egypt, Syria, the Jazīra, western Iran including Rayy and Fārs were all listed, the Sawād, Ahwāz, Fārs and Egypt being the most profitable areas. No doubt even when it was drawn up the list was optimistic; seven years later during al-Rāḍī's caliphate, it was no more than a historical curiosity. Not just the distant provinces but even the Sawād of Iraq itself had been seized from ʿAbbasid control. Egypt and Syria were in the hands of Muḥammad b. Ṭughj the *ikhshīd*, Mosul and the Jazīra in the hands of the Hamdanids. Western Iran was taken over by groups of Daylamite soldiers of fortune and Fārs passed into the hands of the first of the Buyid rulers. None of these areas now made any contribution to the revenues of the caliph. More critical still was the position in Iraq. In the south the Barīdīs frequently withheld revenues from their area and began to negotiate with Aḥmad b. Būya with a view to taking over the whole country. In Wāsiṭ the military governor Muḥammad b. Rā'iq refused to pay any of the revenues to Baghdad, saying that he needed them for his own purposes. The *wazīr*, Ibn Muqla, made an attempt to remedy the situation by leading an expedition to Mosul to try to assert his authority in 323/935 but intrigues forced him to return. The next year he persuaded the caliph to undertake an expedition against the

nearest of the usurpers, Muḥammad b. Rā'iq in Wāsiṭ, but it failed to materialize and the *wazīr* was himself arrested. Not for the next 200 years was an ʿAbbasid caliph to launch a military campaign on his own initiative.

It was bankruptcy, not military defeat, which finally brought ʿAbbasid power to an end. The previous year Ibn Rā'iq had suggested that he should take over both the civil and military administration of the caliphate. At that stage al-Rāḍī had refused but now he saw no alternative. He wrote to Ibn Rā'iq who, in 324/936, came to Baghdad to take over the entire administration. It was a momentous change. From this time on real power remained with Ibn Rā'iq, who was given the title of *amīr al-umarā'* (commander of commanders) and his secretary. The caliph had neither soldiers nor administrators to command. It was a revolution in another way as well. Ibn Rā'iq's military power was based on a group of Turks newly arrived from Iran where they had served with the Daylamite Mardāvīj b. Ziyār until his assassination the year before. The leading figures in this group were Bajkam and Tūzūn, each of whom later became *amīr al-umarā'* in his own right. When Ibn Rā'iq took over the administration, he entirely disbanded and cashiered the old army of Baghdad and its members were dispersed. It was the military force which al-Muwaffaq and Mūsā b. Bughā had built up and which had sustained the ʿAbbasid revival. Now that this army was no more, there was no body of troops to whom the dynasty could look. The arrival of Ibn Rā'iq also meant the end of the old wazirate. Ibn Muqla was the last of a tradition that stretched back to the Barmakids and before, the great ʿAbbasid *wazīrs*. On the orders of the vengeful *amīr al-umarā'*, his tongue was torn out and his hand, the hand which had produced the most beautiful calligraphy of the age, cut off "like a thief's". He died of dysentery, alone in a squalid dungeon, denied even a drink of water. From then on it was the *amīr al-umarā'*'s secretary who conducted such administration as was needed. The old *dīwāns*, with their specialized methods and procedures, were abandoned and only the most basic functions of government remained.

The new *amīr al-umarā'*'s success was short-lived; the Barīdīs, who had supported his move, began to negotiate with the Buyids again while he himself faced discontent among his own military led by Bajkam. A short but destructive campaign saw him removed from power by his former protégé, 326/September 938. Thereafter follows a very confusing period of struggle for control of the caliph in Baghdad. The main participants were the Turkish military of the capital, who produced two *amīr al-umarā'*s, Bajkam (326–9/938–41) and Tūzūn (331–4/943–5), the Hamdanids, one of whom became *amīr al-umarā'* briefly with

the title of Nāṣir al-Dawla (330–1/942–3), and the Barīdīs who being civilians by training, did not aspire to the title of *amīr al-umarā*' but attempted briefly to run the government as *wazīrs*. The constant changes reveal both the bankruptcy and the unimportance of the caliphate during this period. Al-Rāḍī himself died peacefully in 329/940 and his brother Ibrāhīm took the title of al-Muttaqī, nominated by the then *amīr al-umarā*', Bajkam. Al-Muttaqī seems to have been more forceful than al-Rāḍī in his attempts to restore the caliph's power, and after Bajkam's death, murdered by some Kurds while out hunting in 329/941, he attempted to restore the wazirate in the old way and dispense with the office of *amīr al-umarā*' entirely, but the attempt failed and the military soon regained control. Three years later in 333/944 the caliph had a last chance when Muḥammad b. Ṭughj, the ruler of Egypt, came to see him in Raqqa and encouraged him to join him in Egypt. Unwisely he refused and returned to Baghdad, where Tūzūn blinded and deposed him.

A new ʿAbbasid caliph, who took the name of al-Mustakfī was appointed by Tūzūn, but affairs in Baghdad were increasingly overshadowed by the activities of Aḥmad b. Būya, sometimes supported by the Barīdīs in southern Iraq. While Tūzūn lived, he and his Turkish followers were able to maintain the independence of the city, but when he died, peacefully in his palace in 334/945, it was only a matter of time before the Buyids advanced. A last attempt was made by his secretary Ibn Shīrzād to arrange an alliance with the Hamdanid Nāṣir al-Dawla of Mosul but it came to nothing, and on 11 Jumādā II 334/17 January 946 Aḥmad camped outside Baghdad and was received by al-Mustakfī and acknowledged as *amīr al-umarā*'. The Buyid era in Baghdad had begun.

After the anarchy which followed the death of al-Mutawakkil, the ʿAbbasid caliphate was able to mount a sustained revival of power, but in the crisis of the first half of the fourth/tenth century, no such revival was possible. We can suggest a number of reasons for this. The first was perhaps the caliphs themselves. The earlier revival had been possible because of the close relationship that al-Muwaffaq had developed with the military commanders in Baghdad, but none of the ʿAbbasids of al-Muqtadir's time seem to have done this; they remained secluded in the palaces of the dynasty until fortune thrust them, for good or ill, into the limelight. When made caliph they had neither experience nor contacts on which to build up political powers.

The nature of the army had changed as well. At the end of the Sāmarrā anarchy, most of the military leaders, men like Ṣāliḥ b. Waṣīf and Mūsā b. Bughā were second-generation supporters of the ʿAbbasids

who had been brought up in the service of the dynasty. Mu'nis was the last commander with such a background; Bajkam and Tūzūn were newly arrived from the east where they had been serving with Mardāvīj, who rejected the caliphate entirely and they felt no tradition of loyalty. The same was true of their followers; the fate of the dynasty was sealed when Muḥammad b. Rā'iq disbanded the old Baghdad army. In the Sāmarrā anarchy, the Turks had attempted to dominate the caliph so that they could guarantee salaries and rewards for their followers; they were not in fact hostile to caliphal power, they simply wanted to control it in their own interest. The soldiers of the fourth/tenth century by contrast, were not dependent on salaries, and the winning of lands became their priority. Men like Ibn Rā'iq were intent on building up their own landed holdings and any revival of central government could only be detrimental to their ambitions.

Over and over again, the problems of the ʿAbbasids at this time boiled down to shortage of money. The constant civil strife and the depredations of the Qarāmiṭa meant that the war-torn countryside of the Sawād of Iraq was exhausted, unable to yield the revenues which alone could make a revival possible. Ahwāz, Fārs and even Mosul seem to have remained comparatively prosperous but none of these were in ʿAbbasid hands and the Baghdad countryside remained devastated. The military adventurers of the time totally disregarded the interests of the people and the economy of the area. In 326/937 Ibn Rā'iq, striving to impede the armies of his rival Bajkam by flooding, cut the great Nahrawān canal which watered much of the Sawād. The manœuvre failed but the consequences remained; within four years both Ibn Rā'iq and Bajkam were dead and the causes for which they fought forgotten, yet in the struggle they had destroyed for short-term military advantage the labour of generations. Never again would the countryside around Baghdad be able to support the flourishing civilization it had in early ʿAbbasid times and before. The breach of the Nahrawān canal was simply the most dramatic example of a widespread phenomenon of the time; and it was symbolic of the end of ʿAbbasid power just as the breach of the Mārib dam was of the end of the prosperity of pre-Islamic south Arabia.

chapter seven

THE STRUCTURE OF POLITICS IN THE MUSLIM COMMONWEALTH

The fourth/tenth century saw a profound change in the political society of the Islamic world. The superficial characteristics of this are well documented and easy to recognize; the caliphate disintegrated into a bewildering variety of successor states. The Muslim sources present these states as being ruled by dynasties, the ʿUqaylids of Mosul, the Marwanids of Mayyāfāriqīn and so on, each of which tended to last for about a century and many of which seemed to go through a similar cycle of emergence, expansion under a strong ruler and decay under his weaker successors. Modern scholarship has tended to take over this traditional perspective and it often seems to the casual enquirer that these states were a sort of political mushroom, their appearance unexplained and their collapse the result of personal feebleness on the part of decadent rulers. In reality, however, the successor states varied greatly in their organization and outlook and reflected closely the economic and social structure of the society which produced them; it is only by concentrating on at least some of them in detail that we can see how the changes of this time affected the Muslim world.

The break-up of empires is usually seen as a period when social and cultural institutions are also under threat, a period of chaos and retreat, and the model of the decline and fall of the Roman empire as described by Gibbon is an easy one to adopt. It is also an irrelevant one. Certainly the dissolution of the ʿAbbasid caliphate was accompanied by economic decline and social disruption in some areas, notably in Baghdad and central Iraq, but also in agricultural areas bordering the Syrian and Jaziran deserts where the increased pressure of pastoral peoples forced agricultural populations to abandon land which they had cultivated since Roman times. But in other areas the attainment of political independence led to economic and social development. At the most basic level it meant a new and vastly improved water supply for the citizens of Mayyāfāriqīn in the south-east of the Anatolian plateau, on a larger scale

it led to a sort of golden age in Fārs, a potentially rich area of Iran which had been exploited by outsiders since the Muslim conquests but which now became independent and prosperous under the Buyid dynasty; the picture of urban decline in Kūfa or Baṣra has to be balanced by the picture of growth in Shīrāz and Sīrāf.

On the cultural level as well, the period of the dissolution of the caliphate was one of great activity and achievement, what Adam Mez described in a famous book as the "Renaissance of Islam". Some of this cultural activity was concerned with the collection and codification of the treasures of the classical Arabic past; Ibn al-Nadīm's (d. 385/995) *Fihrist* was an index of all the works of Arabic literature then available, while Abū'l-Faraj al-Iṣfahānī (d. 356/967) sought to produce a comprehensive collection of the lives and works of the great Arabic poets in his *Kitāb al-Aghānī* or *Book of Songs*. In this respect these authors were perhaps analogous to those sixth-century figures in the West like Cassiodorus and Isidore of Seville who attempted to keep alive classical learning in a hostile environment. But the culture of the age went far beyond the preservation of the past. In all fields, the fourth/tenth and early fifth/eleventh centuries were periods of great achievement; al-Mutanabbī (d. 354/965) and Abū'l ʿAlā' al-Maʿarrī (d. 449/1058) in poetry, Ibn Sīnā (Avicenna) (d. 428/1037) in medicine and philosophy, al-Masʿūdī (d. 345/956) in historiography and al-Muqaddasī (d. after 375/985) in travel writing are only a few of the great figures of the time. This cultural efflorescence was in some ways a product of the political fragmentation of the time, which provided new sources of patronage for authors. The doctrinal disputes of the age, especially the growing division between Sunnī and Shīʿī Islam, also gave rise to important theological writing and debate. While Baghdad remained important, it no longer played the dominant role as a cultural centre it had under the ʿAbbasid caliphate, and the patronage of the caliphal court was replaced by support from many different sources which allowed a great variety of writing to emerge and writers like al-Mutanabbī and Avicenna, for example, to move around freely from one area to another if they thought it would be advantageous.

Two major changes underlay these developments: the conversion of the majority of the population to Islam and the economic decline of Iraq. The question of conversion to Islam is very problematic since, clearly, there were no census records or reliable statistics available. We know that there were no Muslims in the Near East before the time of the Prophet and we can be reasonably certain that by the sixth/twelfth century, the non-Muslims formed a fairly small minority of the population: between these two poles there is much room for speculation. The

problem has been re-examined by R. Bulliet in his book *Conversion to Islam in the medieval period*, using Iranian genealogies to establish the dates when families became Muslim. His method was to look at the ancestors of men of learning as recorded in biographical dictionaries. He found that a significant proportion of these genealogies went back to a non-Muslim ancestor (in this he was helped by the fact that non-Muslim names in Iran were totally different from Muslim ones). By calculating back from the date of the subject of the biography, and reckoning each generation as twenty-five years, Bulliet could get some idea of the period at which the family had been converted. The method is obviously not foolproof and there are bound to be special circumstances in each family, but Bulliet worked from a sample of almost 500 genealogies, enough to give a representative picture. According to his research, Iran was only about 8 per cent Muslim at the time of the ʿAbbasid revolution in 132/750 but this changed rapidly in the years which followed; by the early third/ninth century the proportion of Muslims was probably about 40 per cent and this increased to between 70 and 80 per cent in the fourth/tenth century. It is more difficult to extrapolate from the Iranian data to other areas of the Muslim world, but we should probably be correct in assuming that the rate of conversion was faster in Iraq than in Iran but slower in Egypt where the Muslims remained a small ruling group among a largely Coptic population until Fatimid times. Bulliet admits that his hypotheses are speculative and unprovable but they do seem realistic and provide a useful basis for discussion.

The Islamization of the Near East had profound effects on the political history. Under the Umayyads and early ʿAbbasids, the Muslims had been a fairly small ruling élite, whose links were with their fellow Muslims rather than with the non-Muslim populations of the area in which they lived. There was a high degree of mobility among the ruling groups and, for example, a man of Syrian origin could govern Yemen for a period and then be transferred to Egypt or Armenia. Just as most of the British civil servants who administered India felt that their links were with their fellow Britons and with their British "home" rather than with the Indians who lived around them, so the early Muslims preserved a sense of common identity, usually coupled with the common language of Arabic. Conversion, however, weakened this *esprit de corps*, and the élite lost its cohesion. As they became converted, people in the various provinces demanded to be admitted to the political process as full members of the Muslim community. In this way the provinces came to be dominated by men whose roots and family were entirely local. They were good Muslims, but their loyalty to a caliph and centralized Muslim government, hundreds, even thousands of miles away in a land they had

never seen, was naturally limited. The progress of conversion meant that anti-Muslim revolts in the Near East almost completely died out even in areas like Egypt and Iran where there had been some in the Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid times. The only attempt in the fourth/tenth century to set up a non-Muslim state in the area, the move by Mardāvīj b. Ziyār (d. 323/935) to restore Zoroastrianism, was a conspicuous failure. The break-up of the caliphate was in no way a reaction against Muslim conquest, it was rather a natural product of its success, and the evolution from a Muslim empire ruled by a small Muslim élite to a Muslim commonwealth where most of the population were Muslims was as natural, and in many cases as peaceful, as the emergence of the independent Commonwealth countries of Australia and Canada from the British empire.

The spread of Islam also led to the formalization of differences within the community. Of course, even in the days when the Muslims were a small minority of the population, there were vigorous debates and violent struggles to decide the nature of Muslim government. In the fourth/tenth century, however, these differences tended to become more rigid and the sects to develop separate memberships and structures of leadership. There were many reasons for this, but at least in part it was a product of the increasing numbers of Muslims from different geographical and social backgrounds. When Christianity became the dominant religion in the Roman empire in the fourth century, heresy became a major political and social issue; when Islam became the dominant religion in the Near East in the fourth/tenth century, sectarian division came to the fore.

The second major cause of change, the economic collapse of Iraq, is discussed in detail elsewhere (see pp. 187–8 above) but it must always be borne in mind as a fundamental, underlying factor in the collapse of the ʿAbbasids and the difficulties of the Buyids of Baghdad. It also meant that the Muslim world developed something of a hollow centre. The old heartlands became impoverished and suffered a constant haemorrhage of their more able and dynamic citizens to more recently converted areas like Iran and Egypt. The old ruling élite based in Mesopotamia was replaced by outsiders, men from such marginal groups as the Kurds of the Zagros mountains, the Daylamites from the south Caspian area or Berbers of the hinterland of Ifrīqiya. The Muslim world no longer had a centre, a metropolis to look to, but rather a whole galaxy of regional centres, each developing its own political society and culture.

The successor states of the ʿAbbasid caliphate were, in political terms, entirely independent, but they were bound together by many ties of

language and culture. The most obvious of these was the use, throughout the Muslim Near East, of Arabic as the main administrative language. As Latin was used by bureaucrats in medieval Europe in areas where the vernacular was quite different, so Arabic was used in Islamic chanceries even in areas where the population spoke Kurdish, Persian, Armenian or Aramaic. As in the medieval West as well, the common language led to the creation of bonds between bureaucrats in different states and a common bureaucratic culture. Administrative expertise acquired in one area could be used to carve out a career in another. The *wazīr* al-Ḥusayn b. al-Maghribī (d. 418/1027), for example, could begin his career with the Hamdanids of Aleppo, pursue it in Fatimid Egypt and ʿUqaylid Mosul and end up a distinguished elder statesman in Marwanid Mayyāfāriqīn. This common Arabic language bureaucratic culture was a major source of unity.

This unity was expressed at a formal level by the recognition of the theory of the caliphate. The ideal of the caliphate lived on after the demise of its political authority. One dynasty in the area, the Fatimids, set up a rival caliphate but like the ʿAbbasids, they claimed the leadership of the entire Muslim world and inherited the pan-Islamic ideas of their ʿAbbasid rivals. Among the other dynasties, there were none who did not acknowledge the rights of a caliph in the *khuṭba*, the Friday sermon in which political allegiances were made public, although some rulers like Qirwāsh b. al-Muqallad the ʿUqaylid might change their allegiances to suit their political needs. For some years after the Buyid take-over in Baghdad, the Samanids of eastern Iran continued to pledge allegiance to a now dead ʿAbbasid rather than the Buyid nominees. But whatever the practical reservations, no dynasty dispensed entirely with the idea of the caliphate or proclaimed an absolute independence. The grant of a title by the caliph remained a sign of political legitimacy and a sign that the recipient was now an accepted ruler. In the Fertile Crescent and much of Iran, the title of, for example, "Rukn al-Dawla" (Pillar of the [ʿAbbasid] State) was sought after by all who tried to establish their rule and it brought with it the assumption of caliphal authority, however powerless that might be in practice. Again the medieval West provides an illuminating comparison; in eleventh- and early-twelfth-century France, the actual power of the king in the more distant parts of his realm was non-existent, but the barons of those areas acknowledged the monarchy and its role, and they did not call themselves kings even if they were independent in every practical way.

There were other signs of the non-political unity of the commonwealth. As far as we know, no Muslim state erected trade barriers against any other. Travellers in this period like Ibn Ḥawqal, al-Muqaddasī and

Nāṣir-i Khusrau seem to have been able to move about without government interference. Robbers and thirst may have posed problems for the travellers; visas and frontier posts did not. Politically the Muslim world may have been divided, economically and socially it remained a unity.

This contrast between the division of government and the unity of culture and society was a product of the changing nature of government. The ʿAbbasids and their rivals the ʿAlids attempted to create a truly Islamic state. It was a very ambitious programme of moral reform and the rule of the Qur'ān and Sunna, a bold attempt to restructure society according to the vision of the Prophet, an ideal which has parallels in our own day. The dynasts of the Muslim commonwealth had no such aspirations. The functions of government were restricted to collecting taxes and providing a minimum of security to enable these dues to be gathered in peace. There were rulers who went further in developing their territories economically, ʿAḍud al-Dawla, Badr b. Ḥasanūya and the Marwanids of Mayyāfāriqīn stand out in this respect. Others, like the Hamdanids and the ʿUqaylids of Mosul seem to have made no such effort, but none of them attempted to restructure society according to Islamic principles. For many people, the functions of government were marginal to their daily lives. In most cities it was the urban élite of merchant and property-owning families who exercised everyday control over mosque and market; for the people of the villages it was increasingly the *iqṭaʿ* holder (see below, p. 207) who often claimed rights of *ḥimāya*, or protection, who represented government on a day-to-day basis. Even the Fatimid dynasty, with its Ismāʿīlī doctrine and its universal ambitions, made only intermittent attempts to spread its propaganda outside the governing class. It was as if Muslims had come to accept that government would not create a perfect Muslim society, at best it could only provide the framework in which men could strive to become good Muslims.

While the functions of government became restricted, so the profession of arms became confined to certain, mostly marginal, groups within the Muslim community. In early Islamic armies and, indeed, the armies of the ʿAbbasid revolution, the soldiers were simply the male Muslims prepared for battle, and the principle which lay behind the *muqātila* organization was that all Muslims should be able to do military service if called upon and it was this which entitled them to their *ʿaṭā'* or salary. Even the Khurāsāniyya of the early ʿAbbasid caliphate were in many ways part-time soldiers, owning property and conducting business in Baghdad, marrying, having families and eventually losing their military identity entirely. These armies were often very large; 40,000 soldiers from Baghdad followed ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā when he set out to march against

Khurāsān in 195/811 and numbers of around 100,000 are quoted for the Caliph Hārūn al-Rashīd's armies against the Byzantines. Almost always, these armies contained a majority of foot soldiers, often outnumbering the cavalry two to one and on occasions even those who were mounted fought on foot. But ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā's great army was defeated by Ṭāhir's much smaller force and this may have been the death knell of the huge armies of the early Islamic era. From the third/ninth century, and particularly after the military reforms of al-Muʿtaṣim, armies became smaller and more strictly professional. This seems to have accompanied a change-over to cavalry warfare which required greater specialization and more equipment; the day of the part-time soldier was over. Increasingly these specialist troops were Turks imported as slaves or otherwise recruited in eastern Iran or the areas to the north of the Caucasus mountains. Not only were they distinguished from the Muslim civilians by their function, notably their abilities in the highly specialized skill of mounted archery, but also by their race and language. In the third/ninth century many of these Turks seem to have produced children who were fully Arabized Muslims like Mūsā b. Bughā and Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn, ruler of Egypt (254–70/868–84) who began the integration of the families into Muslim society and the loss of their identity as a separate group.

This process of integration was brought to a halt in the early fourth/tenth century with the development of the *ghulām* system which was to be so important in the history of the Muslim commonwealth. The word *ghulām* (pl. *ghilmān*) simply means a youth or boy and such young men had been employed by kings and generals since Sasanian times. (In Seljuk and later times, the word *mamlūk* is normally employed to describe these soldiers: *ghulām* is the usual pre-Seljuk designation, although *mamlūk* is sometimes found.) It was not, however, until the break-up of the ʿAbbasid caliphate that whole armies were made up of them and the term came to acquire its specialized meaning of a soldier, usually Turkish by origin, and fighting as a cavalryman. The *ghulām* system as it existed in the Near East in the second half of the fourth/tenth century and first half of the fifth/eleventh seems to have been developed in Baghdad and Iraq with the arrival of new Turkish troops under Bajkam and Tūzūn and the destruction of the old ʿAbbasid army on the orders of the *amīr al-umarā*' Ibn Rā'iq in 325/936. There had been Turkish troops in the armies of the caliphs before (see above, pp. 157 ff.) but what seems to have distinguished the *ghilmān* of this period was their social organization. They fought in bands, often only a few hundred strong, recruited by a leader. The leader, usually himself a Turk, was responsible for securing their pay and employment. The young

ghilmān looked to their leader as a sort of father-figure and often took his name as a sign of gratitude; the great Anūshtakīn (d. 432/1041) was always known as al-Dizbarī after an obscure Daylamite commander called Dizbar who had favoured him in his youth.

It was to their leader, rather than to the sovereign who employed them, that they owed their loyalty. Their leaders became like the *condottieri* of fourteenth- and fifteenth-century Italy, powerful men, experienced professional soldiers, always seeking reliable paymasters to satisfy the needs of their followers. On the whole they were efficient, expecting and needing to be highly paid for their services; if they were not, they could not maintain their horses and equipment. If one paymaster failed, then they were obliged to take service with another in order to survive as a fighting unit and much of the apparent disloyalty and treachery can be explained in terms of financial necessity. Many of the lesser dynasts of the Near East could not afford to maintain *ghilmān* at all. Sayf al-Dawla, the Hamdanid ruler of Aleppo (d. 356/967), had recruited considerable numbers of *ghilmān* but his son Saʿd al-Dawla (d. 381/991), living in greatly reduced circumstances, could not afford to pay them, let alone recruit any more. Faced with this situation, they had two choices: some left to take service with the Fatimid rulers of Egypt while others stayed in Aleppo and took over the government of the city for themselves, while continuing to acknowledge the exiled Hamdanid as theoretical ruler. When, in 364/975 Alptakīn, the leader of the *ghilmān* in Baghdad, could no longer maintain himself against the Daylamite forces of ʿAḍud al-Dawla, he led his followers, about 300 of them, to pastures new in Damascus, which they took over for a while, and then to the Fatimid court in Cairo where some of them reached high positions. His first responsibility was to his followers rather than his paymasters.

The *ghilmān* seem to have lived celibate lives. We know little of how they were recruited in this period and only in the case of Anūshtakīn al-Dizbarī, whose early life was chronicled by the Damascus historian Ibn al-Qalānisī, do we know anything of their origins. Anūshtakīn came from eastern Iran and seems to have become a *ghulām* of his own volition, seeing it as a way of advancement in the world. He came west and ended up in Fatimid Cairo. By the early fifth/eleventh century there seems to have been an established system of education for *ghilmān* at the Fatimid court and Anūshtakīn distinguished himself in his class and made contacts which enabled him to further his career. Among the *ghilmān* of Baghdad, on the other hand, there is no trace of any such school and it is likely that senior *ghilmān* simply recruited likely looking lads for their service, and trained them themselves. Anūshtakīn was also

an exception in that he married and produced children. There is no evidence to suggest that most *ghilmān* were eunuchs but it is clear that very few of them left heirs; neither of the two famous leaders of the Baghdad *ghilmān*, Sabuktakīn (d. 364/974) or his successor Alptakīn, left sons whom we know of, and they were succeeded by *ghilmān* who had been brought up in their service but were not, apparently, blood relations.

Instead the *ghilmān* seem to have produced a strongly homosexual sub-culture. This has left literary traces, especially in Persian poetry, but it was disapproved of by outsiders and chroniclers give us examples of the disastrous effects of such involvements; the *ghulām* Fātik who briefly governed Aleppo for the Fatimids, was murdered by his *ghulām* lover while he slept and the Buyid prince Bakhtiyār's infatuation with a *ghulām* is given as one of the reasons why he lost his throne and his life. The absence of family life and offspring was one of the reasons why *ghilmān*, despite their power, were never able to start dynasties or proclaim their independence (the only exception being the Ghaznavid dynasty of distant Afghanistan which originated among the *ghilmān* of the Samanid dynasty) and even the most powerful of them, like Sabuktakīn of Baghdad and Anūshtakīn al-Dizbarī, never became rulers in their own right.

The *ghulām* system was characteristic of the century and a half of the Muslim commonwealth. It was employed by Buyids, Fatimids and many lesser dynasties. The system was not necessarily a bad one. In the main, *ghilmān* were loyal and effective troops and their small numbers meant that warfare between *ghulām* armies was not, on the whole, very destructive. The people of Damascus certainly seem to have preferred the rule of the *ghulām* Alptakīn to the lawless Berber troops of the Fatimid army. On the other hand, the payment of the *ghilmān* often imposed a crippling financial burden on governments and bands of roaming *ghilmān*, seeking employment, could be a scourge.

While the *ghilmān* were the most distinctive feature of the military organization of the period, they were not the only soldiers. The other main military groups were marginal peoples from the fringes of Islamic society, the bedouin of the Syrian desert, the transhumant Kurds of the Zagros mountains, the Daylamites and the Berbers of the mountains of Ifrīqiya, and some dynasties like the ʿUqaylids of Mosul could rely on their tribal following to the extent that they had no need to employ *ghilmān* but they were the exceptions; even dynasties like the Buyids and the Fatimids, which had strong ethnic followings among the Daylamites and the Berbers, were obliged to employ *ghilmān* to supplement their other followers.

In short the military were recruited not from the main bulk of the Muslim population but from certain specialized groups. Furthermore, there was an almost complete separation between military and civilian élites. *Ghilmān* did not become *wazīrs*, financial officials or religious dignitaries. Nor did they become merchants. Equally, members of the civilian élite did not become soldiers; one of the reasons why the Barīdī tax-farmers of southern Iraq failed in their bid to take over Baghdad in the confusion which preceded the coming of the Buyids was that they did not have the military experience to lead their armies. Members of the civilian élite, like the Fatimid *wazīr* Yaʿqūb b. Killis, might recruit *ghilmān* as their private military following but they did not themselves take up arms. There were, of course, some exceptions, notably among the *wazīrs* of the Buyids in Fārs and al-Jibāl, but on the whole, the gulf between civil and military leaders was a constant feature of the age.

It may seem that too much attention has been paid to the question of military organization but in fact it is crucial to the understanding of the political structures of the time. The dynasties which emerged after the dissolution of ʿAbbasid power can be divided into those which were dependent on *ghilmān* for their military support and those which were dependent on tribal followings. Among those dependent, to a greater or lesser extent, on *ghilmān* were the Buyids of Baghdad, the Fatimids of Egypt and the Hamdanids of Aleppo and Mosul, while those which depended on a tribal support were the Mazyadids of Ḥilla, the ʿUqaylids of Mosul and the Mirdasids of Aleppo, all dependent on bedouin tribes, and the Hasanuyids, the ʿAnnazids, the Rawwadids and the Marwanids, all dependent on Kurdish groups.

In states which depended on *ghilmān*, the paying of the troops was the major preoccupation of government. This could be done in two ways, either by collecting taxes directly and paying salaries, usually monthly, to the troops or by giving out grants of *iqṭāʿ* which were essentially areas of land and villages from which the soldiers could collect the revenues directly. In either case, the object of the ruling dynasty was to acquire and keep settled lands which would yield cash revenues. Such a system could allow the individual ruler great power since he controlled the revenues and a bureaucracy to collect them and in the hands of a man like the Buyid ʿAḍud al-Dawla (d. 372/983) the system was very effective. There were, however, many pitfalls; inefficient or corrupt revenue collecting and short-term liquidity crises meant that governments frequently relied on the expedient granting of unsupervised *iqṭāʿs* and in some areas, like Baghdad and central Iraq, this led to prolonged periods of disturbance and anarchy.

In states based on a tribal following, however, the priorities of government were entirely different. The ruler's most important obligation was to his followers and their main concern was to secure adequate grazing for the animals on which they depended for their livelihood, and the policies of the ruling dynasty were dictated by pastoral considerations rather than the need to round off a compact state based on settled lands. Thus the pastoral states tended to have uncertain boundaries and were often based on certain routes rather than on cities and villages. This is not to say that cash revenues were irrelevant. The leaders of the tribes needed revenues to reward their followers and to make up for the limitations of the pastoral economy and to this extent they needed to rule settled areas. The model of such rule was not, however, direct government, using paid agents and tax collectors, but rather indirect tribute gathering, in exchange for protection, an arrangement known as a *ḥimāya*. This meant that the leading citizens of the town agreed to pay certain sums to the ruler but were themselves responsible for the raising of the tax. In states where the government was dependent on the *ghilmān*, the ruler and his bureaucracy were usually based in the main city – Baghdad, Cairo, Shīrāz – whereas in tribal states the ruler was more likely to spend his time away from the main cities, in the nomad camp or the mountain castle.

This pattern of indirect control was the main reason for the development at this time of an unprecedented degree of civic autonomy. In the towns we know most about, Aleppo under the Mirdasids and Āmid (now Diyarbakır) under the Marwanids, this took the form of local citizens exercising power through the office of *ra'īs al-balad* or that of *qāḍī*, which came to mean more than simply judge and came to embrace administrative functions as well. In order to secure peace, the towns also produced their own militia, often known as the *aḥdāth* who were part-time volunteers who usually fought on foot. Such signs of city self-government manifested themselves in areas controlled by tribal dynasties, not in cities like Fusṭāṭ, Baghdad, Baṣra or Shīrāz which were ruled by settled dynasties dependent on *ghilmān* and other professional soldiers. The intermediary between the tribal leader and the citizens was often the *wazīr*, and in tribal states (and in the Buyid kingdom of al-Jibāl, which was structurally much more akin to the tribal states than the other Buyid kingdoms) the *wazīrs* acquired great importance as the essential intermediaries between the two life-styles.

Another significant difference between the two types of state was in the structure of the ruling families. In tribal states the ruling family tended to act as a kin group, dividing effective power among themselves. This could be a centrifugal force; we see in both the 'Uqaylids of

Mosul and the Hasanuyid Kurds, how different members of the ruling house sought to acquire *ḥimāyas* over different areas and hence to establish a form of independence. In the Marwanid family of Mayyāfāriqīn by contrast, the ruling kin were much more united and it was this family solidarity which preserved their rule. In more bureaucratic states, the ruling kin played a smaller part. The clearest example of this comes from Fatimid Egypt where only the ruler and his heir apparent seem to have had any political role at all. What happened to the brothers and cousins of the caliph we simply do not know. In the Buyid states there was a constant tension between the necessity of establishing a single dominant ruler and the traditional demands of kin solidarity which decreed that each member of the ruling clan should enjoy a share of the power and wealth of the group.

These two different types of states were able to flourish together for a century and a half of the Muslim commonwealth. It was a system which, though apparently chaotic, in practice allowed the diverse groups which now formed the Muslim community to reach their own political solutions, the ones most appropriate to their needs. The combination of political diversity with cultural unity forms the background to the great intellectual and cultural achievements of the period. From the mid-fifth/eleventh century the coming of the Ghuzz Turks and their Seljuk leaders suppressed much of this variety in favour of uniformity of government and religion, and with the coming of this order and uniformity much of the vitality of the previous era was lost for ever. The Muslim commonwealth deserves more attention from historians than it usually receives.

chapter eight

THE BUYID CONFEDERATION

The Origins

The failure of the ʿAbbasid caliphate to recruit and pay a reliable army during the first half of the fourth/tenth century meant that there was a political vacuum. This vacuum was filled by the warlike peoples of the mountainous areas, mostly newly converted to Islam, notably the Kurds of the Zagros mountains and the people of the northern Iranian provinces of Gīlān and Daylam, usually grouped together under the name of Daylamites. This latter group produced the most famous ruling family of the period, the Buyids (also sometimes known as the Buwayhids). Gīlān was the name given to the area on the southwest shores of the Caspian Sea; Daylam was the mountainous hinterland. The hills and valleys of this district were inhabited by a warlike peasant people, cut off by mountains from the Iranian plateau and even from their immediate neighbours. In pre-Islamic times they had served as mercenaries for the Iranian kings but had probably maintained their independence from the Sasanian monarchy. The area had been little affected by the coming of Islam and, like the mountain peoples of nearby Āẕarbayjān and the remoter parts of Khurāsān, its inhabitants had never been effectively conquered by the Arabs, and there was no Arab settlement there. They remained isolated, ruled by kings who took pride in the preservation of old Iranian styles and beliefs. Indeed the coming of the Arabs may have increased Persian influence in the area by causing an influx of refugees from the plains, like the rulers of the mountain provinces of northern Spain only adopting Visigothic styles after the fall of the Visigothic kingdom of Toledo to the Arabs.

Two characteristics in particular seem to have distinguished the Daylamites and determined the role they were later to play in the Islamic world. The first was their ability as foot soldiers, as hardy and formidable as the mounted Turks but with quite a different fighting

technique. This meant that they were a strong military force but that a purely Daylamite army was not really effective since they had to find allies, usually Turks, sometimes Kurds, who could provide the cavalry to make a balanced fighting unit. The second feature was the importance of family ties. Unlike the contemporary Turks, with their strange *ghulām* system, the Daylamites showed strong family loyalties; true, there were often disputes within the kin, but their leaders tended to think in terms of family rather than in terms of more abstract ideas of state or the Muslim community. Like the feudal families of western Europe in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, they divided their lands among their sons and sought to conquer new lands to provide inheritances for their kinsmen. Marriage links were an important way of consolidating alliances and links through the female line were more important than in much of Islamic society. This was especially true in the Buyid kingdom of Rayy, where traditional Daylamite customs seem to have been less affected by Islamic norms than in Fārs or Iraq.

Throughout the mountainous regions to the south of the Caspian Sea power was in the hands of kings of minor dynasties of native Iranian origin, some of which traced their origins back to pre-Islamic times. Until their conversion to Islam, however, these rulers could play little part in politics outside their own locality. As early as the reign of Hārūn al-Rashīd, members of the ʿAlid family had sought sanctuary among these independent people and in the second half of the third/ninth century, ʿAlid missionaries mostly from the Zaydī branch of the family converted many of the people to Islam. In Daylam and Gīlān this process was hastened by the work of al-Ḥasan b. ʿAlī al-Utrūsh, an ʿAlid who worked in the area from 289/902 until his death in 304/917. Al-Ḥasan, allied with local rulers, attempted to conquer the whole south Caspian area, with intermittent success, but despite their military activities, the ʿAlids were never able to establish independent states and their efforts were increasingly undermined by family rivalries. The local chiefs, notably the Ziyarid kings of Gīlān and the Justanids of Daylam based in the Alamūt area in the mountains, held the real power, and it was they, not the ʿAlids, who were able to take advantage of ʿAbbasid weakness.

The immediate cause of the Daylamite expansion was the withdrawal of Ibn Abi'l-Sāj, the formidable governor of Āẕarbayjān, with his army to Iraq in 314/926 to fight the Qarāmiṭa. Among the first to take advantage of the opportunities offered was Mardāvīj b. Ziyār, a scion of the ruling house of Gīlān, who had established himself by 315/927 in the area of Rayy and Iṣfahān, the no man's land which lay between the Samanid zone of influence in Khurāsān and the ʿAbbasids in Iraq and Fārs. Among those he recruited was the son of a fisherman from

the Caspian coast, ʿAlī b. Būya, who in turn invited his two younger brothers, al-Ḥasan and Aḥmad, to join him. ʿAlī was soon rewarded with an appointment to Karaj, near Iṣfahān, a position which enabled him to recruit followers and become a military leader in his own right. His independent nature soon brought him into conflict with his authoritarian and overbearing master Mardāvīj and in 320/932 he set off south, with 400 Daylamite followers, to Fārs. This fertile province in the mountains of south-western Iran had been the centre of the two greatest Persian empires of pre-Islamic times, the Achaemenids and the Sasanians, and the magnificent ruins of Persepolis still testify to its ancient greatness. The Arab armies had had to fight hard to conquer the area and there was sporadic resistance to Muslim rule well into the Umayyad period. Under the early ʿAbbasids the province had played little part in the political life of the caliphate and its history is obscure. At the beginning of the fourth/tenth century, however, this position began to change. One reason for this was that Fārs seems to have maintained its prosperity at a time when the economy of Iraq was in prolonged crisis, making it relatively more wealthy and important. A second factor was the progress of conversion which resulted in the emergence of a powerful class of Muslim landowner-bureaucrats who were to play a vital role in the success of the Buyids. The memory of Sasanian greatness seems to have lingered on, for we find Fārsīs with such evocative names as Sābūr (Shāpūr) b. Ardashīr (the names of Sasanian kings), but the province produced no great military or political leaders of its own, the leading families being more concerned with administrative skills and cultural patronage.

Until 315/927 this prosperous and peaceful area had been an important source of revenue for the struggling regime of the Caliph al-Muqtadir but in this year it was taken over by a Turkish general from Baghdad called Yāqūt who used, or rather misused, his position to deny the ʿAbbasids any share of the revenue and build up a substantial private army. Despite his large forces, he seems to have been an uncertain and vacillating leader, unclear whether he should remain in Fārs or support the schemes of his more dynamic son in Baghdad politics. Meanwhile, the maintenance of this large and ill-disciplined force resulted in oppressive taxation and the alienation of most of the prominent figures in the area.

It was in these circumstances that ʿAlī b. Būya, anxious to establish his independence from Mardāvīj, was contacted by an important landowner, of ʿAlid descent, from the Arrajān region of Fārs, Zayd b. ʿAlī al-Nawbandajānī. Nawbandajān and its area are praised by writers of the fourth and fifth centuries for their prosperity and it seems much of this

was due to Zayd himself who withheld the revenues of the *ḍiyāʿ*, the caliph's estates, in the area and used the money to develop the district, constructing a magnificent bridge across the local river as well as a castle for himself. Zayd, anxious to protect his prosperity against the depredations of Yāqūt's undisciplined soldiery, agreed to finance and supply ʿAlī b. Būya and his men at a cost of 200,000 *dīnārs* so that they could acquire a foothold in the area before taking on Yāqūt. Thus began the alliance of Buyid princes and Fārsī landowners which was to be the foundation of the Buyid state. ʿAlī arrived with about 900 Daylamite supporters in 321/933 and soon began to establish himself, sending his brother al-Ḥasan to collect dues from nearby Kāzirūn and other areas of Fārs. Despite this promising start, it seems that ʿAlī lost his nerve when faced with Yāqūt's army and tried to escape east to Kirmān, but found his enemy blocking the road with an army said to have numbered 17,000, a large force by the standards of the time. Battle was joined in Jumādā II 322/June 934 and despite the great disparity in numbers, the discipline of the Daylamites and ʿAlī's bold leadership won the day, Yāqūt's men fled in disorder and the road to the capital, Shīrāz, lay open.

Once in possession, ʿAlī set about consolidating his power. Like all the military leaders of his time, the most intractable problem he faced was raising sufficient money to pay his men. In this he is said to have been aided by the chance discovery of hidden treasure but he also received more lasting support from the local magnates who farmed the taxes for him and supplied him with ready cash. Among these were his first sponsor, Zayd b. ʿAlī al-Nawbandajānī and al-ʿAbbās b. Fasānjas, the first known member of a family which was to provide *wazīrs* and advisers for the ruling family for the next century. ʿAlī also began to recruit more troops for his army, many of them, inevitably, Turkish cavalry to complement the Daylamite infantry, a move which soon led to tensions between the two groups.

After establishing his power within Fārs, ʿAlī could turn to regulating his position in the wider Islamic world. The first priority was to secure the consent of the ʿAbbasid caliph for his actions, and he succeeded in doing this by promising the ʿAbbasid envoy tribute which was never in fact paid. Another area of concern was in the vast, sparsely populated province of Kirmān, on the eastern frontiers of Fārs which was the scene of a confused conflict between the Samanids of Khurāsān and a locally based adventurer, Muḥammad b. Ilyās. ʿAlī decided that his brother Aḥmad should try to establish himself there and sent him with a small force of Daylamites and Turks. The problems proved more difficult than had been anticipated and Aḥmad had serious difficulties with the Qufṣ and Balūch hill-peoples in the south-east of the province. In the end his

elder brother had to send men to extricate him from his difficulties, Ibn Ilyās returned to take over the province and it was to be another fourteen years before the Buyids were able to hold the area.

A more pressing problem faced ʿAlī in central Iran, where Mardāvīj was still the leading power and the most prominent of the Daylamite leaders. He was one of the most remarkable personalities of his age. Brutal and aggressive as he was, he none the less had a vision of a restored Iranian monarchy, ordering that the old Sasanian palaces at Ctesiphon (al-Madā'in, near Baghdad) should be restored to await his arrival. He rejected the authority of the ʿAbbasid caliphate entirely, and sought to displace Islam as the dominant religion and restore the old Zoroastrian faith, ostentatiously reviving the old ceremonies of fire worship. It is therefore with some satisfaction that Muslim writers record his death at the hands of some disillusioned Turkish troops in 323/935, the year after ʿAlī b. Būya took over in Fārs. He is significant as being the last man to try to stem the tide of Islam in Iran but despite his personal power, his efforts to revive the old faith seem to have met with little popular support and were, at least indirectly, responsible for his death. All subsequent rulers of Iran, including the Buyids, were careful to show their attachment to Islam, even when they tried to revive ancient political glories.

His death could not have come at a better time for ʿAlī. It removed the only serious outside threat to his position in Fārs and left him as the most powerful and successful Daylamite chief. He was also able to recruit a considerable number of Mardāvīj's soldiers into his own army. Mardāvīj was succeeded by his brother, Vushmgīr, who seems to have lacked his personal authority and was unable to sustain his position in central Iran against attacks from the Samanids from the east and the Buyids from the south. In the end he was obliged to withdraw to the mountains at the south-east corner of the Caspian where his successors, known as the Ziyarid dynasty, survived until the time of the Seljuks, hereditary foes of their more successful fellow-countrymen the Buyids. The vacuum caused by the death of Mardāvīj was filled by ʿAlī b. Būya's brother, al-Ḥasan, who, after some set-backs was able to establish himself as ruler of central Iran, from Rayy to Iṣfahān, in 335/947. Aḥmad, the third brother, turned to Iraq after his failure in Kirmān. The political collapse of the ʿAbbasids and the rivalries between military adventurers for the title of *amīr al-umarā'*, meant there was no united opposition, and his attempts were supported and encouraged by the Barīdīs, powerful and grasping tax-farmers in southern Iraq, who were trying to secure independence from the caliphate. In 332/944 Aḥmad attempted to take Baghdad for the first time but was beaten off by the Turkish *amīr*

al-umarā', Tūzūn. A year and a half later, however, Tūzūn was dead and his secretary Ibn Shīrzād was struggling to enforce his authority as *wazīr*. Aḥmad easily occupied the city with his forces and was accepted by the Caliph al-Mustakfī as *amīr al-umarā'* in 334/945.

By 335/946 the three sons of Būya had established themselves in effective control of Fārs, Iraq and Rayy, and their descendants were able to maintain themselves in most of those areas until the coming of the Seljuks, a century later. The history of the Buyid period is very confused and full of marches, battles and succession disputes which seem both ephemeral and pointless. The historian's task is complicated by the fact that there were at least three and sometimes more centres of activity which were at the same time closely interconnected. This means that the narrative thread is thoroughly tangled and the position is made more difficult by the fact that the sources are very uneven. It is clear that Fārs was the most important province of the Buyid confederation but the narratives on which we depend are largely based on Baghdad material and show almost no concern for events in Fārs at all, while on the other hand we are very well informed about Iraqi affairs which were in some ways marginal to Buyid history. None the less, events in Baghdad are of great interest for social and cultural reasons, since it was in Baghdad at this time that the doctrinal positions of *imāmī* Shi'ism and Sunnī Islam were worked out. Baghdad then, attracts more attention than its purely political importance would warrant.

Buyid history can be chronologically divided, roughly, into two divisions. The first half-century, up to the death of 'Aḍud al-Dawla, greatest of the Buyid rulers, in 372/983, is one of growth and consolidation when the political initiative was firmly in the hands of the princes of the ruling dynasty. From that point, however, the Buyids were on the defensive, especially in Iraq and central Iran, and political initiative passed to the hands of groups of soldiers and administrators who strove to manipulate their nominal rulers in their own interests.

Expansion and Conflict

The initial success of the Buyids was partly due to the absence of any important rivals in the area after the death of Mardāvīj, and partly to their own power, firmly rooted in the support of their Daylamite troops. Although they were not themselves kings of Daylam, their success, and their ability to give attractive rewards, meant that they became the natural focus for the loyalty of ambitious Daylamites and a stream of recruits seems to have left the mountains to take service with them. Their success was first and foremost a military one; as Mottahedeh says

of ʿAlī b. Būya, "He understood the soldiers' game of the mid-tenth century as few other leaders did and ended as its most successful player."[1] They also worked in co-operation with local landowning and bureaucratic aristocracies, who provided political advisers and administrators. This is especially noticeable in the cases of the Buyid kingdoms on the Iranian plateau where this alliance with the local civilian élite was a major source of strength for the dynasty. Only in Baghdad, with its powerful Turkish soldiers and its growing religious tensions, was there serious local resistance to their rule.

In theory, the Buyid brothers exercised authority as governors for the ʿAbbasid caliphs. Given their modest social origins and their position as outsiders in the Islamic world, it was vital for them to secure the approval and authority of the caliphs for their actions. When Aḥmad entered Baghdad, there was already a role awaiting him, the position of *amīr al-umarā'*, created for Ibn Rā'iq ten years previously, and he was offered this by the caliph. Similarly, his brothers were "appointed" to provincial governorates and both the forms of ʿAbbasid government and the old provincial boundaries remained unchanged. The Buyids are said to have been Shīʿīs and it may seem curious that they did not replace the ʿAbbasid caliph with a member of the ʿAlid family. However, the religious allegiances of the first generation of Buyid rulers are far from clear and there were problems facing any ruler at this time who wished to establish an ʿAlid caliphate. If they belonged to the Twelver group among the supporters of the house of ʿAlī, then they acknowledged that the last *imām* had gone into occultation seventy years before, while if they were Zaydīs, then the only *imām* they could accept was a descendant of Alī who had secured power for himself by his own efforts. It is clear that the appointment of an ʿAlid caliph would have been a major revolution in the state and arouse massive opposition which the Buyids were not strong enough to suppress. They were not out to overthrow the established order but to find a place in it and, like many of the Germanic leaders who assumed power in the Roman empire in the fifth century, they were more concerned to maintain the status quo and derive legitimacy from it than they were to destroy it.

While the caliphate was respected, the individual caliph was not. Al-Mustakfī was deposed soon after the Buyid take-over in Baghdad and replaced by the more pliable al-Muṭīʿ, but not before he had granted them honorific titles which expressed their devotion to the ʿAbbasid *dawla* (state); ʿAlī was to become ʿImād al-Dawla (Support of the State), al-Ḥasan Rukn al-Dawla (Pillar of the State), while Aḥmad was to be Muʿizz al-Dawla (Glorifier of the State). This form of title was not new; al-Ḥasan the Hamdanid was titled Nāṣir al-Dawla when he became *amīr*

al-umarā' a few years previously, but it became general among the Buyids and the princes of the dynasty are usually known by these honorifics rather than by their personal names.

At the same time as they acquired this status among their Muslim subjects, the Buyids also revived some of the traditions of Persian monarchy. They did not, unlike their compatriot Mardāvīj, think of undoing the Muslim conquest but leading members of the family revived the old Sasanian title of *shāhanshāh* (king of kings). By this they intended to establish their legitimacy with their Iranian subjects and, above all, with their fellow Daylamites. They came from an area where the ancient traditions of Iranian monarchy had never died and where rulers like the Ispahbādhs of Ṭabaristān had preserved the forms and titles of royal rule long after they had disappeared from the rest of Iran. None of these petty kings, however, had claimed the title of *shāhanshāh* and it was only the Buyids, with their extensive domains and control over the Sasanian homeland of Fārs who were able to do so. It also enabled them to claim superiority over the kings of Daylam without the latter losing their royal status. The Buyids themselves never ruled the Daylamite homelands and they needed to remain on good terms with the local dynasties to allow the recruitment of more troops, and they made marriage alliances with such old-established lineages as the Justanids of Alamūt. Some of the most serious challenges the Buyids faced in establishing their power, like the rebellion of Rūzbahān and his brothers in 345/956–7, came from their fellow Daylamites and it was by the adoption of this grandiose title, redolent with memories of imperial greatness, that the sons of the fisherman Būya sought to establish their legitimacy and prestige in a world which might well despise them as adventurers and upstarts.

The Buyid lands formed a federation, rather than an empire. The major political units were the principalities centred on Fārs, with its capital at Shīrāz, al-Jibāl, based on Rayy, and Iraq, including Baghdad, Baṣra and, very briefly, Mosul. After the death of the last of the original Buyid brothers, Rukn al-Dawla al-Ḥasan in 366/977, the western half of the principality of al-Jibāl was detached to form a new unit based on Hamadhān and Iṣfahān while from time to time Kirmān in the east enjoyed independence from Fārs, an independence which became permanent after the death of Bahā' al-Dawla in 403/1012. There were in addition Buyid princes of other towns like Baṣra from time to time but their existence was always ephemeral. Of these principalities, Fārs was by far the most important, maintaining its power and prosperity well into the fifth/eleventh century. Baghdad enjoyed prestige as the centre of the caliphate and it remained a cultural and intellectual centre of great importance. Politically and economically, however, it was very weak and

after the death of its first Buyid ruler, Muʿizz al-Dawla, in 356/967 it became apparent that the only Buyid rulers who could exercise power effectively in Baghdad were those like ʿAḍud al-Dawla and Bahāʾ al-Dawla who also ruled Fārs. The fortunes of the rulers of Shīrāz and Baghdad were therefore closely linked. The principality of Rayy, on the other hand, remained somewhat separate, never being ruled by the same prince as Fārs and facing different problems, notably the danger of attack from the east, by the Samanids or Ghaznavids.

One of the main sources of the intermittent conflicts which mark the history of the period was the question of succession to the various principalities. The possessions of the family were always considered as the property of the whole group, rather than of individual branches, and relatives felt that they had the right, even the duty, to interfere in times of trouble, as when ʿIzz al-Dawla Bakhtiyār seemed unable to administer Iraq effectively in 367/978 and his cousin ʿAḍud al-Dawla stepped in to restore family rule in the area. Despite this family solidarity, the Buyids never developed an ordered system of inheritance; as in eleventh- and twelfth-century Europe each powerful ruler sought to provide a suitable inheritance for all his sons, even if it had to be done at the expense of his cousins. Correspondingly, all Buyid princes could feel entitled to a share of the patrimony and this right was even claimed by some, like Ibn Kākūya, who secured the independence of Iṣfahān in the early fifth/eleventh century, who were only related to the Buyid family by marriage.

The complex nature of family ties and obligations provided enough scope for conflict within the dynasty but there were other points of friction as well. One such was the question of succession to the title of *shāhanshāh*, effectively the presidency of the confederation. The powers this title conferred were not extensive; it was more a recognition of seniority within the family than an office with authority, rather like the title of grand prince of Kiev in twelfth-century Russia. From the beginning there was no idea that the title was hereditary, or that it was attached to any particular principality. Thus ʿAlī b. Būya, the founder of the family fortune, was undisputed leader in his lifetime but on his death in 338/949 the title passed, not to his successor in Fārs, ʿAḍud al-Dawla, but to his brother Rukn al-Dawla in Rayy. After Rukn's death in 366/977 the leadership of the family passed back to Shīrāz, to his son ʿAḍud al-Dawla. ʿAḍud al-Dawla was a member of a new generation of Buyids and his political education had been in Fārs, heartland of the old Sasanian empire of which he had become ruler when only thirteen. He seems to have broken away to some extent from the ideal of the family confederation and attempted to create something more akin to an absolute monarchy over the Buyid realms. He used the excuse of Bakhtiyār's

incompetence to take over Baghdad in 367/978, and worked in alliance with his brother Mu'ayyid al-Dawla to drive the third brother Fakhr al-Dawla into exile. By his death in 372/983 ʿAḍud al-Dawla was effective ruler of the entire confederation with his brother Mu'ayyid al Dawla as a junior partner, but when he died, the title passed not to any of his sons but to his exiled brother, Fakhr al-Dawla, the only surviving son of Rukn al-Dawla, who then returned to take over Rayy. Daylamite traditions of seniority within the family reasserted themselves over ideas of centralized monarchy. When Fakhr al-Dawla in turn died, the primacy went to the most powerful of ʿAḍud al-Dawla's sons, Bahā' al-Dawla who, until his death in 403/1012 was the last ruler of the family to call himself *shāhanshāh* with any conviction.

The tensions between the traditional Daylamite clannishness and the needs of settled government were not the only causes of conflict. In many cases, especially in the second half of the Buyid century, princes were persuaded or obliged to take the offensive by different groups of their followers. After ʿAḍud al-Dawla's death a group of wealthy Iraqis, whom he had sent into exile in Fārs, persuaded his son Sharaf al-Dawla, against the advice of his Fārsī counsellors and his own better judgement, to attack Iraq so that they could be restored to their possessions. It was his *wazīr*, the Ṣāḥib Ibn ʿAbbād, who induced Fakhr al-Dawla to attack Iraq in 379/989. The most serious and lasting source of such quarrels was the rich lands of southern Iraq and Khūzistān whose lush *iqṭāʿs* were the envy of troops from less favoured areas. With the ravished lands around Baghdad almost useless as a source of revenue, the lands of Khūzistān and Wāsiṭ were vital for the support of the largely Turkish garrison of Baghdad while they were also coverted by the Daylamite troops from Fārs. No Buyid prince could afford to ignore demands from his soldiers that he should seize these areas and they were a continuing source of conflict between the princes of Baghdad and Shīrāz until Bahā' al-Dawla's administrators worked out a careful division of the territories around the turn of the fifth/eleventh century.

There were also prolonged conflicts in and around the Buyid principality of Iraq, in contrast to Fārs which remained largely peaceful under ʿImād and ʿAḍud al-Dawla. The first problem which faced Muʿizz al-Dawla after he took over Baghdad in 334/945 was that of relations with the Hamdanids who were now firmly in control of Mosul and northern Iraq (see pp. 265–73). Nāṣir al-Dawla had been *amīr al-umarā'* before and sought to regain his position by launching an attack on Baghdad which was only beaten off with difficulty. From then on, the relations of Muʿizz al-Dawla with the Hamdanids were based on an uneasy balance of forces, tested from time to time when the Buyids tried

to take the Hamdanid base at Mosul. Nāṣir al-Dawla was able to maintain his independence by withdrawing to his mountain fortresses when attacked but was obliged to promise tribute, only intermittently paid. The failure to subdue al-Jazīra had important consequences in Baghdad since the area had been a major source of grain for the city and its loss was one of the reasons for the repeated famines which caused so much misery in Buyid times.

ʿImād al-Dawla had taken Fārs by destroying and driving out the army of Yāqūt, from which point he was able to build up a new army of his own. Muʿizz al-Dawla, on the other hand, had taken Baghdad by peaceful agreement and had had to reach an accommodation with existing forces in the city. He brought with him his own Daylamite followers but was obliged to employ the troops, most of them Turks, who were already settled in the city. He also brought with him a number of Fārsī bureaucrats, notably members of the Fasānjas family. These arrangements meant that he had a military establishment which was much larger and more expensive than the country could support and he was faced with a major economic crisis as soon as he arrived, resulting in famine and appalling hardship for the civilian population. It also became clear that the revenues were totally inadequate to pay regular salaries to the inflated numbers of soldiers and he was forced to grant out much of Iraq as *iqṭāʿs* to his Daylamite and Turkish soldiers. This merely postponed the problem, however, since the troops soon complained that their revenues were inadequate, while it was very difficult for the government to recover its financial and political power in the future because the tax base was now so small. The collapse of the old fiscal system which had been so marked under the caliphate of al-Muqtadir, now reached its logical conclusion, and the traditional financial administration based on the collection of *kharāj* and the payment of salaries which had originated with the *dīwān* of ʿUmar effectively disappeared.

The granting of *iqṭāʿs* did not solve the problems of military discontent. This was in part because the *iqṭāʿ* holders were often robbed or deceived by the agents they employed to collect their revenues, or because the lands they relied on had been ruined by war. The problem was exacerbated by the fact that different groups of soldiers were treated differently. It has been estimated that in the early fourth/tenth century foot soldiers were being paid about six *dīnārs* a month while the cavalry received forty. This meant that the cavalry became a privileged class, anxious to preserve their position, and the conflict was made worse by the fact that the cavalry were Turks while the infantry were almost entirely Daylamites. In times of need, Muʿizz al-Dawla tended to favour the Turks at the expense of his compatriots and the historian Miskawayh

describes the Turks being goaded by greed while the Daylamites were driven by want and poverty. Whatever the underlying causes, it is clear that the feud between these two groups of soldiers was the most important cause of the problems which beset the Buyid rulers of Baghdad.

Discontent in the army of Iraq came to a head in 345/956–7 when there was a major rebellion of the Daylamite troops led by Rūzbahān b. Vindādh-Khūrshīd. This expressed the frustration of the Daylamites at being neglected by Muʿizz al-Dawla and being sent, for the third time, on a difficult and unrewarding campaign against rebels in the marshes of southern Iraq. Rūzbahān was himself a Daylamite, probably of aristocratic stock, who felt that he had as good a right as the Buyids to lead his people. The rebellion was only defeated because of Muʿizz al-Dawla's personal bravery and the loyalty of the Turks, and the result was to depress the status of the Daylamites still further since they were dispersed on small *iqṭāʿs* throughout southern Iraq, becoming small-scale landholders and merchants, oppressing the local people but providing no useful support for the dynasty.

Muʿizz al-Dawla died in 356/967. He had not been an entirely unsuccessful ruler. He had secured Buyid control over most of southern Iraq and Khūzistān and received homage and on occasion tribute from both Mosul and Aleppo. He himself was a simple and uncouth soldier, much given to drink. He spoke little Arabic and left the civil administration to his highly competent *wazīr*, al-Ḥasan b. Muḥammad al-Muhallabī, descendant of the famous Muhallabī family of early Islamic times. He was the first of the great Buyid *wazīrs*, a group which includes such celebrated names as the two Ibn al-ʿAmīds, father and son, and the Ṣāḥib Ibn ʿAbbād, and he fulfilled a role rather similar to the first British prime minister, Sir Robert Walpole, acting as an intermediary between a foreign ruler (George I) and his subjects.

Despite Miskawayh's laments about the decline of administrative skills as a result of the prevalence of *iqṭāʿs*, the *wazīrs* of the Daylamite rulers were men of great importance in the state. Their background and role had changed since the days of the great ʿAbbasid *wazīrs* like the Banu'l-Furāt and the Banu'l-Jarrāḥ. These earlier *wazīrs* had been above all experts in the financial administration of the Sawād of Iraq and they had largely been recruited from local landowning families, descendants of the *dihqāns* of late Sasanian times. The decline of agricultural prosperity and of direct taxation meant that this expertise was no longer required and we find members of these families emigrating to Egypt where their skills would be appreciated. The *wazīrs* of the Buyids owed their importance to their position as intermediaries between the unsophisticated Daylamī soldier-princes and their subjects. The first generation of Buyid

rulers seem to have known little Arabic, which was still the standard administrative language throughout the area. A knowledge of Persian language and customs was also important and the *wazīrs* of the Buyids were mostly drawn from the Iranian families of Fārs or Rayy. When Muʿizz al-Dawla established himself in Baghdad, he recruited his administrators from Shīrāz, not from the local bureaucratic families of Baghdad. The Buyid *wazīrs* did not confine themselves to purely administrative functions. They advised on, and sometimes decided, policy and in some cases they commanded armies in their own right. The distinction between the civil and military administration which is apparent in the later phases of ʿAbbasid government had largely disappeared.

Neither the abilities of the *wazīrs* nor the intermittent enthusiasm of the Buyid *amīrs* were enough to remedy the long-term structural problems of the economy and administration of Iraq. Muʿizz al-Dawla himself made some effort to repair the agricultural economy, setting a personal example by carrying loads of earth to repair irrigation ditches, but he was unable or unwilling to tackle the fundamental problems of the area by reducing the military establishment or making the army more efficient. There was no serious attempt to pay the army out of revenue or to revive the old system of direct taxation and the use of *iqtāʿs* remained chaotic and corrupt.

Muʿizz al-Dawla was succeeded by his son Bakhtiyār who was given the title of ʿIzz al-Dawla and who attempted to rule Buyid Iraq for eleven years between 356 and 367 (967–78). Our main source, Miskawayh, gives a partisan and highly critical view of his character but even allowing for this bias, it is clear that he lacked the military grasp of his father or the political and administrative acumen of his cousin, ʿAḍud al-Dawla. It is also clear, however, that many of the problems which plagued his reign were not of his making but were inherited from his father, and subsequent experience was to suggest that Buyid Iraq, on its own, was virtually ungovernable.

The main reasons for this situation are clear; the demands of the military, strong enough to force their will on the government but too inefficient to conquer areas like Mosul which might have yielded increased revenue, and the steady decline of the resources of central Iraq. None of these features were new but they were made worse by the ruler's ineptitude and the failure to organize the existing resources effectively. Bakhtiyār allowed a vicious rivalry to develop between various groups in the bureaucracy and no commanding figure emerged to replace al-Muhallabī in overall charge of the administration. From 362/973 his chief adviser was a man called Ibn Baqiyya who had risen to power not through the financial offices of the state but through the

kitchens. The failure to produce a competent *wazīr* was symptomatic of the general crisis of the administration.

Bakhtiyār also failed to secure the loyalty of the military, alienating both Turks and Daylamites. He was unfortunate in that the Turks in Baghdad were led by Sabuktakīn (not to be confused with his contemporary Sabuktakīn of Ghazna in Afghanistan, founder of the Ghaznavid dynasty), a general of considerable political ability whose authority they accepted. By 361/972 relations between Bakhtiyār and his military commander were so bad that he tried to replace him with a fellow Turk but Sabuktakīn proved too powerful and was allowed to retain his position.

The crisis took a new turn the next year (362/973) when news arrived of Byzantine incursions deep into Muslim territory. In the previous decade the important cities of Tarsus and Antioch had fallen to the ancient enemy and the Byzantine expansion gave no signs of coming to an end. The small frontier principality of Aleppo lacked the resources to deal with this threat. Popular opinion in the Muslim world, especially in Baghdad and Khurāsān, was stirred up by the arrival of refugees from the conquered areas and the people demanded that their rulers should take action to defend their fellow Muslims. Bakhtiyār gave orders that Sabuktakīn should prepare an army for the *jihād* but this, rather than drawing the rival factions together in a common cause, simply made things worse. Sabuktakīn recruited and armed a large number of volunteers but these were mobilized, not against the Byzantines, but in support of the Turks in Baghdad and they remained in the city, strengthening the anti-Buyid party. In the meantime, Bakhtiyār's new adviser Ibn Baqiyya persuaded his master that the best chance of raising money was a new expedition to Mosul where the Hamdanid ruler, Abū Taghlib, who was being hard pressed by the Byzantines, might be easy to subdue. Accordingly in 363/974 Sabuktakīn and Bakhtiyār, though hardly on speaking terms, set off north. The attempt was a fiasco; Abū Taghlib, taking advantage of his superior mobility, caused a diversion in Baghdad and forced Sabuktakīn to return there. Bakhtiyār, still in Mosul but now isolated from the main body of his army, was forced to make terms. Like so many of his schemes, his own incompetence and the rivalry with the Turks had brought it to nothing.

After this failure, Ibn Baqiyya and his master felt that an all-out breach with Sabuktakīn was inevitable. They left Baghdad, where the Turkish leader had mobilized popular support, for Wāsiṭ and Ahwāz which they intended to make their base. Here they cultivated the cause of the Daylamites, whose interests they wanted to make their own, and took over the *iqṭā'*s of the Turks in the area, including those held by Sabuktakīn himself. Open warfare between the two parties began

in Dhū'l-Qaʿda 363/July 974 and Sabuktakīn was able to take over Baghdad entirely. The Buyid palaces were captured and members of the family expelled while the victorious Turkish general replaced the ailing Caliph al-Muṭīʿ with his son al-Ṭā'iʿ. The remaining Daylamites were expelled from the city and their houses were taken over by the Turks. By the end of 363/autumn 974 there was virtually a Turkish amirate in the capital and the Turks were attacking Bakhtiyār in Wāsiṭ itself.

There can be little doubt that Buyid rule in Baghdad would have come to an end at this point if Bakhtiyār had not appealed to the rest of his family for support. Rukn al-Dawla of Rayy, the senior member of the clan, entrusted the task to his son ʿAḍud al-Dawla ruler of Fārs who began to mobilize his resources. The arrival of ʿAḍud al-Dawla changed the balance of power and the Buyid cause was further aided by the death of Sabuktakīn, of natural causes. He was succeeded as leader of the Turks by his deputy Alptakīn, who seems to have lacked something of his predecessor's sureness of touch. Bakhtiyār and his cousin began to advance on Baghdad from Wāsiṭ and Bakhtiyār called in other allies as well, notably Abū Taghlib the Hamdanid from Mosul who came south to pillage the city. The Buyids were also joined by two bedouin tribes, the Asad from the west and the Shaybān from the east of the city. In Jumādā I 364/January 975 Alptakīn and the Turks were decisively defeated on the Diyālā river and the Buyid cousins entered the city in state. Alptakīn with many of his men fled west to Damascus and many of them were later to enter Fatimid service.

In the short term, Buyid authority was restored. But the crisis of 361–4 (972–5) had important long-term effects and represents something of a turning-point in the history of the area. The first effect was the physical devastation of the city. It is true that Baghdad had been besieged and sacked before but this time, despite the efforts of ʿAḍud al-Dawla, it does not seem to have recovered its vitality. The Buyid period was one of continuous urban crisis in Baghdad. This showed itself in frequent popular disturbances and brigandage as well as the struggles between different bands of unpaid soldiers. In late Buyid times, even the rulers of the city were reduced to abject poverty, Jalāl al-Dawla being forced to dismiss his servants and set loose his horses because he could no longer afford to feed them. Part of the explanation for this seems to lie in the decline in trade. In Buyid times, the richest people in the city were not merchants but government servants. Tax collecting, military service and the holding of *iqṭāʿs* rather than commerce were the main sources of wealth. Those who did make money invested it in land rather than trade. There also seems to have been a continuous emigration of wealthy families, the Banu'l-Furāt for example, to Egypt where prospects were much brighter.

Government action or inaction was partly responsible for this. The sacking and pillaging of markets had become too frequent to make commercial investment viable and even in times of "peace" the markets were subject to extortion by bankrupt *wazīrs* or unpaid soldiers. The absence of basic security effectively prevented economic recovery.

Another major contributory factor was the emergence of Shīʿī and Sunnī as armed political groupings and the division of the city into strictly Sunnī and Shīʿī quarters. The memory of ʿAlī and his family had always been venerated in Iraq. In the previous century Muʿtazilism (see above, p. 161) had been the issue which divided the Muslims and while veneration for the memory of ʿAlī was part of the Muʿtazilī position, it was around the issue of the createdness of the Qurʾān that the debate had crystallized. Al-Mutawakkil had caused great offence by destroying the tombs of the ʿAlids when he broke with the Muʿtazilī position but this had not led to popular uprisings in Baghdad. After the anarchy at Sāmarrā, Muʿtazilism largely ceased to be a political issue, although there were still Muʿtazilī thinkers and teachers. In the early fourth/tenth century the status of ʿAlī was becoming a major source of controversy among the Muslims of Baghdad. It is important to recognize that veneration of the name of ʿAlī by itself does not imply commitment to Shiʿism; most, but not all, Sunnīs respected his memory as an early Muslim and one of the closest companions of the Prophet.

It was in Buyid Baghdad that "Twelver" Shiʿism (so-called from the fact that its adherents acknowledge twelve *imāms*, the first of whom was ʿAlī) developed both as a system of belief and as a religious community. On the theoretical level, the most important development was the idea of the hidden *imām*. At least from the time of Jaʿfar al-Ṣādiq (d. 148/765) many supporters of the house of ʿAlī had accepted that the leadership of the family was vested in al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī and his direct descendants. In 260/874 the last of these publicly acknowledged *imāms*, al-Ḥasan al-ʿAskarī, died in Sāmarrā where he had lived quietly among supporters of the Family, and al-Nawbakhtī, an ʿAlid sympathizer writing at the end of the third/ninth century, lists no less than fourteen different opinions as to the rightful successor to al-ʿAskarī. During the course of the fourth/tenth century, however, it became widely accepted among the Shīʿa that the last *imām* had left a son who had remained hidden and never died but would come again to establish the rule of true Islam. Meanwhile, he had left representatives in the world who would guide the Faithful in his absence. Acceptance of the *imām* was, however, fundamental to true belief, since he was the *ḥujja*, the proof of God without whom there could be no Islam. This theory of the imamate was developed in Baghdad by such scholars as al-Kulaynī (d. 329/940–1) and above all

al-Shaykh al-Mufīd (d. 413/1022) who produced the view of the imamate generally held by Twelvers down to the present day. Despite the violence and the economic problems of the city, this intellectual activity was centred on Baghdad, especially on the old commercial quarter of al-Karkh which became the main stronghold of the Shīʿa, and scholars from all over the Muslim world, like the famous Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan al-Ṭūsī (d. 460/1067) from Khurāsān, were attracted to the city. These scholars were not patronized directly by the Buyid rulers but were helped by figures closely connected with the court like Bahā' al-Dawla's *wazīr*, Sābūr b. Ardashīr, a bureaucrat of Fārsī origin, who established a major Shīʿī library in al-Karkh in 381/991–2. The scholars were also patronized by rich local families of ʿAlid descent who were in many cases, like the Sharīfs al-Rāḍī (d. 406/1015) and al-Murtaḍā (d. 436/1044), close to the Buyid court. While some Buyid rulers, notably ʿAḍud al-Dawla, seem to have discouraged speculation which might divide the Muslim community, others at least tolerated it and allowed their courtiers to provide patronage for the needy intellectuals involved.

While the development of Shiʿism had an intellectual aspect, it also had a more practical and, in the end, political one; for it was in Buyid Baghdad that Twelver Shiʿism became a distinct and separate sect. The new elements which distinguished this Shiʿite party were the public denigration of the first two caliphs (Abū Bakr and ʿUmar who were held to have usurped the rights of ʿAlī), the development of certain exclusively Shīʿī public festivals, notably the mourning for al-Ḥusayn on the 10 Muḥarram and the celebration of the Ghadīr Khumm on 18 Dhū'l-Ḥijja (when the Prophet was said to have acknowledged ʿAlī as his successor during the Farewell pilgrimage in 10/632) and the development of the tombs of members of the ʿAlid family as centres of pilgrimage. These three elements mark off the development of the true Shiʿism of the fourth/tenth century from the reverence for ʿAlī or support of ʿAlid pretenders to the caliphate which had been common in previous centuries. It was no part of the programme of this new mature Shīʿa to use force to install an ʿAlid caliph immediately.

The three distinguishing features of the new Shiʿism described above were all essentially public acts and at least two were exclusive; while any Muslim could accept the veneration of the tomb of ʿAlī, if not those of all his descendants, no one could accept the celebration of the Ghadīr Khumm or the cursing of the first two caliphs without cutting himself off from a large number of other Muslims. Thus the mature Shiʿism of the Buyid period defined itself as a distinct group or party; one either followed it or rejected it, no compromises were possible. In this way the

Muslims of Iraq in the fourth/tenth century divided into two, increasingly hostile, camps.

We can follow the chronology of these developments in some detail. During the reign of al-Muqtadir, there is no evidence of Sunnī–Shīʿī strife in Baghdad. In 313/925 the mosque at Barāthā in the Karkh quarter of Baghdad was demolished on the orders of the caliph. It was held that ʿAlī himself had prayed at Barāthā and the mosque had become a centre of pro-ʿAlid elements, but there is no mention of the cursing of the first caliphs or the other distinguishing feature of the Shīʿī party. It is striking that in the confused violence of al-Muqtadir's reign, no one attempted to raise the Sunnīs against the Shīʿīs or vice versa, a clear indication that the two parties were not a serious force in politics. Soon after this we begin to get signs of communal tension and its origins lay with the Ḥanbalīs (it is still too early to talk of the Sunnīs) who had rejected the Muʿtazila and continued to insist on the importance of Tradition and respect for the Companions as the basis of true Islam. In 323/935 the caliph was obliged to issue a decree to prevent the Ḥanbalīs attacking the Shīʿa, the first sign of popular violence.

Communal tension was increasing in Baghdad before the coming of the Buyids but the policies of Muʿizz al-Dawla and Bakhtiyār were to prove a decisive factor. From the time of their arrival in Baghdad, the Daylamites became associated with the Shīʿa point of view, and allowed and encouraged the development of a Shīʿī party in the capital, partly to secure the support of at least one element among the Baghdad populace. As early as 341/952 Muʿizz al-Dawla is said to have ordered the release of preachers who expounded the doctrine of transmigration of souls, a belief common to the more extreme pro-ʿAlid elements. In 351/962 Muʿizz al-Dawla took the more blatant step of having curses on the first two caliphs painted on walls in Baghdad. In the end his *wazīr*, the astute al-Muhallabī, persuaded him that only Muʿāwiya should be mentioned, a course safe enough in Iraq (but not in Syria where a man was trampled to death in the mosque for giving ʿAlī precedence over Muʿāwiya at about this time). In 353/964 Muʿizz al-Dawla encouraged the public celebration of the important Shīʿī festivals of the 10 Muḥarram and the Ghadīr Khumm, to the intense annoyance of many others in Baghdad. At the same period we see signs of increased reverence for the Shīʿī shrines of Iraq and Iran, which came to replace the more perilous Mecca and Medina as the goal of pilgrimage for many Shīʿīs. In 342/953 we hear for the first time of an officer from Baṣra requesting to be buried by al-Ḥusayn at Karbalā' and the practice soon grew in popularity. On his death in 399/1009, Aḥmad b. Ibrāhīm al-Ḍabbī, the Buyid *wazīr* at Rayy, instructed that his body be taken to

Karbalā' for burial as did al-Ḥusayn b. al-Maghribī (d. 418/1027) *wazīr* of the Marwanid ruler of Mayyāfāriqīn. This is in marked contrast with early Islamic practice of burying great men where they died and shows the increasing importance attached to Shīʿī shrines. Under Buyid patronage most of the famous Shīʿī shrines were embellished, not only the tombs of ʿAlī and al-Ḥusayn, but that of Fāṭima in Qumm and of ʿAlī al-Riḍa near Ṭūs (now known as Mashhad). The patterns of Shīʿī devotion which emerged at this time have remained characteristic of the sect ever since.

The most important stage in the separation of the Sunnī and Shīʿī parties came in the crisis of Bakhtiyār's reign from 361/972 onwards. The Turkish leader Sabuktakīn diverted the enthusiasm of the Baghdadis for the *jihād* against the Byzantines into attacking the Buyids and their Daylamite and Baghdadi supporters as heretics. The Shiʿites were fewer in number and their centre, the Karkh area, was burned down twice during this period. Miskawayh, a contemporary observer, is quite specific about the nature of the change that resulted: "the dispute between the two factions (Sunnī and Shīʿī), which had formerly been on religious questions, now became political as well, as the Shīʿa adopted the watchword of Bakhtiyār and the Daylamites while the Sunna adopted that of Sabuktakīn and the Turks".[2] The fighting resulted in the arming of both factions and the increasing division of the city into fortified quarters, each with its own sectarian character. These divisions persisted after the immediate political quarrel had finished and in the end became permanent, and it is to the events of these years that we can ascribe the definitive break between Sunnism and Twelver Shiʿism. It was also at this time that the Turks became identified with the anti-Shīʿa party. There is no evidence that the Turks of Sāmarrā in the third/ninth century had shown any hostility at all to the house of ʿAlī and many of them had supported the Muʿtazilī movement. From Bakhtiyār's reign, however, they became associated with the Sunnī cause, a development which became firmly established in the next century when Turkish rulers like Maḥmūd of Chazna and the Saljuks emphasized their role as champions of Sunnism.

Throughout the second half of the Buyid period, processions on sectarian feast days and the writing of inflammatory slogans, particularly the cursing of the Companions of the Prophet and the first three caliphs, were to provide flash-points for continuing violence. Despite the efforts of determined rulers of Baghdad like ʿAḍud al-Dawla and Ibn Ustādhhurmuz to put an end to the growth of sectarian tension the divide between the Shīʿa and their opponents continued to harden. In the years after the death of ʿAḍud al-Dawla in 372/983 those who can now

confidently be described as Sunnīs who opposed the claims of the Shīʿā, were developing their own festivals, notably the feast of the Cave, just eight days after the Ghadīr Khumm, when the Sunnīs remembered how the Prophet and Abū Bakr had taken refuge together in a cave during the *Hijra* from Mecca to Medina, emphasizing the unique closeness of the first caliph to Muḥammad. Again the processions and public festivities were an occasion for violence. This movement was given added impetus by the Caliph al-Qādir (381–422/991–1031) who made moves to codify a Sunnī doctrinal and ritual position to counter that of the Shīʿa and to strengthen his position against the absent Buyid ruler Bahāʾ al-Dawla. The ʿAbbasid caliphs became firmly attached to the Sunnī cause, and they were encouraged in this by the rising power of Maḥmūd of Ghazna, who linked himself firmly to the Sunnī, anti-Buyid position.

By this time the damage had been done. Baghdad was firmly divided between the adherents of the two rival sects, each armed and defending its own areas. The divisions soon spread to other Iraqi towns like Wāsiṭ and to other parts of the Islamic world. It is probable that the divisions between Sunnī and Shīʿī would have hardened in this period in any case, partly because of the establishment of the Fatimid caliphate, but there can be no doubt that the political rivalries in Baghdad accelerated and defined the process, not just because sectarian differences were encouraged for local political reasons but because Baghdad remained such an important intellectual centre for Sunnī and Shīʿī alike.

Another change which becomes noticeable during the crisis of Bakhtiyār's reign is the decline of the countryside around the capital. In its heyday Baghdad had been the centre of a flourishing agricultural area but it had also needed to import grain by river from the Jazīra area. By the fifth/eleventh century this had changed. The Jazīra was controlled by the Hamdanids and their ʿUqaylid successors, usually hostile to Buyid rule. The agricultural land was despoiled and much of it had become nomad pasture. The bedouin Asad, Khafāja and ʿUqayl tribes approached the city from the north and west while the Kurdish ʿAnnazids took over fertile lands in the Diyālā basin to the east. Against this background the economic problems of the city and the intermittent famine and social unrest were inevitable.

The death of Sabuktakīn and the reconquest of Baghdad by Bakhtiyār and ʿAḍud al-Dawla in 364/975 had restored Buyid rule to the city but it had not solved the problem of the unfortunate Bakhtiyār. ʿAḍud al-Dawla made no secret of the fact that he thought that Bakhtiyār ought to abdicate and in the circumstances there was little he could do. Respite came from an unexpected quarter. ʿAḍud al-Dawla's father Rukn al-Dawla was furious that his son should dispossess his cousin and ordered

him to withdraw from Iraq. Reluctantly ʿAḍud al-Dawla obeyed the old man's wishes. The withdrawal encouraged Bakhtiyār to make another attempt to restore his position and he cast around wildly for allies, looking not just to other Buyids like ʿAḍud al-Dawla's brother Fakhr al-Dawla of Rayy but also to the Kurdish leader Ḥasanūya (or Ḥasanwayh), his old enemy Abū Taghlib the Hamdanid and to bedouin tribal chiefs who used this opportunity to inflict further damage on the settled countryside around Baghdad. His position was too weak to be able to make use of this support and when Rukn al-Dawla died in 366/977 ʿAḍud al-Dawla lost no time in mounting a new invasion, which culminated in a battle near Sāmarrā in Shawwāl 367/May 978 in which Bakhtiyār was defeated, captured and finally beheaded on the orders of his cousin.

Iraq thus passed into the hands of the most famous of the Buyid rulers, Fanā-khusrau titled ʿAḍud al-Dawla. He had been ruler of Fārs for almost thirty years and it is to this province we must look if we want to understand the sources of his power. At the same time, the history of Fārs is shrouded in mystery and we know much more about his five-year rule in Baghdad than the much longer period which preceded it. He had succeeded to the position of his uncle ʿImād al-Dawla, the founder of Buyid power in Fārs, in 338/949. He was only thirteen at the time and his political education was left in the hands of experienced bureaucrats like the elder Ibn al-ʿAmīd, his father's *wazīr*. He thus acquired a very different view of government from the soldier adventurers who formed the first generation of Buyid rulers. Of all the members of his family, he was the one most admired by posterity and even the Seljuk *wazīr*, Niẓām al-Mulk, servant of the dynasty which overthrew the Buyids, used his methods as an example for his own sovereign.

His rule in Fārs was something of a golden age for the province as ʿAḍud al-Dawla made it the basis for his imperial schemes and, realizing that the prosperity of the area was fundamental to his plans, took active steps to encourage both agriculture and trade. In the agricultural sector he invested heavily in irrigation projects, one of which, a great dam known as the Band-i Amīr, remains to this day as a testimony to his activities. He continued the close relations his predecessor ʿImād al-Dawla had built up with the local landowning bureaucratic class and they implemented the policy from which they too benefited. The long years of peace saw agriculture booming. It is true that he distributed *iqṭāʿs* to the military but in Fārs this process was kept under strict control and it does not seem to have led to the abuses prevalent in parts of Iraq. Unlike other members of his family, he did not employ an all-powerful *wazīr*, probably because he supervised so much of the administration in person, but the Fārsīs found new opportunities after the

conquest of Iraq, where ʿAḍud al-Dawla used many of them as administrators in preference to the local people.

The agricultural prosperity was matched by commercial and urban development. The fullest evidence for this comes from the port of Sīrāf on the south coast where both literary sources and archaeological evidence suggest great trading activity and wealth. The disturbances in southern Iraq, the sacking of Baṣra by the Qarāmiṭa and the growing impoverishment of the whole country, meant that centres for Indian trade shifted further down the Gulf coast. Sīrāf was not a naturally inviting site, being very hot and barren, but under the Buyids it had safe and secure access to Shīrāz and thence to other areas of Iran. Great fortunes were made by Sīrāfī merchants and for the century of Buyid rule, this out-of-the-way harbour became one of the great maritime centres of the Islamic world; there could be no clearer sign of the benefits of Buyid government. The capital Shīrāz itself expanded. ʿAḍud al-Dawla built a new suburb to house the Daylamites, with its own markets, and derived a substantial income from this urban development. The city itself remained unwalled until the disturbances at the end of the Buyid period in the mid-fifth/eleventh century, another indication of the prosperity and security of the area. He also developed markets at Rāmhurmuz and Kāzirūn on the routes from southern Iraq to Fārs.

The success of the local economy is commented on by travellers, notably al-Muqaddasī at the time and Ibn al-Balkhī during the Seljuk period, but is also demonstrated by the wealth that ʿAḍud al-Dawla could invest in such projects as the invasion of Iraq. He was consistently better equipped than his opponents and could dispose of large amounts of cash to satisfy his troops' demands. The changed relationship between Fārs and Iraq could be symbolized by Miskawayh's story of how ʿAḍud al-Dawla caused plants to be taken from Fārs to restock the ruined gardens of Baghdad. His successes rested on sound administration and economic policy, not on military skill or brilliant generalship.

On the domestic front, Fārs enjoyed almost uninterrupted peace, except in 345/956–7 when the rebellion of the Daylamite chief Rūzbahān in Iraq led to a similar rising by his brother in Fārs, but the movement was soon crushed by ʿAḍud al-Dawla's old mentor, the *wazīr* Ibn al-ʿAmīd, and does not seem to have caused prolonged disturbances. This peace allowed ʿAḍud al-Dawla to develop an expansionist foreign policy. In 357/968 he was able to take over Kirmān because of disputes among the sons of Ibn Ilyās. He took firm measures against the Qufṣ and Balūch hill-people and appointed his son Shīrdil as governor. Henceforward, Kirmān was attached to the Buyid domains until the coming of the Seljuks eighty years later. A second area of concern to ʿAḍud

al-Dawla was ʿUmān. This was of strategic importance because of its position at the entrance to the Gulf and the effect this could have on the trade of Baṣra and Sīrāf. In 354/965 the governor, who seems to have maintained friendly relations with the Buyids, was driven out by the local people who invited in the Qarāmiṭa of eastern Arabia. Both Muʿizz al-Dawla in Iraq and his nephew ʿAḍud al-Dawla considered this a threat to the prosperity of their dominions and a major maritime expedition was launched under the command of a leading Fārsī bureaucrat, now working in Baghdad, Muḥammad b. al-ʿAbbās b. Fasānjas. The army sailed from Baṣra, picked up reinforcements in Sīrāf and conquered the province. Thereafter it seems to have been a dependency of Fārs, at least until the end of the century.

The third and most important area of ʿAḍud al-Dawla's foreign policy was in the invasion of Iraq. As long as his uncle Muʿizz al-Dawla was alive, Iraq remained outside his sphere of influence. But almost as soon as Bakhtiyār succeeded in 356/967 ʿAḍud al-Dawla began to take advantage of his weakness, though it was not until the death of his father in 366/977 that he finally had a free hand, and he marched on Baghdad. He was partly concerned to expand his power and establish a direct link with the caliph but he may have felt that all the Buyid lands were threatened by the misfortunes of Bakhtiyār's rule and he could not afford to tolerate an area of instability on his frontiers where disaffected Turks and Daylamites could work against him. He could count on the resources of Fārs and the loyalty of its administrators and soldiers and this was to prove decisive. After the fall of Baghdad and later Mosul, Fārsīs were given important offices, including that of chief *qāḍī* in Baghdad and military commander in Mosul while dissident Iraqis were despatched to exile in Fārs. Although he was to spend the rest of his reign attempting to solve the problems of Iraq, he still regarded the province he had ruled so long as his base and his household remained there until his death.

After his victory over Bakhtiyār, ʿAḍud al-Dawla's immediate concern was to consolidate the frontiers of his new realm. To the north of Buyid Iraq lay the Hamdanid kingdom of Mosul, still independent despite the repeated attempts of both Muʿizz al-Dawla and Bakhtiyār to subdue it. Abū Taghlib, the Hamdanid ruler, had aided Bakhtiyār in his last fight, fearing above all a strong ruler in Baghdad. In the past, the Hamdanids had always been able to abandon their capital and the plains of al-Jazīra and retire to their mountain strongholds, taking with them the administrators who collected the taxes. Although the Buyids were able to take Mosul, they never had sufficient resources to besiege the mountain fortresses or the experienced personnel to tax al-Jazīra; sooner or later

they were forced to come to terms. It was typical of ʿAḍud al-Dawla's determined and systematic approach that he was prepared for this. With ample resources, he recruited exiled Mosulis in Baghdad to run the administration of their home town. Within a month of his victory over Bakhtiyār he had taken Mosul and went on to reduce the mountain castles. Abū Taghlib fled across the desert to Syria and Hamdanid power in the area was destroyed for ever; ʿAḍud al-Dawla had achieved the triumph which had so often eluded his predecessors.

He also turned his attention against the pastoral people who had come to Bakhtiyār's aid. The Shaybānī and Asadī bedouin who had threatened the countryside around Baghdad were ruthlessly controlled, and even the unruly ʿUqaylīs of al-Jazīra were disciplined by holding the chiefs responsible for any misdemeanours their followers might commit. He also took action against the powerful Barzikānī Kurds who dominated the route from Baghdad to Hamadhān and the Iranian plateau, a vital link with the Buyid kingdom of Rayy. Here he was aided by the death of the veteran Ḥasanūya which allowed ʿAḍud al-Dawla to lend support to one of his sons, Badr, and secure his protégé's triumph. Only in the marshes of southern Iraq was he unable, either by force or diplomacy, to assert his authority.

In 370/980–1 he moved on to organize the affairs of the other Buyid kingdom in al-Jibāl and central Iran. The death of his father Rukn al-Dawla four years before left two of his sons in contention. One, Fakhr al-Dawla, whose power was based in Rayy, was determined to maintain his independence even if it meant allying with the hereditary enemy of his family, Qābūs b. Vushmgīr of Ṭabaristān, whose uncle Mardāvīj had opposed the early independence of the Buyids. The other brother, Mu'ayyid al-Dawla, was prepared to work with ʿAḍud al-Dawla and they combined to oppose Fakhr and his eastern allies; Fakhr al-Dawla was driven into exile and Mu'ayyid al-Dawla ruled as his brother's junior partner.

The last two years of his reign, ʿAḍud al-Dawla spent in Baghdad, embarking on a programme of restoration and rebuilding. He spent large sums on palaces and on fundamental works like the restoration of the canal network which had been so vital for the city's prosperity. He was determined, far-sighted, and ruthless with corrupt and inefficient subordinates, but his stay in Baghdad was very short and many of his cherished projects must have been unfinished at his death. He also succeeded in calming the endemic dissension between the Turks and Daylamites in the army. This was largely due to successful financial administration and ʿAḍud al-Dawla could call on the revenues of Khūzistān, Wāsiṭ, Mosul and Fārs, none of which had been available to

his predecessor. He also ensured that the troops were paid regularly. The army had waged successful foreign wars under his leadership and these may have brought in booty. He was equally methodical in his treatment of sectarian disturbances. He made a great show of his good relations with the ʿAbbasid caliph but beyond that took care to show favour neither to Sunnī nor to Shīʿī. In particular he forbade inflammatory preaching, including attacks on the Companions of the Prophet and the celebration of provocative, sectarian festivals. Muslims, he held, should spend their time reading the Qur'ān rather than arguing over contentious points of doctrine. Sunnī–Shīʿī tensions do not seem to have been a problem in Fārs and ʿAḍud al-Dawla was powerful enough not to need the support of either group in Baghdad.

To some extent, his reputation has been exaggerated by chroniclers, always eager to seize on examples of strong and just rule to make moral points. None the less the record presents a convincing picture of a conscientious, self-educated man, solving problems by careful organization, planning and attention to detail. The dynasty was not to produce another figure of his stature.

The Years of Decline: 372–440/983–1048

ʿAḍud al-Dawla's death in 372/983 was the occasion for further divisions among the Buyids. In this case it is quite apparent that different princes were adopted by different pressure groups, military or civilian, in different areas to advance their own interests. ʿAḍud al-Dawla had used his ample resources to keep the balance between these groups but none of his successors was in a strong enough position to follow his example. Two sons appeared as rivals for power. The first of these was Ṣamṣām al-Dawla who was established by his supporters in Baghdad even before his father's death had been made public. A mild and easy-going man, he seems to have lacked his father's brutal determination and his political life was to be full of misfortunes brought upon him by others. From the very beginning he was plagued by military rebellion in Baghdad and the loss of the valuable provinces of Ahwāz and Baṣra in the south, and he was soon forced to abandon Mosul and al-Jazīra to the Kurds and ʿUqaylī Arabs.

The other son was Shīrdil, who had been in control in Kirmān at the time of his father's death but soon established himself in Shīrāz, the capital of Fārs, with the title of Sharaf al-Dawla. ʿAḍud al-Dawla had used Fārs as a place of exile for obstreperous Baghdadi notables, among whom were the ex-*qāḍī* Ibn Maʿrūf and a vastly rich descendant of ʿAlī, Muḥammad b. ʿUmar. These were now released, along with other

political prisoners, and began to urge Sharaf al-Dawla to take over Iraq so that they could regain their positions. Another group, led by the *wazīr* al-ʿAlāʾ b. al-Ḥasan and ʿAḍud al-Dawla's former agent in Mosul, Abū Naṣr Khwāshāda, opposed this: like Sharaf al-Dawla himself they were natives of Fārs and felt, with some justification, that involvement in Iraq would only lead to problems. At first Sharaf al-Dawla followed the advice of his Fārsī counsellors, making a treaty with Ṣamṣām al-Dawla in 376/986–7, but his mind was changed by Muḥammad b. ʿUmar. Sharaf al-Dawla advanced from Ahwāz towards Baghdad and was soon joined by leaders of all groups, Turks and Daylamites alike. Once again the wealth of the ruler of Fārs provided a striking contrast with the poverty of the Baghdad government. The Daylamī troops in the city mutinied, and went over to Sharaf al-Dawla, hoping, no doubt, that he would prove a more reliable paymaster. Sharaf al-Dawla's change of policy seemed to have been vindicated, his Iraqi supporters were restored to their estates and honours and the unfortunate Ṣamṣām al-Dawla deported to Fārs where, in a remote prison near Sīrāf, he was blinded. But Sharaf al-Dawla's success in reuniting his father's domains was short-lived; after just two years and eight months in Baghdad, he died in 380/990 aged only twenty-eight and the whole question of the leadership became open again.

Before his death, Sharaf al-Dawla had sent his young son Abū ʿAlī to Fārs as governor but he was rejected by the notables of the province, led by the *wazīr* al-ʿAlā b. al-Ḥasan, who were determined to have a prince who was responsive to their own local concerns and they turned, perhaps surprisingly, to the blind prisoner of Sīrāf, Ṣamṣām al-Dawla, who was released and restored as prince, only in Fārs this time, not Baghdad. Meanwhile in Baghdad, a third son of ʿAḍud al-Dawla, Fīrūz, was proclaimed as Bahāʾ al-Dawla. Inevitably, the supporters of the two princes began the struggle for control of the rich border areas of Ahwāz and Khūzistān. The fighting was made more bitter by increasing polarization between Turks and Daylamites. Al-ʿAlā b. al-Ḥasan had secured the accession of Ṣamṣām al-Dawla in Fārs by relying almost exclusively on Daylamite support, obliging many Turks to go into exile in Baghdad. At first a settlement was patched up which allowed Ṣamṣām al-Dawla to keep Fārs and Arrajān, while Ahwāz was to pass to Bahāʾ al-Dawla, but Ṣamṣām al-Dawla's Daylamite followers could not allow so rich a prize to slip from their grasp and three years later, in 383/993, the army of Fārs took possession of the province. The Turks of Baghdad counter-attacked and the Daylamites were driven out with great slaughter. This produced a further reaction in Fārs where the remaining Turks were driven out or massacred. Thus by 385/995 the army in Fārs was almost

entirely composed of Daylamites, commanded by their new and forceful leader, Abū ʿAlī b. Ustādh-hurmuz, while in Iraq and Baghdad they had lost all influence and Bahā' al-Dawla was totally dependent on the Turks. The struggle continued with Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz taking Ahwāz for the Daylamites in 387/997 but the next year, 388/998, the whole situation was changed again when Ṣamṣām al-Dawla died, aged only thirty-five, leaving Bahā' al-Dawla as the only survivor of ʿAḍud al-Dawla's sons.

In Fārs there was confusion but in Ahwāz, Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz took the decisive step of bringing his Daylamites over to the cause of Bahā' al-Dawla, despite their anxieties about the intentions of Bahā' al-Dawla's Turkish followers. A detailed settlement was worked out by Bahā' al-Dawla's *wazīr*, Abū ʿAlī b. Ismāʿīl, called al-Muwaffaq, and the leaders of the Turks and Daylamites to divide and distribute the valuable *iqṭāʿs* of the disputed area, and the major cause of conflict was thus resolved. The adherence of Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz to Bahā' al-Dawla had changed the military balance decisively and al-Muwaffaq was able to enter Shīrāz without any real opposition. Here he undertook a radical review of the *iqṭāʿs* in the province, redistributing them among the Daylamites. The next year he went on to Kirmān where again he reformed the *iqṭāʿ* system, cancelling all existing grants and replacing them by salaries. So Bahā' al-Dawla succeeded to the inheritance of his father in Shīrāz as well as Baghdad; as a result of the work of al-Muwaffaq and Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz, rather than his own efforts, he could now count on a reformed army, a reformed system of payment which put more emphasis on salaries and at least comparative harmony between Turks and Daylamites. Bahā' al-Dawla was able to settle in Fārs in 388/998; he never left the province again until his death in 403/1012 but thanks to the work of his ministers, he was able to exercise almost unchallenged control over Fārs, Kirmān and parts, at least, of Iraq.

In the northern and central areas of Iraq the Buyid government came under increasing pressure from the bedouin. Since its conquest by ʿAḍud al-Dawla in 369/979 Mosul had always been on the fringes of the Buyid domains, and in the confusion which followed his death, the position deteriorated rapidly. Control over the Mosul countryside was effectively lost by 379/990 when the governor was forced to grant extensive *iqṭāʿs* to the ʿUqaylī tribe, while the city itself was finally abandoned in 386/996 when it was taken over by the ambitious ʿUqaylī chief al-Muqallad b. al-Musayyib (see below, pp. 295 ff.). Thereafter ʿUqaylī power spread well to the south, and the towns of the Baghdad countryside like Kūfa and Anbār were often under their control, and al-Muqallad, shortly before his death in 391/1001, even attempted to take Baghdad itself. The only effective opposition to the ʿUqaylī advance

came, not from the Buyid authorities in Baghdad, but from the rival Asadī tribe of the Ḥilla area under the leadership of the Mazyadid family. Things were no better to the east of Baghdad where the country and the road to the Iranian plateau were now dominated by the Shādhinjānī Kurds under the leadership of the ʿAnnazid family.

This meant that from about 386/996 onwards, Baghdad was very much an island of Buyid control in a countryside dominated by powerful bedouin tribes. If only for reasons of prestige, however, Bahā' al-Dawla was anxious to hold on to it and in this aim he was aided by two remarkable and efficient governors, both brought up in the administrative traditions of ʿAḍud al-Dawla, who made a real effort to restore peace and sound government to the troubled city. The first of these was Abū ʿAlī b. Ustādh-hurmuz, the Daylamite leader who had come over to Bahā' al-Dawla after Ṣamṣām al-Dawla's death. In 392/1002 he entered Baghdad and immediately set about restoring order to the city. He laid special stress on the abolition of provocative religious activities and the crushing of bandits and robbers who had been the scourge of the town, and his prestige and experience as leader of the Daylamites ensured that he had the military support to do this. His attitude was summed up in the drowning of leading brigands of the ʿAbbasid and ʿAlid factions, tied together in death. After his death in 401/1010, he was succeeded by his *wazīr*. Fakhr al-Mulk, who continued in his tradition; a notable patron of culture, he secured a measure of peace in the city until after the death of Bahā' al-Dawla in 403/1012.

The death of Bahā' al-Dawla in Shīrāz undermined the position of Fakhr al-Mulk in Baghdad and in 407/1016 his son and successor Sulṭān al-Dawla was prevailed on to have him executed. This marked the end of the comparative peace which the city had enjoyed since the arrival of Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz fifteen years before and the beginning of a long and destructive period of civil strife. Once again, the root causes of the trouble were the tensions between the Turks and the Daylamites and the financial problems of Baghdad. Sulṭān al-Dawla in Fārs was dependent on Daylamite support and he sent, as governor of Baghdad, a Daylamite commander, Ibn Ṣāliḥān, with a large number of troops. The Turks in the city resented this and appealed to Sulṭān al-Dawla to come from Shīrāz in person, which he did, but the experiment was not a success as he was too closely tied to the Daylamite interest. In 412/1021 it was agreed that Baghdad should be ruled by his younger brother, Musharrif al-Dawla, while he returned to Shīrāz. There followed a period of sporadic warfare until Sulṭān al-Dawla died in 412/1021 of drink at the age of thirty-two to be followed six months later by his brother Musharrif al-Dawla.

The war between Sulṭān al-Dawla and Musharrif al-Dawla marked another stage in the decline of the Baghdad amirate as the city was now deprived of any financial aid from Fārs and Ahwāz, and Musharrif al-Dawla was dependent on the half-ruined cities of Baghdad and Wāsiṭ and the ravaged countryside immediately surrounding them. After his death, the Turks of Baghdad were faced with a choice. They could accept the sovereignty of Abū Kālījār Marzbān, the new Buyid ruler in Shīrāz; this would have the advantage that he would probably be able to pay their salaries but the disadvantage that he would exercise his authority through the Daylamite troops who served him in Fārs; and he made it clear, on the advice of his Fārsī *wazīr*, that he would not repeat his predecessor's mistake and come and settle in Baghdad. The other possibility open to the Turks was that they should appoint a Buyid *amīr* of their own. Such an *amīr* would be obliged to look after their interests as far as possible but his financial resources would be extremely limited. Morale among the Turks seems to have been very low and discipline virtually non-existent. They produced no leader of the calibre of Sabuktakīn and even when they wanted to, they seem to have been unable to maintain order. From 421/1030 to 425/1034 the city was terrorized by a bandit known as al-Burjumī and neither the Turks nor their chosen *amīr*, Jalāl al-Dawla, were able to put an end to his depredations. In the end it was the ʿUqaylī bedouin leader, Qirwāsh, who captured and drowned him; there could hardly be a clearer indication of the shift in the centre of power from the city to the nomad camp.

After Musharrif al-Dawla's death, the Turks had begun by accepting the authority of Abū Kālījār of Fārs but when he refused to come to Baghdad, they turned instead to his uncle, Jalāl al-Dawla, who arrived in the city in 416/1025 and remained *amīr*, with interruptions, until his death in 435/1044. It was not a happy time, either for the city or for the *amīr*. The continued economic decline of the city led to the further growth of organized crime, often conducted by groups of *ʿayyārūn* claiming to represent the Sunnī or Shīʿī party, while government policing effectively ceased to exist. Physically, the city was divided into different quarters, each fortified and separated from the others by stretches of uninhabited ruins. The poverty of the city was reflected in the penury of its unhappy *amīr*, unable to pay even his personal servants and forced in 422/1031 to dismiss his attendants and set his horses loose since he could no longer afford salaries for the former or fodder for the latter. He was treated by the Turks with open contempt but they made no effort to produce an *amīr* from their own ranks.

The last decades of Buyid rule in Baghdad, despite the political chaos, witnessed a religious development which was to affect the whole

subsequent history of Islam; the so-called Sunnī revival. This was not, in fact, so much of a revival as the formulation and definition of Sunnism in response to the contemporary emergence of *imāmī* (Twelver) Shiʿism. While Shiʿism was intermittently patronized by the Buyids and their representatives in Baghdad, the lead in the elaboration of Sunnism was taken by the ʿAbbasid caliph.

Since Muʿizz al-Dawla had deposed al-Mustakfī in 334/946 the ʿAbbasid caliphs had had a negligible effect on public life. Pampered but powerless, al-Muṭīʿ (334–63/946–74) and al-Ṭāʾiʿ (363–81/974–91) had been almost entirely confined to their vast palace complex on the east bank of the Tigris in Baghdad, providing legitimacy for the regime by rubber-stamping its appointments. In 381/991 Bahāʾ al-Dawla, then resident in Baghdad, deposed al-Ṭāʾiʿ, who he felt was becoming obstreperous, and appointed instead his cousin, who took the title of al-Qādir. At first he was content to do Bahāʾ al-Dawla's bidding but when the Buyid *amīr* moved to Shīrāz, al-Qādir was able to take a more positive part in public affairs. As has already been explained, popular feelings between Shīʿīs and their opponents had been growing in Baghdad, despite the efforts of Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz and others to suppress them. In 394/1003 Bahāʾ al-Dawla was rash enough to propose a leading ʿAlid, Abū Aḥmad al-Mūsawī, as chief *qāḍī* in Baghdad. For the first time, the ʿAbbasid caliph put himself at the head of the popular protest and, successfully, refused to accept the nomination. Thereafter he began to defend the cause of the Traditionists against the claims of Twelver Shiʿism. He did, however, find common ground with the Buyids in his opposition to the claims of the Fatimids and when Qirwāsh b. al-Muqallad, the ʿUqaylī chief, proclaimed his allegiance to the Fatimids in 401/1010 he responded by putting pressure on Bahāʾ al-Dawla who obliged the bedouin chief to accept the ʿAbbasids once again. Interestingly for the future, al-Qādir took the opportunity to issue a decree, attacking both Fatimid ideology and the genealogy by which the Fatimids claimed descent from ʿAlī. In this way he established himself as spokesman for both Sunnīs and Twelver Shīʿīs.

The death of Bahāʾ al-Dawla allowed him more scope. In 409/1018 he took a major step, issuing a decree which condemned Muʿtazilism and Shiʿism and asserted that the Companions of the Prophet and all the first four caliphs should be venerated by true Muslims. These doctrines were repeated and elaborated in 420/1029 when the doctrine of the createdness of the Qurʾān was explicitly condemned. This creed, the so-called *Risālā al-Qādiriyya*, marks a fundamental development for two reasons, firstly because Sunnism was defined explicitly and positively. Hitherto, the supporters of the Sunna had largely been defined by their

opposition to the claims of the Twelver Shīʿīs; now there was a body of positive belief which had to be accepted by anyone claiming to be a Sunnī. Like the Twelver doctrines developed during the previous century it was exclusive; the acceptance of the veneration of the first four caliphs, meant rejecting the claims of the Twelvers that ʿAlī had been unjustly deprived of the caliphate. It was no longer possible to be simply a Muslim, one was either a Sunnī or a Shīʿī.

The second important development was that the ʿAbbasid caliph had emerged as spokesman for the Sunnīs. It is fair to say the early ʿAbbasid caliphs were not, in the modern sense, Sunnīs; indeed the whole ʿAbbasid claim to the caliphate was dependent on a recognition that the Family of the Prophet had a unique claim to leadership. They usually opposed the claims of the ʿAlids to political power but that did not make them Sunnīs. From the time of al-Maʾmūn, with the notable exception of al-Mutawakkil, they had espoused or sympathized with the Muʿtazilī doctrines which al-Qādir explicitly condemned. By his action, al-Qādir had become the champion of the Sunnīs and Traditionists against the claims of Twelver Shīʿīs and Fatimids alike. He had also created a new and lasting role for the ʿAbbasid caliphate. As Jaʿfar al-Ṣādiq had shown in the second/eighth century that it was possible to be an *imām* from the house of ʿAlī without taking an active role in politics or making claims to the caliphate, so al-Qādir showed that there was a religious role for the ʿAbbasid caliphs, a role which they could fulfil even if their temporal power was non-existent.

Al-Qādir was able to take this position because he had more political independence. To begin with the Buyid amirate of Baghdad had become so weak that it could not afford to take action against the caliph. He could also count on a large body of support in Baghdad itself; the people might not fight to restore the political power of the ʿAbbasid caliph but many of them would support the Sunnī cause against the pretensions of the Shīʿa. In addition he received powerful moral support from the eastern Islamic world. From 388/998 until his death in 421/1030 the leading power in Iran was Maḥmūd of Ghazna. He was a fierce opponent of the Buyids on a political level, but he also gave a religious dimension to the conflict by accusing them of being heretics and claiming that he was the champion of Sunnī Islam. He established himself as protector of the *ḥajj*, a role traditionally played by the leaders of the Muslim community. This moral support from the east enabled al-Qādir to distance himself from the Buyids. But this did not lead to direct political power. By the time of his death, al-Qādir had established his moral and religious authority but the ʿAbbasid caliph had no troops to command and no land to call his own beyond the gates of his palace.

His final act, however, was to appoint his own successor without reference to the Buyids, perhaps the first time since the death of al-Muktafī in 289/902 that the ʿAbbasid caliph had been able to do this.

Al-Qādir's son, who took the title of al-Qā'im, survived the last, melancholy days of the Buyid amirate of Baghdad and remained in office until his death in 467/1075, long after the Seljuk conquest. He seems to have continued the lines of policy laid down by his father, reiterating his religious decrees. It is noticeable, however, that he was the first ʿAbbasid since before the Buyid period to have a *wazīr* of his own, another sign that the caliph's influence was slowly expanding.

Jalāl al-Dawla continued as *amīr* until his death in 435/1044 at the age of fifty-one, comparatively old for a Buyid prince, many of whom died in their twenties and thirties. After this, control was briefly assumed by Abū Kālījār of Shīrāz and for the last time the resources of Fārs sustained Buyid government in Baghdad. But when he died in 440/1048, the last vestiges of effective rule disappeared and the last traces of the Buyids were soon to be swept away by the Seljuk onslaught.

The last decades of Buyid rule in Fārs are shrouded in obscurity and it is very difficult to gauge the state of the country. However, lack of evidence may not necessarily be a sign of decline. Buyid rule in Fārs survived after Buyid rule in al-Jibāl had vanished and Buyid government in Baghdad had been reduced to a shambles. In 403/1012 Bahā' al-Dawla died in Arrajān at the age of forty-two. He had appointed as his successor his son who took the title of Sulṭān al-Dawla and established himself in Shīrāz. Of his reign in Fārs (403–12/1012–21) little is known and it seems to have passed peacefully. Kirmān was the only part of the Buyid possessions in southern Iran not under his direct control and it was entrusted to his uncle Abu'l-Fawāris Qiwām al-Dawla. This separation led to the only serious disturbance of the reign when in 407/1016–17 Abu'l-Fawāris was supported by the rising power of Maḥmūd of Ghazna in the east. Maḥmūd was now strong enough to intervene in Buyid succession disputes, a warning of things to come, for it was Maḥmūd who put an end to the Buyid kingdom of Rayy in 420/1029. This time, however, he was unsuccessful and Sulṭān al-Dawla was able to re-establish his position in Shīrāz without great difficulty.

Sulṭān al-Dawla's death produced another of the family conflicts which dominated Buyid political life. The Daylamite soldiery of Shīrāz expressed their preference for Abu'l-Fawāris over Sulṭān al-Dawla's son, Abū Kālījār, then ruling in Baṣra. At first Abu'l-Fawāris was successful but Abū Kālījār counter-attacked and drove his uncle out. The most significant feature of the episode is the way in which the Buyid contenders were cynically manipulated by the Daylamites, anxious to squeeze as

much money as possible out of them; when the Daylamites decided that there should be peace, the rival princes were obliged to agree and Abū Kālījār was left in possession of Fārs while his uncle retired to Kirmān. In a final effort to restore his position, Abu'l-Fawāris turned to the Kurds and recruited an army of 10,000 of them. Up to this point the Kurdish population of Fārs, in contrast to those further north in the Zagros, had played little part in politics, but from this time on they became more active and it was they who, in the end, were responsible for ending Buyid control of the area.

Despite this inauspicious beginning, Abū Kālījār's long reign in Fārs (415–40/1024–48) was on the whole a period of peace. Like his predecessors he ruled in partnership with the local bureaucratic élite, notably al-ʿAdil Bahrām b. al-Māfinnā from Kāzirūn. Bahrām was the last of the great Buyid *wazīrs*. Like some of his predecessors, he was not just a skilled administrator but also a patron of culture. He founded a large library at Fīrūzābād and was the patron of the historian Hilāl b. al-Muḥassin al-Ṣābī to whose work, now mostly lost, we owe much of our knowledge of the later Buyid period. On his death in 433/1041–2 he was replaced by a member of the Fasānjas family who had supported the Buyids since ʿAlī b. Būya had arrived in Fārs more than a century before.

In external affairs, the power of Buyid Fārs remained impressive; in 419/1028 Abu'l-Fawāris died and Abū Kālījār was able to take over that province. In 422/1031 Kirmān was attacked by the formidable Maḥmūd of Ghazna but the Daylamite garrison, aided by the *wazīr* Bahrām, were able to drive him off. ʿUmān, too, remained a Fārsī protectorate under the control of a Fārsī bureaucratic family. In Iraq, Abū Kālījār extended his authority over Baṣra and Wāsiṭ and even, in the end, Baghdad from 435/1044 onwards, although he made little attempt to solve the almost impossible problems of governing the city.

The last years of the reign were marked by growing threats, both internal and external. The power of Maḥmūd of Ghazna was replaced by the more insidious and continuous pressure of Ghuzz Turks and this migration was more difficult to resist than the more conventional forces of the Ghaznavids. These pressures led to a resurgence of Kurdish activity. Kurdish tribes displaced from the Iṣfahān area by the advancing Turks were driven down to Fārs and the authorities were unable to prevent them settling. The local Kurds, too, began to take over towns and villages and one of them, Faḍlūya b. ʿAlī of the Shabānkāra, became virtual ruler of the province after the death of Abū Kālījār. These changes, and the apparent inability of the Daylamī troops of the Buyids to counter them, were probably the reason why Abū Kālījār found it necessary to fortify Shīrāz from 436/1044 on. When he died in 440/1048 on an

expedition to subdue a rebel Daylamī commander in Kirmān, he was succeeded in theory by his young son, but in reality the forces which he had succeeded in keeping at bay swept over Fārs and destroyed not only his heirs but the whole Daylamī–Fārsī establishment and much of the prosperity of the country. When Ibn al-Balkhī came to describe Fārs in the next century, his account was full of cities which had existed under the Buyids but were now laid waste, relics of a golden age when Fārs had been the wealthy centre of an empire.

The Buyid Kingdom of Rayy

The Buyid kingdom of Rayy and al-Jibāl was in many ways separate from the kingdoms of Fārs and Iraq. While the affairs of the latter provinces were closely intertwined, the political history of Rayy was determined by other considerations. ʿAḍud al-Dawla, Bahā' al-Dawla and Abū Kālījār all ruled both Fārs and Iraq but none of them ruled Rayy, Hamadhān and Iṣfahān which always had their own sovereigns. The political history of the third kingdom is dominated by external threats to its existence. Until the accession of Fakhr al-Dawla in 366/977 the most serious threat came from the Samanids of Khurāsān to the east who considered, with some historical justification, that Rayy was a rightful part of their domains. On at least three occasions, the last one being in 357/967, Samanid armies attempted to take Rayy but each time they were defeated. The Samanid threat was especially dangerous since they allied with the hereditary enemies of the Buyid family, the Ziyarid rulers of Ṭabaristān and Jurjān. The Ziyarids were the family of Mardāvīj b. Ziyār, the Daylamite ruler of central Iran who had been murdered in 323/935, opening the way for the Buyid take-over. His family were driven to take refuge in the mountainous areas to the south-east of the Caspian Sea but they never gave up their claim to authority in Rayy. Mardāvīj's brother Vushmgīr (d. 356/967) and his successors Bīsutūn (d. 367/978) and Qābūs (d. 402/1012) pursued their ambitions with the aid of the Samanids and other enemies of the Buyids. While never strong enough by themselves to challenge Buyid control, allied with others they were a major threat, especially dangerous since they represented a rival focus for the loyalty of the Daylamites. The decline of the Samanids in the later fourth/tenth century did not free the Buyids from threats from the east. The rising power of the Ghaznavids and the immigration of the Ghuzz Turkmen were to undermine the power of the Daylamites and in 420/1029 Rayy itself fell to Maḥmūd.

In the face of these external threats, the Buyids of Rayy and al-Jibāl looked for sources of strength nearer home. Their army, of which we

know very little, seems to have been composed almost entirely of Daylamites and there is no indication that they recruited large numbers of Turks as Buyid rulers in other areas did. To supply these troops they were dependent on the co-operation of the traditional Daylamite ruling families with whom they made marriage alliances, and the allies they acquired in this way were to be crucial in the success of their government. The first of these was ʿAlī b. Kāma, the son of Rukn al-Dawla's sister who was the right-hand military man of both Rukn al-Dawla and Mu'ayyid al-Dawla and seems to have enjoyed great prestige among the Daylamites. He was put to death by Fakhr al-Dawla on his accession in 366/977 but Fakhr made his own network of Daylamī alliances. His mother came from a family of Daylamī princes and he married the daughter of the *Ispahbad* (prince) Sharvīn of Ṭabaristān. After his death, she became virtual ruler of Rayy in the name of their young son, Majd al-Dawla. Her brother, Dushmanziyār, held office for the Buyids while his son Muḥammad, known as Ibn Kākūya (or son of the maternal uncle) took over Iṣfahān in 398/1008 and became the independent ruler of the Iṣfahān–Hamadhān part of the kingdom. He was the founder of a dynasty which survived under Seljuk patronage until the sixth/twelfth century. These close relations with the Daylamite princes and the role played by marriage alliances were important factors in the resilience of the Buyids of Rayy in the face of threats from the east.

The Buyids were also on good terms with the Hasanuyid Kurds. Rukn al-Dawla scandalized his *wazīr* Ibn al-ʿAmīd the elder by the lenient view he took of their depredations. Badr b. Ḥasanūya provided and led Kurdish troops in the armies of both Mu'ayyid al-Dawla and Fakhr al-Dawla, amounting in the latter case to 4,000 men, probably cavalry to complement the Daylamī infantry. After the death of Fakhr al-Dawla in 387/997, Badr came to Rayy to try to organize the affairs of the infant Majd al-Dawla but his advice was rejected and he increasingly distanced himself from the affairs at Rayy. When the last Buyid ruler was threatened by Maḥmūd of Ghazna, he could no longer count on the Kurdish alliance which had sustained his father, uncle and grandfather.

Rukn al-Dawla relied from the beginning of his reign on the services of Ibn al-ʿAmīd, an administrator whose father had served Mardāvīj and Vushmgīr in Rayy. He served Rukn al-Dawla loyally until his death in 360/970 when he was succeeded by his son, also known as Ibn al-ʿAmīd. According to the hostile testimony of Miskawayh, the son lacked his father's circumspection and loyalty, made the mistake of trying to double-cross both Rukn al-Dawla and ʿAḍud al-Dawla to acquire a position with the ill-fated Bakhtiyār in Baghdad and was disgraced in 366/976–7. The most famous of all Buyid *wazīrs* was Ismāʿīl b. ʿAbbād,

known as al-Ṣāḥīb (the master or boss) who served the Buyids of Rayy for a quarter of a century from 360/970–1 to 385/995.

The *wazīrs* of this period were general administrators rather than financial experts. They certainly arranged, or tried to arrange, the payment of armies but they also organized and participated in campaigns. They acted, too, as intermediaries between members of the Buyid family; in 365/976 Ibn al-ʿAmīd the younger was responsible for arranging a reconciliation between his master Rukn al-Dawla and his son ʿAḍud al-Dawla in Fārs. When Mu'ayyid al-Dawla of Rayy died in 373/983 it was Ibn ʿAbbād who arranged that his brother Fakhr al-Dawla should be invited from his refuge in Jurjān to take power. In more normal times the *wazīrs* arranged government appointments and gave advice on making of alliances and all sorts of administrative decisions, but it is as patrons of Arabic culture that they are chiefly remembered. The elder Ibn al-ʿAmīd was renowned for his knowledge of classical Arabic poetry while Ibn ʿAbbād was the patron of Abū'l-Faraj al-Iṣfahānī, whose *Kitāb al-aghānī* (Book of Songs) is the most important record we have of early Arabic poetry and poets, besides being an accomplished Arabic stylist himself. The most important Muslim intellectual of his generation, Abū ʿAlī b. Sīnā (d. 428/1037), known in the west as Avicenna, served for the last nine years of his life as *wazīr* to a member of the Buyid clan, the Kakuyid ruler of Iṣfahān and Hamadhān. Apart from ʿAḍud al-Dawla, the Buyid sovereigns were not, themselves, known as patrons of culture, it was their *wazīrs* who encouraged the great efflorescence of Arabic writing at this time.

For the purposes of political history it is conventional to think of the Buyid *amīrs*, their *wazīrs* and their armies as the government but this is in some ways a distorted picture. In many areas the *amīrs*, with their very limited military forces, worked in partnership with local élites who owed their power to local circumstances rather than to appointment by the *amīr*. The local administration of one important provincial town in the Buyid kingdom of al-Jibāl, Qazvīn, has been studied in some detail.[3] Situated west of Rayy and at the southern edge of the Daylamī mountains, it was in early Islamic times an important fortress protecting the plains against the depredations of the still unconverted Daylamites. It may have been this role as a garrison city which accounts for the comparatively large number of people of Arab origin to be found there. After the Daylamite expansion, the city continued to be a centre of some importance without ever becoming an independent amirate. The Buyids, and the other dynasties who took over the town for short intervals, ruled in close co-operation with the local oligarchy. In the early Buyid period, the undisputed leaders of this oligarchy were from

the ʿIjlīs, an Arab tribe which had colonized the Jibāl area extensively since the first century after the conquest. Under the ʿAbbasids they had frequently been local governors but under the Buyids they had the honorific unofficial title of *raʾīs*. Their supremacy was not unchallenged and during the fifth/eleventh century they were effectively supplanted by the leaders of a family connected with the ʿAlids, the Jaʿfarīs, whose power may have been built up by the Buyids. Along with the *raʾīs*, the other major local figure was the *qāḍī*, always chosen from one of the leading local families, and while his appointment was endorsed by the administration in Rayy, the real power of selection must have lain with the local community leaders.

It appears that sometimes there was a Daylamī military officer posted in the town. We have the diploma of appointment written for one of these by al-Ṣāḥib Ibn ʿAbbād, the *wazīr* of Muʾayyid al-Dawla in Rayy. He was given widespread powers over the civil administration and the maintenance of law and order but it is not clear that these extensive powers were normally invested in the *amīr*, indeed, it is significant that he is the only *amīr* of Qazvīn in the period whose name has come down to us. Neither this patent, nor the various measures taken to suppress riots and civil disturbance in the city suggests that there was a regular Daylamī garrison of any importance, and the maintenance of law and order seems to have been the responsibility of a militia (*aḥdāth*) probably recruited locally. There does not seem to be any mention of a government-appointed tax collector and we must assume that the collection of the sums demanded by Rayy was the responsibility of local leaders. This suggests decentralized government, heavily dependent on the co-operation of local élites. For the man in Qazvīn bazaar, the real and effective government must have been in local officials, the *raʾīs* and the *qāḍī*, the comings and goings of *amīrs* and their retinues were probably marginal to the day-to-day administration. The government required taxes and a basic minimum of law and order. As long as these were maintained, it had little further interest in the area.

The Buyid period is often considered a confusing and largely negative period in Islamic history. This is not really fair. It is true that the dynasty did not supply the strong centralized government historians tend to admire, but the way local urban élites and tribes worked out a measure of autonomy within the general framework of Buyid rule, may actually have benefited most people much more than strong government and the fierce taxation which inevitably went with it. It is true that there were many wars, but it must be remembered that armies were small, much smaller than those of the early ʿAbbasid period or of the Seljuk Turks, and the wars do not seem to have been very destructive. There

are few mentions of sieges; rather encounters between princes and their bands of followers in open country, and the warfare was probably more similar to the baronial wars of eleventh- and twelfth-century France than to the great campaigns of previous centuries. The great failure of the dynasty was the failure to secure the prosperity and stability of Iraq, but this was a problem whose origins went back before Buyid times and whose solution was probably beyond the powers of any contemporary government. In central Iran, and above all in Fārs, their rule seems to have been an era of prosperity and development, an era brought to a premature close by the influx of the Ghuzz Turkmen in the middle of the fifth/eleventh century.

Notes

1. R. Mottahedeh, *Loyalty and leadership in an early Islamic society* (Princeton 1980), p. 81.
2. *Tajārib al-Umam*, ed. H. Amedroz, II, Oxford 1920–, p. 328.
3. R. Mottahedeh, "Administration in Būyid Qazwīn", in D. S. Richards (ed.), *Islamic civilisation 950–1150* (Oxford 1975), pp. 33–45.

chapter nine

THE KURDS

The Daylamīs were the most conspicuous of the indigenous peoples of eastern and central Iran to take advantage of the weakening of ʿAbbasid government but they were not the only ones. The Kurds, a people with their own language and culture distinct from Arabs and Persians, had inhabited much of the area of the Zagros mountains and the uplands to the north of Mosul for many centuries before the coming of Islam. Like the Daylamīs, however, they had only played a marginal part in the politics of the Islamic state until the fourth/tenth century, being mentioned as rebels or mercenaries in the chronicles. The failure of central government, coinciding with the spread of Islam among the Kurdish tribes, however, allowed the emergence of a number of independent Kurdish principalities alongside of, and sometimes in competition with, the Daylamite ones. This Kurdish efflorescence survived until the coming of the Ghuzz Turkmen in the 430s/1040s who sought to take over their pastures and effectively squeezed them out of many of their traditional areas.

In the mid-fourth/tenth century the Kurds were distributed all along the Zagros chain from Fārs in the south to Āẕarbayjān and the Araxes river in the north. They were also influential in south-east Anatolia as far west as Āmid and we even hear of Kurdish leaders in the mountains of northern Syria at the time of the Hamdanids. The geographer Ibn Ḥawqal describes the Kurds as the bedouin of Iran and it would appear that they were largely sheep-rearing transhumants who exploited the pastures of the high Zagros in the summer and the lowland plains of eastern Iraq in the winter. They must have lived very much like their Turkish successors in the southern Zagros, the Qashqāʾī and the Bakhtiyārī, do today, each group occupying a summer pasturage and a winter area and the route through the mountains connecting them. The Hadhbānī Kurds, one of the most powerful tribes in the period, are described as spending the summer in Āẕarbayjān around the area of

Salmās, north-east of Lake Urmiyya, and the winter on the plains along the Greater and Lesser Zāb rivers east of Mosul. Interestingly the winter pastures of the Hadhbānī Kurds were the same as the summer pastures of the Shaybānī Arabs, who would move in from the desert to be near the permanent water supply provided by the rivers, a clear example of the complementary role of these two pastoral peoples. Not all Kurds, however, were transhumant shepherds and their leaders often seem to have maintained fortresses along the migration routes where their valuables were kept and where they could take refuge in time of danger. There were Kurdish populations in many of the small towns of the mountain area like Shahrazūr and Salmās and there were also Kurds who lived in villages; the Marwanid rulers of Mayyāfāriqīn came from a family who were headmen of a village near Sīʿird (modern Siirt).

The Kurdish dynasties which emerged in the second half of the fourth/tenth century, the Hasanuyids and ʿAnnazids of the central Zagros, the Rawwadids and Shaddadids of Āẕarbayjān and the Marwanids of south-eastern Anatolia, based their power on the military prowess of the Kurdish tribesmen. They never needed to employ Turkish *ghilmān*, as the Buyids did, because they provided mounted soldiers from their own ranks. They also changed the political geography of the area: the ʿAbbasid, Buyid and Hamdanid regimes were all based in cities and their surrounding agricultural land. By contrast the power of the Kurdish rulers, with the exception of the Shaddadids, was based on their control of the transhumance routes and it was the valleys of the Zagros and anti-Taurus which formed the nucleus of these states, not because they were rich and fertile and produced high tax-yields but because it was there that the tribesmen passed on their biannual migrations. In the Zagros, the power of the chiefs was based in fortresses which commanded the routes and in which they kept their treasure, not in the major towns. The relationship of the Hasanuyids with the town of Hamadhān, like the relationship of the Marwanids with Āmid or the Shaddadids with Dwin and Ganja, was based on indirect influence rather than direct control; the Shaddadids and the Marwanids especially established close links with local, non-Kurdish urban élites. The administration of the Kurdish states tended to be very basic; the Marwanids employed *wazīrs* but there is no indication that the other groups employed any bureaucrats at all: the cities paid an agreed tribute and for the rest, the traditional mechanisms of tribal authority were sufficient. The *ḥimāya* (protection agreement) was the underlying basis of government.

There were large numbers of Kurds in the province of Fārs, but, perhaps because Fārs was such an important Buyid base, they seem to have played little part in politics before the breakdown of government at

the end of Abū Kālījār's reign. Further north, however, Kurdish principalities came to dominate the most important of all the routes through the Zagros, the road from Hamadhān to Ḥulwān, the great road between Khurāsān and Baghdad which had been so important in ʿAbbasid history. The first of these states to achieve independence was based on the area around Qarmīsīn (Kirmānshāh). From 350/961 the chief of the Barzikānī Kurds of this area was Ḥasanūya b. al-Ḥusayn. He consolidated his position by maintaining close relations with the Buyids of Rayy, helping them against the Samanid threat from the east. Soon he began to use his position to encroach on the settled areas around Hamadhān and demand protection money from the people of the area and when the governor tried to prevent him, he used force to intimidate him. Rukn al-Dawla's veteran *wazīr* Ibn al-ʿAmīd led an army to crush him but in 360/970 during the course of the campaign he died and his son was prepared to make peace, allowing Ḥasanūya virtual independence in return for a tribute of 50,000 *dīnārs* a year. Rukn al-Dawla seems to have been reluctant to take strong measures against his ally and Ḥasanūya's power in the area was effectively unchallenged until his death in 369/979 in a fortress at Sarmāj, near the celebrated "Gates of Asia" at Bīsitūn on the road from Iraq to Iran as it passed through the mountains.

His numerous sons began to dispute his inheritance, some looking for support from Fakhr al-Dawla in Rayy, others from ʿAḍud al-Dawla, now firmly in control in Baghdad. ʿAḍud al-Dawla, pursuing his centralizing policies here as elsewhere, sought to use the dispute to assert his control in the area. He besieged and took the castle at Sarmāj and established his protégé, Badr b. Ḥasanūya, in the inheritance at the expense of his brothers, most of whom were killed. The death of his patron in 372/983 left Badr in authority in the district and he reigned virtually unchallenged until his death in 405/1014. Like ʿAḍud al-Dawla, he is held up by the chroniclers as a model ruler, particularly in his defence of the settled cultivators against his own nomad supporters while he sought to increase the prosperity of his followers by opening a market in Hamadhān, the main regional centre, whose profits, estimated at 1.2 million *dirhams* per year, would pass to him. Badr was even in a position to finance the *ḥajj* from Iraq and pay for its protection on the pilgrimage road, a role which brought him considerable prestige and which was taken over after his death by the great Maḥmūd of Ghazna. In political terms this power enabled him to play an important part in the politics of the Buyid kingdom of Rayy, especially after the death of Fakhr al-Dawla in 387/997 (see above, p. 244). His power remained firmly based on his tribal following and his mountain castles. He was influential in Hamadhān

where he kept an agent but never ruled the city directly. At Rayy he could provide valuable support for any of the factions struggling to control the young Buyid prince, Majd al-Dawla, and was able to send 3,000 horsemen to support Ibrāhīm al-Ḍabbī when he sought reinstatement as *wazīr* in 392/1002 but, typically, he exercised his power at a distance, not going to Rayy or playing any part in court life himself. His career illustrates both the opportunities open to an able and astute tribal leader and the limitations on his power. Badr was so successful because he never lost the support of his Kurdish followers nor distanced himself from them to live in some urban centre.

The end of his life was marred by family strife and the emergence of a rival Kurdish power in the area, the ʿAnnazids. The ʿAnnazids were the leading clan of the Shādhinjān Kurds. They occupied lands further down the road to Baghdad than the Barzikānīs who supported Badr, having their territories around Ḥulwān and Shahrazūr. They were bitter rivals of the Barzikānīs, probably because of disputed grazing rights in the Zagros mountains. As early as 343/954 we hear of one Abū'l-Shawk and his Shādhinjānī followers kidnapping Buyid government envoys from their base at Ḥulwān. At this time they were suppressed by Muʿizz al-Dawla's general Sabuktakīn but they clearly remained powerful in the Ḥulwān area. Later, weaker Buyid governments were obliged to look to the Kurds for allies and Bahā' al-Dawla (in Baghdad from 379/989) favoured the ʿAnnazid chief Abū'l-Fatḥ Muḥammad b. ʿAnnāz who emerged as ruler of Ḥulwān which he was given as an *iqṭāʿ* with government support from 381/991. While Badr and his Barzikānī followers looked to Rayy and Hamadhān, the ʿAnnazids and their Shādhinjānī tribesmen were patronized by the Buyid authorities in Baghdad. As so often, local rulers were closely involved, for better or for worse, in rivalries between the various centres of Buyid power. When Bahā' al-Dawla took up residence in Shīrāz, Abu'l-Fatḥ remained on good terms with the governor he left behind in Baghdad, Abū Jaʿfar al-Ḥajjāj, joining him in campaigns against the ʿUqaylids. On the appointment of Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz to Baghdad in 392/1002 al-Ḥajjāj attempted to rally his friends to resist his successor and Abū'l-Fatḥ joined him with both Kurdish and Shaybānī Arab followers. In the battle which ensued against the Mazyadid supporters of Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz, Abū'l-Fatḥ was deserted by the Shaybān and many Kurds but stood firm with 200 Shādhinjānī horsemen. After this reverse, he was soon won over by the new governor and the traditionally close relations between the ʿAnnazids and the Baghdad authorities were resumed. This alliance was to prove especially useful in 397/1006 when Badr dislodged him from Ḥulwān and he was given both shelter and support in Baghdad.

Abū'l-Fatḥ died in 401/1010 and was succeeded by his son Abū'l-Shawk under whom the power of the family reached its apogee. The success of the ʿAnnazids was largely due to the disasters which affected their main rival, Badr b. Ḥasanūya. Badr had quarrelled with his eldest son Hilāl and was only able to defeat him by calling on the support of the Buyid authorities in Hamadhān. He himself died in 405/1014 but his grandson Ṭāhir b. Hilāl, again with the support of the Hamadhān Buyids, attempted to regain his grandfather's position against the ʿAnnazids who had taken advantage of the confusion to take the Barzikānī centre at Qarmīsīn. In the end it was only the treacherous murder of Ṭāhir that saved the ʿAnnazid. Shortly afterwards Shams al-Dawla the Buyid ruler of Hamadhān was defeated in person by Abū'l-Shawk. The result of the murder of Ṭāhir and the defeat of Shams al-Dawla was that the ʿAnnazids were now supreme in the central Zagros area, members of the ruling clan controlling not only Ḥulwān and Shahrazūr on the edge of the Iraqi plain but such upland areas as Dīnawar and, sometimes, Qarmīsīn. The Buyids of Baghdad were much too feeble to offer any serious challenge while the Kakuyids who established themselves in Hamadhān were content to remain as neighbours.

As family feuds had been the undoing of Badr b. Ḥasanūya, so they were to be of the ʿAnnazids. The expansion of their territories meant that members of the family had acquired their own fortresses and interests. In 431/1040 a bitter dispute broke out between Abū'l-Shawk's son, called Abū'l-Fatḥ like his grandfather, and the chief's brother, Muhalhil. Once again internal divisions led to outside intervention, Muhalhil turning to the Kakuyid ʿAlā' al-Dawla who took Dīnawar and Qarmīsīn while Abū'l-Shawk appealed without much success to the feeble Jalāl al-Dawla of Baghdad. Some members of the family developed ties with other Kurdish groups, further dividing the clan. The ʿAnnazids developed no system of government or central control, no *wazīrs* are mentioned, and the expansion of the area under their control led inevitably to disintegration. It was thus a divided and weakened Kurdish tribe which faced the onslaught of the Turkmen from 437/1045 onwards, Abū'l-Shawk taking refuge in his fortresses while they ravaged his lands. Some members of the family, like Muhalhil, looked to the Seljuks as allies. The catastrophe of the mid-fifth/eleventh century was more than the fall of a dynasty; the Turkmen soon usurped the position of the Kurds and never again was there to be an important Kurdish dynasty in the central Zagros area. None of the ʿAnnazids had proved as great rulers as Badr b. Ḥasanūya but they had defended the position of their family and tribe in an uncertain and difficult time.

Further north the Kurds played an important part in the history of the rich and variegated province of Āẕarbayjān. The geography of the area is confused, with towns and fertile plains being separated by areas of high mountains and steppe lands, of great importance since they offer reliable and extensive summer grazing, much sought after in the Middle East. The Islamic conquest seems to have made little impact on the area besides the establishment of a few garrison towns, notably the provincial capital at Ardabīl. In early ʿAbbasid times there was some Arab immigration and settlement in towns such as Tabrīz and Marand but their numbers seem to have been limited and they were probably absorbed by the local population, and by the fourth/tenth century there is no record of any significant Arab presence. Until the time of the rebellion of Bābak (see above, p. 164), essentially a protest against outsiders coming into the province, most of the area seems to have been inhabited by indigenous cultivators speaking a variety of different languages. The systematic and drawn-out campaigns of al-Afshīn (220–2/835–7) crushed the local resistance. The defeat of Bābak does not seem to have resulted in any large-scale settlement of outsiders, but al-Afshīn probably left some forces in the area since during the anarchy at Sāmarrā a leader from his home country of Ushrūsana, called Abū'l-Sāj Dīwdād, took over the province. On his death in 279/892, he was succeeded by two of his sons in turn, Muḥammad, who was appointed by the ʿAbbasid Caliph al-Muʿtamid to rule Āẕarbayjān and took the title of al-Afshīn (the hereditary title of the princes of Ushrūsanā'), and then, from 288/901 Yūsuf. At the beginning of al-Muqtadir's reign (295/908) the *wazīr*, Ibn al-Furāt, attempted to regularize the position, offering Yūsuf b. Abī'l-Sāj complete control in Āẕarbayjān and Armenia in exchange for a fairly modest tribute of 120,000 *dīnārs* per year.

Ibn Abī'l-Sāj was, however, an ambitious man, anxious to play a part in the politics of the caliphate. The Christian princes of Armenia to the west were the victims of his aggression and he also cast covetous eyes on the province of Rayy to the east, claiming, falsely it would appear, that the *wazīr* ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā had assigned it to him. He even offered to pay 700,000 *dīnārs* a year for this expanded dominion, but the caliph refused to accept this and a military expedition was sent under Mu'nis which led eventually in 307/919 to his capture and removal to Baghdad. There his followers seem to have been given jobs since from that time on we find his nephew acting to maintain law and order in Baghdad and a new regiment of Sājī troops being stationed in the capital, while in Āẕarbayjān a follower of his called Sabuk took over the administration. At the court of the caliph, pro- and anti-Sajid groups emerged in the administration, those who felt that the service of so powerful a

figure should be used to serve the government and those who felt he should be crushed. After three years of detention he was allowed to return to Āẕarbayjān while the Sajid troops became an integral part of the Baghdad army. Four years later in 314/926 the caliphate was faced by a crisis in the shape of the attacks of the Qarāmiṭa on Iraq, attacks which the existing army seemed quite unable to deal with. In this extremity the *wazīr* al-Khaṣībī persuaded Ibn Abī'l-Sāj to come to Iraq, not this time as prisoner but as a much needed ally. Furthermore he was given very extensive financial privileges, including the revenues of all the eastern provinces except Iṣfahān and Fārs which were to be assigned to him to pay his army, a degree of financial control which even the most prominent of the Baghdad generals, Mu'nis, had never been allowed.

In the event, the Sajid troops, used to fighting in the mountainous terrain of their native Āẕarbayjān, were unable to face the Qarāmiṭa along the fringes of the desert. Ibn Abī'l-Sāj was captured and, after a short captivity which he endured with calmness and dignity, was executed. His career illustrates a stage in the disintegration of the caliphate. While his power was based on the revenues of Āẕarbayjān and the soldiers he could raise there he was, like the Tahirids, Ibn Ṭūlūn and Nāṣir al-Dawla the Hamdanid, closely involved in the politics of the caliphate. To think of him as an independent ruler is misleading; like many of his contemporaries, he was very much a product of ʿAbbasid administration rather than a local man with local roots. In the next generation, the people who tried to rule Āẕarbayiān were all native to the province and few of them made any effort to play a role beyond its confines.

The death of Ibn Abi'l-Sāj left something of a power vacuum in the province, especially as so many of his supporters had gone to join the Sajid army in Iraq. In these circumstances, two different groups attempted to dominate the province, the Kurds and the Daylamites. The Kurds seem to have predominated in the west of the province, where the Hadhbānī tribe had their summer pastures, while the Daylamites' strongholds were in the east in the mountains which bordered the south-west corner of the Caspian Sea. However, there does not seem to have been any hard and fast frontier between the two, it was probably that each group occupied a different environment, the Daylamites on farming land while the Kurds, like the transhumant Shahsevan nomads of present-day Āẕarbayjān, occupied pastoral lands. There were substantial cities in the province, notably Ardabīl, the capital, and Marāgha, but we know little of their inhabitants, beyond the fact that they usually seem to have preferred Kurdish to Daylamite rule.

To the west of Āẕarbayjān lay Armenia. Here the bulk of the local chiefs were Christian, notably the Bagratids in the north around Ani

and the Ardzrouni rulers of Vaspurakan around Lake Van to the south. The Armenians were a settled agricultural people determined to maintain their independence. There were also Muslims in Armenia; these mostly seem to have been of Arab origin, notably from members of the Sulaym tribe whose members had settled soon after the Islamic conquest and whose leaders had supplied numerous governors for the area. By the fourth/tenth century they were confined to the amirate of Manzikert, ruled by a Sulamī dynasty, and the districts along the northern shores of Lake Van, an area with a temperate winter climate. Further north, again in a temperate zone, the Araxes valley, lay the capital of Muslim Armenia, Dabīl or Dwin. This was a town of mostly Christian population but ruled over by Muslim *amīrs* of Arab or Kurdish extraction.

This ethnic and linguistic diversity made it very difficult for the leader of any one group to establish control over the whole area and the confused politics of the period reflect this problem. The period which followed the death of Ibn Abi'l-Sāj saw a prolonged struggle between the Kurdish leader Daysam and the Daylamite Marzbān b. Musāfir. Daysam had been a follower of Ibn Abi'l-Sāj and had also played an active part in the last Khārijī revolts in northern Iraq. These Iraqi connections suggest that he enjoyed the support of the Hadhbānī tribe, which wintered in Iraq. He was also supported by the Hamdanids of Mosul and also had contacts in Vaspurakan, where Kurds and Armenians co-existed, which provided a place of refuge.

Despite Daylamite challenges, Daysam managed to retain control of the province until he made a common but fatal error: he sought to establish his supremacy over other Kurdish leaders by recruiting Daylamites to his army and favouring them above his own people. The Kurds resented this while many Daylamites remained unhappy under Kurdish rule. Leadership of the Daylamites' cause was assumed by Marzbān b. Muḥammad b. Musāfir. He came from the family of the Daylamite princes of Ṭārum, who held castles on the borders between Daylam and Āz̲arbayjān. The family was unconnected with their more successful fellow countrymen, the Buyid family, with whom their relations were usually bad. Marzbān was a man of ambition, daring and energy and led a Daylamite army against Daysam. In the crucial battle (330/941), ethnic solidarity prevailed and Daysam's Daylamite troops suddenly switched sides, forcing him to flee despite the support of the townspeople of Ardabīl and Tabrīz. He went first to the Armenian ruler of Vaspurakan and then to Mosul where he attempted to find support from the Hamdanids. After this defeat, however, Daysam was effectively finished as leader of the Kurds. For the next generation, Āz̲arbayjān

was dominated by the Daylamites and when the Kurds did recover the leadership, it was under a new chief.

Marzbān now consolidated his rule; while the élite of his army were Daylamites, he recruited large numbers of Kurds as well. His newly won position was threatened by outsiders. In 333/945 Russian raiders sailed up the Kūr river from the Caspian and sacked the Muslim city of Bardhaʿa where Marzbān's representative and the garrison of 3,000 Daylamites were killed. As if this were not enough, he was also threatened by the Hadhbānī Kurds, who, with Hamdanid support, attacked the province from the south-west. Despite this war on two fronts, both enemies were driven out, the Russians by dysentery, the Kurds by thick snow, and Marzbān's authority was restored and enhanced. Even after a temporary reverse following an unsuccessful attack on Rayy in 337/948, Marzbān was stronger than any ruler of Āẕarbayjān since Yūsuf b. Abī'l-Sāj and was receiving tribute from numerous princes of the area, both Muslims like Muḥammad b. Aḥmad, the ruler of Shīrvān and Abū'l-Hayjā' al-Rawwādī of Āhar, and Christians, like the Bagratids of Armenia and the rulers of Vaspurakan.

His death in 346/957 opened the door to the family disputes which were typical of Daylamite rule. After much confused fighting, the dead ruler's brother, Vahsūdhān, kept the ancestral lands of the family around Ṭārum in eastern Āẕarbayjān while his son, Ibrāhīm, supported by the Buyid Rukn al-Dawla of Rayy, ruled the rest of the province. He never enjoyed the ascendancy his father had done over the local princes, although he had agreements with the rulers of Shīrvān and Ganja and his men raided as far as Bāb al-Abwāb. His authority was further weakened after the death of his patron Rukn al-Dawla of Rayy in 366/976. On his death in 373/983, power in Āẕarbayjān passed out of Daylamite hands altogether, although Vahsūdhān and his family continued to hold Ṭārum until well into the next century.

Kurdish dominance in the area was re-established under the leadership of the Rawwādī family. The origins of this clan are something of a mystery and the period of their rise to power, the later fourth/tenth century in Āẕarbayjān, is extremely badly recorded. In the early ʿAbbasid period, an Azdī Arab family called the Banū Rawwād is found among the colonists who settled the towns of Āẕarbayjān but it is not clear that there was any connection between them and the later Kurdish dynasty of the same name. It has been plausibly suggested that the Rawwadids were in fact the leading family of the Hadhbānī Kurds and that they are to be identified with the Rawwādīs after whom was named the town of Rawanduz (fortress of the Rawand) which dominates the route between upland Āẕarbayjān and the plains of northern Iraq, where the Hadhbānīs

wintered. Like the Hasanuyids further south, their power was based on the leadership of a Kurdish tribal group and the control of the transhumance routes. The Rawwādīs are first heard of in the Tabrīz–Marāgha area where the Hadhbānīs had their summer pastures, but by the time of Marzbān's death in 346/957, we find Abu'l-Hayjā' al-Rawwādī among his vassals in the area of Āhar to the west of the provincial capital at Ardabīl. Taking advantage of the weakening of Ibrāhīm b. Marzbān's power and his death in 373/983 they took over central Āẕarbayjān. The heyday of the dynasty seems to have been in the fifth/eleventh century under the rule of Vahsūdhān b. Mamlān (416–51/1025–59) but the source material is very scanty and we know little of the details.

This Kurdish ascendancy was soon threatened, as elsewhere in the Zagros and southern Anatolia, by the arrival of the Ghuzz Turkmen tribes. As early as 420/1029 these pasture-hungry nomads had reached Marāgha and killed a number of Kurds. Thereafter the pressure from Turkish tribes was almost continuous. The Turks were much more of a threat to the Kurds than their traditional rivals, the Daylamites or the Armenians, had been. Daylamites and Armenians, being settled farmers, could coexist with transhumant pastoralists like the Kurds; clearly there were sometimes clashes of interests but these could be settled. The Turks on the other hand were sheep-rearing nomads, in direct competition for the rich summer grazing of upland Āẕarbayjān and the days of Kurdish dominance in the Zagros were numbered.

Just as the Kurds were threatened by the Turks, so the Christian Armenian principalities were threatened in the first half of the eleventh century by the expansionist policies of the Byzantine emperors. Gradually the little principalities which had formed a buffer between Christian and Muslim empires since the eighth century were absorbed and, in some cases, the population moved further west in Anatolia. In 1021 Vaspurakan had lost its independence and in 1045 Ani, ancient seat of the great Bagratid family, was also taken over. In the fourth/tenth century, Āẕarbayjān and Armenia were divided into a mosaic of small dominions, each ruled by groups of local origin, Armenian, Daylamite or Kurdish. The fifth/eleventh century saw the end of this period of local autonomy and the whole area became a battleground between two outside powers, the Turks and the Byzantines, with the unfortunate local inhabitants, caught in between, being the main sufferers.

To the north of Āẕarbayjān proper, across the Kūr river, there was a group of small principalities which maintained their independence. In the low-lying areas along the Caspian coasts like Shīrvān and Bāb al-Abwāb these were ruled by Muslim dynasties but further into the

mountains the people were either Christian, like the Georgians, or pagan, like the rulers of a number of small states in the northern Caucasus, whose mythical wealth the Arab geographers liked to describe. Sometimes faced by strong rulers of Āẕarbayjān like Yūsuf b. Abī'l-Sāj and Marzbān, they were obliged to pay tribute, but these powers always proved ephemeral and the principalities soon recovered their autonomy. Among these principalities was the town of Ganja, ruled for many years by a Kurdish dynasty called the Shaddadids. Thanks to the lucky survival of sources and the work of Minorsky, we know more about this state than most others and it is worth discussing its history in some detail, for it is a microcosm of the history of the whole area and provides insight into the political society of the time, the competing claims and interests of nomad, peasant and city dweller, Christian and Muslim, Kurd and Armenian.

Muḥammad b. Shaddād emerged as a tribal leader of consequence in *c.* 340/951, during a disturbed period of Marzbān's reign. He, his family and his clan were welcomed by the people of the city of Dwin to protect them, in the absence of any central authority, from the depredations of the Daylamite soldiery and the Armenians of the highlands which almost surrounded the town; once again the city people seem to have preferred Kurdish protectors to any others. In the absence of his father, Ibrāhīm b. Marzbān tried to subdue the town, first by encouraging the Armenians and others to attack it and then by coming from the capital at Ardabīl in person. But all this was to no avail and Muḥammad established himself in the role, not so much as ruler, but of guardian of the city. He built quarters for himself and his tribesmen outside the city walls. In 343/954 this period of prosperity came to an end when Marzbān himself was able to turn his attention to Dwin. Muḥammad was now betrayed by the Daylamī garrison of the citadel, who went over to the attacker, and then by the townspeople anxious for peace. He and his family retired to the Armenian principality of Vaspurakan around Lake Van, where Kurds and Armenians seem to have coexisted quite happily. From here he tried to gain support from the Byzantine authorities but without effect and he died shortly afterwards in 344/955.

Muḥammad's sons, ʿAlī Lashkarī and Marzbān (not to be confused with the Daylamī leader of the same name), were content to remain as leaders of their small tribe in Vaspurakan but the third son, al-Faḍl, set off with a small band of followers to fight the infidels on the Caucasus frontier. On his way he passed by the city of Ganja then ruled by the Daylamīs; here he was invited to stay, as his father had been at Dwin, to protect the city from brigands in return for a share of the revenues (359/969). From here he wrote to his elder brother, encouraging him

to come and share in the good fortune. ʿAlī was reluctant, remembering how the townspeople of Dwin had betrayed his father, but al-Faḍl was insistent, saying that ʿAlī should not spend all his life serving people (the Armenian rulers of Vaspurakan) who were not only Christian unbelievers but, even worse, settled farmers, an interesting insight into the nomad scale of values. Eventually ʿAlī, Marzbān and the rest of the tribe were induced to come to Ganja. Here in 360/970 they made a formal agreement with the *raʾīs* of the town, Yūsuf al-Qazzāz, a silk merchant judging from his name. This agreement established the terms under which the Shaddadid Kurds would become guardians of the city. ʿAlī and his family fulfilled their side of the bargain, resisting the attempts of Ibrāhīm b. Marzbān to reconquer the city and driving the hated Daylamīs out of the area for good. From then on the family was well established in the city, especially during the long and peaceful reign of al-Faḍl b. Muḥammad who succeeded his brother in 375/985 and ruled until his death in 422/1031. He defended Ganja against the Georgians and other attackers and agreed to submit peacefully to the Seljuks when they arrived in the area.

What emerges from the story of the Shaddadids is a clear picture of the interaction of urban and nomad groups that must have characterized other areas we know less about. In the absence of a respected central power, the townspeople did not attempt to set up their own militias, as happened for example in northern Italy in the eleventh and twelfth centuries, but turned to the local nomads who were employed as a standing defence force, their leaders being essentially *condottieri*. Perhaps the nearest equivalent is the relationship in medieval Russia between the urban leaders of Novgorod and the princes whom they employed to guard the city. The system suited both parties; the townspeople were protected and enjoyed a wide measure of urban autonomy without having to do military duties for which they were both untrained and unwilling, while the nomads were given a secure income and status without abandoning their military traditions. It was a political arrangement which could work very well as it seems to have done at Ganja where for a century, townspeople and nomads worked together in harmony.

Further west, in southern Anatolia, the Kurds were also increasingly politically active. After the breakdown of the Hamdanid regime in the later fourth/tenth century (see below, pp. 280–2), the Kurds of this area too began to establish their own principalities. The founder of the main dynasty (known rather confusingly as the Marwanids, having nothing to do with the branch of the Umayyad family of the same name) was a chieftain called Bādh, who is described as a huge ugly brigand and

chief of the Ḥumaydī Kurds. Under Hamdanid rule, the Kurds of the mountains to the north of the Jazīra had been fairly peaceful but the attempts of ʿAḍud al-Dawla to establish firm central authority meant that they were bound to resist, probably because the government tried to control their access to winter pastures in the northern Jazīra; the Hamdanids had had a working relationship with the Kurds of this area, the Buyids had not. Bādh and his tribesmen began to defy the Buyids from 372/982 onwards. Like the Hamdanids before them, the Kurds were always able to retreat to their mountain fastnesses if the Turkish cavalry threatened to overwhelm them on the plains. In 374/984, the government of Ṣamṣām al-Dawla agreed that Bādh should control Diyār Bakr and the western part of the Ṭūr ʿAbdīn. His ambitions did not stop there, however, and in 379/990 he gathered an army of 5,000 Kurds to march on Mosul itself. This time he was opposed by two surviving members of the Hamdanid family, Ibrāhīm and al-Ḥusayn, and they proceeded to recruit soldiers from one group whose livelihood was directly threatened by the activities of Bādh, the ʿUqaylī and Numayrī Arab tribesmen of the Jazīra whose pastures might be taken over by the Kurds. They were fewer in number than the Kurds but their horsemen were said to have been more mobile than their opponents and they were able to drive them from the open plains of the northern Jazīra. Bādh was killed during the flight but his sister's son, al-Ḥasan b. Marwān, escaped to the mountains with 500 horsemen, where he was able to establish himself in the small city of Mayyāfāriqīn (modern Silvan).

Al-Ḥasan b. Marwān ruled from Mayyāfāriqīn for seven years, from 380 to 387 (990–7) and consolidated the hold of the dynasty over a considerable area of south-eastern Anatolia. He took measures in 382/992–3 to defend Akhlāṭ and Manzikert from Byzantine attacks and thus extended his influence in the area to the north of Lake Van. He made a twenty-year truce with the Byzantines which effectively safeguarded the northern frontier of the state. But the centre of the principality remained Mayyāfāriqīn and Āmid, together with Arzan, a sort of family shrine where al-Ḥasan's blind father Marwān lived on in retirement. He also had to come to terms with the people of the main town. The *amīr* suspected the inhabitants of Mayyāfāriqīn of favouring the Hamdanids and he took brutal measures against some of the leading citizens. The people of Āmid, however, were a more difficult proposition and they had an ally in Sharwa b. Mamma, the son of al-Ḥasan's *wazīr*. When the *amīr* attempted to assert his authority in Āmid as he had done at the capital, a conspiracy of the leading citizens, headed by the *qāḍī*, succeeded in murdering him. Sharwa then secured the succession of al-Ḥasan's brother Saʿīd who was granted the honorific tide of Mumahhid

al-Dawla by the ʿAbbasid caliphate, the first member of the family to be so honoured. His authority was generally accepted except in Āmid. Here the *qāḍī* Yūsuf b. Damna held out with the support of the leading citizens and the *amīr* was forced to come to terms; Ibn Damna would rule the town in return for a payment of 200,000 *dirhams* to the *amīr* and the mention of his name in the *khuṭba* and on the coinage. As at Ganja, the power of the urban patriciate to negotiate on equal terms with would-be *amīrs* and organize their own affairs becomes apparent. Ibn Damna carried on independent correspondence with the Buyids, the Fatimids and even with the Byzantine emperor, Basil II. The town also had its own *ʿaskar* or military force. Ibn Damna ruled Āmid for twenty-eight years, effectively independent from the Marwanid *amīr* in Mayyāfāriqīn, and it was remembered as a period of great prosperity in the history of the city.

In 401/1011 Sharwa was persuaded by a *ghulām* of his to arrange the assassination of the *amīr* and to assume power in his own name. This time he was not as successful as before. Mayyāfāriqīn was taken over but the governor of Arzan, where old, blind Marwān still lived, resisted. The leaders of the Kurdish tribes refused to accept the usurpation and turned to the dead ruler's brother, Abū Naṣr, living in semi-exile in Sīʿird in the extreme east of the Marwanid domains. Sharwa fortified himself in Mayyāfāriqīn, supported by the Georgian *ghilmān* he had recruited but opposed by many of the townspeople who suspected him of wanting to turn the city over the Byzantines, and it was the shaykhs of the city who obliged him to surrender to Abū Naṣr who had him executed.

The fall of Sharwa marked the beginning of the reign of the greatest ruler of the dynasty; for half a century (401–53/1011–61) Abū Naṣr, who took the title of Naṣr al-Dawla, remained *amīr*. It was a golden age for Mayyāfāriqīn and the surrounding area. The Marwanid state extended as far as Akhlāṭ and the Muslim areas to the north of Lake Van in the north-east, but the centre of their power lay on the routes from the Anatolian plateau to the plains of the Jazīra, at Mayyāfāriqīn in the centre, Arzan and Sīʿird (which commanded the route to the Van area via Badlīs) to the east and the semi-independent city of Āmid to the west. Until the coming of the Ghuzz Turks in 433/1041–2, there were no serious external threats to the state. The Byzantines were cautious and seem to have accepted the Marwanids, like the Hamdanids and the Mirdasids of Aleppo, as a buffer state between them and the wider Muslim world. Neither the Mirdasids, nor the ʿUqaylids of Mosul, both dynasties based on the bedouin Arab tribes of northern Syria and al-Jazīra, had any reason to invade the mountains to the north. The Marwanids usually acknowledged the sovereignty of the ʿAbbasid caliphate

but maintained correspondence with the Fatimids as well and neither of the rival caliphates sought to exert pressure on them.

The failure of Sharwa's attempted coup and the accession of Naṣr al-Dawla had shown that the real power of the dynasty still lay with the Kurdish tribesmen and apart from the Georgians recruited by Sharwa, there seems to have been no significant body of *ghilmān*. As usual in tribal states, the ruling kin remained very important and Naṣr al-Dawla, like his brothers before him, took care to provide for members of his own family. The administration of the Marwanid domains was more developed than that of some other Kurdish principalities. As in the Buyid amirates, relations between the ruler and the local people were conducted by the *wazīr*. After the death of Sharwa, Naṣr al-Dawla attempted to do without a *wazīr* for two years but his affairs became so disorganized that he had to recruit a new one. He turned not to one of his own subjects, but an outsider from a family of professional bureaucrats, al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī al-Maghribī. His grandfather and father had been *wazīrs* to Sayf al-Dawla the Hamdanid but his father ʿAlī abandoned Saʿd al-Dawla, Sayf's successor, for the lusher pastures of the Fatimid court. Here his son, al-Ḥusayn, was educated in the bureaucratic tradition and rose high in the administration of the Caliph al-Ḥākim. Unlike so many of that monarch's servants, he escaped from Cairo with his life and took service with the Buyids of Iraq then with Qirwāsh, the ʿUqaylid ruler of Mosul, before he was recruited in 415/1024–5 by Naṣr al-Dawla whose *wazīr* he remained until his death in 418/1027. After this, Naṣr was again forced to scout around and picked on another professional, Ibn Jahīr, then at Mosul but unemployed and out of favour with the ruling ʿUqaylids. Ibn Jahīr became *wazīr* for the rest of the reign. The history of the wazirate is interesting, since it shows how important such free-lance administrators had become. Talented and experienced men could leave the service of one dynasty and find employment with another, their education and abilities always being sought after. Both as authors and as patrons, this class of free-lance bureaucrats was important for the literary culture of the day. We also know that the Marwanids had an official called the *ʿāriḍ al-jaysh* to administer the army but we know little of the military organization; most unusually for the period, the chronicler of the Marwanids, Ibn al-Fāriqī, has more to say of peaceful developments than of military campaigns.

The main centres of Marwanid power lay on the transhumance routes from the Anatolian plateau to the plains and there is no doubt that the Marwanids used this position to maintain contact and influence with the Kurdish tribes. Unlike the ʿUqaylids, however, the rulers did not, on the whole, live in tribal encampments but exercised power from their

palaces in Mayyāfāriqīn. They were heavily dependent on the townspeople and nothing contributed more to Naṣr al-Dawla's success than the partnership between the dynasty and the urban élites. Āmid remained more or less autonomous.

In 415/1024–5 Ibn Damna was killed in a domestic intrigue and Naṣr al-Dawla took over the town. The city was obliged to share a *qāḍī* with Mayyāfāriqīn, but the *amīr* appointed his own son as his deputy and allowed him his own *wazīr*, suggesting some administrative independence. Later in 429/1037–8, a new *qāḍī*, Ibn Baghl, was appointed from among the leading citizens and he became effective ruler of the town under the *amīr*'s son. In the capital, Mayyāfāriqīn, civic autonomy never developed as it did in Āmid, although the leading merchants were influential and wealthy. Naṣr al-Dawla lived something of a transhumant life himself. In the spring the court would abandon the capital and migrate up the valley of the Batman Su. In an almost lyrical passage, Ibn al-Fāriqī explains how they would enjoy the meadows and the flowers of the spring until they returned to Mayyāfāriqīn in the summer.

The result of this peace and the large measure of civic autonomy was a period of great urban prosperity. Public works were undertaken, notably the building of city walls, bridges (important for the transhumant Kurds) and the city water supplies. Until the time of the Hamdanids, the people of Mayyāfāriqīn had been dependent on wells for their drinking water. Sayf al-Dawla had brought a canal of fresh water to the Hamdanid palace on the city walls, but under the Marwanids, two more canals were brought, not by the ruler, but by leading citizens of the town. The position of the towns on the north–south routes clearly encouraged trade and the leading citizens of both Āmid and Mayyāfāriqīn had their wealth and influence firmly based on the *sūqs*. However, this wealth does not seem to have been entirely confined to the Muslim urban élite; in the 1030s the Jacobite patriarch of Antioch, Dionysius IV, came to live in Marwanid territory at Āmid to escape Byzantine persecution.

The history of the Marwanid state is only a small fragment of the mosaic of the Muslim commonwealth, but it is an extremely interesting one. Because of the excellence of the main source, we know much more about the nature of government and society than in other parallel states, like ʿUqaylid Mosul or Kakuyid Iṣfahān. The picture that emerges is essentially a favourable one of a society where tribal and urban elements coexist to their mutual benefit. Far from being a disaster for Āmid and Mayyāfāriqīn, the break-up of the ʿAbbasid caliphate brought prosperity and local autonomy there. In Mayyāfāriqīn it even brought a vastly improved water supply. The broad annals of the Muslim world seem to

show a pattern of violence and chaos and it is only through vignettes like this that we can arrive at a corrective picture. The later years of Naṣr al-Dawla's rule were darkened by the increasing threat of the Ghuzz Turkmen, although it was not until after his death that they seriously threatened the state. The vast transformation they effected in the population of the area meant that a new balance had to be worked out between the pastoral and settled communities.

Minorsky has written of the Iranian intermezzo in Persian history between the coming of the Arabs in the first/seventh century and the Turks in the fifth/eleventh. In the Near East as a whole, we can also talk of a Kurdish interlude. In the century 950 to 1050 a number of different Kurdish states were set up in different areas but they had much in common. All were set up in mountainous regions, the natural pasture grounds of the Kurdish tribes, and many were based on the great transhumance routes between summer and winter pastures. On the whole their administrations were primitive, some, like the ʿAnnazids, seem to have lacked any bureaucracy at all, and the ruling kin remained influential as a group in a way they did not in more centralized and bureaucratic states. But the picture is not one of chaos and anarchy as might at first appear. Some of the Kurdish rulers, notably Badr b. Ḥasanūya and Naṣr al-Dawla the Marwanid, left reputations for good government which few of their contemporaries could match. Equally telling are the good relations Kurdish leaders frequently developed with leading citizens with whom they frequently worked in partnership. The collapse of ʿAbbasid rule allowed local élites to emerge and it is fascinating to see how the people of each area developed their own political solutions, a pattern of variety and local autonomy soon to be extinguished by the coming of the Turks.

chapter ten

THE HAMDANIDS

Of all the dynasties which succeeded the ʿAbbasid caliphate, the Hamdanids have perhaps the highest reputation with posterity. This is partly due to the personality of the *amīr*, Sayf al-Dawla, who is seen as a representative of all the Arab virtues of generosity and courage, fighting against overwhelming odds on the Byzantine frontier. This romantic image has been much enhanced by their interest in poetry, notably Sayf al-Dawla's patronage of al-Mutanabbī, arguably the greatest of the classical Arabic poets, and of Sayf al-Dawla's cousin, Abū'l-Firās. Contemporaries were not so favourably impressed, however; the geographer Ibn Ḥawqal, who travelled through the Hamdanid domains, was deeply critical of their oppressive policies, painting a grim picture of over-taxation and exploitation. Even the capital of Aleppo seems to have been more prosperous under the following Mirdasid dynasty than under the Hamdanids. After the first generation of Nāṣir al-Dawla in Mosul (d. 358/969) and Sayf al-Dawla in Aleppo (d. 356/967) they produced few leaders of great ability and while Mosul soon fell to the Buyids, Hamdanid Aleppo was ruled more by their *ghilmān* than by members of the dynasty. Nor should we imagine that the Hamdanids were bedouin chiefs of the traditional sort. They rose to power originally because of the support they could command among their Taghlibī fellow-tribesmen but as soon as they established a territorial base, they dispensed with this support, preferring to base their power on taxation and an army of salaried *ghilmān*. In this way the Hamdanid state was more similar to Buyid Iraq or Ikhshidid Egypt than to bedouin states like the Mirdasids and ʿUqaylids which succeeded it.

The Hamdanids of Mosul

The Hamdanids were drawn from the Banū Taghlib, a tribe which had grazed the Jazīra area since pre-Islamic times. During the anarchy in

Sāmarrā, if not before, they had come to dominate the city of Mosul, and various Taghlibī chiefs succeeded each other as governors, defending the city against the Khārijī brigands of the steppe lands who had threatened the area since later Umayyad times. Around 266/879 they were replaced by a Turkish soldier ʿĪsā b. Kundājīq in an effort to restore the power of the Baghdad government in the area with the natural result that the Taghlibī chiefs, among them Ḥamdān b. Ḥamdūn, went over to the Khārijīs in an effort to recover their position, and disorder spread throughout the Jazīra. In 279/892 the new Caliph al-Muʿtaḍid determined to re-establish order in the area and in a series of campaigns he reduced most of the dissidents to obedience. Ḥamdān was one of the most stubborn in resistance and he was strengthened by his hold over various strong points in the mountains to the north of the Jaziran plain. In the period before al-Muʿtaḍid's advance he had acquired a series of strong points, notably Mārdīn, to the west and Ardamusht near Jazīrat Ibn ʿUmar (now Cizre) in the east, and he also seems to have reached a working alliance with the Kurdish tribes of the foothills. This meant that Ḥamdān was more than simply a bedouin chief; the refuge offered by the mountain fortresses and the relationship with the Kurds were important factors in the survival of the Hamdanids in the years to come.

Ḥamdān's career ended in failure when, in 282/895, after an epic chase, he was forced to give himself up to al-Muʿtaḍid in Mosul. This surrender might have seemed the end of the family fortunes as it was for other local leaders in the area, had not his son, al-Ḥusayn, made himself useful to the government. In 283/896 he was released from prison and allowed to recruit a small army of his followers to fight against the remaining Khārijīs in the Jazīra. The campaign was a success and in return for his services, al-Ḥusayn was able to request, not only that his father be released, but that the taxes on the Banū Taghlib should be remitted and that he should be allowed to recruit a body of 500 Taghlibīs to form a group in the armies of the caliphate and be paid by the government. This secured his position, not only with the caliph but also among the Taghlib. To the caliph he offered a group of experienced warriors under his own skilled and loyal leadership; to the Taghlib, and other people in the Jazīra, he offered the prospect of salaries and booty; and to his own family military command and the opportunity of acquiring wealth in government services. It was in fact not as an independent tribal leader, but rather as an intermediary between government and the Arabs and Kurds of the Jazīra that al-Ḥusayn made the family fortune. His troops were conspicuous in ʿAbbasid campaigns, especially against the Qarāmiṭa (see above, pp. 184–5), the bedouin heretics who were such an intractable problem for the ʿAbbasid government of the time,

where their experience made them particularly valuable, but also in campaigns in the Jibāl and during the ʿAbbasid reconquest of Egypt in 292/904–5.

By the end of al-Muktafī's reign in 295/908, al-Ḥusayn had established his position as one of the leading generals in the armies of the caliphs while other members of his family were rewarded with office elsewhere, the most important of these being in the old Taghlibī preserve of Mosul, where al-Ḥusayn's brother, Abū'l-Hayjā', was appointed governor in 293/905. These two centres of power, in Mosul and in the army of the caliph, enabled the family to survive storms which destroyed less well-established families. Al-Ḥusayn was naturally drawn into Baghdad politics; in 296/908 he was one of the leaders of the abortive coup against al-Muqtadir launched in the name of Ibn al-Muʿtazz (see above, p. 191), but he seems to have lost his nerve and fled to Mosul when he saw that the *putsch* was encountering resistance. Other leading participants were executed, but Abū'l-Hayjā' negotiated a reprieve for his brother, who saw government service again in the Jibāl and finally as governor of the area of Diyār Rabīʿa to the west of Mosul. In 302–3/914–15 he became involved in another rebellion. This time it seems to have been in protest against the attempts of ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā to reduce government spending and his own exclusion from power in Baghdad. It is a measure of his continuing influence in the area that he was able to raise a force of 30,000 Arabs and Kurds but the rebellion failed when he was captured by the forces of the leading ʿAbbasid general Mu'nis and taken to Baghdad, where, in 306/918, he was executed.

Once again the influence of the family appeared to have been destroyed but, as before, they proved too useful and well entrenched to be excluded from power for long and Abū'l-Hayjā' was soon back in government service. Like his brother, he distinguished himself against the Qarāmiṭa. In 312/924 he had been captured by the rebels while escorting the *ḥajj* but was able to negotiate not only his own release but that of the other captives as well. This apparently close relationship with the Qarāmiṭa, who usually put their prisoners to death, has been seen by Canard, the great historian of the dynasty, as a sign of sympathy between the Ismāʿīlī Qarāmiṭa and the Shīʿī Hamdanids. Despite the early involvement of the family with the Khārijīs, the Hamdanids are usually said to have been a Shīʿī dynasty. In practice this seems to have affected their policies very little; they were, in fact, prepared to acknowledge the sovereignty of ʿAbbasids, Buyids or Fatimids, depending on political circumstances. The Hamdanids flourished before the division between Sunnīs and Shīʿīs had become as clear-cut as it was to be later. Soon after this, we find the Qarāmiṭa actually being recruited into the ʿAbbasid

armies, and the occasional signs we find of cordiality between them and the Hamdanids are probably the result of common political interests of the moment rather than of lasting religious sympathy. During the crisis of 315/927, Abū'l-Hayjā' played a key role in defending Iraq from Qarmaṭī attack.

Abu'l-Hayjā' left the affairs of Mosul in the hands of his son al-Ḥasan while he himself became increasingly entangled in the complexities of Baghdad politics. Unlike his dead brother al-Ḥusayn, however, he was on consistently good terms with Mu'nis, with whom he worked on numerous occasions and it was his alliance with Mu'nis and the policies of ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā which was to cause his downfall; in 317/929 he was a leading supporter of al-Qāhir in his unsuccessful coup and was killed fighting bravely to defend his candidate for the throne (see above, p. 192).

The ups and downs of Baghdad politics did not destroy the position of the family in the Jazīra and from this time on, Mosul and its surroundings are the centre of family activities. After Abū'l-Hayjā''s death, leadership in the family was divided among his surviving brothers and his son, al-Ḥasan, who gradually established his supremacy. The Hamdanids refused to be drawn into further rebellions against al-Muqtadir and supported him in his final struggle against Mu'nis who even occupied Mosul for a time. By 324/935 the authorities in Baghdad had been obliged to accept al-Ḥasan as ruler of Mosul and the Jazīra as far as the Byzantine frontier in exchange for a payment of 70,000 *dīnārs* a year and supplies of flour for Baghdad and Sāmarrā. From this time on the power of the family was established. It had also changed its nature. Ḥusayn b. Ḥamdān had come to power by raising Taghlibī troops for the caliph, but relations between the Ḥamdānīs and their fellow-tribesmen gradually became more distant and we no longer hear of Taghlibī troops under their command. A key stage in this process seems to have occurred in 323/935 when a rival Taghlibī chief, al-ʿAlā' b. al-Muʿammar from the Ḥābib clan in the area of Niṣībīn, took 10,000 of his followers and crossed the frontier to Byzantium to escape Hamdanid control and, above all, Hamdanid taxation. There were several factors involved in this unprecedented move. The Taghlib had been a Christian tribe for many years after the Muslim conquest, and it is possible that many of its members still held to their old faith and this would have made Byzantine authority much more acceptable than it would have been to a Muslim group. It also seems likely that the Taghlib were coming under increasing pressure in their native grazing areas from aggressive tribes like the ʿUqayl and Numayr, moving into the area from the south and that the removal to Byzantine territory was forced on them.

The movement of such a large number across the frontier is said by contemporaries to have been an important factor in Byzantine successes in the area and it is certainly ironical that in the very year that al-Ḥasan's authority was recognized over the whole area, the Taghlib tribe should have disappeared as a political force. The Hamdanids did not, then, base their power on their tribal following. Certainly Arabs were mentioned in their forces but they came from tribes like the ʿUqayl and the Numayr, not the Taghlib, and usually figure as irregulars and temporary allies rather than as regular supporters.

In the main, the Hamdanids, like most of their contemporaries, seem to have relied on *ghilmān* of Turkish extraction for their armed forces, often recruiting those who were dissatisfied with the government in Baghdad. The Kurdish element was probably important as well. The early Hamdanids seem to have established close relations with the Kurds who wintered on the plains of the Jazīra, notably the Hadhbānīs around the Zāb and the Jalālī Kurds further south around Shahrazūr, and the mountain fortresses especially which played so important a part in Hamdanid survival were often in Kurdish territory. Members of the dynasty intermarried with Kurds as well; both Abū'l-Hayjā' and his grandson Abū Taghlib had Kurdish mothers and these connections may well have brought military support. Certainly when the dynasty's last stronghold in the Mosul area, Ardamusht, was surrendered to ʿAḍud al-Dawla the Hamdanid commanders in the fortress were a Kurd and a Turkish *ghulām*.

The Hamdanids then, in both Syria and Mosul, asserted their authority by means of a professional army recruited from different sources. Like all their rivals, they were faced with the problem of paying them and both al-Ḥasan and his son and successor Abū Taghlib were faced by mutinies of their Turkish soldiers. The revenues to pay this force were drawn from the towns and countryside of the Jazīra and the geographer Ibn Ḥawqal gives a breakdown of the sources of revenue from the Niṣībīn area. The main source of revenue, as everywhere in the Muslim world, was the land-tax collected in kind: 10,000 *kurr* (a dry measure of approximately 2,500 kg) of grain valued at 5 million *dirhams* (about 300,000 *dīnārs*). The *jizya* from the Christians, by contrast, raised only 5,000 *dīnārs*, a tax on wine brought in 5,000 *dīnārs* and on food markets the same amount. Urban rents, including inns (*khāns*), baths, mills, shops and private houses brought in 16,000 *dīnārs*. This would seem to suggest that the land-tax brought in about ten times as much as urban taxation but this may be misleading. The land-tax was collected in kind and valued whereas urban taxes seem to have been collected in coin. Whether the theoretical value of the grain was ever realized in fact

is not clear and it is probable that urban dues paid in *dīnārs* were essential for paying troops and other government expenses which had to be settled in cash. Ibn Ḥawqal describes how he was at Mosul in 358/969 when the accounts were presented to Abū Taghlib and criticizes what he considered to be over-taxation. All the Hamdanids had secretaries but it is not clear that there was any elaborate administration at Mosul, and the ease with which the court could take refuge in the mountains if necessary suggests that it may have been fairly basic.

Among the outgoings of the Hamdanids of Mosul, the payment of tribute to the Buyids was a major factor. In the later years of al-Ḥasan Nāṣir al-Dawla, this tribute seems to have been assessed at between 2 and 4 million *dirhams* per year, when it was paid at all. Abū Taghlib, in a much weaker position, was obliged to find 6 million *dirhams*. It is probable that payments of that size made it very difficult for him to recruit and pay enough *ghilmān* to maintain his position. As always, political and financial weakness went together; rulers were so anxious to be independent since it was almost impossible to pay a large tribute and maintain a regular *ghulām* army.

The establishment of al-Ḥasan as ruler of the Jazīra by the agreement of 324/935 did not mark the end of the ambitions of the family in Baghdad. The intrigues which surrounded the office of *amīr al-umarā'* tempted al-Ḥasan to play a part and when in 330/942 the caliph, al-Muttaqī, and the leading Turkish officer, Tūzūn, both urged him to try to drive the Barīdīs from Baghdad, he allowed himself to be persuaded. He marched south and was installed as *amīr al-umarā'* in the capital with the title of Nāṣir al-Dawla, but despite his good intentions, the attempt was not a success. The problems were, as always, financial, especially as the Barīdīs were still in control of the rich lands of southern Iraq. Nāṣir al-Dawla sent his brother, ʿAlī, with an army to conduct the war in the south, as a reward for which he was given his famous honorific Sayf al-Dawla (Sword of the State). Sayf al-Dawla's army was composed of Turks, Daylamites and Qarmaṭīs with irregular support from Kurds and Numayrī, Kilābī and Asadī Arab tribesmen. The campaign had only been under way a short time when Tūzūn led a mutiny in the army and this, coupled with disturbances in Baghdad, forced the Ḥamdānīs to withdraw. Nāṣir al-Dawla, however, never forgot that he had once ruled in Baghdad and it made him very unwilling to accept the suzerainty of the Buyids who came to occupy the office.

Nāṣir al-Dawla retired to Mosul where he reached an agreement with the new *amīr al-umarā'*, Tūzūn, allowing him the Jazīra and northern Syria (which he did not in fact possess) in exchange for an enlarged tribute of 3.6 million *dirhams*. From this time on Nāṣir al-Dawla had a

tributary relationship with the rulers of Baghdad. It was, however, a constantly changing relationship depending on varying fortunes of each side. Nāṣir al-Dawla paid the tribute when he was forced, but took every opportunity to avoid it. On several occasions, in 334/946 for example, and at the time of Rūzbahān's rebellion against the Buyids in 345/956–7 (see above, p. 221), the Hamdanids attempted to retake Baghdad, capitalizing on rivalries among the Daylamites and between Daylamites and Turks, but they were never able to maintain themselves in the city. Muʿizz al-Dawla, in retaliation, tried to take over the Hamdanid lands and on several occasions he actually captured Mosul itself. Hamdanid tactics on these occasions were simple but effective; unable to withstand Buyid armies in the open field, they abandoned Mosul and retired to the foothills of the mountains and the fortresses like Mārdīn and Ardamusht where they kept their treasure, being careful to take with them all records of government properties and taxation. The invading forces found themselves unable to find supplies and harassed by the guerrilla tactics of the Hamdanid supporters and the hostility of the people of the cities to the Daylamite forces. After a short occupation, the Buyids would be forced to make terms again and the Hamdanids could return to Mosul. The most serious of these attacks was in 347–8/958–9 when Nāṣir al-Dawla was forced to flee to his brother Sayf al-Dawla in Aleppo who received him with honour. It was Sayf al-Dawla who negotiated a new agreement with Muʿizz al-Dawla and from this time on the Aleppo branch of the family seems to have been more powerful than the Mosul one, extending its influence over Diyār Muḍar on the east bank of the Euphrates.

In the end, family conflicts damaged the Hamdanid cause more than Buyid attacks. In 353/964 Muʿizz al-Dawla launched another attack; once more Nāṣir al-Dawla was driven out of Mosul and fled to the hills but this time the counter-attack was led by his son, Abū Taghlib, who eventually came to a new arrangement, a sign that the old man had ceased to be an effective leader. In 356/967 his brother, Sayf al-Dawla, with whom he had maintained good relations, died; not only was this a personal loss for Nāṣir al-Dawla but it also meant that the Hamdanids of Aleppo were unable to offer the Mosul branch any further support against Buyid aggression. Nāṣir al-Dawla's increasing feebleness was shown by his failure to take advantage of the death of his old rival Muʿizz al-Dawla in the same year and he was confined by his sons to the fortress at Ardamusht where he died two years later.

Nāṣir al-Dawla was succeeded as head of the family by his son Abū Taghlib, whose leadership was accepted by most of his brothers. Family unity had been a major source of strength for the Hamdanids in earlier generations but this advantage was now dissipated. It seems that Nāṣir

al-Dawla had considered passing the succession not to Abū Taghlib, but to another son by a different mother, Ḥamdān, and in his last years he had established him in an apanage around Niṣībīn, Mārdīn and Raḥba. Ḥamdān now refused to accept his brother's authority and open warfare developed between the two. This rivalry was complicated by relations with the Buyids. Whereas Nāṣir al-Dawla had been a deadly rival of Muʿizz al-Dawla, Abū Taghlib generally remained on good terms with his son and successor, Bakhtiyār; unlike his father, Abū Taghlib had no claims to authority in Baghdad while Bakhtiyār had too many problems maintaining himself in Iraq to spare much time for aggressive moves against Mosul. These good relations did not, however, prevent Bakhtiyār from giving Ḥamdān and other dissident members of the family a place of refuge when necessary, and Ḥamdān was able to maintain himself as a constant threat to his brother's authority. In 362/973 Bakhtiyār actually took Mosul and one of the conditions of the subsequent peace was that Ḥamdān should be re-established in all his old properties. In 367/977 it was Bakhtiyār's turn to seek help against his aggressive cousin ʿAḍud al-Dawla who had driven him out of Baghdad, and Abū Taghlib promised to support him in exchange for Ḥamdān who was handed over and executed. But the family unity which resulted had come too late; ʿAḍud al-Dawla did not overlook the support Abū Taghlib had given his defeated rival and he soon began to advance on Mosul. This time the Buyids were much more organized, ʿAḍud al-Dawla brought with him men who were familiar with the administration of Mosul and the old Ḥamdānī tactics failed, Mayyāfāriqīn, Āmid and even the fortress at Ardamusht were taken by siege. Abū Taghlib was forced eventually to flee across the Syrian desert to Palestine where he tried to persuade the Fatimid authorities to grant him the governorate of Damascus. In doing so he made powerful enemies, notably the Ṭayy chief Daghfal b. Mufarrij, and was finally killed at Ramla (369/979).

Abū Taghlib's surviving brothers, al-Ḥusayn and Ibrāhīm, took service with ʿAḍud al-Dawla who was thus assured of peaceful possession of the Jazīra. Hamdanid rule in the area had effectively come to an end, but there was to be a postscript. Under ʿAḍud al-Dawla's weaker successors, Buyid control in the area was challenged by the Kurds under Bādh, the effective founder of the Marwanid dynasty, and the then Buyid leader, Bahā' al-Dawla, hoped to use al-Ḥusayn and Ibrāhīm to form a coalition against the invaders. In 379/989 the brothers re-established Hamdanid rule in Mosul, basing their power largely on the ʿUqaylī tribesmen who were now influential in the area. But while the ʿUqaylis succeeded in restricting the Kurds to the mountainous areas to the north, they were not prepared to accept Hamdanid leadership for old

time's sake. The ʿUqaylī leaders established themselves in Mosul and killed al-Ḥusayn, while Ibrāhīm was released by the Kurds and took service with the Fatimids in Egypt and Syria. Though there seems to have been some pro-Hamdanid feeling in cities like Mosul and Mayyāfāriqīn, based on hostility to the Daylamites, the last Hamdanids of the Mosul branch lacked the support of either a powerful tribal backing or a strong central government and their attempt was doomed to failure.

The Hamdanids of Aleppo

The establishment of the Hamdanids in Aleppo and north Syria came later than at Mosul. While the Banū Taghlib had long been influential in the Jazīra, they had no traditional interest in the lands to the west of the Euphrates, and the Hamdanids had not shown any concern with the area until after Nāṣir al-Dawla's failure to maintain himself in Iraq as *amīr al-umarā*' in 330/942. Nāṣir al-Dawla himself retired to Mosul but his ambitious younger brother, ʿAlī Sayf al-Dawla who had been his chief military commander in the unsuccessful Iraqi campaign, sought a new area in which to establish himself. Aleppo was at this time more or less under the authority of the *ikhshīd*, the ruler of Egypt who governed mostly through Turkish officers who had left Baghdad to seek their fortunes elsewhere (see below, pp. 311–13). As far as the *ikhshīd* was concerned, Aleppo itself does not seem to have been of paramount concern; he was able to accept a stable buffer state against both Byzantines to the north and Iraqi generals from the east, but he was determined to keep Damascus and Palestine under his control. In 333/944 Sayf al-Dawla was able to take over Aleppo with the support of the leading bedouin tribe of the area, the Banū Kilāb who inhabited the steppe lands to the east and south-east of the city.

For the first decade of his reign, Sayf al-Dawla was preoccupied with reaching agreements to establish his position with the *ikhshīd* and his successors and with the Arab tribes. After his success in Aleppo, Sayf al-Dawla made an attempt to take Damascus as well, but the *ikhshīd* himself came to put a stop to this and a peace was arranged the next year (334/945) which allowed Sayf al-Dawla control over Aleppo, Antioch and Homs but not over Tripoli and Damascus. Despite a renewed attempt on Damascus by Sayf al-Dawla after the *ikhshīd*'s death, these areas were to be the continuing centres of the Hamdanid state in Syria. The political division between Aleppo and the frontier areas on one hand and Damascus and Palestine on the other was to persist into the fifth/eleventh century, when the Mirdasids to the north and the Fatimids in the south divided the area between them.

Sayf al-Dawla's other major problem in the early years of his reign was his relations with the bedouin tribes. The key to his policy in this area was his alliance with the Kilāb who had played an important part in establishing him in Aleppo in the first place. This was not always an easy alliance but the strategic position of the tribal lands near Aleppo and the ability to cut communications with the east made it essential to handle their leaders with care. Further south the Kalb of the Homs region, who had played so important a part in Umayyad politics, were more hostile; many of them had been connected with the Qarmaṭī revolts in the area and probably resented the Hamdanid alliance with their Kilābī rivals. In 344/955 Sayf al-Dawla was faced with a major rebellion of all the tribal groups including the Kilāb in the north, and the Kalb, ʿUqayl and Numayr in the Salamiyya region to the east of Homs. He crushed it by dividing his opponents. The Kilāb were allowed to make peace on easy terms, the others were ruthlessly chastised, many being driven out to the desert to die of thirst. This campaign altered the nomad geography of the Syrian steppe considerably. The Numayrīs were encouraged to move across the Euphrates to the Jazīra while the Kalb were forced to move away from their traditional centres around Homs to the Jawlān (Golan) further in the south. The Kilāb, on the other hand, were allowed to expand south into the old Kalb lands and it seems that this increased territory led other members of the tribe to migrate to the area from Iraq thus confirming their preponderance in northern Syria.

The crushing of the bedouin revolt probably marks the high point of Sayf al-Dawla's success and power. His state was based on the area of central Syria from Homs to Aleppo and on the eastern part of the Jazīra where Mayyāfāriqīn became a sort of second capital, increasingly important in later years when Byzantine pressure from the west increased. The coastal areas of Syria as far south as Ṭarṭūs but excluding Tripoli were also in Hamdanid hands. It would also seem that Sayf al-Dawla exercised some suzerainty over Antioch and even Maṣṣīṣa and Tarsus in the Cilician plain, although these seem to have been independent for practical purposes. Canard remarks that the state was Mesopotamian rather than Syrian in character; certainly none of the Hamdanids seem to have made any effort to develop a fleet and conduct a Mediterranean policy as the Fatimids were to do. Sayf al-Dawla's power rested on the members of his family, his alliance with the Kilāb and other bedouin tribes, and on the force of *ghilmān* he recruited. The Hamdanid family were important in the establishment of Hamdanid power and were employed in governing key centres like Homs and Manbij, where Sayf al-Dawla's cousin and "court poet" Abū'l-Firās was governor. In addition his nephew Muḥammad, son of Nāṣir al-Dawla of Mosul, often acted as his deputy

in Aleppo. Bedouin leaders are also found in his entourage and as governors, but as the reign progressed, the *ghilmān* became more and more influential. In 338/950 he had 2,000 of them, led by a Turkish officer, when he consolidated his power in the Jazīra, and later in the reign they came to hold many key posts. After Sayf al-Dawla's death, his *ghilmān* were an important factor in the politics of the area, some of them trying to become independent or accepting Fatimid overlordship. Hamdanid Syria, like Hamdanid Mosul, was not basically an Arab tribal state; it was rather based on the principles of late ʿAbbasid government, with its extensive use of *ghilmān*, and it is useful to remember how closely Sayf al-Dawla had been involved in Baghdad politics before he ever came to Syria.

Much of Sayf al-Dawla's reputation, both with his contemporaries and posterity, rested on his role as a champion of Islam against the military might of the Byzantine empire and before discussing his contribution, it is appropriate to consider the history of the frontier throughout the early Islamic period.

After the initial success of the Arab conquests, the Byzantines retained control of the highlands of Anatolia as far as the passes through the Taurus mountains. At first the Muslims seem to have preferred to keep the land to the south of this as a no man's land, a sort of cordon sanitaire, between them and the enemy. Muslim forces tended to concentrate on bases to the rear like Antioch and Dābiq. The Cilician plain, which had been rich and prosperous in classical antiquity, was left almost uninhabited. In the early second/eighth century, however, this position began to change. After the reign of the Umayyad Caliph Sulaymān b. ʿAbd al-Malik (96–9/715–17) there were no more major attacks on Constantinople and it became clear that the Byzantine empire and the Muslim caliphate were going to coexist for some time. This change was confirmed at the time of the ʿAbbasid revolution when Byzantine forces led by Constantine V (741–75) began to take the initiative and Muslim cities like Malaṭiya, which had been in Arab hands since the conquests, were threatened by the enemy. Under the later Umayyads and early ʿAbbasids the frontier provinces began to be settled and fortified in depth. In the Cilician plain, Adana, Maṣṣīṣa (Misis) and above all Tarsus became great Muslim cities, while further to the east, Marʿash, Ḥadath and Malaṭiya became centres of population and military activity. These Muslim outposts were mostly urban in character and all were situated in the plains or river valleys, while the Byzantines were restricted to the highlands and the cities of the plateau to the north. The Muslims continued to raid Byzantine territory and, sometimes, as in the later years of Hārūn's reign (187–93/803–9) and the reign of al-Muʿtaṣim

(218–27/833–42), there were full-scale military campaigns, but the objectives were booty and prisoners, and the demonstration of the caliph's role as defender of Islam, rather than the acquisition of new territory.

For 200 years, the Muslim cities of the frontier provinces enjoyed security and growing prosperity. It has been suggested that they were major centres of Arab–Byzantine trade but there is no evidence for large-scale cross-border commerce and we hear mostly of exchanges of prisoners and ransoms. The wealth of the area was derived from local commerce and industry, especially the textile workshops of Tarsus. They also enjoyed a very favourable fiscal status since rates of taxation were kept low on the frontiers in order to encourage settlement and because the frontier cities received continuous subsidies from other parts of the Muslim world on account of their role in the *jihād* (Holy War). Ibn Ḥawqal, writing in the mid-fourth/tenth century, describes how there were hostels in Tarsus for *ghāzīs*, warriors for the Faith from every corner of the Muslim world, where these volunteers could come and take part in the struggle against the infidel; these hostels were supported by pious donations from the provinces whose *ghāzīs* were lodged there. The prosperity and security of the frontier areas then were largely based on continuing support, both financial and in men, from the rest of the Muslim world.

In the fourth/tenth century, this happy state of affairs began to change. The Byzantine emperors, encouraged by the great military landowning families of eastern Anatolia, began systematic campaigns of conquest. At the same time, the political fragmentation of the Muslim world meant that the traditional support from the rest of the Islamic world was greatly reduced. The Byzantine advance began in earnest in 322/934 when the general John Curcuas took Malaṭiya, the first large Muslim city to fall into Greek hands, the Baghdad government of al-Muqtadir and al-Qāhir being quite unable to send support to the threatened outpost, despite repeated appeals for help. It is against this sombre background that Sayf al-Dawla's role in the *jihād* must be considered.

Even before he became ruler of Aleppo, Sayf al-Dawla had shown his commitment to the *jihād*. In 328/940 he led a foray to the Van area and on to the Byzantine territory to loosen the enemy's grip on the town of Qālīqalā (Erzerum). After he took over Aleppo in 333/945, he could not avoid facing the Byzantines almost every year. Until 345/956 he was moderately successful, holding his own in a long series of raids, ambushes and brief treaties. Sometimes his expeditions were on quite a large scale: in 339/950 he led 30,000 of his own men and 4,000 men of Tarsus into the mountains on a raid which proved disastrous. He also took care to restore frontier fortresses like Marʿash and Ḥadath in

341/952. From 345/956, however, he faced increasing Byzantine pressure, pressure he was quite unable to resist effectively. The main reason for this change seems to have been the arrival on the eastern frontiers of the Byzantine empire of a new commander, Nicephorus Phocas, later to be the emperor, and his brother Leo, and a new army, many of them Armenians, like the young officer John Tzimisces who was to be Nicephorus's successor on the imperial throne. The policy of raids was replaced by one of territorial expansion: in 346/957 the rebuilt Ḥadath was sacked, in 347/958 Sumaysāṭ (Samosata) fell and in 349/960 Sayf al-Dawla suffered a major defeat when his army was attacked in the mountains by the troops of Leo Phocas. He himself escaped but his capacity to resist the Byzantines on anything like equal terms was lost. In 351/962 the Byzantine army attacked Aleppo itself. Sayf al-Dawla had been unable to offer any serious opposition, retired beyond the Euphrates and abandoned the city to its fate. While a small garrison in the citadel continued to resist, the rest of the town and the Hamdanid palace outside the walls were devastated. After this blow, nothing could stop the inexorable advance of Byzantine armies: in the same year Marʿash fell and in 354/965 Maṣṣīṣa and Tarsus were taken and the Byzantines established control over all the rich Cilician plain.

One reason for the success of Byzantine arms at this time was the massive superiority in numbers which they enjoyed. Although the figures are no doubt exaggerated, it is said that Byzantine armies numbered up to 200,000 whereas Sayf al-Dawla could never call on more than 30,000 and usually very much fewer. Furthermore he was unable to call on resources from outwith his own limited domains. When the Byzantines had attempted offensives in the early ʿAbbasid period, Hārūn al-Rashīd or al-Muʿtaṣim had been able to call on the resources of the whole Muslim world and raise up to 100,000 men, but since the fragmentation of the caliphate this was impossible; even his own brother, Nāṣir al-Dawla of Mosul, was unable or unwilling to offer him effective support, still less would the Buyids of Iraq or the *ikhshīd* of Egypt. It was not a question of the Byzantine empire against the Muslim world but rather the Byzantine empire against Sayf al-Dawla's small, northern Syrian principality. Furthermore, the disputes of the rest of the Muslim world were often reflected on the frontiers; in the years before the Byzantine conquest, Cilicia had seen bitter strife between supporters of the Ikhshidids, the Hamdanids and local leaders. Faced with the final crisis, the governor of Tarsus, Rashīq al-Nāsimī, received no outside support at all in his struggle.

This was not because there was no popular enthusiasm for the *jihād*. Byzantine successes, the deportation of Muslim populations and the

conversion of mosques into stables provoked popular indignation in the Muslim world. In 353/964 a group of 5,000 *ghāzīs* from Khurāsān arrived to help defend Maṣṣīṣa against the Byzantines but they were thwarted by famine conditions and retired to Antioch where they formed another party in the already divided city. In 355/966 a large number of Khurāsānīs, 20,000, arrived at Rayy on their way to the Byzantine frontier and demanded vast sums from the Buyid ruler, Rukn al-Dawla, to support them in this enterprise. When this was not forthcoming, they attacked the city, pillaged the palace of the *wazīr* Ibn al-ʿAmīd and almost killed Rukn al-Dawla himself before being dispersed by his Daylamite soldiers; none of them seems to have reached the frontier. In 361/972 refugees brought news of further Byzantine successes to Baghdad and the populace demanded that the caliph and the Buyid ruler, Bakhtiyār, should take action to defend the Muslims, but the politicians diverted the enthusiasm for their own purposes, much of Baghdad was pillaged but the army never set out. Compared with the inaction or indifference of other Muslim rulers, it is not surprising that Sayf al-Dawla's popular reputation remained high; he was the one man who attempted to defend the Faith, the essential hero of the time.

The Byzantine successes had important long-term consequences for the history of the area. Towns like Tarsus and Malaṭiya had for two centuries been Muslim Arabic-speaking centres. The Byzantine conquest changed that for ever. When the Greeks took these cities, they did not simply replace one government by another; they drove out or enslaved all the existing inhabitants and mass deportations to central Anatolia and expulsions to other areas of the Muslim world effectively depopulated the cities. These empty areas required inhabitants and in order to people them, Nicephorus Phocas encouraged Christians living under Muslim rule to come and settle. The historian Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd, who left Egypt to escape the uncertainties of the Fatimid Caliph al-Ḥākim's rule and settled in Byzantine Antioch, was one such. The most extensive settlement was around Malaṭiya. Nicephorus invited the Monophysite (Jacobite) patriarch of Antioch, who normally lived around Raqqa or Ḥarrān, to come north with his followers. The settlement of Christians is reflected in the expansion of the ecclesiastical administration; in the century between 950 and 1050 ten new bishoprics appeared around Malaṭiya, four around Marʿash and five in the area of Sumaysāṭ, and the Chronicle of Michael the Syrian mentions fifty-six new monasteries in the area between 936 and 1047. This influx of Jacobite Christians, who were regarded as heretics by many in the Constantinople establishment, was to cause problems in the next century and in the 1030s the Patriarch

Dionysius IV preferred to live under Muslim rule in Āmid than under Byzantine authority in Malaṭiya. On the coast the cities of Antioch and Laodicea seem to have been settled by Greek Orthodox Christians and, as well as refugees from Egypt like himself, Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd records in 404/1013 that large numbers of Christians from Palestine fled the depredations of the Banū Ṭayy to settle in the area. In Cilicia the most important settlement was the fifth/eleventh-century migration of Armenians from eastern Anatolia. By the year 1050 then, the Muslims had been eliminated from a large swathe of territory along the frontiers and in northern Syria, and Arab civilization had been almost entirely uprooted. When these lands again passed into Muslim hands they were settled not by Arabs but by Turkish-speaking tribesmen.

It was not only on the Byzantine front that Sayf al-Dawla's last years were beset by problems. The last six years of Sayf al-Dawla's life (350–6/961–7) were marked by an almost complete collapse of his government. This was to some extent because he was afflicted by partial paralysis which made it difficult for him to play an active role. The conquest of Aleppo by the Byzantines in 351/962 was a terrible blow to his prestige and power. When the enemy approached the city, he was unable to put up any serious resistance and abandoned the people to their fate. It was the citizens who manned the city walls to resist the attackers and the shaykhs of the city who finally negotiated a treaty with the enemy. It is said that 10,000 prisoners were taken to Byzantine territory, most of them young people, and Aleppo must have been something of a ghost town. Sayf al-Dawla abandoned his capital almost completely and retired across the Euphrates to Mayyāfāriqīn, leaving Aleppo in the care of his *ḥājib* (chamberlain) Qarqūya.

These misfortunes and Sayf al-Dawla's manifest inability to deal with the problems which faced him, led to a number of rebellions. In 354/965 Marwān al-ʿUqaylī, an ex-Qarmaṭī leader long in his service, led a rebellion in the Homs area and was able to enter Aleppo itself before he died of wounds received in the battle for the city. Later the same year there was a major disturbance in Antioch, now directly threatened by Greek advances in the Cilician plain, and led originally by the exiled governor of Tarsus, Rashīq al-Nasīmī. Once again the issue must have been Sayf al-Dawla's failure to protect the area. A force of 5,000 men, led by a Daylamī commander, Dizbar, attacked Aleppo and Sayf al-Dawla himself came west to confront them. His prestige was not entirely dead, the Kilābī tribesmen who had joined the rebel cause returned to him and he was finally victorious. Severe reprisals were taken against the people of Antioch, only four years before it fell to the Byzantines.

In Safar 356/February 967, Sayf al-Dawla died aged fifty-one. He had ruled Aleppo for twenty-three years and died in the city, but his body was embalmed and taken to Mayyāfāriqīn for burial. He was succeeded without opposition by his only surviving son, Sharīf Saʿd al-Dawla, but the disasters of the last year of his father's life meant that the inheritance was not an easy one. Sayf al-Dawla's chief minister in Aleppo, Qarqūya, accepted Saʿd al-Dawla as ruler but advised him to stay away from the city. Many of his father's companions went to join his cousin, Abū Taghlib, in Mosul while he himself with only 300 followers was refused entry to Ḥarrān and was turned away from Mayyāfāriqīn by his own mother. For the next ten years (357–67/968–77) he had neither state nor capital. Aleppo was ruled by Qarqūya, supported by Sayf al-Dawla's *ghilmān* who were determined to preserve their position now their old master was dead.

The main problem Qarqūya faced was in relation with the Byzantines. In 358/969 they took Antioch and began setting up the Byzantine province of Syria which was to include the coastal hills as far south as Ṭarṭūs. Faced by this formidable power, Qarqūya had to make terms. In 359/969 the Byzantines temporarily occupied Aleppo and he made a treaty which effectively made Aleppo a Byzantine tributary state. It also made provision for the free passage of commercial caravans between Aleppo and Antioch. This truce laid the foundations of Byzantine policy towards Aleppo for the next half-century; they seem to have had no wish to annex the city to the empire. Instead they sought to keep it as an independent, tribute-paying buffer state. Normally they do not seem to have interfered in internal affairs but they were prepared to take military action if any outside Muslim power threatened to take over the city. In the same year, the position was further altered by the Fatimid conquest of Egypt. This meant that the feeble government of the Ikhshidids to the south of the Hamdanid state was replaced by a determined and energetic administration, prepared to make serious efforts to gain control. From 358/969 onwards, the weakened and truncated principality of Aleppo was to be the scene of constant rivalry between the two superpowers. These years saw the high point of Byzantine power in Syria during the reign of John Tzimisces (969–76) who, in 361/972 led a great expedition which reached as far south as Caesarea and Tiberias in Palestine, although the southern boundary of Byzantine Syria remained approximately on the modern Lebanese–Syrian border.

Saʿd al-Dawla's position improved in 367/977 when two of his father's *ghilmān*, who had established themselves in the country to the south of Aleppo, invited him to join them in a bid to take over the city.

By this time, power in Aleppo had passed from Qarqūya into the hands of a Circassian *mamlūk* (military slave) of his called Bakjūr. (It seems that the Hamdanids were the first dynasty to recruit *ghilmān/mamlūks* from Circassia at the Black Sea end of the Caucasus mountains. Circassian *mamlūks* were later to be extremely important in the Middle East, notably in Egypt where they provided most of the sultans from 784/1382 to the Ottoman conquest in 922/1517.) Despite some setbacks, Saʿd al-Dawla was able to set up a siege of Aleppo and, with the aid of the Banū Kilāb who had served his father so well, to take the city. Bakjūr had to be placated with the governorate of Homs which he used as a base for intrigue with the Fatimids.

Once established in Aleppo, Saʿd al-Dawla released Qarqūya to serve him until his death three years later (380/990–1). After this, Saʿd al-Dawla continued his policy of dependence on the Byzantines, who supported him with up to 6,000 Greek and Armenian troops against the attacks of Bakjūr and his Fatimid supporters.

Saʿd al-Dawla died in Ramaḍān 381/December 991. Towards the end of his reign, he seems to have regained something of his father's position, but he was heavily dependent on the Byzantines and his father's *ghilmān* while his principality was confined to Aleppo and its environs. He was never wealthy enough to build up his own corps of *ghilmān*. All the coastal area was now in Byzantine hands, the Jazīra including the second capital of Mayyāfāriqīn had been lost to the Kurdish Marwanid dynasty while the southern towns around Homs were usually in the hands of the Fatimids or their supporters. His death caused another rash of defections. His young son Saʿīd al-Dawla was dominated by his military adviser Lu'lu' who continued the policy of alliance with the Byzantines. Other *ghilmān* resented him and went over to the Fatimids who launched a series of attacks on Aleppo between 382 and 384 (993–5) and in 995 the city was only saved by the arrival of the Byzantine Emperor Basil II in person. In 392/1002 Saʿīd al-Dawla died and Lu'lu' soon exiled the rest of the family to Egypt and took over power in his own name. He tried to break away from over-close dependence on the Byzantines and acknowledged the authority of the Fatimids. After his death in 399/1008 his son, Manṣūr, took over, but he was now little more than a Fatimid governor. The city state of Aleppo was unable to sustain itself against the pressure of the bedouin tribes, notably the Banū Kilāb. Manṣūr tried to solve the problem by one of those macabre dinner parties which were a feature of Middle Eastern political life. He invited the leaders of Kilāb to a feast in the citadel of Aleppo and had them murdered. One leader, Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās, escaped and it was he who roused the tribe to vengeance. Manṣūr was forced into exile in

Byzantine territory where he was given some castles in the mountains near Antioch whence he could survey the affairs of the city he had once ruled. With his departure in 406/1016 the last traces of the Hamdanid state perished. Only the desire of the Hamdanid *ghilmān* and the Banū Kilāb to remain independent of the Fatimids and the support of the Byzantines had kept it alive so long.

chapter eleven

BEDOUIN POLITICAL MOVEMENTS AND DYNASTIES

Origins

Despite their Arab origins, the Hamdanids were products of the middle ʿAbbasid political system, relying on *ghilmān* for their military power and professional bureaucrats to collect their taxes. After the early stages, their role as tribal leaders played no part in their government and the tribe from which they sprang disappeared into obscurity. In both Mosul and Aleppo they were succeeded by leaders, the ʿUqaylids and Mirdasids, whose power was directly dependent on their tribal followings, who employed no *ghilmān* and who remained first and foremost bedouin shaykhs even when they acquired the rights to collect taxes from settled areas and cities. Nor was this process confined to Mosul and Aleppo; all around the Fertile Crescent from southern Iraq to Palestine, we find bedouin tribes and their leaders establishing or attempting to establish small independent states. The Banū Asad (Mazyadids) in the Kūfa area, the Numayrīs in Ḥarrān, the Banū Kalb in the Damascus area and the Banū Ṭayy in southern Palestine are all examples. Some of the tribes which became prominent at this time, notably the Banū Kalb and Banū Asad, had been important in their areas since Umayyad times, but many others, including the ʿUqayl, Numayr, Kilāb and Ṭayy seem to have been mostly newcomers to the districts they came to dominate. Equally tribes which had been important in the Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid periods are heard of no more. The example of the Taghlib has already been cited but other important groupings, the Tamīm and Shaybān in Iraq, the Tanūkh, Lakhm and Judhām in Syria seem to have declined during the ʿAbbasid period. The rise of the bedouin dynasties of the fourth/tenth century was the result of both an upheaval among the bedouins of the Syrian and north Arabian deserts, and the changing relationships between the settled and pastoral peoples of the area. To understand this process, we must investigate the history of the bedouin in the previous century.

The bedouin tribes of the Arabian and Syrian deserts had formed a large part of the armies of the Islamic conquests. In Umayyad times they had continued to be influential, as supporters of the dynasty, or of factions within the ruling house or as Kharijite revels opposing Umayyad authority. After the ʿAbbasid revolution, however, their importance began to decline. The Khurāsāniyya who formed the most important group in the armies of the new dynasty lived not as bedouin but as townsmen settled in cities like Raqqa and Baghdad. Tribal leaders like Yazīd b. Mazyad of Shaybān and Kharijite rebels like al-Walīd b. Ṭarīf (killed in the Jazīra, 179/795) continued to play a reduced part in the politics of the caliphate but the defeat of al-Amīn (198/813) and the rise to power of the military and bureaucratic élite under al-Muʿtaṣim (218–27/833–42) meant an end to this role. From this time the bedouin were effectively refused access to government and to government patronage and they no longer received any subsidies. From being a dominant Arab race, they became, once again, as they had been before the coming of Islam: the ignorant, uncouth, despised outsiders.

As has already been pointed out, the bedouin life is not economically self-sufficient. The bedouin are dependent on settled people for additional income and, by paying them '*aṭā*' (salaries), entertaining them at court and allowing them to participate in the military expeditions against the Byzantines, the early Islamic state had subsidized them. The cutting off of these subsidies by al-Muʿtaṣim led to a revival of nomad pressure on the settled people of the area which was to be the major feature of the fourth/tenth- and fifth/eleventh-century history of the Fertile Crescent. Disturbances among the bedouin were not unknown in the third/ninth century. In 230/845 there were widespread disturbances in the Ḥijāz caused by the Banū Sulaym who were taxing markets and stopping caravans. The Caliph al-Wāthiq sent one of his Turkish generals, Bughā the Elder, with an army of Turks and Berbers to suppress them and he took the opportunity to intimidate other tribes, notably the Banū Kilāb, then found in central Arabia further to the east. The discontent remained; in 251/865 the Banū ʿUqayl, complaining about their poverty, blocked the road between Mecca and the port of Jedda, a vital route for supplies for the Holy City. A generation later in 285/898 the Banū Ṭayy were responsible for pillaging the *ḥajj* (pilgrimage) caravan as it passed through their territory. Not only was the safeguarding of the *ḥajj* a matter of concern to the government for religious reasons but it was also the main commercial activity in Arabia, and the bedouin were signalling that they wanted a share of the profits. The Ṭayy acquired great wealth from this attack and it is a sign of changing circumstances that they do not seem to have been effectively punished.

These discontents were given a unity and an ideological purpose in the rebellions of the Qarmaṭīs (or Qarāmiṭa, often referred to as Carmathians in Western writings). The Qarmaṭī movement led to fundamental changes in the distribution and relative strengths of the bedouin tribes in the Syrian and Arabian deserts and this probably marks the most important such movement between the Islamic conquests and the Wahhābī wars of the eighteenth and early nineteenth century which largely shaped the modern tribal map of the Syrian and north Arabian deserts.

The Qarāmiṭa

The Qarāmiṭa were a branch of the Ismāʿīlī movement. It seems that the sect was named after one Ḥamdān Qarmaṭ who, before 260/873–4, had begun to spread Ismāʿīlī ideas among the agricultural peasantry on the Sawād of Kūfa, preaching and collecting contributions from the faithful. At first the movement was not particularly militant, but it inevitably came into conflict with the ʿAbbasid authorities and there was a series of small-scale rebellions from 284/897 onwards, all of them crushed by the government of the able and ruthless Caliph al-Muʿtaḍid. The Ismāʿīlī movement also began to suffer from internal divisions. The exact nature of these disagreements is shrouded in mystery but their consequences were to be far-reaching. It seems that the movement was directed from a base at Salamiyya, on the western edge of the Syrian desert, probably by ʿUbayd Allāh who was to become the first Fatimid ruler in North Africa ten years later (see below, pp. 313–14).

The original doctrine of the Ismāʿīlīs concerned the identity of the true *imām* and a division of opinion as to who was the rightful successor of Jaʿfar al-Ṣādiq (d. 148/765). His son, Ismāʿīl, who was originally held to be his successor, had died before his father; by the mid-fourth/tenth century, the majority of the Shīʿa of Iraq believed that Mūsā al-Kāẓim, another son, was Jaʿfar's successor and that the line of rightful *imāms* descended from him. As their name implies, however, the Ismāʿīlīs held that Ismāʿīl, or his son Muḥammad, was the last true *imām* and that he would come in glory as the *mahdī* and that until that time there was no visible and acknowledged *imām* on earth. ʿUbayd Allāh the Fatimid, however, broke with this, claiming that he was himself a descendant of Muḥammad b. Ismāʿīl and that the Ismāʿīlīs should pay him homage as the true *imām*. This move provoked strong opposition in the sect and many, among them Ḥamdān Qarmaṭ, refused to accept the new doctrine. A split developed between those who accepted that ʿUbayd Allāh was indeed the *mahdī* and those who believed that the Ismāʿīlīs should continue to await the return of Muḥammad b. Ismāʿīl.

The immediate effect of the schism was to weaken the movement in Iraq and Ḥamdān himself disappears from the record. Other missionaries, however, continued to spread the word in different areas, keeping to the old Ismāʿīlī faith. They and their followers are conventionally known as Qarmaṭīs or Qarāmiṭa to distinguish them from the supporters of the Fatimids. They no longer derived their main support from the Sawād of Kūfa but began to proselytise in other parts of the Muslim world.

The first of these was the desert to the west of Kūfa on the road to Tadmur (Palmyra) and Damascus. This area was dominated by the powerful Kalb tribe, who it would seem had already been attacking traffic on this route. A Qarmaṭī missionary from the Sawād called Zikrawayh sent his son al-Ḥusayn to make contact with these bedouin and he made enough conversions to be able to mobilize a considerable military force. He was joined by Yaḥyā, who was probably his brother, and they took code-names to conceal their identities, Yaḥyā being Ṣāḥib al-Nāqa (Master of the She-camel) while al-Ḥusayn was Ṣāḥib al-Shāma (the Man with the Mole). In 290/903 they besieged Damascus but the city was stoutly defended by Ṭughj, father of Muḥammad b. Ṭughj the *ikhshīd* (ruler of Egypt, 323–34/935–46), the attack was repulsed and the Ṣāḥib al-Nāqa killed. This was not the end of the affair, however. The Ṣāḥib al-Shāma took over leadership and the Qarmaṭī army pillaged much of northern Syria, including the towns of Homs, Ḥamāh, Maʿarrat al-Nuʿmān and Baʿalbak. A contemporary source describes the army as "most of the people of the desert" and there could be no clearer illustration of the resurgent power of the bedouin. It was at this time too that the Qarāmiṭa took Salamiyya and destroyed the residence of ʿUbayd Allāh the Fatimid who had prudently left for North Africa shortly before.

This full-scale rebellion produced a major ʿAbbasid reaction, a large army under the command of Muḥammad b. Sulaymān was sent to Syria and in 291/904 the Qarāmiṭa were severely defeated east of Ḥamāh and the Ṣāḥib al-Shāma killed. Despite this set-back, the movement continued to attract support. In 293/906 the Kalb and other Qarmaṭī tribes sacked the Ḥawrān area and Tiberias as well as making another unsuccessful attempt on Damascus. In the same year Zikrawayh himself left his hiding place near Kūfa and took the field in person for the first time. The next year he was killed (294/907) leading an attack on the *ḥajj* caravan and with his death the Qarmaṭī movement among the tribesmen of the Syrian desert effectively came to an end. It is noteworthy that the leadership of the movement came from the settled people of the Sawād. The bedouin were obviously restive before the arrival of the Qarmaṭī missionaries but it was the preaching of the sect which acted as a catalyst

and gave purpose to their raids. The leaders of the armies were the two sons of Zikrawayh, both of whom claimed religious authority as descendants of Muḥammad b. Ismāʿīl, not shaykhs of the Kalb or any other tribe. The aims of the military activity, however, reflected the priorities of the bedouin; to secure tribute or booty from the settled communities. No effort was made to occupy conquered cities or establish an administration to control them. The effect of the rebellion was to weaken the settled communities to the advantage of the bedouin, a process which was to continue throughout the next century and a half.

Another area where Qarmaṭī missionaries met with success was in Baḥrayn. (In the early Islamic period, this term applied to the mainland areas of Ḥasā' province of Saudi Arabia as well as the island nowadays called Baḥrayn which was then known as Uwāl.) This area was inhabited by a heterogeneous population of farmers in the oases, merchants travelling the Gulf to such ports as Baṣra and Sīrāf, and the bedouin of the desert areas. It was among this varied population that an Ismāʿīlī missionary of Persian origin, Abū Saʿīd al-Jannābī, managed to recruit a large number of followers. By 286/899, the year of the split in the Ismāʿīlī movement, he had converted much of the population and married into one of the leading commercial and landowning families, that of al-Ḥasan b. Sanbar. He also looked for allies among the bedouin of the desert and found them in the Banū Kilāb and the Banū ʿUqayl, who now came to occupy the leading position among the tribes of central and eastern Arabia as the Tamīm and ʿAbd al-Qays had done in early Islamic times. This partnership between the Qarmaṭī leadership, their followers among the settled population, and the bedouin was to prove extremely formidable. Hajar, the capital of the province and seat of the ʿAbbasid governor, was taken and, in 287/900, an ʿAbbasid army was decisively defeated, and the Qarāmiṭa began to threaten the city of Baṣra itself. This first militant stage was brought to an end in 300/913 when Abū Saʿīd was assassinated in his new capital at Ḥasā' near Hajar. He was succeeded by his son Saʿīd who entered into negotiations with the Baghdad authorities. He stressed the poverty of his followers and seems to have sought a subsidy from the government and trading opportunities, an interesting insight into the motivations of these early Qarāmiṭa.

While ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā was influential in Baghdad, this policy proved effective and in 303/915–16 the *wazīr* sent presents and granted the right of free trade in Sīrāf, on the eastern shore of the Gulf. In 310/922–3, however, the position changed when Saʿīd was replaced by his much more militant younger brother Abū Ṭāhir while the next year ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā lost power to Ibn al-Furāt who was less inclined to take a conciliatory attitude. From this point on it was war. In 311/923, Baṣra was taken

and sacked by the rebels, with great destruction of life and property. Since 303/916 the *ḥajj* had been allowed to go in peace but in 311/924 it was attacked by a force of Qarāmiṭa, 800 horse and 1,000 foot, who pillaged it. The same happened again the next year, while the *ḥajj* of 313/926 was allowed to go in peace only after the payment of a heavy subsidy. By 315/927–8, Baghdad itself was threatened and the *wazīr*, al-Khaṣībī, sent for Ibn Abī'l-Sāj of Āẕarbayjān for more troops. The effectiveness of the Qarāmiṭa contrasted markedly with the uselessness of the Baghdad army, a fact commented on by contemporaries. Interestingly ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā, observing, rightly, that Ibn Abī'l-Sāj would not be successful, suggested that it would be better to employ the bedouin Banū Asad to guard the *ḥajj* and the Banū Shaybān to attack the Qarāmiṭa; neither of these tribes were involved in the rebel movement and both could be expected to oppose the Kilābīs and ʿUqaylīs who fought for the Qarāmiṭa. His advice was not accepted and the Baghdad forces were again defeated.

In 317/930 not only was the *ḥajj* attacked by the Qarāmiṭa and most of the pilgrims killed, but the Black Stone of the Kaʿba was stolen and taken to Baḥrayn. This act caused great outrage but the Baghdad government was powerless and the stone remained in Qarmaṭī hands in Ḥasā' until 339/951. The reasons for the removal of the stone are not entirely clear. There is no reason to suppose that it was a protest against idolatry; the Ismāʿīlī Fatimids were to be notable patrons of the *ḥajj* in later years and the Qarāmiṭa do not seem to have destroyed other shrines. They appear to have had no objection to the *ḥajj* as long as they, and especially their bedouin supporters, were properly rewarded for allowing its safe passage. They must certainly have hoped for concessions from the government in exchange for its return and may even have hoped to divert the *ḥajj*, with the trading opportunities it presented, to their own capital at Ḥasā'.

The seemingly unstoppable advance of the movement was brought to an end by internal feuds. In 319/931 Abū Ṭāhir was persuaded that a Persian adventurer of obscure origin was indeed the promised *mahdī*, and yielded authority to him. The adventurer's behaviour soon made it clear that the Qarāmiṭa had been duped, he was deposed and killed but the event seems to have damaged the morale of the sect. Aggressive activities did not cease but the Qarāmiṭa seem to have been anxious for peace. As early as 320/932 we find Qarmaṭīs serving as soldiers in the army of the ʿAbbasid general Mu'nis. In 327/939 Abū Ṭāhir made his peace with the Baghdad authorities, promising to protect the *ḥajj* in exchange for an annual subsidy and a payment by the pilgrims. The death of Abū Ṭāhir in 332/944 and the return of the Black Stone to

Mecca in 339/951 mark the assimilation of the Qarmaṭī state into the Muslim political order. Ibn Ḥawqal gives an interesting account of the community as it existed in the 350s/960s. The ruler was advised by a council, called the ʿIqdāniyya, whose opinions he was obliged to take into account. The administration included al-Ḥasan b. Sanbar's son, himself called Sanbar, whose family were effective partners in government with the descendants of Abū Saʿīd al-Jannābī. There was a *ṣāḥib al-shurṭa* (chief of police), a *kātib* (secretary), an army commander (who was a member of the Kilābī bedouin tribe) and a *ṣāḥib al-barīd* (chief of the post, who was also a Kilābī). The bedouin seem to have played an important part in the military affairs. The revenues of the state were drawn from the land-tax, tolls on the Baṣra and Mecca roads, taxation of the pilgrimage and tolls from shipping in the Gulf; commerce was vital to the financial well-being of the Qarmaṭī state. They maintained representatives in Kūfa, near Baṣra and eventually in Baghdad itself to organize their affairs. There was a marked contrast between the peace and prosperity of the Qarmaṭī state and the tyranny and chaos which prevailed elsewhere in the Fertile Crescent.

The last outbreak of Qarāmiṭa militancy was connected with the Fatimid conquest of Egypt. In the main they kept on good terms with rulers of the Fertile Crescent, the Ikhshidids and the Hamdanids who sent them gifts, but relations with the Fatimids were complicated by the fact that the Qarāmiṭa did not acknowledge the Fatimid claims to be the true *imāms*. From 353/964 the Qarāmiṭa began to take an aggressive line under the leadership of al-Ḥasan al-Aʿṣam. An expedition was launched against Syria, perhaps to help the Fatimids in their plans to take Egypt but possibly to secure increased tribute from the Ikhshidid government. Tiberias was sacked. In 357/968 the adventure was repeated and both Damascus and Ramla were taken by the Qarmaṭī armies, and again in 358/969 after the Fatimid take-over of Egypt when al-Ḥasan b. ʿUbayd Allāh the Ikhshidid agreed to pay tribute for Ramla and Damascus. The Qarāmiṭa seem to have felt that Syria was now their protectorate and this led to a dramatic breakdown in relations with the Fatimids and open warfare soon flared. The Qarmaṭī effort was hampered by internal strife at Ḥasā' but in 360/971 Damascus and Ramla were taken and Egypt invaded. To demonstrate their disenchantment with the Fatimid regime, the Qarāmiṭa proclaimed ʿAbbasid authority in the areas they captured. Thereafter Qarmaṭī attacks on Egypt and Syria continued until they were defeated by the Caliph al-ʿAzīz in 368/978 and retreated to Ḥasā' in exchange for the promise of a subsidy. Apart from a brief late occupation of Kūfa, this marked the end of the Qarmaṭī threat to the neighbouring lands.

The movement was now confined to Baḥrayn. In accepting this, it lost the allegiance of the bedouin tribesmen who had supported the sect when there was the opportunity for booty and tribute. In the end it was a tribal leader from the Muntafiq branch of the ʿUqayl who turned against them, capturing and pillaging Ḥasā' in 378/988. After this the Qarāmiṭa could no longer tax the commercial routes of the north Arabian and Syrian desert and it was nomad tribal leaders who took over this role.

The Bedouin Dynasties

The rise and decline of the Qarāmiṭa were the prelude to the establishment of the bedouin dynasties of the late fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries. The Qarāmiṭa had profoundly affected the balance of power among the tribes in the north Arabian and Syrian deserts, and in the main it was tribes which had been involved in the movement which came to dominate the area, not, however, in the name of a religious ideal but for their own tribal interests, and they were now led not by missionaries from the settled peoples but by their own tribal shaykhs. Kilāb and ʿUqayl had been the leading supporters of the Qarāmiṭa of Baḥrayn and it seems that in the second half of the fourth/tenth century many of them, disillusioned with the decline of the power of the movement, drifted north to join fellow-tribesmen already established in the hinterlands of Mosul and Aleppo. The influence of the Kalb in central Syria had probably been consolidated by their leading role in the rebellions of the Syrian Qarāmiṭa, while the Ṭayy seem to have moved from north Arabia to Palestine during the last waves of Qarmaṭī attacks on the area. Of the tribes which founded bedouin states at this period, only the Asadīs in the Kūfa area had played no part in the movement.

The establishment of the bedouin states was, however, more than just the result of a new wave of Arab immigrants from Arabia. The founders of these bedouin states all owed something to the patronage of rulers of settled states. The Kilābīs owed much of their predominance in northern Syria to the support given them by Sayf al-Dawla the Hamdanid. The primacy of the ruling clan of the ʿUqayl was greatly aided by ʿAḍud al-Dawla the Buyid, who made them responsible for the disciplining of their fellow-tribesmen, thus giving their authority the support of his government. It was the attempts of the last Hamdanids to counter the influence of the Kurd Bādh in the Mosul area by granting lands to the ʿUqaylids which ensured their control of northern Iraq. Equally the Mazyadid leaders of the Asad tribe owed much to the patronage of Bakhtiyār and later contenders for power in Buyid Baghdad who sought

their support, while Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz (Buyid governor of Baghdad, 392–401/1002–10) was to rely on them to discipline the bedouin of the area. None of the dynasties would have achieved power without the patronage of settled rulers.

The dynasties which prospered were only able to do so because they controlled the revenues of towns and settled areas. The power of ʿUqaylid rulers lay in their tribal following but it was control of Mosul which brought them the wealth these followers needed. Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās was simply one of a number of Kilābī chiefs until he took possession of Aleppo, a position which assured his primacy in the tribe. In the desert a nomad state was impossible since no chief could command absolute authority. Contact with settled powers and peoples enabled some ruling clans to establish themselves as effective dynasts, even while retaining a nomad life-style. The possession of the revenues of settled lands also helped the chiefs to increase their tribal following. At first the dominant position of the ʿUqayl in northern Iraq looks to be the product of a vast influx of tribesmen from Arabia but this may be something of an illusion. There certainly were new immigrants from northern Arabia at this time, but it may also be that many of the members of these newly dominant tribes in fact came from other groups and had attached themselves to the successful tribe, and were henceforward counted among the ʿUqayl or Kilāb. Such a process would account in part for the greatly expanded numbers of these tribes and for the disappearance from historical sources of other bedouin tribes in the area.

In economic terms, the changing relationships between the nomads and the settled population can be seen in the laments of numerous sources about the decline of settled agriculture and the occupation by the bedouin of farmland. The areas worst affected were probably Trans-Jordan, where almost all urban and much village life seems to have come to an end at this time, the Ḥawrān south of Damascus, and the northern Jazīra where Ibn Ḥawqal describes the process most clearly. But there is evidence from the immediate neighbourhood of Damascus, Homs and in central Iraq in once fertile Sawād which all points in the same direction. There can be no doubt that the century 950–1050 saw a vast increase in the area used for nomad pasture and the collapse of the agricultural economy in districts which had once been the granaries of the ʿAbbasid caliphate. It would be wrong to present a purely negative view of these changes. There were cities which benefited from the bedouin ascendancy; Aleppo seems to have been more prosperous under the Kilābī Mirdasids than it had been under the Hamdanids. It may have been that tax levels were lower under bedouin rule than under the domination of regimes like the Buyids or Hamdanids with expensive

ghilmān to pay. Certainly the city which suffered the best-documented urban crisis in this period, Baghdad, was never under bedouin control, while in nearby Ḥilla the camp of the Mazyadid clan of the Banū Asad developed into a flourishing city.

The Mazyadids

The Banū Asad owed their rise to power in the Kūfa area to Buyid weaknesses and the endemic tensions between Turks and Daylamites in Iraq. From their modest beginnings as bedouin shaykhs, the Mazyadid clan used the power of the tribe to found an enduring and powerful state whose influence was to last for a century and a half in the lands that bordered the Euphrates to the south of Baghdad and whose most lasting achievement was the foundation of the city of Ḥilla, which replaced Kūfa as the leading town of the area and is today the local provincial capital. The shaykhs of Asad first began to play an important role in politics in 364/974–5 when the Buyid Bakhtiyār was attempting to dislodge the Turkish commander Alptakīn from Baghdad and invited one Ḍabba b. Muḥammad al-Asadī to raid the area around the city; it was a sinister portent for the future as, for the first time, nomad depredations were given government approval. Two years later, in 366/977, when Bakhtiyār was facing the army of his cousin ʿAḍud al-Dawla, he called on the support of another Asadī leader, Dubays b. ʿAfīf. Like so many of the things Bakhtiyār did, this turned out to be an ill-judged move; not only did the Asadīs desert him in the conflict, precipitating the break-up of his army, but they also pillaged his baggage.

ʿAḍud al-Dawla was strong enough to take firm measures against the bedouin and in 369/979–80 he sent an army to the desert stronghold of the Banū Asad at ʿAyn al-Tamr, the tribe was scattered and their leaders only just escaped. The death of ʿAḍud al-Dawla in 372/983 and the rivalry between his sons shifted the balance once more in favour of the bedouin. As soon as he was dead, Dubays b. ʿAfīf was employed by a Buyid rival to challenge the power of his successor, Sharaf al-Dawla. In 387/997–8 ʿAlī b. Mazyad, now apparently chief of the Asadīs, refused to pay tribute to Bahā' al-Dawla in Baghdad and declared instead for Ṣamṣām al-Dawla, then ruling in distant Shīrāz. Bahā' al-Dawla's forces marched against ʿAyn al-Tamr, but, unable to secure their supplies in the desert, they were forced to make peace. This treaty confirmed ʿAlī's power and status and from this time on, the Mazyadids enjoyed virtual independence. The failure of the Buyids to prevent this was largely a product of their own internal rivalries. The nomads were able to provide a force of cavalry which made them sought-after allies in times of

conflict while, on those occasions when the government did try to reassert its power, they could take advantage of desert retreats where only ʿAḍud al-Dawla was able to reach them.

The Asadīs became increasingly bold in their raids into settled areas, sometimes in alliance with the Banū ʿUqayl; in 389/999 they pillaged Dayr ʿĀqūl on the Tigris and in 392/1002 Asadīs and ʿUqaylids joined forces to prevent the Buyid commander in Baghdad from retaking al-Madā'in, then under ʿUqaylid "protection". The Buyid ruler, Bahā' al-Dawla, was by now permanently resident in Shīrāz and his commander in Baghdad, Abū Jaʿfar al-Ḥajjāj, found himself almost entirely surrounded by bedouin or Kurdish nomad forces, the city an island of Buyid control in a countryside dominated by pastoral peoples. For a time it seemed as if Baghdad too would be lost but in 392/1002 a decisive battle was fought near Ḥilla between a joint army of ʿUqaylid and Asadī bedouin on one side and al-Ḥajjāj, aided by the bedouin Banū Khafāja and the Kurdish ʿAnnazids, on the other. Baghdad was saved for the Buyids but the incident shows how powerful the Arab tribes had become and how they could roam at will through the Sawād; Asadīs from west of the Euphrates could sack Dayr ʿĀqūl on the east bank of the Tigris. Not since the time of the Arab conquest had nomad bands had such freedom and their activities must have been both a cause and a consequence of the impoverishment and depopulation of rural, agricultural communities.

The replacement of al-Ḥajjāj by Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz in Dhu'l-Ḥijja 392/October 1002 gave the Mazyadids further opportunities for meddling and for the next five years, they supported their old enemy al-Ḥajjāj in opposition to his successor. In 397/1007 an agreement was reached whereby ʿAlī b. Mazyad was given the honorific title Sanad al-Dawla (Support of the State) as a recognition of his status as an independent ruler under Buyid overlordship. Thereafter Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz and his successor in Baghdad, Fakhr al-Mulk (401–7/1011–16), usually kept on good terms with ʿAlī and even used him as a sort of policeman to maintain some Buyid influence in their area. In 404/1011, for example, when the lawless Banū Khafāja pillaged the *ḥajj* caravan, the authorities in Baghdad turned to ʿAlī who was able to recover much of the booty and bring the marauders under some sort of control.

When ʿAlī b. Mazyad died in 408/1018, he left his tribe as the leading group in the areas to the south and south-west of Baghdad and his own family as the leading clan and the most reliable allies of the Baghdad authorities. Both tribe and family, however, still had rivals. The Banū Asad were opposed by the ʿUqaylids from the north. In 401/1010 the ʿUqaylid leader, Qirwāsh, made his ill-fated attempt to transfer

his allegiance from the ʿAbbasid caliphs to the Fatimids and the collapse of his bid for total independence severely weakened ʿUqaylid power in the Baghdad area. Their place was taken to some extent by the Banū Khafāja who now became the Asadīs' main bedouin rivals in the lands to the west of the Euphrates. Within the tribe, ʿAlī had also faced opposition, and the Buyid governors of Baghdad had, on occasions, sided with his opponents to prevent him from becoming too powerful. On his death his son and successor, Dubays, who had already been invested with the title Nūr al-Dawla by the Buyids, was opposed by his brother al-Muqallad, who sought the alliance of the Turkish soldiers of Baghdad who pillaged his brother's camp. But Dubays, too, found allies in the city and al-Muqallad was eventually driven out and forced to find refuge with the ʿUqaylids in northern Iraq.

Dubays was to remain leader of the Mazyadid clan for the next sixty-three years, until 474/1081, a period which allowed the consolidation of their power in the area.[1] After the deposition of Fakhr al-Mulk in 407/1016 no Buyid ruler or governor in Baghdad was powerful enough to threaten his independence while the ʿUqaylids were increasingly preoccupied by affairs in the north. In 435/1044 Dubays allied with his old rival, the ʿUqaylid Qirwāsh, against their new common enemy, the Ghuzz Turkmen invaders and defeated them. With the establishment of Seljuk power in Baghdad, Dubays was faced with a new and much more formidable government in the city, but the Mazyadids were able to maintain, and even increase, their power.

The rise of the Mazyadids illustrates the complex and changing relations between the Buyid government and the bedouin. The Mazyadids needed and exploited the Buyids for the granting of titles and subsidies while the Buyids in turn needed them, intermittently, for military support against their rivals and as policemen on the fringes of the desert. The rivalries between the Buyids and the tensions between Daylamites and Turks on one hand, and the rivalries within the Banū Asad, and between the Asad and other bedouin tribes on the other, meant that the position was constantly changing and the political history of this period is often tortuous.

In many ways the early Mazyadids ruled as bedouin shaykhs. At first their priorities were pillage and tribute. As they became more powerful in the later years of ʿAlī's leadership and in the time of Dubays they began to make permanent *ḥimāya* agreements with settled communities. At least until the second half of the fifth/eleventh century, the Mazyadids lived a bedouin, nomad life rather than settling in cities. They employed no expensive *ghilmān*, relying instead on their tribal following of up to 2,000 horsemen, a substantial force by the standards of the time. And

since they had no *ghilmān* to pay they needed only the most basic administration and seem to have felt no need for *wazīrs* and bureaucrats. This did not mean that they were hostile to urban life; it is fascinating to observe how the *ḥilla* (encampment) of the Mazyadids is transformed during their rule, into Ḥilla, the walled permanent city which became their capital.

The ʿUqaylids

In the Jazīra and northern Iraq, power passed into the hands of the leaders of the Banū ʿUqayl tribe. Of all the dynasties which appeared at this time, the shaykhs of the Banū ʿUqayl were perhaps the most truly bedouin in character, never settling in towns and remaining entirely dependent on their tribal followers for military support. Leadership among the members of the ruling clan was decided on traditional bedouin lines, the whole kin sharing in the exercise of authority, and no one man achieved the absolute status typical of more settled dynasties.

The ʿUqaylīs are found in the Jazīra in Umayyad times and consolidated their hold on the pastoral lands of the area in the Hamdanid period, when they were the chief beneficiaries of the decline and emigration of the Banū Taghlib. Along with the Numayrīs, they are found as irregular troops in the armies of the Hamdanids. This period also shows the increasing incursions of the nomad tribes on settled areas and the geographer Ibn Ḥawqal presents a vivid impression of the decline of agriculture around such Jaziran towns as Raʾs al-ʿAyn and Ḥarrān. As with the Asadīs in the Sawād, the rise of the bedouin dynasties was both a cause and a consequence of the decline of agriculture in favour of pastoral economy. The take-over of the Jazīra and Mosul by ʿAḍud al-Dawla in 369/979 led to a firm government policy with regard to the tribes and ʿAḍud al-Dawla insisted that ʿUqaylid chiefs, among them al-Musayyib b. Rāfiʿ, should be responsible for the actions of their followers – a policy which caused some of them to take refuge across the Euphrates out of his reach. After ʿAḍud al-Dawla's death in 372/983 the situation became disturbed again and the ʿUqaylīs and Numayrīs were obliged to defend their lands from the Kurds under Bādh to the north. When, in 379/989, Bahāʾ al-Dawla sent the Ḥamdānī brothers Ibrāhīm and al-Ḥusayn to Mosul to rally support against Bādh, they turned to the ʿUqaylīs for support, offering in exchange control of the old Taghlibī centres of Jazīrat Ibn ʿUmar, Balad and Niṣībīn. The Kurdish threat was contained but the ʿUqaylī chief Muḥammad b. al-Musayyib b. Rāfiʿ took advantage of the confusion to execute the last Hamdanid in the area (see above, p. 273) and the rival chief of the Numayrīs and

make himself master of Mosul itself, the first member of the tribe to acquire an interest in the city.

Muḥammad pledged his allegiance to Bahā' al-Dawla and was obliged to accept a Buyid presence in Mosul, while enjoying a share of the revenue. Shortly after his death in 386/996, however, the last Buyid governor was forced to withdraw and Mosul came under ʿUqaylid rule and was to remain so for the next century. After Muḥammad's death, a power struggle developed between his brothers. It was ʿUqaylid custom that leadership should pass to the eldest, ʿAlī, who was supported by the majority of the tribe but opposed by another brother, al-Muqallad, who had acquired interests in revenue collecting in a number of districts on the Euphrates between Anbār and Kūfa, and developed contacts with the Buyids and the Baghdad military. He therefore offered to take over the revenue farming of Mosul and began recruiting Turks and Daylamites to his cause. At first ʿAlī was prepared to allow his brother Mosul while he himself continued to live a bedouin existence as chief of the tribe, but his secretary persuaded him that this was impossible and that if al-Muqallad was master of Mosul, he would certainly use his position and wealth to subvert ʿAlī's authority. In 386–7/996–7 there was much confused fighting which resulted in a compromise and the division of the revenues between ʿAlī and al-Muqallad. The failure of al-Muqallad's bid determined the whole nature of the ʿUqaylid state. ʿAlī stood for traditional bedouin leadership and relied on the military power of the tribe, al-Muqallad for a government based on Turkish *ghilmān* and Daylamite troops, very much in the Hamdanid mould. Both brothers were given honorifics by the Buyids, Janāḥ al-Dawla for ʿAlī and Ḥusām al-Dawla for al-Muqallad, so marking their effective independence. Despite lavish gifts, al-Muqallad was unable to win the support of more than 2,000 of the ʿUqaylis while ʿAlī could count on 10,000. There were strong pressures exerted by the tribe on the two brothers to avoid war and al-Muqallad was obliged to agree to a compromise after his sister, in a very traditional gesture, had threatened to shame herself in front of the whole tribe if he did not: al-Muqallad, we are told, was "like wax in her hand". ʿAlī's victory meant that the ʿUqaylid shaykhs would not follow in the footsteps of the Hamdanids and replace their tribal following with salaried *ghilmān*, but would continue to rely on the Banū ʿUqayl for military support. The dynasty based its power on the bedouin and its policies reflected their needs.

The division of authority continued after ʿAlī's death when his brother, al-Ḥasan, took over his position with the tribe while al-Muqallad devoted most of his energy to his interests in central Iraq. He even tried to make himself master of Baghdad and was negotiating with army leaders

there when he was murdered by his Turkish retainers in 391/1001. His position was inherited, not without difficulty, by his son, Qirwāsh, the greatest of the early ʿUqaylid chiefs, who united the tribe under his leadership. It was he who led 7,000 ʿUqayl, in alliance with the Banū Asad, when they fought the Baghdad commander Abū Jaʿfar al-Ḥajjāj and his allies from the Banu Khafāja near Ḥilla in 392/1002. The battle was a humiliating defeat for the ʿUqaylid leader and the women of Khafāja raided and pillaged the ʿUqaylid camp: it was like the *jāhiliyya* all over again.

This defeat, and the reassertion of Buyid control under Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz soured relations between Qirwāsh and the Buyids. In an effort to regain control in the areas around Baghdad which his father had dominated, not only Anbār to the west and the Euphrates lands but also al-Madā'in to the south-east, Qirwāsh resorted to raiding and kidnapping. His priorities also changed after the death of the last of his uncles, Muṣʿab b. al-Musayyib in 397/1006–7, left him the most senior of the ʿUqaylid shaykhs and gave him further responsibilities in the Jazīra. Here the position of the tribe was threatened by the Fatimids and their protégés, the marauding Khafāja.

It was against this background of worsening relations with the Buyids and Fatimid advances from the west into the Euphrates valley, that Qirwāsh, in 401/1010, transferred his allegiance to the Fatimid caliphs and had the *khuṭba* pronounced in the name of al-Ḥākim in the mosques of all the towns under his control, including Mosul, Anbār, Kūfa and al-Madā'in. This was a challenge which could not be ignored and Bahā' al-Dawla the Buyid ordered his governor in Baghdad, Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz, to take action, sending him 100,000 *dīnārs* for the purpose. Qirwāsh recognized that he had overstepped the mark and, in default of any support from the Fatimids, he returned to formal allegiance to the ʿAbbasid caliphate. Like the Hamdanids and the Mazyadids, the ʿUqaylids are usually said to have been a Shiʿite dynasty but there is little evidence to support this. That Qirwāsh had no great regard for the ʿAlid family is suggested by the fact that he kidnapped one of its leading members in Kūfa in 395/1004–5 and held him to ransom for 100,000 *dīnārs*. Apart from his brief flirtation with the Fatimids, Qirwāsh was content that the name of the ʿAbbasid caliph should be mentioned in the *khuṭba* in his domains. The truth is probably that he was committed to neither Sunnī nor Shīʿī party and that he was comparatively indifferent to the claims of formal religion.

The failure of the bid for formal independence in 401/1010 marks the beginning of the decline of ʿUqaylid influence in the lands al-Muqallad had acquired in the Sawād. The ʿUqaylids were faced by the alliance of

the Buyid governors in Baghdad and the Mazyadids, while their position was attacked by the rival Khafāja ʿUqaylids in the desert west of Anbār and Kūfa. The main reason for the continuing conflict was the need for pasture. It would seem that the ʿUqaylīs used the same grazing lands occupied by the eastern Shammar in the nineteenth century: their summer pastures were in the northern Jazīra while their winter pastures were in the Anbār–Kūfa area. If Qirwāsh were to be acceptable as leader of the ʿUqayl, he had to ensure that his followers had access to these grazing areas. The priorities of the ʿUqaylī leaders remained the priorities of a pastoral society. They had no difficulty in maintaining amicable relations with the Marwanid Kurds, for example, because there was no such competition, but they were deadly enemies of the Khafāja who threatened their grazing. Qirwāsh's own mother was a Hadhbānī Kurd and relations with them seem to have been friendly. In 411/1020–1 he was defeated near Sāmarrā by a coalition of Mazyadids, Baghdad troops and dissident members of his own clan, a defeat which led to the establishment of a branch of the family in Takrīt. In 417/1026 the ʿUqaylids, allied with the Mazyadids, suffered a humiliating defeat when 10,000 men in their army were defeated by a much smaller force of 1,000 Khafāja. After this, they continued to hold Anbār but seem to have been driven out of the more southerly areas around Kūfa.

In 417/1026 Qirwāsh's leadership was challenged in the north at exactly the same moment that the Sawād possessions were being lost to the Mazyadids and the Khafāja. The opposition was led by his brother, Badrān, who seems to have wanted his own amirate in Niṣībīn. Both sides prepared for battle, Qirwāsh raising 13,000 men with help from the Marwanids of Mayyāfāriqīn, but in the end peace was arranged and Badrān allowed to keep Niṣībīn. Thereafter his position seems to have been unchallenged until the whole tribe was threatened by the arrival of the Ghuzz Turkmen. The Ghuzz threatened the whole existence of the ʿUqayl since they, too, were pastoral nomads and sought to take the same area and role as the Arabs. There was no room for compromise. When they first attacked in 433/1041–2 Qirwāsh and his Kurdish allies were defeated and he was forced to take refuge in Mosul for fear of them; here both bedouin and townsmen tried to defend the city against the common enemy but to no avail, the city was taken and Qirwāsh fled by ship, leaving his treasure in the hands of the enemy. A popular rebellion in the city against the Turks in 435/1043–4 was brutally suppressed. Meanwhile Qirwāsh was seeking allies against the intruders. He had written to Jalāl al-Dawla, the useless Buyid ruler of Baghdad, who was in no position to help, and also to the Mazyadid leader Dubays and several Kurdish chiefs, notably Abū'l-Shawk the ʿAnnazid. Faced by

the common peril, Arabs and Kurds joined under Qirwāsh's leadership to defend their pastures and their territories. In Ramaḍān 435/April 1044 the two armies met to the north-west of Mosul. At first the Turkmen were victorious and drove the Arabs right back to their tents. Then the fortunes of battle changed and the Arabs defeated their enemies with great loss of life. It was Qirwāsh's greatest moment and his victory was celebrated by poets in the traditional manner. He had certainly saved not just the ʿUqayl but other pastoral peoples in the area from being overwhelmed by the newcomers. Qirwāsh must have been an old man by this stage and it may have been his increasing feebleness which led to his being put under house arrest by his brother, Baraka, in 441/1049 after yet another conflict within the ruling clan. For the last three years of his life he was deprived of all power and died a captive in Rajab 444/October 1052.

Qirwāsh dominated the politics of the Jazīra for half a century. All his life he remained very much a bedouin shaykh, glorying in a genealogy which went back to the fathers of the Arab race. In his poetry he despises inherited wealth and boasts of the swiftness of his horse, the sharpness of his sword and of the generosity with which he gives. As far as we can tell, he usually lived in the *ḥilla*, the nomad encampment, only visiting the towns under his control when they were threatened, like Anbār in 417/1026 or Mosul in 435/1043–4. His recorded utterances suggest that he had a very low opinion of townsmen but that does not mean that ʿUqaylid rule was particularly oppressive; certainly the people of Mosul were prepared to take up arms alongside their ʿUqaylī masters against the Ghuzz Turkmen. The centre of power had shifted from the city to the camp and ʿUqaylid "government" was remote from the affairs of the town. Unfortunately, we are very badly informed about the history of Mosul or the other ʿUqaylid towns in this period. In 411/1020–1, Qirwāsh had a dispute with his representatives in Mosul who were his *wazīr*, Ibn al-Maghribī (later to move to the service of Naṣr al-Dawla the Marwanid) and a local landowner called Sulaymān b. Fahd, which suggests that he employed non-bedouin agents in the cities and we should probably be right to assume that in Mosul, as in other towns of the period, local urban élites played an important part in day-to-day administration. The pattern of rule was not that of direct government of the cities and taxation of the countryside as practised under the ʿAbbasids but rather the *ḥimāya* or protection agreement where, as in the modern *khuwa* agreement, the settled people pay the bedouin for their protection but otherwise manage their own affairs.

Qirwāsh's obligations were to the Banū ʿUqayl who followed him; his major concern was to provide them pasture and the fruits of taxation.

Within his own clan, he was obliged to allow the formation of sub-amirates centred on such towns as Takrīt and Niṣībīn to satisfy the demands of his kin for their own *ḥimāyas*. The appearance of these secondary states should not be seen as a sign of disintegration but rather as a sign that traditional patterns of clan rule were being followed.

The Mirdasids

In Aleppo, the position of the Hamdanids was taken over by the shaykhs of another bedouin tribe, the Banū Kilāb, Like the ʿUqaylīs, the Kilāb had appeared in northern Syria in the aftermath of the Islamic conquest but, again like their neighbours to the east, they seem to have been strengthened by a new wave of immigration at the beginning of the fourth/tenth centuries and taken over lands along the fringes of the desert previously inhabited by such tribes as the Tanūkh. They had helped Sayf al-Dawla, the first of the Hamdanids, to power in the city and under Hamdanid rule their power had prospered at the expense of their neighbours to the south, the Kalbīs. Byzantine attacks on Aleppo are said to have diverted trade further east through the Kilābī dominated town of Khunāṣira. By the end of the fourth/tenth century the tribe controlled most of the area to the east and south of Aleppo itself and the Euphrates towns of Bālis and sometimes Raḥba. After the failure of the Hamdanid dynasty, Aleppo was the scene of a struggle between the last of the Hamdanid *ghilmān*, led by Lu'lu' and his son Manṣūr, with Byzantine support, the Fatimids and the Kilābīs, in which the Kilābī leader, Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās, finally emerged victorious.

Aleppo was different from Mosul in a number of ways. Whereas the ʿUqaylids in Mosul could feel comparatively secure from attempts by the later Buyids to assert their power, Aleppo lay on the frontier between the Byzantine and Fatimid spheres of influence. The area controlled by the tribe was comparatively small, certainly smaller than the Hamdanid state of Sayf al-Dawla. Antioch to the west was in Byzantine hands while Homs and Ḥamāh to the south were usually under Fatimid domination. This meant that successful rulers of Aleppo had to be diplomats to manoeuvre among the great powers as well as being able to secure the support of their followers. The sources for Aleppo in this period are much fuller than those for Mosul and the ʿUqaylid areas, and this allows us to see more clearly the interaction of nomad and settled elements in the state more clearly. The Kilābī tribesmen remained the backbone of the army and without their support no member of the Mirdasid family could exercise effective control. While the bedouin were a fairly effective military force, even defeating a large Byzantine army on one occasion,

they demanded a say in the running of the state in return. The Mirdasid family were not old-established leaders of the tribe; it was the fact that Ṣāliḥ seized Aleppo which gave him paramountcy among the shaykhs of the tribe and there were other clans who felt that the Mirdasid family had no more rights than their own and some of them were prepared to make alliances with the Fatimid general Anūshtakīn al-Dizbarī when he drove the Mirdasids from the city in 429/1038. The Kilābīs did not settle down but maintained their nomad life, often camping close to Aleppo so that they could exert political pressure if necessary.

The other important element was the people of Aleppo, who, led by the *ra'īs al-balad* or *shaykh al-dawla* chosen from a leading local family often played an important role in politics. The city had its own militia, the *aḥdāth*, which was not dependent on the Mirdasids but usually co-operated with them. This uneasy partnership was the natural result of bedouin rule and both sides needed each other. It would be a mistake to imagine that this bedouin rule was resented by the townsmen. Such evidence as we have suggests that the city was more prosperous under the Mirdasids than it had been under the Hamdanids. Among the citizens themselves there were divisions between rich and poor and this often prevented them from maintaining a common front against an external foe. None the less, the people of Aleppo, mostly fighting as infantry, were a force to be reckoned with. An additional complication was provided by the citadel, then as now standing high above the centre of the city, which could often maintain itself as a separate political unit and withstand blockades of up to a year. This sometimes led to a divided governorate, one authority for the town and another for the castle, and it was control of the citadel which enabled the Fatimids at various times to maintain a presence in Aleppo when they had been ejected from the city.

The rule of the Mirdasid family in Aleppo, which lasted, with interruptions, from 414 to 472 (1023–79), was always precarious and dependent on balancing the interests of the ruling family, the Kilābī tribesmen, the citizens of the town and the surrounding great powers. Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās himself gained possession of the city from the Fatimid garrison in 414/1023, with the aid of some of the citizens, including Sālim b. Mustafād, who became *ra'īs al-balad*, but he himself never seems to have lived there. No sooner had he appointed deputies to manage the city in his absence, than he left for Palestine to join the great coalition of bedouin tribes, the Kilāb, Kalb and Ṭayy, against the Fatimids and the general Anūshtakīn al-Dizbarī. He does not appear to have returned to the city before his death in 420/1029 and the battle of Uqḥuwāna near Lake Tiberias (see below, p. 337), where the bedouin

were decisively defeated by the Fatimids. After his death, his inheritance was divided, one son, Thimāl, getting the citadel, while another, Naṣr, took the town; but the arrangement broke down the next year when Naṣr, with Byzantine support, took over the citadel as well while Thimāl retired to the east to Bālis and Raḥba where he enjoyed the support of the kilābī tribesmen. Naṣr also had to face the opposition of Sālim b. Mustafād and the *aḥdāth* but they were crushed when they rebelled. On the international side, Naṣr attempted to maintain good relations with Byzantines and Fatimids alike; in 422/1031 he joined the Byzantines to suppress a Druze disturbance in the Jabal Summāq which threatened both their interests while the Fatimids accepted him as their representative in Aleppo.

This dual control, Naṣr in the city, Thimāl with the tribe, lasted until 429/1038 when the aggressive Fatimid commander in Syria, Anūshtakīn al-Dizbarī, launched a major expedition against the city, supported not just by the Turkish and Berber troops of the Fatimid army but by the bedouin Ṭayy, Kalb and even some Kilāb. Naṣr gathered his army and his clan, including his brother Thimāl, to face the enemy but he was no match for superior forces and was killed fighting bravely. Thimāl took refuge in Aleppo. Here the shaykhs of the city promised to support him against the enemy but his own advisers urged him to flee, saying that the townspeople would hamper his efforts and that if he remained in the city, the Kilābī tribesmen would desert him. It was the classic dilemma of the nomad ruler, did the town or the tribe have priority? Thimāl decided for the tribe and, leaving his nephew al-Muqallad b. Kāmil in the city, he fled east across the Euphrates to take refuge in the Jazīra. Al-Muqallad was soon forced to surrender, Anūshtakīn's men entered the city and *mamlūks* (slave soldiers) were appointed to run it. It seemed as if Mirdasid rule had come to a premature end.

The Mirdasids were saved by rivalries within the Fatimid administration between the *wazīr* al-Jarjarā'ī and the military commander, Anūshtakīn. Anūshtakīn was deprived of office and al-Jarjarā'ī was happy to have Thimāl and his nephew al-Muqallad appointed as Fatimid governors in Aleppo, and Kilābī forces succeeded in ejecting the Fatimid garrison. Thimāl's reign from 433 to 449 (1041–57) was the high point of Mirdasid fortunes. Until the last years he succeeded in balancing all the different elements superbly; Fatimids and Byzantines, Kilābīs and citizens were all prepared, or forced, to accept his authority. With the Byzantines, who had no aggressive designs on Aleppo and whose main interest lay in keeping the city free from direct Fatimid rule, relations were uniformly good. The Mirdasids paid tribute but received gifts and Byzantine titles in exchange; Thimāl himself was made *magistros*

in 433/1041–2 and other members of his family, including his wife ʿAlawiyya, received the titles of *strategos* or *patrikios*. Even his agreements with the Fatimids did not interrupt these friendly relations.

The Fatimids made three determined attempts to destroy the independence of Aleppo. In 439/1047–8 Thimāl had a dispute with Cairo about some money the Fatimid forces had left in the citadel when they left the city at the beginning of his reign. The Caliph al-Mustanṣir sent a member of the Hamdanid family, al-Ḥasan b. al-Ḥusayn, against the city, a reminder that although the Hamdanids had disappeared from Mosul and Aleppo, they still remained influential in the Fatimid empire. The people of Aleppo, however, showed no enthusiasm for this scion of the old dynasty and went out to fight him but were defeated and Aleppo was only saved by a flood which destroyed the enemy's camp and equipment. The next year, the assault was renewed by the Berber governor of Homs, Abū Shujāʿ b. Kulayd, but he was defeated at Kafarṭāb well to the south of the city itself, by an army of Kilābī bedouin citizens of Aleppo and the local *fallāḥīn* (peasants: a very rare example of the use of peasants in military activity at this time) under the command of al-Muqallad b. Kāmil al-Kilābī, Thimāl's nephew and second-in-command. The third attack was led by a *ghulām* of the Fatimids called Rifq. He had a large army and actually entered the city in 441/1050, but dissensions within his army led to the break-up of the expedition while he himself died of wounds.

After this third attempt, Thimāl sent a peace mission to Cairo which included his wife, the redoubtable ʿAlawiyya, known as al-Sayyida (the Lady) and the *shaykh al-dawla*, the leader of the citizens. They secured a treaty which confirmed Thimāl in his possessions and which remained in force for the rest of his rule. Despite some stresses, his relations with the people of Aleppo seem to have been friendly and his rule was remembered in the city as a period of prosperity and the citizens seem to have preferred Mirdasid to Fatimid rule. There is no mention of any very developed administrative system, although each ruler had a secretary with the rather grand title of *wazīr*. Under Naṣr two of these were Christians but Thimāl seems to have only employed Muslims. The only one who achieved more than local fame was Muḥammad b. Muḥammad b. Jahīr, an experienced administrator who took service with Thimāl in 446/1054–5. He doubled the revenues and reorganized the finances, but in doing so made himself unpopular and he was eventually forced to leave.

Ironically, Thimāl's reign was brought to an end, not by outside invasion, but by the opposition of his fellow Kilābī tribesmen. He was very aware of the dangers of alienating these men, who provided the

military backing for his regime. He recruited no *ghilmān* to rival them in the exercise of power and he was careful to distribute money and favours among them. Despite this, however, their leaders remained resentful, feeling that they had as much right as he to wealth and power. Once again we see the conflict between the ideas of shared leadership in a nomad society and the rule of a single man demanded by an urban state. In the end, in 449/1057, pressure from the Kilāb became intolerable and he resigned his post to the Fatimids in exchange for Beirut, Acre and Jubayl, not because they were richer or carried more prestige but simply because they were further away from the Banū Kilāb.

Although Mirdasid rule was restored three years later, and Thimāl himself made a short-lived return, the dynasty never again enjoyed the same power. The international scene had changed. Byzantine power, which had been essential for the continuing independence of Aleppo, was greatly weakened. The rising power of the Seljuk Turks was a serious threat. The Byzantines had been pleased to have Aleppo as a buffer state, but the Seljuks sought to deal the Fatimids a mortal blow and needed to use northern Syria as a base. In addition, their Turkmen followers coveted the pastures of the Banū Kilāb. The days of the bedouin dynasts were numbered.

Other Bedouin Tribes

The Mazyadids, ʿUqaylids and Mirdasids were the most successful of the bedouin leaders who attempted to establish their autonomy in the Fertile Crescent and it is their names and genealogies which appear in the handbooks of Islamic history, but they were by no means the only ones. Sandwiched between the Banū ʿUqayl to the east and the Banū Kilāb to the west, the shaykhs of Banū Numayr were able to establish a transitory authority over Ḥarrān and Edessa until its conquest by the Byzantines in 422/1031. Further south in Syria and Palestine, the nomads were unable to secure control over the settled lands for a long enough period to establish states. Although they were numerous and wide-ranging, the Banū Kalb never established themselves in Damascus; while the Jarrahids, the leading family of the Banū Ṭayy, occupied Ramla on several occasions and did great damage to the town and the surrounding countryside, they never held on to it for long enough to set up any sort of state. Equally in Iraq the Banū Khafāja, despite some sporadic successes, were never able to dominate any settled area permanently.

The reasons for these failures lay not so much in the weakness of the tribes as in the strength of the forces opposed to them. While the

Mazyadids and the ʿUqaylids were faced with the enfeebled Buyid regime of Baghdad, anxious to acquire bedouin support and prepared to make concessions to get it, the tribes of southern Syria and Palestine were opposed by a government which could field large armies of Berber troops and Turkish *ghilmān*. Under the capable leadership of Anūshtakīn al-Dizbarī in the early fifth/eleventh century, the Fatimid cause prospered and, in a great trial of strength, the combined forces of the bedouin tribes were defeated at the battle of Uqḥuwāna. While the Fatimids were prepared to tolerate an independent state in distant Aleppo, at least at certain times, they could not afford to do so in Damascus or on their own doorstep in Ramla and they used all the resources of Egypt to prevent this happening. The case of the Khafāja was somewhat different; here it was more powerful bedouin rivals, the Banū Asad and the Banū ʿUqayl, who prevented them acquiring rights over settled communities, and their attempts to ally with the Buyids or Fatimids against their rivals achieved nothing.

The possession of revenues from settled areas affected not just the wealth of the tribe as a whole but its internal structure. Groups like the Kalb which lacked this sort of revenue seem to have had a weak decentralized structure of the sort that is typical of pastoral tribes. When revenue rights were acquired, however, the money was channelled through the chief to the tribesmen; just as the payment of '*aṭā*' through tribal chiefs in the early Islamic period had strengthened their position against the rank and file of the tribe, so in the fifth and sixth (tenth and eleventh) centuries, the acquisition of revenues put the ruling clans in a much stronger position. They were then in a position to found dynasties with real authority, rather than to be permanently dependent on the consent of the tribe.

The prosperity of the bedouin regimes began to decline after the middle of the fifth/eleventh century. While the Mazyadids were able to survive for another century, the ʿUqaylids and Mirdasids were undermined by the advance of the Turkmen tribes. The Kilāb soon disappeared entirely as a bedouin tribe while the mighty ʿUqayl dwindled to a small remnant in the Ḥarrān area, losing their tribal identity and name in the process. The century 340–440 (approximately 950–1050) was the high-water mark of Arab nomad influence in the Fertile Crescent. In the long term the century can perhaps be seen as the culmination of half a millennium of penetration by Arabic-speaking pastoral peoples of the settled areas, a process which began in late Byzantine and Sasanian times, continued through the Islamic conquests and the advances of the Qarāmiṭa until it reached its furthest extent in this period.

Notes

1. It is worth remarking on the great longevity of many of the nomad chiefs of this period. Dubays reigned longer than any other ruler in the medieval Islamic world. Some of his contemporaries were equally fortunate; the Kurd Naṣr al-Dawla the Marwanid ruled for fifty-two years and Qirwāsh b. al-Muqallad the ʿUqaylid chief for forty-nine. Among sovereigns of more established, urban dynasties only al-Mustanṣir the Fatimid at fifty-eight years could rival the nomad dynasts and that only because he, unlike them, succeeded as a small child. By contrast, the Buyids tended to die young after short reigns. This longevity had a political importance since it enabled these dynasties to establish themselves without the ceaseless succession disputes and minorities which damaged other regimes.

chapter twelve

EARLY ISLAMIC EGYPT AND THE FATIMID EMPIRE

Early Islamic Egypt was a rich country. The taxes that could be gathered from the peasants of the Nile valley meant that, after the Sawād of Iraq, it was the largest contributor to the budget of the ʿAbbasid caliphs. The wealth of the area was not, however, translated into political importance and power. Under the Umayyads the province was usually the apanage of a branch of the Umayyad family, while under the early ʿAbbasids the governors were often men of local importance only. Although richer, it was politically much less important than Syria or Khurāsān. The reason for this lay largely in the make-up of the population. As far as we can tell, there had been no significant Arab settlement in Egypt before the coming of Islam and even after the Arab conquest, immigration was very limited. The small number of Arabs who did come lived almost entirely in the two main towns, Fusṭāṭ and Alexandria, apart from some bedouin in the Ḥawf region along the eastern borders of the delta. Conversion seems to have been slow and the tightly knit Coptic community retained its loyalty to the church under Islamic rule as it had under the equally unsympathetic Byzantine government. Much of the local administration remained in the hands of local people and the Arab impact on everyday life was probably very slight. This meant that there was no large body of Muslims who would provide a power base for an ambitious governor or would-be dynast. It was not until military forces from outside the country were established there in the third/ninth century that Egypt first became a political power within the Islamic world.

Early Islamic Egypt had been largely controlled by a group of Arab families in Fusṭāṭ mostly of south Arabian origin, and descended in the main from men who had arrived at or soon after the initial conquest. They provided the *qāḍī* and the *ṣāḥib al-shurṭa*, the chief of police, who controlled the local militia and functioned as chief adviser to the governor. The civil wars after Hārūn's death destroyed the power of this élite

and when ʿAbd Allāh b. Ṭāhir brought the area back under the control of the Baghdad government during the reign of al-Ma'mūn (see above, pp. 153–4), the administration was entrusted to outsiders, Turkish and Armenian soldiers. It was only a matter of time before one of these decided to use the resources of the area to improve his own position rather than to benefit the caliph.

The anarchy at Sāmarrā which followed the death of al-Mutawakkil in 247/861 meant that provincial governors throughout the Muslim world were forced to rely on their own resources, and many moved towards independence. In order to try to solve the problem of paying the Turkish troops, caliphs of the period took to granting the Turkish leaders revenues from provinces which they could then distribute to their followers and so in 254/868 al-Muʿtazz granted Egypt to Bāyikbāk. He in turn appointed his stepson Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn to govern the province in his name and so ensure that the revenues were collected and delivered. Aḥmad was himself of Turkish origin, his father having been sent from Bukhārā to serve in al-Ma'mūn's entourage during the civil war which followed Hārūn's death and Aḥmad was born in 220/835. He was given a military training in Sāmarrā and, more surprisingly, a theological education in Tarsus, and thus emerged as an Arabic-speaking Muslim rather than a first-generation Turkish immigrant from the central Asian steppes, a factor which was probably crucial in his success.

Such was the importance of the tax revenues of Egypt to the ʿAbbasid government that it was the custom that the financial administrator of the province should be independent of the governor and responsible directly to Baghdad or Sāmarrā. When Aḥmad arrived in the province the financial administrator was the shrewd and often brutal Ibn al-Mudabbir who had no intention of allowing the young governor to take over his role. For four years the two were rivals for power but in the end developments in Palestine and Syria swung the balance in Ibn Ṭūlūn's favour. These provinces were disturbed by a series of local rebellions which the caliphs were unable to crush. They therefore turned to Ibn Ṭūlūn who alone seemed capable of restoring order in the area. He used the opportunity to seize control of the financial administration from Ibn al-Mudabbir and to use the revenues of the province to recruit a large new army, some of them slaves, mostly Negroes and Greeks, and some of them professionals, mostly Greeks. This meant that for the first time, the revenues of Egypt were spent on raising and paying an army in the province and under the control of the governor. Egypt began to acquire a political importance commensurate with its financial one and Ibn Ṭūlūn became powerful in a way no previous governor of the province had been.

His financial and political independence was increased by the system of joint rule established in the caliphate between the Caliph al-Muʿtamid and his brother, and effective military commander, al-Muwaffaq in the years after 256/870, for the caliph relied on Ibn Ṭūlūn as a counterweight to the vast power exercised by his brother and depended on him for contributions to his own treasury. Al-Muwaffaq clearly resented his situation but his energies were occupied in the long drawn out campaigns against the Zanj rebels and so was unable to take any action against Ibn Ṭūlūn.

It would be a mistake, however, to regard Ibn Ṭūlūn as an independent breakaway ruler. His constitutional position remained that of deputy governor of Egypt. His methods of government were based on the model of the ʿAbbasid court in which he grew up, and his new suburb to the north of the old city of Fusṭāṭ, al-Qaṭā'iʿ, was very much Sāmarrā on the Nile, even down to the style of the Great Mosque which was closely based on Sāmarrā patterns.

While Egypt seems to have enjoyed a period of peace and prosperity under Ibn Ṭūlūn's rule, he was concerned, like all rulers of Egypt, with the stability of Syria and Palestine, and much of his diplomatic and military activity was concerned with ensuring his influence there. In 263/877 al-Muwaffaq attempted to regain control of Egypt, needing the resources of the province for his campaigns against the Zanj, and sent one of his leading Turkish generals, Mūsā b. Bughā, to displace Ibn Ṭūlūn. The attempt failed because Mūsā's army disintegrated and Ibn Ṭūlūn now felt that he had to take the initiative and occupy Syria, participation in the *jihād* against the Byzantines providing the perfect justification. His relations with al-Muwaffaq remained cool and in 269/882 he tried to persuade the Caliph al-Muʿtamid to come to Fusṭāṭ and establish himself in Egypt away from the influence of his brother, but the scheme failed and led to a breakdown in relations. Al-Muwaffaq realized, however, that he had to come to terms with his Egyptian rival and negotiations were in progress when Ibn Ṭūlūn died the next year (270/884). Ibn Ṭūlūn never repudiated the authority of the caliphate and seems to have continued to make some contribution to the ʿAbbasid treasury. The circumstances of the period, the anarchy in Sāmarrā followed by the period of dual control under al-Muʿtamid and his brother al-Muwaffaq, coupled with the long and very costly war against the Zanj, meant that he was a provincial governor of great importance and independence; it did not mean that he was attempting to be an independent ruler in Egypt. In his policies, as in his upbringing, he remained very much a product of the ʿAbbasid establishment.

Before his death, Ibn Ṭūlūn had secured the acknowledgement of his son Khumārawayh as heir, replacing another son, al-ʿAbbās, who had rebelled against his father. Khumārawayh now succeeded without opposition in Egypt, but al-Muwaffaq was determined to exploit his youth and inexperience to regain authority and there followed three years of undistinguished campaigning before an agreement was reached in 273/886. This treaty stipulated that Khumārawayh would acknowledge the caliph and pay a substantial tribute (perhaps 300,000 *dīnārs* a year) in exchange for the governorate of Egypt, Syria and part of the western Jazīra for thirty years, the provisions being hereditary. In 279/892 the accession of al-Muʿtaḍid, son of Ibn Ṭūlūn's old enemy, al-Muwaffaq, to the caliphate led to the confirmation of the treaty with minor changes, including the Tulunids' loss of their Jaziran possessions.

Khumārawayh inherited the army his father had built up and it was upon this that his power was based. He himself recruited a private guard from the Ḥawfī Arabs of Egypt to supplement the existing forces. His reign is usually considered as one of luxury and decay but it seems unlikely that the growing financial problems were purely a product of the ruler's extravagance. The Tulunid court was based on the Sāmarrā model and it seemed that the system had some of the same weaknesses as were found in the ʿAbbasid system, notably the inability of the state to fund a large, mostly inactive army on a permanent basis. The solution to these financial problems was entrusted to a bureaucrat of Iraqi origins, ʿAlī b. Aḥmad al-Mādharāʾī, whose efforts were only partially successful since when Khumārawayh was murdered in 282/896 by his own slaves the treasury was empty. Despite this, however, the twelve years of his rule were largely peaceful and saw a measure of calm not only in Egypt but, more unusually, in Syria.

After his death, the decline of the power of the family followed with startling rapidity. He was succeeded by his youthful son Jaysh, who was soon deposed, and then by another son, Hārūn, but neither of these two boys was able to keep the state intact. In 292/905, Muḥammad b. Sulaymān and the ʿAbbasid army entered Fusṭāṭ and brought an end to the Tulunid dynasty. The end of family rule may have been ignominious, but the memory of the Tulunids lingered on and showed that Egypt, under wise and energetic leadership and administration, could be the centre of a major regional power. Many later rulers were to develop the themes first worked out under their rule: careful financial administration, the recruitment of soldiers from outside the province and the concern to control Palestine and Syria.

The restoration of direct ʿAbbasid rule did not result in peace and prosperity. Once again the resources of Egypt were exploited for the

benefit of outsiders, or at least that was the theory. An element of continuity was provided by the fact that the Mādharā'ī family retained control over the financial administration. The governorship during this period was in the hands of Turkish generals, of whom Takīn b. ʿAbd Allāh was the only one to enjoy power for any significant length of time. It seems likely that the Baghdad government was reluctant to allow these any more power than was necessary for fear that they would try to emulate the career of Ibn Ṭūlūn. That this was indeed so is suggested by the fact that Takīn's son, Muḥammad, attempted to secure his father's position after his death in 321/933. Apart from the instability of governors, the most serious threat facing Egypt at this period came from the Fatimids, established in Tunisia since 297/909, who made two major attempts to conquer Egypt in 301–2/913–15 and 307–9/919–21. In order to counter these, Mu'nis, the military strong-man of al-Muqtadir's reign, was obliged to come west to undertake the campaign in person, suggesting again that the local governors were not allowed sufficient resources to do it.

ʿAbbasid control over the area was at best precarious and it effectively came to an end during the disturbances of the latter years of al-Muqtadir's reign. The beneficiary of this uncertainty was another military man of eastern Iranian extraction, Muḥammad b. Ṭughj. His grandfather had come from the Farghānā area of Khurāsān to the court at Sāmarrā where he was a contemporary of Ibn Ṭūlūn's father. His son Ṭughj served the Tulunids as a governor in Aleppo and Damascus and it seems that his son, Muḥammad, who had been born in Baghdad in 268/882, was able to make use later of contacts established at this stage. Ṭughj himself joined Muḥammad b. Sulaymān and the ʿAbbasid forces against the last of the Tulunids but was arrested after the fall of Ibn Sulaymān and died in prison in 294/906. His son, Muḥammad, escaped and soon found himself a post under Takīn, the governor of Egypt, who appointed him to the ʿAmmān area. In 306/918 Mu'nis came to Egypt to defend it against the second Fatimid attack and Ibn Ṭughj used the opportunity to gain the friendship of this powerful figure whose patronage was to be of key importance. In 316/928 he broke with Takīn and it was probably Mu'nis's influence which led to his appointment to Damascus three years later. After the death of Takīn in 321/933 he was briefly appointed governor to Egypt itself but the move came to nothing when Mu'nis fell from power. Only the fact that his successor Aḥmad b. Kayghalagh was totally unable to keep order in the province allowed Ibn Ṭughj a second chance. In 323/935 he was again appointed as governor, probably with the intervention at court of al-Faḍl b. Jaʿfar b. al-Furāt who, like him, had been a supporter of Mu'nis.

Once appointed he lost no time in restoring his control over Egypt. Ibn Kayghalagh, his predecessor, fled to the Fatimids but he was able to win over both Takīn's son, Muḥammad, and the Mādharā'ī financial administrators to his cause. In some ways the Fatimid threat actually helped Ibn Ṭughj. He loyally supported ʿAbbasid claims and the caliphs were prepared to give their approval to his rule in return. In 324/936 he defeated a third Fatimid attack and was rewarded with the title of *ikhshīd*. This had been the title held by the king of the Farghānā area from which his grandfather had come. There is no evidence that he was of royal descent but the choice of the honorific shows how attached he remained to the memory of his family's homeland. Like Ibn Ṭūlūn before him, the *ikhshīd* took care to build up a strong military force in Egypt, recruiting many Blacks and Turks. In many ways, however, he was less ambitious than Ibn Ṭūlūn. In Syria he was prepared to reach an accommodation with Sayf al-Dawla the Hamdanid in 334/945 which left the Hamdanids in control of Aleppo, Antioch and Homs, all areas which the Tulunids had ruled, while Ibn Ṭughj controlled Damascus and Palestine (see above, pp. 273–4). His only attempt to influence events in the rest of the Muslim world seems to have been in 333/944 when he met the Caliph al-Muttaqī at Raqqa. He tried to persuade the caliph, as Ibn Ṭūlūn had tried to persuade al-Muʿtamid, to come with him to Egypt. The luckless ʿAbbasid allowed himself to be persuaded by the *amīr al-umarā'*, Tūzūn, to remain in Iraq, where he was blinded and deposed shortly afterwards.

Ibn Ṭughj died in 334/946. Although he lacked the flamboyance of the Tulunids and does not seem to have been a patron of the arts in any way, he followed them in making Egypt and its army the basis of his power and in concerning himself with the administration and agriculture of the province. In 333/944 he had made an agreement with the caliph whereby he was to have the governorate of Egypt for thirty years and this was to be hereditable by his children. It is interesting to note that the terms were the same as Khumārawayh had made with the caliph in 273/886. When the *ikhshīd* did die shortly afterwards, his son, Ūnūjūr, succeeded without any real opposition. The smooth transfer of power was arranged by the black eunuch, Kāfūr. He had been recruited into Ibn Ṭughj's service along with many of his compatriots, and he had come to the ruler's attention because of his obvious talents. He was used on diplomatic and military missions and became tutor to the young Ūnūjūr. On his father's death, Ūnūjūr succeeded to the throne but the administration remained firmly in the hands of Kāfūr who was to be virtual ruler of Egypt for the next twenty-two years. The Ikhshidid princes (Ūnūjūr, 334–49/946–61 and ʿAlī, 349–55/961–6) were little

more than puppets in the hands of this gifted administrator who preserved the substance of the state founded by the *ikhshīd* against outside attack from Hamdanids and Fatimids as well as internal disturbances and economic problems. With the death of ʿAlī in 355/966, Kāfūr took over power in his own right and remained ruler of Egypt until his death two years later, an event which left the way open for the long-threatened Fatimid take-over.

The Tulunids and the Ikhshidids shared important characteristics. Both states were marked by an adherence to ʿAbbasid legality and the working out of treaty arrangements with the caliphs, and they were characterized by the development of powerful slave and mercenary armies recruited almost entirely from outside Egypt. They were also concerned with the economy of the country and rulers of both dynasties tried to ensure that the prosperity on which their power was ultimately based remained intact. Indeed it is the financial administrators who provide a major element of continuity through this period, the Mādharāʾīs linking the Tulunids with the Ikhshidids while the Fatimids employed Kāfūr's financial official, Yaʿqūb b. Killis. The Fatimids, of course, rejected any allegiance to the ʿAbbasid caliphs, but in other ways they built on the foundations laid by their predecessors and the Fatimid state can only be understood in relation to them.

The Fatimid caliphate emerged from the Ismāʿīlī movement of the third/ninth century (see above, pp. 285–6). Towards the end of the century, the movement was divided by the claims of ʿUbayd Allāh, then living in Salamiyya in Syria, that he was a descendant of Ismāʿīl and the true living *imām*. Many Ismāʿīlīs, notably those who were to form the Qarmaṭī movement, rejected these claims but others accepted them. Among the latter was the *dāʿī* (missionary) known as Abū ʿAbd Allāh al-Shīʿī who spread the Ismāʿīlī message first in Yemen and then from 280/893 in the province of Ifrīqiya in North Africa (roughly modern Tunisia). Here he avoided the plains around the city of Qayrawān, the stronghold of the Aghlabid dynasty who had controlled the area since the time of Hārūn al-Rashīd, and travelled instead among the Kutāma Berbers of the Kabyle mountains to the west. The Berber population of North Africa had always resented the rule of the Arabized élite of Qayrawān and expressed their disaffection by adopting heterodox approaches to Islam. In the Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid periods, Kharijism had attracted a wide following among these people, and it is not surprising that the wandering teacher and holy man, Abū ʿAbd Allāh should be welcomed by them. Despite inevitable tensions, the Kutāma Berbers were to form the main support of the Fatimid dynasty for over a century to come. When the Qarāmiṭa threatened ʿUbayd Allāh the Fatimid and

forced him to leave Salamiyya, he made his way to join Abū ʿAbd Allāh among the Berbers. From their base in the mountains they made a series of attacks on the Aghlabids which culminated in victory in 297/909 when they expelled the last Aghlabids and the Fatimid dynasty was established in Qayrawān.

The moment when a revolutionary movement achieves power is always of crucial importance. Fatimid propaganda seems to have promised the Berbers a divinely inspired *imām*, possibly capable of doing miracles, certainly providing a charismatic leadership. ʿUbayd Allāh, however, seems to have found these claims something of an embarrassment, when power was eventually his. While the Berbers were dismayed to find their leader a mere mortal after all, ʿUbayd Allāh was determined to establish his authority and he succeeded in executing Abū ʿAbd Allāh, his *dāʿī*, and suppressing dissident movements among both the Kutāma and the settled peoples.

Having surmounted the original crisis, ʿUbayd Allāh set about creating a state apparatus which was surprisingly conventional. Later Ismāʿīlī groups, like the Assassins of northern Iran, tried to break away from the pattern of military government which had become usual in the Islamic east but the Fatimids made no such attempt. ʿUbayd Allāh was proclaimed caliph with the messianic title of al-Mahdī and the claim to be the true leader of the Family of the Prophet. As such he claimed authority not just over Ifrīqiya as the Aghlabids had done, but over the entire Islamic world. Ifrīqiya was to play the role that Khurāsān had done in the ʿAbbasid revolution while the Kutāma were to fulfil the role of the Khurāsāniyya. In order to do this, the Kutāma were formed into a regular, paid militia while slaves were recruited from sub-Saharan Africans, Greeks and *Ṣaqāliba* (Slav and other European *ghilmān* employed by Spanish Muslim rulers) of Spain and elsewhere. A navy was also formed, a development which was to be very important in the history of the caliphate. The first objective was to be the conquest of Egypt and in 301–2/913–15 a Kutāma chief, Ḥabāsa, led the first expedition there. Although the Berber forces managed to maintain themselves in the country for some time, the expedition ended in failure when the local Turkish commander, Takīn, was reinforced by the general Mu'nis from Iraq. A second attempt five years later, led this time by the caliph's son, Abū'l-Qāsim, ended in failure again, although this time the Fatimid army stayed two years in Egypt: the turning-point was once again the arrival of Mu'nis from the east and the destruction of the Fatimid fleet by the fleet of Tarsus.

After these two failures, the caliphate developed more or less peacefully in North Africa. In 308/920 a new capital was built at Mahdiyya

on the coast, a natural port and stronghold, away from the potentially hostile people of Qayrawān. The reconciliation of Ismāʿīlī ideals with the government of a largely Sunnī people was gradually worked out. At one level there was very little attempt at conversion and certainly no mass coercion. Ismāʿīlī beliefs remained the faith of the Kutāma and of other members of the governing élite. Among these was the *qāḍī* al-Nuʿmān b. Muḥammad who worked out the theoretical nature of the Fatimid claims, attempting to clarify the genealogy and showing how the *imāms* were the natural, foreordained leaders of the entire Muslim community. This did not mean that all subjects had to become active Ismāʿīlīs; for those not involved in government, passive acceptance was enough.

After the two initial attempts to take Egypt, Fatimid expansion in the east came to a temporary halt. There were a number of reasons for this, notably the establishment of a fairly strong government in Egypt under Muḥammad b. Ṭughj and problems nearer home. From 331/943 to 335/947 Ifrīqiya itself was disturbed by the rebellion of a different Berber group, the Hawwāra of the Aurès mountains under a charismatic Kharijite leader called Abū Yazīd, known as "the man on the donkey". This rebellion nearly destroyed the Fatimids entirely and after its defeat they were forced to pay more attention to affairs in the west. Here they began a long drawn out struggle for influence over the Maghrib (the areas of modern Morocco and Algeria) with the rival Umayyad caliphs of Cordova. It was not until 347–9/958–60 when Jawhar, now the leading Fatimid general, conquered Sijilmāsa and Fez that the position was secured.

The Fatimids had not, however, lost interest in the east entirely. In particular they seem to have renewed contact with their fellow Ismāʿīlīs, the Qarāmiṭa, now at a safe distance. In 339/951 they persuaded the Qarāmiṭa to return the Black Stone of the Kaʿba, a sign of both their influence and their renewed determination to play a part in the affairs of the eastern caliphate. In 341/953, al-Muʿizz succeeded to the Fatimid throne and he seems to have been determined to pursue the eastern ambitions of the dynasty. The Fatimids had always had contacts in Egypt. At the time of the accession of Muḥammad b. Ṭughj there had been a party of *Maghāriba* (westerners i.e. North Africans) in the country who supported the claims of Aḥmad b. Kayghalagh against Ibn Ṭughj and his *Mashāriqa* (easterners or Turks), and after Ibn Ṭughj's triumph his defeated rival took refuge with the Fatimids. In the latter days of Kāfūr's reign, problems began to reassert themselves in Egypt and it became possible once again for the Fatimids to fish in troubled waters. A series of inadequate Nile floods resulted in discontent, famine and reduced revenue for the government. The governing class was increasingly divided between the civil administration, the *kuttāb*, led by

Jaʿfar b. al-Faḍl b. al-Furāt,[1] and the army built up by the Ikhshidids. The Fatimids developed contacts with many groups in Egyptian society, among them members of leading ʿAlid families and the financial administrator, Yaʿqūb b. Killis, who fled to the Fatimid court because of his hostility to Ibn al-Furāt. Fatimid propaganda in Fusṭāṭ was organized by a rich merchant, Aḥmad b. Naṣr, whose activities became increasingly open in the last years of Kāfūr's rule. He took care to assure all elements in Egypt that the Fatimid Caliph al-Muʿizz really had their interests at heart. On the fringes of the Nile valley, Fatimid agents stirred up trouble among the bedouin of the Egyptian deserts, notably the Banū Qurra, now the leading group among the Arabs of the Ḥawf on the east of the delta, and the Banū Hilāl and Berber nomads of the western oases. In Syria, their allies, the Qarāmiṭa, attacked Ikhshidid possessions.

Despite these favourable signs, the expedition was planned with great care to ensure that there would be no repetition of previous problems. In 357/968 Kāfūr died and power passed to the hands of the infant Ikhshidid, Aḥmad b. ʿAlī. Ibn al-Furāt, in charge of the bureaucracy, was confronted by the opposition of al-Ḥasan b. ʿUbayd Allāh, who came from a branch of the Ikhshidid family established in Damascus, and Shamūl, leader of the army. The leader of the Fatimid expedition was Jawhar, an ex-slave probably of Greek origin who had risen by his abilities to a leading position in the Fatimid army and enjoyed the confidence of the caliph. In Rabīʿ I 358/February 969 he left Ifrīqiya with an army, said to have been 100,000 strong, mostly Berber horsemen. As he approached Egypt, he began negotiations with different groups. These were complex and resulted in a series of agreements, the basic outlines of which were that the *kuttāb* and the leading members of the civilian élite, including the *qāḍī* of Fusṭāṭ, were guaranteed their property and position. Agreement with the Ikhshidid military was more difficult and there were some violent confrontations but the opposition was divided and leaderless, and in Shaʿbān 358/July 969 Jawhar entered the capital and the prayers in the old mosque of ʿAmr, still the centre of religious devotion, were said in the name of the Fatimid caliph.

Jawhar remained effective ruler of Egypt for the next four years until the arrival of his master al-Muʿizz, and he was responsible for the main features of the post-conquest settlement. Jawhar inherited the Ikhshidid state apparatus. Ibn al-Furāt served the new administration as he had served Kāfūr and the Ikhshidids. More remarkable was the fact that the *qāḍī* of Fusṭāṭ, Abū Ṭāhir, an old man in his eighties, and the *khaṭīb* (preacher) of the mosque of ʿAmr, a member of the ʿAbbasid family, were both kept in office. There was continued opposition from some members of the Ikhshidid army but most people seem to have welcomed

the arrival of stable government and Jawhar made no attempt to force Ismāʿīlī practices on an unwilling populace.

Jawhar's most important act was the foundation of a new capital, al-Qāhira (Cairo), i.e. the Victorious, about 3 miles to the north of the old city of Fusṭāṭ. The foundation of a new settlement was not new in the history of Islamic Egypt; Fusṭāṭ itself had been founded by the conquering Muslims outside the walls of the Roman fortress at Babylon and Ibn Ṭūlūn had founded a new centre, complete with mosque, at al-Qaṭāʾiʿ, to house his newly recruited army. The Fatimid city was, however, the most ambitious and the most carefully planned of all these enterprises. The primary purpose of the new city was to house the government and the Berber army, many of whom remained to settle in Egypt. Here they could be safe from popular disturbances and the newly arrived troops would not clash with local inhabitants. From a religious point of view, it was important to have a mosque where the Ismāʿīlī rite could be celebrated without opposition and Jawhar immediately began the building of the Azhar mosque, soon to become an important centre of Ismāʿīlī education and propaganda. Economic benefits accrued because of the state ownership of land in the city. When al-Manṣūr had founded Baghdad, he had left the development of the markets to his subjects to whom the land was granted. In Cairo, however, the markets were state property, bringing in a substantial revenue. Most of the new city was occupied by mosques and two vast palaces where the opulent, formal and hierarchic Fatimid court operated away from the public gaze. Throughout the Fatimid period, Cairo remained very much the government enclave. Fusṭāṭ, from which it was separated by a belt of gardens, remained the centre of population and economic activity. The three great mosques retained their separate identities: the mosque of ʿAmr was the centre of popular devotion and the place where the *qāḍī* of Fusṭāṭ held court, the mosque of Ibn Ṭūlūn with the adjacent *Dār al-Imāra* (government house) was the site of the *maẓālim* court where fiscal and political cases were dealt with, while the Azhar, soon to be supplemented by the mosque of al-Ḥākim, was the court mosque.

While the establishment of the Fatimids in Egypt was comparatively peaceful and successful, the question of Syria and Palestine was, and remained throughout the period, the government's major preoccupation. This was partly for security reasons; as events were soon to show, Fatimid Egypt could not be held unless Palestine and Damascus at least were under the control of Cairo. There was also an economic aspect; Syria was an important alternative source of supplies in years when the Nile did not rise sufficiently to provide for the needs of Egypt. One of the reasons for the collapse of the Ikhshidids had been that the raids of

the Qarāmiṭa had meant that grain could not be imported from Syria to relieve distress in Egypt. The Fatimid regime could not afford to allow the populace to go hungry.

There were two possible solutions to the Syrian problem. The less ambitious was the Ikhshidid approach. This consisted of basing power on Damascus and allowing northern Syria to remain independent under the Hamdanid dynasty. The second option was the Tulunid solution, which meant that all Palestine and Syria as far as the Byzantine frontier should be brought under Egyptian rule. The Tulunid option was tempting in that it brought more land under Fatimid rule and meant that the caliphs would have the prestige of defending Islam against Byzantine attacks. But it also led to problems; the Arab tribes of Syria were difficult to control and the people of Aleppo had strong separatist tendencies and were quite prepared to seek Byzantine support to preserve their independence from their Muslim neighbours. Direct confrontation with the Byzantines would demand all the military resources of the state and there were practical problems in supplying and controlling a large army far from the centre of power. In the aftermath of the conquest, Jawhar sent a leading Kutāmī Berber general, Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ, to take over the remaining Ikhshidid possessions. The last Ikhshidid governor, al-Ḥasan b. ʿUbayd Allāh, was captured at Ramla and sent to North Africa and Damascus was occupied.

This was only the beginning of the problem, however, for the Fatimids now came into direct conflict with their sometime allies, the Qarāmiṭa. The Ikhshidids had been paying the Qarāmiṭa very large subsidies – 300,000 *dīnārs* a year – to keep them peaceful but Jaʿfar decided that these should be cut off. The response was swift; the Qarāmiṭa of Syria called on their fellows in Baḥrayn and secured arms and subsidies from the Buyid Bakhtiyār in Baghdad. Thus prepared, they killed Jaʿfar and drove his Berber troops out of the city and back to Egypt. Nor did they stop there, but, recruiting disaffected supporters of the Ikhshidids *en route*, they marched on Cairo itself. Jawhar constructed a line of fortifications outside the city at ʿAyn Shams and in Rabīʿ I 361/December 971 a fierce battle was fought around this line and the Qarāmiṭa were defeated. It had been a near-run thing and the caliphate almost perished. After the battle Berber reinforcements, led by al-Ḥasan b. ʿAlī, called Ibn al-ʿAmmār, arrived from Ifrīqiya. Egypt was safe, although there was still opposition in some parts of the delta, but the problem of Syria was far from being solved. In the aftermath of victory, many Ikhshīdī supporters who had, or were thought to have, allied with the Qarāmiṭa were rounded up and imprisoned but an attempt to regain Palestine was prevented by the Qarāmiṭa who occupied Ramla.

Early in 362/late 972, al-Muʿizz left Ifrīqiya to come east. He brought with him his entire court, his possessions and the coffins of his ancestors; he did not intend to return. By Shaʿbān (May 973) he was at Alexandria where he held court at the foot of the Pharos, which had been restored by Ibn Ṭūlūn and was still largely intact. Here he received the leaders of the bedouin tribes and the civil élite of Fusṭāṭ accepting their professions of loyalty and explaining that he had only come to pursue the war against the infidels and to open the route to Mecca for pilgrims, the traditional public duties of the caliph. In Ramaḍān 362/June 973 he finally entered Cairo. Jawhar was retired with wealth and honour, although he remained a trusted counsellor, and al-Muʿizz began his personal rule.

He brought with him two men who were to have an important influence on the making of early Fatimid policy: the *wazīr* Yaʿqūb b. Killis and the *qāḍī*, al-Nuʿmān b. Muḥammad. Yaʿqūb, a converted Jew, of Iraqi origin like so many of the Egyptian governing class, had been trained in administration under Kāfūr. Ideologically, he was a firm supporter of the Ismāʿīlī doctrine, produced a book of law based on the pronouncements of the Caliphs al-Muʿizz and al-ʿAzīz, which he caused to be used in the mosque of ʿAmr, and played a major part in the establishment of the Azhar as an Ismāʿīlī educational institution. In practical affairs, however, he tended to run financial and foreign policy as it had been under Kāfūr, thus ensuring a strong element of continuity in Egyptian government.

Soon afterwards he and his colleague, the Berber ʿUslūj b. al-Ḥasan al-Kutāmī, established themselves in the old *Dār al-Imāra* by the mosque of Ibn Ṭūlūn and began a searching investigation into the revenues of the government. They increased the tax-farms, revised upwards the taxes they demanded at all levels, most noticeably from the textile towns of the delta, Tinnīs and Damietta. These taxes were to be assessed in the new, very fine gold *dīnārs* al-Muʿizz now had minted. These measures put government finances on a secure footing and enabled the Fatimids to survive crises which would have destroyed a less prosperous dynasty.

The other figure, *qāḍī* al-Nuʿmān, who had long served the Fatimids in Ifrīqiya, died shortly after the Fatimids settled in Cairo but his son, ʿAlī, inherited his position and took over from the ageing *qāḍī* of Fusṭāṭ, Abū Ṭāhir. In 365/975 ʿAlī began the teaching of Ismāʿīlī doctrine in the Azhar and remained until his death in 374/984 chief *qāḍī* of the caliphate and a leading adviser of the caliphs. He founded a dynasty of *qāḍīs* who were pillars of the regime for the next half-century.

Al-Muʿizz, perhaps under the influence of these new arrivals, moved away from Jawhar's tolerant policy on religious issues. There were four

areas of change in public religious observance. The first was naturally the acceptance of the Fatimids as the rightful caliphs, which seems to have caused little problem, even in non-Ismāʿīlī circles. The second was the use of Shīʿī law, particularly the pronouncements of Jaʿfar al-Ṣādiq (d. 148/765), the sixth *imām* and the last to be accepted by all Shīʿīs. The third aspect was the distinctive Shīʿī call to prayer (which includes the words "Come to the best of works" not used by the Sunnīs) and the fourth, that most contentious of issues, the particularly Shīʿī festivals of Ghadīr Khumm (18 Dhū'l-Ḥijja) and the mourning for al-Ḥusayn (10 Muḥarram). The introduction of Shīʿī law produced some resentment, notably in the case of inheritance law where Shīʿī *fiqh* gives women a larger share, but there was no widespread opposition. ʿAlī b. al-Nuʿmān was prepared to employ a Sunnī *faqīh* (expert in religious law) as a *qāḍī* on the understanding that he would judge according to Shīʿī law. Jawhar had refrained from introducing the controversial Shīʿī festivals, but al-Muʿizz did, a move which led to open opposition on 10 Muḥarram 363/11 October 973 when Sunnī merchants in Fusṭāṭ insisted on keeping the *sūqs* open in defiance of official pressure for them to shut as a sign of mourning, but again the disturbances seem to have been short-lived.

In general the Ismāʿīlī rite was the faith of the ruling élite and the Berbers but it was not forced on others. The separation of the two communities helped as well, the Ismāʿīlīs being dominant in Cairo while Fusṭāṭ remained largely Sunnī; a man is said to have been expelled from Cairo for the keeping of a Sunnī law-book, the *Muwaṭṭa'* of Mālik b. Anas, in his house. There was much less sectarian violence in Egypt than there was in Baghdad and Iraq during this period and a contemporary observer, the geographer al-Muqaddasī who visited Egypt at this time, stresses that there were few differences between the two branches of the Faith. When popular disturbances did break out, as happened during the reign of al-ʿAzīz, they took the form of anti-Christian riots rather than sectarian strife among the Muslims. At first sight, the imposition of an Ismāʿīlī ruling class on an essentially Sunnī, traditionist population would appear to have been a recipe for civil conflict; in the event realism and an element of give and take on both sides, coupled with stable government and economic prosperity, meant that religious differences never got out of hand.

In contrast with the comparative stability in Egypt, the Fatimid government continued to face serious problems in Syria and Palestine. In 363/974 the Qarāmiṭa again invaded Egypt but were defeated and 1,500 prisoners were taken to Cairo where they were executed. Syria was still disturbed when al-Muʿizz died in Rabīʿ II 365/Dec. 975. Of the promises he had made to the Egyptian leaders at Alexandria, one

was fulfilled: in 364/975 the *ḥajj* was able to travel overland from Egypt and the Fatimid caliph was acknowledged at Mecca. Circumstances in Syria, however, meant that he was unable to pursue a campaign against the Byzantines who had taken Antioch in the same year that Jawhar had entered Cairo, and, to the disgust of refugees from the recently conquered territories, Byzantine ambassadors were received in Cairo. The problems in Syria also meant that it was out of the question to launch any attempt to subdue Iraq and the eastern Islamic world, despite the claims of the dynasty to the leadership of the entire Muslim community.

Al-Muʿizz was succeeded by his son, Nizār, who took the title of al-ʿAzīz, and he and his *wazīr*, Yaʿqūb b. Killis, immediately addressed themselves to the problem of Syria. Yaʿqūb, in this as in other respects, followed the Ikhshidid tradition. He believed that the Fatimids should concentrate on controlling Palestine and southern Syria while leaving the north of the Hamdanids and their successors to form a buffer state against the Byzantines, with whom the caliph should try to keep on good terms. This modest strategy formed the basis of Fatimid policy throughout the early years of al-ʿAzīz.

The government of Damascus remained the principal problem. The city had been occupied by the Berber troops of the Fatimids during al-Muʿizz's reign, but they had been ill-disciplined and tensions with the citizens resulted in disturbances and a major fire. The Berbers were so unpopular that the people of the city turned to the Turkish leader Alptakīn, who, with 300 mounted followers, took the town just before the old caliph's death. These Turks had come from Baghdad, whence they had been expelled by ʿAḍud al-Dawla when he took over the city (see above, p. 224), and they now hoped to live off the revenues of the area while entering into negotiations with the Fatimids to see if they could take service with them. Alptakīn fulfilled the hopes of the people by restoring peace and driving the bedouin away from the Ghūṭa (the oasis of Damascus). He also secured an alliance with the Qarāmiṭa and took over many of the coastal cities including Sidon, Beirut and Jubayl. The new caliph, al-ʿAzīz, was determined to crush this emerging Syrian state and despatched a large force led by the veteran, Jawhar, the original conqueror of Egypt, but Alptakīn and his Qarmaṭī allies were able to drive him back to Ascalon where he endured a seventeen-month siege. Under pressure from his Kutāma followers he finally entered into negotiations, agreeing that all of Palestine from Ascalon north should be under the control of the Turks while the Fatimid presence was to be confined to Gaza in the extreme south. To sweeten the pill, Alptakīn agreed that al-ʿAzīz should be formally acknowledged as

caliph in the areas under his control. Jawhar and his men were allowed to return to Egypt.

Yaʿqūb b. Killis realized that this could not be the basis of a permanent settlement; Fatimid prestige had been severely damaged and the presence of a potentially hostile power in Ascalon and Ramla left Egypt dangerously vulnerable. In addition, he himself, and no doubt other members of the Fatimid establishment, had valuable properties in the Damascus area which they were reluctant to relinquish. He persuaded the caliph to undertake a major campaign in person and in Muḥarram 368/August 978, a massive Fatimid army defeated Alptakīn and the Qarāmiṭa in southern Palestine. The victory re-established Fatimid prestige but the victors realized that compromises would have to be made. The Qarāmiṭa were guaranteed a subsidy in return for their leaving for Baḥrayn, and the settlement marks the end of the Qarmaṭī threat to Syria. Ibn Killis also realized that Syria could not be held without the co-operation of the Turks; the disastrous attempt to govern Damascus through a Berber garrison had made this clear. He therefore arranged that the defeated Alptakīn should be reconciled with al-ʿAzīz and taken into Fatimid service. He returned to Cairo with the caliph and was treated with great honour. The integration of Alptakīn and his Turkish followers into the Fatimid state marked a major change. Hitherto the Fatimid army had been composed almost entirely of Kutāma Berbers and black and Slav slaves, the Berbers forming the cavalry. Although Alptakīn himself died a few years after his arrival in Egypt, the Turks remained as a major influence in the Fatimid state. There developed a *ghulām* system very similar to that found in eastern Islamic lands and it is interesting to note that the *wazīr* Ibn Killis acquired his own *ghilmān*, distinct from those of the caliph. The Turks were prominent in Cairo, often as rivals to the Berbers, but they were especially important in Fatimid Syria. The government of Damascus was often in Turkish hands and continuing efforts were made to attract the services of successful Turkish *condottieri* in Syria.

The victory of 368/978 had not solved the problem of Damascus. With Alptakīn's surrender, power in the city was taken over by local people, anxious no doubt to prevent another Berber occupation. The city was effectively controlled by a citizen called Qassām, supported by the local *aḥdath* (militia), a notable example of urban self-government of the period. The situation was complicated by the arrival of Abū Taghlib, the last Hamdanid ruler of Mosul who, expelled from his own domains (see above, pp. 271–2), now sought a position with the Fatimids, offering to take Damascus for them if they sent troops. There then followed a confused pattern of intrigue. Ibn Killis sent a *ghulām* of his,

another converted Jew called al-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ, with a large army of Berbers. On the way, they entered into an agreement with the leader of the most powerful bedouin tribe in southern Palestine, Daghfal b. Mufarrij b. al-Jarrāḥ al-Ṭayyī, guaranteeing him possession of Ramla, which he alleged was threatened by Abū Taghlib, a threat which was made more real by the fact that Abū Taghlib had with him a body of ʿUqaylī bedouin who might have coveted the Ṭayy pastures. No serious attempt was made to take Damascus by force although al-Faḍl did make a show of force in the coastal cities. On the way back, Ibn al-Jarrāḥ and the Ṭayy, in alliance with al-Faḍl and his Berber troops, attacked and routed Abū Taghlib and his ʿUqaylī followers, killing their leader, before al-Faḍl returned home. The whole confusing episode is of some importance. It showed that the Berber army was not strong enough to take Damascus. It marked, too, the establishment of Ibn al-Jarrāḥ in Ramla and as a major figure to be reckoned with in the area. He recognized Fatimid sovereignty in theory but in practice was an independent agent. The victory of the Ṭayy over the ʿUqayl meant that they were to be the major bedouin power in the area and a continuing problem for the Fatimid authorities. As in so many other areas at this time, we see the bedouin extending their authority over settled communities, in this case Ramla, while not abandoning their tribal life-style. The episode also shows the strength of Ibn Killis, operating through his *ghilmān* and making all the decisions of importance in the campaign.

The problem of Damascus remained. A further expedition in 369/979–80 under the Kutāmī chief Sulaymān b. Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ (son of that Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ who had been killed in 361/971) with 4,000 Berbers failed to achieve anything, while the problem of Ibn al-Jarrāḥ became more pressing. Al-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ attempted to control him in alliance with the ʿUqayl. Most serious, however, were the depredations of the bedouin in settled areas; Ramla was reduced to a ghost town by the activities of the Ṭayy while the bedouin virtually destroyed the agriculture of the Ghūṭa of Damascus and the Ḥawran, causing great hardship in the city. The people were saved, not by the Fatimid government, but by the Turk who governed Homs for the Hamdanids, Bakjūr, who produced supplies for the areas under his control. The failure of Ibn Fallāḥ's Berber army to restore order or maintain its own discipline meant that the next Fatimid expedition to Syria was led by a Turk, Baltakīn, who had been one of Alptakīn's associates. This was the first time a Turk had led a Fatimid army. The campaign was a conspicuous success; the bedouin Ibn al-Jarrāḥ was forced to flee north to Byzantine territory and Qassām surrendered Damascus on terms which allowed him to remain the effective ruler under the nominal control of a Berber governor.

Fatimid policies were helped by the decline and impoverishment of the Hamdanid state of Aleppo under Saʿd al-Dawla which meant that many erstwhile supporters of the dynasty in Syria now entered Fatimid service. One such was Rajāʾ al-Ṣiqlabī who came over with 300 followers and was rewarded with the governorate of Acre and Caesarea, but the most important recruit was the governor of Homs, Bakjūr, who now offered to govern Damascus for the Fatimids. The offer produced a major rift in the Fatimid administration between the caliph and Yaʿqūb b. Killis. Baltakīn had become a protégé of the *wazīr* and Yaʿqūb was anxious to ensure that his man remained in control. Bakjūr, on the other hand, had made contact directly with the caliph. He offered al-ʿAzīz the prospect of governing not just Damascus and Homs but Aleppo as well, and Ibn Killis was opposed to such a forward policy. For the first time, however, al-ʿAzīz overrode his mentor and Baltakīn was forced to hand over to Bakjūr.

The disagreement over the appointment of Bakjūr was one of the causes of the brief estrangement between al-ʿAzīz and Ibn Killis. At the same time, an inadequate Nile flood resulted in poor harvest, high prices and famine in Fusṭāṭ. There were riots and Ibn Killis and his assistant al-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ were arrested. The confinement only lasted two months. On his release and reinstatement, the *wazīr* continued to work for the removal of Bakjūr and in 377/989 he was able to persuade the caliph to appoint one of his (Yaʿqūb's) *ghilmān*, Yaʿqūb al-Ṣiqlabī, to the post. The *wazīr*'s cause was aided by the fact that Bakjūr had made himself unpopular in Damascus by his cruelty and when the Fatimid forces approached he fled to Raqqa which he used as a base to attack the Hamdanids but he played no further part in Fatimid politics. Damascus was not the only military problem the caliphate faced. In the Ḥijāz, the bedouin were making the *ḥajj* almost impossible and once again it was a Turk, Baltakīn, who was sent to rectify the position and a Fatimid garrison was established at Wādi'l-Qurra.

In 380/991 the *wazīr* Yaʿqūb b. Killis died. More than anyone else he had guided the Fatimid caliphate through the difficult early years. Drawing on his experience under the Ikhshidids, he organized the administration of Egypt and pursued a cautious policy in Syria which, if it was not entirely successful, at least kept Egypt secure from invasion. He had also played a decisive part in reducing the monopoly of military power held by the Berbers. He had used his position to recruit and promote Turkish *ghilmān*, and the refugees who arrived with Alptakīn and their successors became a major force in the state.

The death of the old *wazīr* allowed the caliph a free hand to pursue a more aggressive and expansionist policy in Syria. Yaʿqūb's nominee was immediately dismissed from the governorship of Damascus and replaced

by one of al-ʿAzīz's own *ghilmān*, the Turk Manjūtakīn, who was to be the instrument of his new forward policy. In Manjūtakīn al-ʿAzīz found a capable and loyal commander. The prospects were further improved by the death of Saʿd al-Dawla the Hamdanid in 381/991 and the take-over of power by Lu'lu' (see above, pp. 281–2). In 381, 382, 383 and 384 (991–4), Manjūtakīn launched campaigns against the territory of Aleppo. He took Homs and the little towns of Apamea and Shayzar from their Arab rulers, but his attempts on Aleppo itself aroused the opposition of the citizens and brought the Fatimids for the first time into direct conflict with the Byzantines who regarded the city as being under their protection. Manjūtakīn was powerful enough to defy the *dux* (governor) of Antioch but in 385/995 the Emperor Basil II arrived in person and conducted a major show of force throughout northern Syria, forcing the Fatimid general to retreat to Damascus. Faced with this threat, the caliph himself decided to take the field in person as the champion of Islam against the aggressive Greeks but he died before he could put the plan into effect. The land campaigns were accompanied by an increase in naval activity. A fleet prepared in the port of Cairo was destroyed by fire, apparently by accident, but the incident gave rise to serious anti-Christian riots. Another fleet was constructed and set sail to join Manjūtakīn in the siege of the small coastal town of Ṭarṭūs. Sea-borne campaigns were always hazardous and while Manjūtakīn waited for vital reinforcements, the ships were destroyed by a storm. The approach of the Greek army forced the Fatimid forces to retreat again. As Ibn Killis had foreseen, interference in the affairs of Aleppo, however tempting the prospects seemed to be, resulted in conflict with Byzantium, a conflict both expensive and unproductive.

The situation in Syria remained unstable. The Fatimids controlled the coastal cities from Tripoli south and some inland areas like Tiberias. Ramla and southern Palestine under Ibn al-Jarrāḥ and the Banū Ṭayy were frequently disturbed and the activities of the bedouin in the area were to prove a continuing problem to the Fatimid authorities. Damascus, on the other hand, seems to have been brought firmly under control by Manjūtakīn, who used it as his base. It is interesting to note how Fatimid rule had changed the political and economic geography of Syria. In particular naval activity had increased. Manjūtakīn's army was largely supplied by sea through the port of Tripoli which became a major commercial centre for the first time since the classical period. The governorships of coastal cities like Tyre, Sidon, Ascalon and Gaza became important offices. The Fatimid use of naval power to control Syria, in fact, seems to have led to the beginnings of a revival in the fortunes of the coastal towns which was to be continued in the eleventh

and twelfth centuries. The eastern Mediterranean was becoming the scene of peaceful navigation once again, not just a zone of conflict.

In other areas, too, the reign of al-ʿAzīz had seen the increase of Fatimid influence and authority. The Fatimids took over the protecting of the *ḥajj*, at least of those pilgrims who came from the western Islamic world. This was an expensive operation; in 383/994 for example, the *ḥajj* required an escort of 3,500 men and the expenditure, including the cost of the new *kiswa* (the cover of the Kaʿba) of 300,000 *dīnārs*. The prestige gained no doubt offset the cost. The eastern *ḥajj* was also patronized and financed by local rulers, Badr b. Ḥasanūya in the late fourth/tenth century and Maḥmūd of Ghazna in the early fifth/eleventh, but it was the Fatimids who provided the *kiswa* and who were acknowledged by the *amīr* of Mecca. Relations with the ruler of Mecca were cordial rather than close. The *amīr* acknowledged the Fatimid as caliph, while maintaining his independence. In 384/994 ʿĪsā b. Jaʿfar al-Ḥasanī, then *amīr*, came to Egypt and was given substantial gifts. Relations with Mecca were commercial as well as political and al-Maqrīzī quotes an account of al-Muʿizz buying ebony from Aden through a middleman in Mecca. In 382/992 the influence of the Fatimids spread further and they were acknowledged as caliphs in Yemen, though without enjoying any real power there. Since the retreat of the Qarāmiṭa to Baḥrayn, they too recognized the Fatimid claims. The increased interest in the *jihād* and the care for the *ḥajj* suggest that after the death of Ibn Killis, al-ʿAzīz began to pursue a much more caliphal policy, that is to say that he demonstrated his ability and willingness to undertake the two major public responsibilities of a caliph, to safeguard the *ḥajj* and to lead the Muslims against the infidel Byzantines. The acknowledgement of Fatimid claims in areas over which they had no direct political control bears witness to the success of this policy.

Fatimid policy towards North Africa, the cradle of the dynasty, is a conundrum. Nothing is more striking than the speed with which they were prepared to allow North Africa to go its own way. In the time of al-Muʿizz and the early years of al-ʿAzīz's reign, there had been some continued emigration from Ifrīqiya to Egypt but by the end of al-ʿAzīz's reign this seems to have come to a halt. While the claims of the Fatimids to the caliphate were acknowledged in Ifrīqiya, practical power lay with the Zirid viceroys from the Ṣanhāja group of Berbers. In 382/992 al-ʿAzīz appointed Bādīs b. al-Manṣūr b. Zīrī to be his father's heir apparent, thus effectively making the dynasty hereditary. Relations were maintained by the exchange of sumptuous presents but any claims to real political power were neglected. Ṣandal, the governor of Barqa, brought presents but again there is no sign of direct control.

In internal affairs, the departure of Ibn Killis led to some confusion and division of responsibility within the administration. The Berber military leader al-Ḥasan b. ʿAmmār refused to take over financial responsibilities and these devolved at first on Ibn Killis's old protégé al-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ and his rival, the *qāḍī* Muḥammad b. al-Nuʿmān. An attempt to persuade the veteran Ibn al-Furāt to take up office failed when he resigned after only a few months. Thereafter administrative responsibility was increasingly taken over by the Christian ʿĪsā b. Nasṭūris who was given charge of all the *dīwāns* in 384/994. But this period does not seem to have been one of decline and confusion, indeed a major reform of weights was undertaken.

In the last year of his life, al-ʿAzīz was preparing to take up arms in person against the Byzantines and he ordered a massive mobilization of men and resources. Before he set out, however, he died on 28 Ramaḍān 386/14 October 996. He was only forty-two when he died but his long reign had shown him a firm but prudent ruler. The sources comment at length on his clemency and his reign seems to have been remembered as a period of peace and prosperity. While he owed much to his *wazīrs*, notably Ibn Killis and Ibn Nasṭūris, his later years showed that he was no mere cypher and had determined views on the nature of the caliphate. Despite his predilection for hunting, he rarely left Cairo and its immediate surroundings; after his visit to Ramla at the instigation of Ibn Killis in 368/978 he never again left Egypt. This tradition of static monarchy was typical of the Fatimid caliphate in contrast with the restlessness of the Buyids and Hamdanids. There was no problem about the succession; no sooner had he breathed his last than the eunuch Barjuwān sought out the caliph's young son Manṣūr, placed on his head the jewelled turban and kissed the ground before him. So came to the throne the most famous of all the Fatimid caliphs, al-Ḥākim bi-Amr Allāh.

The new caliph was only eleven at the time of his accession. He was, of course, unable to exercise the autocratic control for which he later became famous. The accession of a minor gave the signal for various groups to try to redress their grievances. The last years of al-ʿAzīz's reign had seen the increased influence of the Turks, notably the general Manjūtakīn in Damascus, and of the Christian *wazīr*, Ibn Nasṭūris, in many ways the successor of Ibn Killis. This had caused great discontent among the leaders of the Kutāma Berbers who felt that they had been deprived of their position in the state. Immediately after the death of the caliph, the Kutāma shaykhs made it clear that their allegiance to his son was dependent on their being given control of the government. Accordingly, al-Ḥasan b. ʿAmmār was made *wāsiṭa* (intermediary between

caliph and people, in effect prime minister) and the Kutāma were rewarded with the choicest contents of the treasury. Ibn Nasṭūris, the leading survivor of the old regime, was executed. In Syria this coup provoked an immediate response. The Turk Manjūtakīn decided to march on Egypt to redress the situation. The attempt was not a success; Ibn ʿAmmār mobilized the Berbers under the leadership of Sulaymān b. Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ, and Manjūtakīn was defeated by Ibn Fallāḥ and taken to Cairo in captivity. Here he lived in quiet retirement until his death ten years later in 397/1007. Sulaymān continued to Damascus to take over as governor.

Ibn ʿAmmār's government in Cairo soon began to get into trouble. The Kutāma Berbers who had brought him to power used the opportunity to pillage the state. Not only did they deprive the Turks and other military groups of their positions but they cut off the salaries of the *kuttāb*, the secretaries. The chaos could not continue for long and after a year, fighting broke out between the Turks and the Berbers, Ibn ʿAmmār was arrested and eventually killed and the role of *wāsiṭa* was taken over by the young caliph's tutor, Barjuwān; the excesses of the Berbers were halted and the position of the *kuttāb* restored. It was not a complete defeat for the Berbers, however. Sulaymān b. Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ was replaced in Damascus by another Berber, Jaysh b. al-Ṣamṣāma, and both Sulaymān and his brother, ʿAlī, were to continue to play an important role in Fatimid government. It was rather an attempt to restore the balance as it had existed under al-ʿAzīz, and Barjuwān chose a new Christian *kātib*, Fahd b. Ibrāhīm, to replace the dead Ibn Nasṭūris.

As had happened before, the attempt to rule the towns of Syria through Berber garrisons ran into difficulties. As usual they were unpopular in Damascus which was then entrusted to an old Ikhshīdī officer, Bishāra, but the fiercest resistance came from the coastal city of Tyre. It is indicative of the increasing importance of these coastal cities that one of them should have begun an open rebellion against the Kutāma garrison under the leadership of a sailor called al-ʿAlāqa. The threat was increased when the rebels appealed to Byzantine support but in the end they were obliged to surrender and the city was sacked by the army. Meanwhile in the north of the country, Jaysh b. al-Ṣamṣāma continued the war Manjūtakīn had conducted against the Byzantines and the remnants of the Hamdanid state, retaking Apamea and Shayzar. In reply to this, the Emperor Basil II launched a new and devastating campaign in northern Syria and although he failed to take Tripoli, he pillaged Homs and the coast around Jubayl and Beirut in 390/999. It was after this that the Fatimids succeeded, through the intermediary of the patriarch of Jerusalem, in negotiating a ten-year truce. This was to be of the greatest

importance in al-Ḥākim's reign. The caliph and the emperor both had concerns elsewhere and were content to accept the status quo. Aleppo remained independent under Byzantine protection while the cities of Antioch and Lattakia and their hinterland as far south as the Homs–Tripoli gap remained part of the Byzantine empire. Tripoli itself remained in Muslim hands, usually acknowledging the Fatimids but effectively independent under its own governors and *qāḍīs*. Despite the strains caused in later years by the destruction of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre and persecution of the Christians, the Byzantines responded by trade sanctions rather than warfare and the peace in northern Syria remained almost uninterrupted. This long peace meant that military expenditure was reduced and may be one of the reasons why al-Ḥakim's government survived despite the ruler's eccentricities.

In Rabīʿ II 390/April 1000, the young caliph decided to show his independence. With the aid of a servant he in person murdered his tutor and guardian Barjuwān. Aged only fifteen he was now absolute master of the state. His personality has been the subject of much controversy. The main sources we rely on which are not, on the whole, anti-Fatimid in tone, present a picture of an unstable psychopath, ruling by whim and terror. His disordered personality showed itself in his attacks on Christians and Jews and on his closest servants. All but a very few of those who served him in senior offices were done to death, usually suddenly without trial or explanation. At times whole classes of troops and palace servants and even common people were threatened by his vengeful cruelty but more often it was leaders of the military and the *kuttāb* who suffered from his murderous proclivities. His eccentricity was not confined to murder, however. He introduced dietary regulations, including the banning of alcoholic drinks, and the prohibition of watercress and fish without scales and such general social matters as the forbidding of chess and the killing of dogs. At the beginning of his reign he demanded that the *sūqs* be kept open all night for his amusement. The most striking feature of his decrees is, however, their inconsistency. Regulations would be introduced and abandoned without warning. At one time, the appearance of the cross in the streets was forbidden as an anti-Christian measure yet shortly afterwards all Christians were obliged to wear large crosses, thus making nonsense of the previous decree. His attitude to Islam was varied. At some times he encouraged the spread of Ismāʿīlī customs while at others he seems to have permitted Sunnī practices which had been banned by his father. Towards the end of his reign he is alleged to have neglected the conventional demands of religious law entirely, to have become increasingly ascetic and considered himself divine.

Various attempts have been made in recent years to make sense of this picture. Vatikiotis has suggested that he was the only Fatimid to take the idea of the divinely appointed monarch seriously and that his behaviour was necessary to sustain Ismāʿīlī morale and protect the state against its enemies.[2] Shaban has argued that his apparently bizarre dietary regulations are in fact sound measures to protect the rural economy.[3] But it is hard to see how the prohibition of chess fits into these explanations. In the most thoughtful recent appraisal of the problem, Forsyth, while stressing the strong irrational element in his behaviour, has drawn attention to the populist nature of some of his policies.[4] Certainly his measures against the Christian and Jewish communities, and even his attacks on senior Muslim army officers and financial officials may have gained some popularity, but the sources make it clear that the terror was by no means confined to the upper classes, and the burning of Fusṭāṭ at the end of the reign was a culmination of previous acts of random brutality. While it would be wrong to see al-Ḥākim as a populist ruler, appealing over the heads of the administrative and military classes to the common people, it is striking that there was no concerted rebellion against his rule in either the cities or the countryside. The only serious challenge came from nomad groups who had many reasons for opposing settled authority, and it seems to have been almost unconnected with the caliph's bizarre conduct.

It seems most likely that, as was suggested by the chronicler Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd who knew him personally, that he was mentally unbalanced. It is not difficult to see why. Perhaps already psychologically disturbed, he came to the throne in early adolescence and was surrounded by people who at one and the same time assured him that he had absolute authority over a vast empire and attempted to manipulate him for their own purposes. The delight in his own power, the ability he discovered at the time of Barjuwān's death quite literally to get away with murder, completed his development. Chroniclers note that he was not without virtues. He could be generous, rigorous in enforcing justice. He often refrained from confiscating the goods of men he had murdered and allowing their families to inherit to demonstrate his incorruptibility. He also founded an institute of learning, the *Dār al-ʿIlm*, but it must be said that he later murdered many of the teachers he had appointed. In his personal behaviour too he showed some qualities. Especially towards the end, he seems to have tried to escape the pomp of his position, wearing ragged clothes and forbidding visitors to kiss the ground. But none of this was consistent or reliable. Even his most intimate assistants might suddenly be murdered and the terror he inspired gave rise to moments of general panic when all classes petitioned the caliph for guarantees of their personal safety.

In the immediate aftermath of Barjuwān's death, the caliph set about creating a new government. Ruling in person without a *wāsiṭa*, he kept on the Christian, Fahd b. Ibrāhīm, as secretary who was given the title of *raʾīs* (chief). Military power was entrusted to al-Ḥusayn, the son of Jawhar who had led the original Fatimid conquest of Egypt and a man who was acceptable to the Berbers as well as having his own following among the *Ṣaqāliba ghilmān*. The caliph was also careful to conciliate both Berbers and Turks; throughout his reign he does not seem to have favoured either group at the expense of the other but to have kept a balance. He also employed other experienced officers at court, notably al-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ, and the family of ʿAlī b. al-Ḥusayn b. al-Maghribī, *kuttāb* who had been in the service of the Hamdanids and now, like many others from the Hamdanid court, sought employment with the Fatimids. Syria, in the meantime, was ruled by Berber chiefs in Damascus; Jaysh b. al-Ṣamṣāma, who died in 390/1000, was soon succeeded by the Kutāma leader, ʿAlī b. Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ, who had succeeded his brother, Sulaymān, as head of his family. ʿAlī was to prove the great political survivor of the reign, dying only shortly before the caliph after a riding accident.

Few of his fellows were so lucky. In 393/1003 al-Ḥākim began the first of his series of purges of political leaders. Fahd b. Ibrāhīm was executed but his death was to be only the first in a long and grisly series. At the same time the persecution of Christians and the destruction of churches began, and by the next year (394/1004) the situation was so threatening that the Kutāma *en masse* petitioned the caliph for a guarantee of safety which was granted. The caliph next turned on the chief *qāḍī*, al-Ḥusayn b. al-Nuʿmān, who had succeeded his father ʿAlī and his uncle, Muḥammad, in office; al-Maqrīzī records that he was the first *qāḍī* whose body was burned after he was killed. He was not to be the last.

The year 395/1004–5 saw an intensification of the terror. It was at this stage that al-Ḥākim began to introduce the public cursing of the first caliphs, a Shīʿī measure which always produced violent resentment among Sunnīs and one which his father had avoided. This was combined with further measures against the Christians including, in 400/1009, the demolition of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem, and the dietary prohibitions. More groups followed the Kutāma example and asked for guarantees of safety from their unpredictable ruler, the *kuttāb* begged his forgiveness for their no doubt imaginary crimes, while different elements in the army, Turks, *ghilmān* and followers of the Hamdanids, all sought to avail themselves of this protection.

There was no effective internal opposition to the caliph and when trouble came it seems to have originated outside Egypt and have had

little or nothing to do with his tyrannical behaviour. In 395/1005 an adventurer of Umayyad descent arrived from Spain to Barqa in Cyrenaica and began to stir up trouble among the Sunnī Berber tribesmen. Although his real name was al-Walīd b. Hishām, he was generally known as Abū Rakwa in Egypt. He was joined by the Banū Qurra, the leaders of the bedouin Arabs of the Ḥawf district, who had caused trouble in Egypt since Umayyad times. Having taken Barqa and defeated the first military expedition sent by al-Ḥākim, Abū Rakwa and his followers, with their families and flocks, set out for Egypt. The arrival of this large force faced al-Ḥākim with a major crisis. He responded by summoning Arab tribes from Syria to his aid, notably the shaykhs of the Ṭayy tribe, the Banu'l-Jarrāḥ. These were given money and arms to oppose the rebels. In his anxiety, the caliph also relaxed many of his dietary and anti-Sunnī measures to placate the people. He need not have worried; the people of the towns may have been in terror of al-Ḥākim but they showed no wish to welcome a horde of wild Arab and Berber tribesmen. Abū Rakwa scored one significant victory against ʿAlī b. Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ, now returned from Damascus, at Giza, and there was panic in Cairo. But he allowed himself to be diverted to the Fayyūm where he was defeated in Dhū'l-Ḥijja 396/August 1006 by al-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ. The Banū Qurra were persuaded to desert his cause and he fled to Nubia where he was captured, brought to Cairo and executed. The whole episode had been dangerous for al-Ḥākim, but there was no sign of rebellion against his cruelty or of an alliance between the Sunnī population of Fusṭāṭ and the Sunnī invaders. As long as they had no support from the people of Egypt, the nomad invaders were unable to achieve any permanent gains.

The removal of the external threat allowed al-Ḥākim to pursue his policies with greater severity. The next few years were a time of increasing hardship and a series of bad Niles led to high prices and food shortages. They were also a period of growing terror. Christian churches were destroyed, and the *kuttāb* and *Ṣaqāliba* were killed in mass night-time executions. In 399/1009 al-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ, the man who had saved al-Ḥākim from Abū Rakwa's forces, was summarily executed. The next year, two other leading figures, al-Ḥusayn b. Jawhar and the *qāḍī* ʿAbd al-Azīz b. al-Nuʿmān, fled for their lives but were persuaded to return by offers of safe conduct. Their trust was entirely misplaced; in 401/1010 they shared the fate of so many of their colleagues among the ruling class.

More wary than either of his colleagues was the *kātib* al-Ḥusayn b. al-Maghribī. Himself a refugee from the Hamdanid court, he may have been more adaptable than his fellows raised in the Fatimid ambience. He, too, fled Cairo but took refuge with Ibn al-Jarrāḥ, the Ṭayy leader

of southern Palestine, a man always ready to defy the powers of central government, in 402/1011–12. Ibn al-Maghribī refused al-Ḥākim's blandishments and persuaded the bedouin chief to break with the Fatimids altogether. Instead he invited the ʿAlid *amīr* of Mecca, al-Ḥasan b. Jaʿfar, nominally a vassal of the Fatimids, to come to Palestine as caliph in 403/1012. It was the high point in the fortunes of the Jarrahid leaders. All Palestine from the borders of Egypt to Tiberias was in their hands except for the coastal cities. In an effort to win further support, al-Ḥasan encouraged the restoration of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem and the appointment of a patriarch. But the nomad domination had a negative aspect as well; it was marked by the destruction and desolation of many of the settled communities, and as elsewhere in the Fertile Crescent at this period, the extension of nomad-controlled area at the expense of the urban and agricultural areas. The ʿAlid was established at the Jarrahid capital at Ramla but his moment of glory was to be short-lived. Not for the first time, the Jarrahids allowed themselves to be bought by the Fatimid government and the discomfited ʿAlid pretender was soon obliged to return to the Ḥijāz. Ibn al-Maghribī left for Iraq where he was to enjoy a distinguished career with Qirwāsh, the ʿUqaylid ruler in Mosul, and then with the Marwanids of Mayyāfāriqīn. The bid for independence turned sour for the Jarrahids. Al-Ḥākim sent ʿAlī b. Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ and his Kutāma army against them. They were heavily defeated and the bedouin were forced to abandon their hold on Ramla.

In domestic policy, the reign of terror continued. Al-Ḥākim himself began to assume an ascetic life-style, cutting down on the pomp and circumstance of court life and beginning those wanderings which were to lead to his eventual disappearance. At this time, too, Christians were permitted to leave Egypt for Byzantine territory to escape persecution and many of them, including the chronicler Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd of Antioch, took advantage of this. While he took measures to placate the army and distributed *iqṭāʿs* generously to them, his own servants and ministers, all by now men whom he himself had raised to favour, were still the victims of his murderous caprice; his only regret when the *kātib* Zurʿa b. Nasṭūris died of natural causes was that he had not been able to execute him himself. Among the Muslims, it seems that he increasingly abandoned orthodox Ismāʿīlī or Shīʿī practice. While he now forbade the cursing of the first two caliphs and became the first Fatimid to take prayers in the old mosque at Fusṭāṭ, a stronghold of Sunnism, much of his policy was simply antinomian, abandoning all the practices of ordinary Islam. As he renounced the conventional splendours of Fatimid rule, so he lost interest in the *ḥajj* and the celebrations of the Islamic calendar.

This may have been connected with the strangest events of his final years, the beginning of the Druze religion. Ismāʿīlī doctrine had always stressed the authority of the divinely appointed *imām* but since the time of the *qāḍī* al-Nuʿmān, writers and caliphs alike had stressed that the caliph/*imām* was not himself divine. But just as the Rāwandiyya had ascribed divine powers to the ʿAbbasid Caliph al-Manṣūr, so some Ismāʿīlīs sought to proclaim the divinity of their own ruler. This was not a break with the Ismāʿīlī tradition so much as a development of one aspect of it. Al-Manṣūr had rejected all attempts to ascribe divine status to him but al-Ḥākim was more susceptible to the idea. It seems to have been in 408/1017–18 that Muḥammad b. Ismāʿīl al-Darazī, probably of Persian origin, began to spread the doctrine that al-Ḥākim was in fact God. Al-Ḥākim does not seem to have dissuaded him, but for others this was simply too much and al-Darazī was set upon by some Turkish soldiers and murdered. This was not, however, the end of the affair, for his work was continued by one Ḥamza b. Aḥmad who is alleged to have proclaimed not only the divinity of the caliph but the abolition of the *Sharīʿa*. The role of the caliph in this is not clear; his behaviour became more eccentric and he is said to have made a point of eating in the mosque during Ramaḍān. It is also alleged that the burning of Fusṭāṭ at the end of his reign was intended to punish the fiercely Sunnī inhabitants for rejecting his divinity. But al-Ḥākim's madness was always guided by a kind of shrewdness and he was careful not to become too closely involved. It is quite possible that he advised Ḥamza to leave Egypt and preach his message in Syria, where the Druze religion was to take root, and where it exists, to this day.

Al-Ḥākim's death in 411/1021 was as mysterious and bizarre as his life. The most prosaic version is that he was murdered during one of his solitary rambles in the Muqaṭṭam hills on the outskirts of Cairo on the orders of his sister, Sitt al-Mulk, who had become alarmed that he was turning against her. But his body was never found and, in the opinion of the Druzes, he simply disappeared and will come again at the end of the world.

The reign of al-Ḥākim is dominated by his bizarre personality. Few Muslim rulers can have exercised so absolute an authority over their subjects, both great and small. There are features which remain a puzzle: why was there no organized attempt to remove this dangerous lunatic from power? Furthermore, the period showed no real diminution of Fatimid authority in the international sphere. It is true that Ifrīqiya became increasingly independent but this was simply a culmination of earlier developments and does not seem to have caused any real concern in Cairo. In Palestine the power of the Jarrahids was kept at bay

while Damascus was always under Fatimid authority. The temporary allegiance of Mosul to the caliphate in 401/1010 had more to do with the politics of Qirwāsh b. al-Muqallad al-ʿUqaylī than al-Ḥākim, but the fact remains that the Fatimid caliphate was a credible alternative to the ʿAbbasids. Much of the secret of al-Ḥākim's success must have lain in his personality. He picked off his enemies one by one, including virtually all the old guard of the Fatimid state, and there seems to have been no shortage of men willing to serve him, although increasingly they were slaves or ex-slaves. He also inspired great awe and fear among his entourage. He was careful to placate the army, not just slave soldiers but the Kutāma Berbers who followed his most trusted military commander, ʿAlī b. Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ, and the power of the Berbers within the Fatimid state was probably greater under al-Ḥakim than it had been under his father. The paradox remains that after a quarter of a century of al-Ḥākim's mad rule, the Fatimid state seems to have been as powerful as ever.

The disappearance of al-Ḥākim left power firmly in the hands of his sister, Sitt al-Mulk, known as al-Sayyida, the Lady. She was determined to control the succession to her own advantage. Her instrument in this was a Kutāmī Berber leader, al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī b. Dawwās, and together they were responsible for the elevation to the throne of al-Ḥākim's sixteen-year-old son ʿAlī, who took the title of al-Ẓāhir li-Iʿzāz Dīn Allāh. There was little opposition, only one Turkish *ghulām* protesting that he would not swear allegiance until he knew his old master was dead, a protest which rapidly led to his own death. The beginning of the new reign was almost as bloodthirsty as the end of the old. Sitt al-Mulk, according to the chronicler al-Maqrīzī, was determined to hide her participation in her brother's death and soon all who had been involved in the conspiracy, if such there was, were killed, including her right-hand man, Ibn Dawwās. His two successors as *wazīr* enjoyed very short tenures of office but thereafter the administration became more stable. For the first five years of the reign, until her death in 415/1024, Sitt al-Mulk had effectively ruled the country, appointing the ministers and keeping the treasury full. Three years after her death, effective power was taken by the man who was to be *wazīr* for the next eighteen years: Aḥmad b. ʿAlī al-Jarjarāʾī. He came from a bureaucratic dynasty of Iraqi origin and had rashly taken service with al-Ḥākim, during which time he had had his hands cut off. Despite this handicap, he was able to assume the wazirate and became the most successful incumbent of the office since Ibn Killis. Much of the comparative peace of al-Ẓāhir's reign must be ascribed to his talents.

For the rest of al-Ẓāhir's reign, the Egyptian annals are very scanty. It would seem that the caliph devoted most of his time to pleasure.

The only major disturbance was an outbreak of trouble between the Berbers and the Turks in Cairo in 420/1029. Significantly the Berbers seem to have enjoyed popular support and a large number of Turks were killed in the fighting. In the end peace was restored but most of the Turks left Egypt and this may have been a contributory factor in the subsequent weakness of the state. The balance between Berber and Turk which al-ʿAzīz had created and al-Ḥākim had been careful to maintain, was now upset.

Against the comparatively peaceful state of Egypt in these years must be set the very disturbed state of Syria. The last years of al-Ḥākim's reign had seen the extension of Fatimid power further than ever before, especially to Aleppo which, more by diplomacy than military conquest, came under Fatimid rule from 404/1015 to 414/1023. This picture was, however, threatened by the growing power of the bedouin tribes. The Banū'l-Jarrāḥ of Palestine had threatened Ramla and Fatimid control in that area for many years but had usually been kept in check. More ominous was the growing power of the Banū Kalb in the Damascus area and the Banū Kilāb around Aleppo. In 415/1024–5 the main bedouin leaders, Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās of the Kilāb, Sinān b. ʿUlyān of the Kalb and Ḥassān b. al-Jarrāḥ of the Ṭayy met and agreed to work together against the Fatimid and to effect a complete take-over of Syria. The reign of al-Ẓāhir saw the crisis of nomad expansion in the area of Syria and Palestine, its check and the beginning of decline.

The man responsible for stemming the nomad advance was the Fatimid commander in Syria and Palestine, Anūshtakīn al-Dizbarī, one of the most successful soldiers and administrators of his day. He was a Turk born in the little mountain principality of Khuttal in Transoxania whence he was captured and taken to Kashgār. He escaped from there to Bukhārā, from where he was brought, as a slave, to Baghdad and then to Damascus which he reached in the middle of al-Ḥākim's reign in 400/1009–10. Here he was bought by a Daylamī *condottiere*, Dizbar, who had worked for the Hamdanids and from whom he was to take his name. Three years later he was sent with a group of *ghilmān* to Cairo for training at the Fatimid court. He proved himself extremely able and when the training finished in 405/1014–15, he secured himself a position at court. The next year he was sent back to Damascus where he took care to look up his old master, Dizbar, and make himself generally appreciated, and soon after he was given his first independent appointment as governor of Baʿalbak. Here he acquired a good reputation with the local people and a patron in Fātik, the Armenian *ghulām* who governed Aleppo for the Fatimids. His reputation led to promotion, first to Caesarea as governor and then in 414/1023 to the whole of Palestine.

Here he began to take severe measures against the depredations of the Arabs and came up against the opposition of the Ṭayy leader, Ḥassān b. al-Jarrāḥ. The conflict was fought out in the field in Palestine and at the court in Cairo. In 417/1026, Ḥassān persuaded the *wazīr*, al-Ḥasan b. Ṣāliḥ al-Rudhbārī, to recall Anūshtakīn to the capital. The bedouin chief's triumph was short-lived. Anūshtakīn continued to keep himself well informed about affairs in the area by special messengers. When the new *wazīr*, al-Jarjarā'ī, was looking for a commander to lead an expedition to take action against the bedouin, he naturally turned to Anūshtakīn. He was duly despatched with 7,000 new troops to Ramla and then to Jerusalem, collecting more reinforcements on the way. Meanwhile the bedouin confederation gathered their forces, Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās coming south from Aleppo (see above, pp. 301–2). In 420/1029 the two armies met at al-Uqḥuwāna near the Sea of Galilee; the outcome was a decisive victory for the Fatimid forces. Ṣaliḥ b. Mirdās was killed and the bedouin coalition dispersed.

Anūshtakīn became governor of Damascus and Syria, a post he held until his death in 432/1041. During the later years of al-Ḥākim's and the early part of al-Ẓāhir's reign, Damascus, ruled by Turkish soldiers and members of the Hamdanid family, had suffered greatly from the depredations of the bedouin who invaded the Ghūṭa and destroyed agriculture. The victory at al-Uqḥuwāna seems to have changed the position, and the period of Anūshtakīn's rule was remembered in the city as one of peace and prosperity. His career demonstrates how the *ghulām* system allowed men of humble origins but proved ability to rise to the highest ranks. In other ways he was exceptional among the *ghilmān* of the age. He was a successful administrator as well as a soldier, and he was a family man, having a son, who died young, and four daughters. He used his marriages, and those of his daughters, to develop contacts with important figures in Syria and the Fatimid court. In Palestine, he broke the power of the Jarrahids; there were still nomads in the area but never again was a nomad chief able to threaten the settled cities of Palestine as Ḥassān b. al-Jarrāḥ had done. In a real sense, al-Uqḥuwāna represented the high-water mark of nomad activity.

In 427/1036 the Caliph al-Ẓāhir died. He does not seem to have been a very forceful politician and authority was exercised by the capable *wazīr* al-Jarjarā'ī in Cairo and the military commander Anūshtakīn al-Dizbarī in Syria. While these two did not always see eye to eye and there were disagreements, especially about policy towards Aleppo, their partnership had assured stability and peace in the latter part of the reign. Al-Ẓāhir was succeeded by his son Maʿadd who took the title of al-Mustanṣir. The new caliph was only seven years old but his accession was not

contested. In striking contrast to the Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid caliphs, succession disputes did not play an important part in the political life of the Fatimid caliphate; al-Ḥākim, al-Ẓāhir and al-Mustanṣir all succeeded to the throne as boys but no attempt was made to challenge their right to rule, and not until the death of al-Mustanṣir himself in 487/1094 was the succession disputed. One reason for this was the emphasis that Ismāʿīlī thought put on the inherited nature of authority. The Fatimid claim to legitimacy was based on the notion of direct descent from ʿAlī; the Fatimids therefore had a theory of hereditary succession which the Umayyads and ʿAbbasids never fully developed. To challenge the right of the heir to succeed challenged not just his right but the whole justification for Fatimid sovereignty. There were other reasons connected with the power structure of the state. The members of the Fatimid family played very little part in politics. The leading men were *wazīrs* and *qāḍīs* from the civilian élite, and Berber and Turkish military men. On the whole members of the Fatimid family neither governed provinces nor led armies, not even appeared as advisers at court. This meant that none of them built up independent power bases or attracted groups of supporters. Rather than succession disputes of the sort that were common in contemporary Buyid politics, debate and dispute in the Fatimid caliphate were concentrated on controlling the office of *wazīr* and governorates in Syria and, above all, on policy towards Aleppo. This was the main point of difference between al-Jarjarāʾī and Anūshtakīn. Like many of the Turkish troops based in Syria, Anūshtakīn sought the outright conquest and occupation of the city while al-Jarjarāʾī, following the tradition of Yaʿqūb b. Killis, preferred friendly relations with a Mirdasid buffer state.

The early years of al-Mustanṣir's reign were in all respects a continuation of his father's rule. In 429/1038 Anūshtakīn achieved his ambition and captured Aleppo, driving out the Mirdasids and appointing two of his *ghilmān* to govern before returning to Damascus. But inevitably the conquest was threatened by the Byzantines who wanted the city to remain independent, and by the Mirdasids who never lost the support of the Kilābī bedouin to the east of the city. In 432/1041 Anūshtakīn was able to defeat a Byzantine counter-attack, which was supported by the Mirdasids, but his triumph was short-lived because he died, of natural causes, later in the year (432/1041). The Fatimid empire was soon to suffer from the loss of his strong authority. The immediate result was the return of the Mirdasids to Aleppo; Thimāl b. Ṣāliḥ was able to retake the city with little difficulty and the caliph, presumably guided by al-Jarjarāʾī, acknowledged his authority without hesitation. Anūshtakīn's position in Syria was taken over by al-Ḥasan b. al-Ḥusayn, a member of

the Hamdanid family, the son of that al-Ḥusayn b. al-Ḥasan who had made the final attempt to restore Hamdanid authority in Mosul in 379/981 and grandson of the *amīr* Nāṣir al-Dawla. He took the honorific title of Nāṣir al-Dawla, once held by his grandfather.

In 436/1044–5 al-Mustanṣir seems to have taken the initiative in a renewed propaganda offensive in the Muslim world, sending *dāʿīs* (missionaries) to Iran and Transoxania. While some of these were executed, their preaching seems to have some effect. We have the diary of an Iranian convert, Nāṣir-i Khusrau, who came from his homeland in Khurāsān to visit the Fatimid capital at this time. His book, while it is undoubtedly a propagandist work, makes a clear contrast between the impoverished state of much of Iran and the prosperity of coastal Syria and above all of Egypt. His account of the capital shows the Fatimid caliphate at the height of its power and prosperity; the caliph rich and awesome, surrounded by a ceremonial more elaborate than any other Muslim dynasty had attempted. He also witnessed a display of military power, a review of the vast cosmopolitan Fatimid army, which showed a military strength vastly superior to the puny armies of the Buyids or the bedouin hordes of the ʿUqaylids.

In 436/1045 the *wazīr* ʿAlī b. Aḥmad al-Jarjarāʾī died. He had run the Fatimid state for the previous eighteen years and his passing marked the end of an era of peace and prosperity. No one was able to inherit his authority. The anarchy of the Fatimid state in the next generation lies beyond the scope of this volume, but the outlines of the problem began to emerge as soon as the old *wazīr* was dead; the rivalry between his protégés for control of the administration, the attempts by ambitious *wazīrs* to favour the Berbers in the army at the expense of the Turks and so attract their support, the role of the ambitious Hamdanid Nāṣir al-Dawla in stirring up and leading the Turks and the growing unrest among the bedouin Banū Qurra. Underlying all these was a fundamental problem which had existed from before the Fatimid conquest of Egypt. At the beginning of this chapter, it was stressed that the Muslim community in early Islamic Egypt was comparatively small, and this meant that there was not a numerous and powerful local ruling and military class. Instead, from the third/ninth century onwards, Egypt became the centre of a struggle between the *Mashāriqa* (easterners), represented by the Turks and the Iraqi immigrants who ran much of the bureaucracy and the commercial life of the country, and the *Maghāriba* (westerners), mostly Berbers but including some Arabs from North Africa and Spain. The Ikhshidid government had been based on the *Mashāriqa* and at first the Fatimid conquest had represented a victory for the *Maghāriba*, at least in military affairs. Almost the only people

of local Egyptian origin who played an important part in the Fatimid caliphate were the Christians who were so often employed in the bureaucracy right up to the highest levels. When Yaʿqūb b. Killis, himself an easterner, began introducing Turkish troops into the army, the *Maghāriba* were obliged, often unwillingly, to share power. Under strong rulers a rough balance could be kept between these two factions but without that it could develop into civil war. This is what happened in the mid-fifth/eleventh century, and when order was eventually restored, this was only achieved by another outsider from a different background, the Armenian Badr al-Jamālī.

The success of the Fatimid caliphate from the time of al-Muʿizz's arrival in Cairo to the crisis of the reign of al-Mustanṣir, in spite of these divisions, was in great measure a product of the financial health of the state, what it is fair to describe as the Fatimid economic miracle. The evidence is for the prosperity, not just of the state but of many of its citizens. Contemporary accounts are full of references to the splendour of court ceremonial, the jewels and the fabrics, and the contrast is made with the poverty of the ʿAbbasid caliph during the time of al-Qādir (381–422/991–1031). It was this money which enabled the caliphs to pay their troops and avoid, at least for a time, the military mutinies and disorders which were typical of the Buyid state. The wealth of Egypt also led to a major emigration of talented and skilled men from Iraq to Egypt. Many of the great Fatimid *wazīrs*, Ibn al-Furāt, Yaʿqūb b. Killis, Aḥmad b. ʿAlī al-Jarjarāʾī and, during the reign of al-Mustanṣir, al-Ḥasan b. ʿAlī al-Anbārī and Hārūn b. Sahl al-Tustarī, had Iraqi backgrounds. Nor was this migration confined to the bureaucratic élite. The Geniza documents (see below, p. 382) reveal that many of the merchants whose activities are described, had migrated from the east to make their fortunes in Egypt. This migration was both a cause and a sign of the prosperity of the area.

The reasons for this wealth are complex. As always with the economic history of this period, our sources document trade much better than agriculture, but there can be no doubt that agriculture was the main source of wealth. Despite periodic failures of the Nile, and the resultant famines, it would seem that Egyptian agriculture was prosperous at this time. Certainly the expanding urban community of Cairo must have created a market for surpluses and the evidence suggests that the Egyptian farmers could, in most years, produce enough to support immigrants from east and west who settled in the city. The role of the state in agriculture was limited. Perhaps the most important contribution was the peace and stability of the early Fatimid years; apart from the revolt of Abū Rakwa and occasional bedouin incursions, there were no major civil

wars to damage the rural economy. Nor were the military given a free hand, as in contemporary Iraq, to exploit the country as they wished. Apart from the bizarre enactments of al-Ḥākim, there is no evidence of government decrees to help farmers, but the fact that the opening of the canals which marked the beginning of the Nile flood was one of the great state occasions of the Fatimid court, is an indication of government concern at the highest level. In addition, the Fatimid government patronized the textile industry which in turn boosted demand for flax and other agricultural products necessary for textile manufacture. Finally, and fundamental for the understanding of the wealth of Egypt at this time, was the fact that revenues collected in the country were largely spent there; apart from the endless Syrian wars, and the more productive expenditure on the *ḥajj*, the taxes raised in Egypt remained there. The Fatimid court and administration were fixed in Cairo, and the wealth they collected, they spent in Egypt.

But it is the commercial prosperity of the state which has left most trace in the records. Fatimid Egypt was a centre of manufacturing and of international trade. One reason for this was the gold trade of the Nile valley from Nubia. Nubia, along with Ghāna,[5] was the main source of gold for the Mediterranean and Islamic worlds and Egypt benefited greatly from the influx of precious metal. The *dīnārs* of the Fatimid caliphs were of an unrivalled fineness and sound coinage certainly helped assure the loyalty of soldiers and bureaucrats alike. In Fatimid times, Egypt also became the main transit market between the Indian Ocean and Mediterranean worlds. Essentially, Cairo took over the role of Baṣra, reduced by the instability of Iraq and sacked by the Qarāmiṭa. The evidence suggests that the Red Sea route, via the port of ʿAydhāb and Qūṣ on the middle Nile, came to replace the Gulf, southern Iraq route from the Indian Ocean to the central Islamic lands. Equally significant, however, was the changing nature of trade in the Mediterranean. Much of Egypt's trade in the early Fatimid period was with Muslim North Africa, by sea and by overland caravan, but trade with Christian Europe was also becoming significant. This was essentially a result of the growing prosperity of western Europe. For the first time since antiquity, western Europe became a significant market for the luxury products of the East, the fine textiles and above all the pepper and spices of the Indian Ocean area. From the reign of al-ʿAzīz, shortly after the establishment of the Fatimids in Egypt, there are references to merchants from Amalfi in southern Italy in Cairo and by the mid-eleventh century they had their own hospice and church in Jerusalem. The Geniza documents are full of references to the arrival of the Franks at Alexandria and the effect this had on prices and local prosperity. Nor was this prosperity

confined to Egypt; Nāṣir-i Khusrau observed that ships sailed from Tripoli, in Syria, to western Europe. Fatimid policy itself helped to revive the Syrian coastal ports, used to transport men and supplies to Fatimid armies in the area. Government policies towards trade seem to have been very much *laissez-faire*, and apart from the patronage of the Egyptian textile industry to supply the needs of the court, there was little active encouragement. What the Fatimids did was to assure a measure of security and a sound coinage; but much of Fatimid greatness and prosperity was founded on changing economic patterns which they did little to cause. If the ʿAbbasid caliphate was destroyed by economic collapse in Iraq, the Fatimid caliphate was in a sense created by economic prosperity in Egypt.

Notes

1. Jaʿfar b. al-Faḍl b. al-Furāt was a scion of the Banu'l-Furāt who had played such an important role in ʿAbbasid politics during the reign of al-Muqtadir and, like many leading figures in Egypt, an immigrant from Iraq.
2. P. Vatikiotis, "Al-Hakim bi Amrillah: the god-king idea realised", *Islamic Culture*, xxix, 1955, 1–8.
3. M. A. Shaban, *Islamic history: a new interpretation*, II, Cambridge 1976, 206–10.
4. J. H. Forsyth, "The Byzantine chronicle of Yahyā b. Saʿīd al-Antakī", unpublished Ph.D thesis, Michigan, 202–96.
5. Medieval Ghāna lay on the southern fringes of the Sahara desert between the headwaters of the Niger and Senegal rivers.

POSTSCRIPT: THE COMING OF THE SELJUKS

"Turks" was the collective name given by Arab authors to the members of the nomad tribes who roamed the great steppes and wastes between the north-eastern frontiers of the Muslim world and the borders of China. From these areas they occasionally expanded and threatened the peace of their neighbours. The Huns, whose attacks did so much to destroy the Western Roman empire in the fifth century, came from this group as did the Mongols who were later to cause such havoc in the Near East. The Turks were almost entirely nomad in life-style, dependent on their horses, flocks and their hardy Bactrian camels. Only in a few areas along the fringes of the Muslim world, in towns like Jand on the lower reaches of the Syr Darya (Jaxartes) river had any of them settled down; most of them, however, remained as nomads, jealous of their traditional ways and suspicious of the culture of the urban and settled folk they came into contact with. The nomad Turks were essentially pagan, although those who encountered settled peoples tended to convert to Islam. Like all nomad peoples they had a very decentralized "political" system; prestige and some power lay in the hands of families who established themselves as ruling clans and sometimes took the title of *jabghū* or *khāqān*, but their power remained dependent on their acceptability to their followers; only when Turks came to rule settled communities were the rulers able to acquire any effective authority over their tribesmen and even then it was often bitterly resented.

The Arabs had come into contact with the Turks from the earliest days of the conquest of Khurāsān and the Muslims of the area always had to struggle to contain them and defend the settled territories. But, despite set-backs, they had always been successful until the beginning of the fifth/eleventh century. That is not to say of course that there were no Turks within the Muslim world. We have seen how large a part Turks played in the armies of both ʿAbbasid caliphs and the *amīrs* of the successor states. These were almost all working as professional soldiers; there do not seem to have been any Turks living as nomads or transhumants in the Near East. Nor were there any Turks living a tribal life; they owed their loyalties and their social organization to the military framework in which they operated and their allegiance to the commander of the group of *ghilmān* in which they served, rather than to a clan or kinship group. The Turks

who swept through the eastern Islamic world in the fifth/eleventh century were, by contrast, a whole people on the move, they came with their animals and their tents, groups of poor, often desperate pastoralists, seeking booty if they could find it but more important, grazing for the precious beasts on which they depended for their survival. These were the people the Muslim sources came to call Türkmen, to distinguish them from other Turks, already established in the Near East or serving in the retinue of the Seljuk sultans. The Seljuk family did not lead this movement but rather followed in its wake and attempted, with some success, to forge a traditional Muslim state out of this unpromising material.

The Türkmen who flooded into the Near East came from a group known as the Ghuzz or Oghuz. They were supposedly divided into nine tribes so were known in Turkish as the Dokuz (nine) Oghuz, or, as the Muslim sources chose to write it, Taghuzzghuzz. It seems that they had moved into the area of the lower Syr Darya, to the south-east of the Aral Sea, at the beginning of the fifth/eleventh century when one of their leading families, the Seljuks, became Muslim. In this position they became involved as allies and mercenaries in the complex struggles for control of Muslim Transoxania between the last representatives of the Iranian Samanid dynasty, the Turkish Karakhanids and the great Maḥmūd of Ghazna, Turkish by origin but thoroughly assimilated into the Muslim world. The eponymous Seljuk seems to have died before his family began their march west. One of his sons Arslan (Lion) Isrā'īl entered Transoxania with his followers but in about 418/1027 he was arrested by Maḥmūd and his followers, under the leadership of his son Qutlumush were driven out of Maḥmūd's domains, not eastward whence they had come, but towards the west. Destitute and without any territory to call their own they fled along the southern flanks of the mountains of Ṭabaristān and Daylam, the congenial upland pastures of Āz̲arbayjān, which thus became the first area of central Islamic lands to suffer their onslaught. Here they plundered and attempted to establish themselves without great success, since they were consistently opposed by the local Kurdish population. Many of them were forced to flee to the wild mountains of the Hakkārī Kurds to the south-east of Lake Van, while others went to Iraq where they briefly occupied Mosul before being defeated by Qirwāsh b. al-Muqallad al-'Uqaylī with his Arab and Kurdish army in 475/1044. It was only when more Turks joined them from the east, that these Türkmen were able to establish themselves as a dominant population and transform the ethnic map of the Near East.

Arslan Isrā'īl had two nephews, cousins of Qutlumush, called Tughrïl Beg and Chagrï Beg, who remained in the traditional lands of the tribe on the Syr Darya but during the 420s/1030s they were driven out by

their local rivals and obliged to attack the Ghaznavid towns in Transoxania. Here they were received with caution but not complete hostility by the local notables. The rule of the Ghaznavids was oppressive, in that taxes were heavy, and, by this time, not very efficient. The Ghaznavid Sultan Masʿūd naturally marched to defend his lands but in 431/1040 he met the Seljuk army at Dandānqān near Marv and was decisively and totally defeated. It is interesting to note that the Seljuks are said to have had 16,000 horsemen in this battle as well as another 2,000 they had left to guard the camp. While this was smaller than the Ghaznavid army, it was probably very much greater than the armies normally employed by the Buyids and their rivals in Iraq and western Iran.

After Dandānqān, the Ghuzz Turks of Tughrïl's army followed in the traces of their predecessors with whom they soon joined up while Chaghrï remained in Khurāsān. The lead was taken by the Türkmen, under the nominal leadership of Ibrāhīm Ïnal, a member of the Seljuk family; by 433/1041–2 he had established himself in Rayy before moving on the next year to Hamadhān. Tughrïl himself followed more slowly, trying to establish a rudimentary administration as he did. By 442/1050–1 he was in Iṣfahān, where he seems to have paused. He diverted the restless Türkmen, under Ibrāhīm Ïnāl and Qutlumush, towards the eastern territories of the Byzantine empire while he himself made a treaty with Abū Kālījār, the Buyid ruler of Fārs, and entered into negotiations with the Caliph al-Qā'im in Baghdad. In Baghdad all was chaos. The Buyid sovereign al-Malik al-Raḥīm was quite unable to establish any sort of government. An ambitious Turkish *ghulām* commander, al-Basāsīrī, was scheming to bring Iraq over to the Fatimid cause. In these circumstances, it was natural that the caliph's *wazīr*, Ibn al-Muslima, looked for support to the new power in the east, especially as Tughrïl made clear his devotion to the Sunnī cause and his hatred for the "heretic" Buyids. Tughrïl's position grew stronger as each year passed; in 440/1048 Abū Kālījār died and Fārs was open to Türkmen raids; Shīrāz was raided in 444/1052–3 and even Ahwāz, in torrid Khūzistān, was attacked. In 447/1055 Tughrïl announced his intention of making the *ḥajj* and of attacking the Fatimids. He assembled his followers in the Zagros mountains and in Ramaḍān 447/December 1055 he entered Baghdad, Al-Basāsīrī fled, al-Malik al-Raḥīm was deposed: the era of the Great Seljuks had begun.

PRINCIPAL SOURCES FOR THE HISTORY OF THE NEAR EAST, 600–1050

Our understanding of the history of the Near East between 600 and 1050 is derived essentially from chronicles and other literary works. Some evidence has emerged from archaeological and numismatic sources but with rare exceptions this has not been integrated into the treatment of the basic history. Documentary evidence, that is to say archives, account books, charters, which play a central part in the history of western Europe in the Middle Ages, are almost entirely lacking. This point is important because the nature of the evidence determines the type of history we can write. We are extremely fortunate in the vast range of literary evidence available, from brief annals which may do little more than contribute a missing name or date to great compilations like al-Ṭabarī's *Ta'rīkh al-rusul wa'l-mulūk* (History of the Prophets and Kings) or al-Balādhurī's *Ansāb al-ashāf* (Genealogies of the Nobles) which contain a vast amount of anecdotal and circumstantial detail to fill in the bare facts and give life and substance to the names. By no means all the literary sources are chronicles; there are also administrative geographies and travel books, collections of poems (which for the early period are an important if somewhat intractable form of historical evidence), collections of letters and other sorts of *adab* (an Arabic term which means, roughly, essays on literary, social, historical or ethical themes). Most of the chronicles are in Arabic, but there are also Greek writings and a substantial corpus of Syriac literature which sheds light on some obscure aspects of the subject. There is also a body of writing in the New Persian language which appeared from the third/ninth century onwards but which sometimes, as with the translation of al-Ṭabarī by the Persian Balʿamī and the anonymous *Ta'rīkh-i Sīstān* (History of Sīstān), contains much older material not to be found in any of the Arabic sources.

The literary material is so good, lively, interesting and often written by men of great intelligence and discernment, that it can blind us to the fact that it tends to limit the sort of historical approaches which can be used and there are whole areas of Islamic history which will for ever remain obscure. Take the issue of landownership for example. We know from literary sources that many high officials, generals and even successful poets had *ḍiyāʿ*, that is to say landed estates which they were given or

into which they invested the salaries or gifts they had received. In some cases we are even given overall figures for the revenues they received from these estates, which were considerable. But if we try to go further than that, to ask questions like – How were the estates administered? Who collected the owner's share of the crops? What proportion of the revenues were taken by the owner? Was there a village headman and if so, what was his role? – we are met by an almost impenetrable wall of silence. Even in the case of the *ṣawāfī*, the estates owned by the Umayyad and ʿAbbasid caliphs, we have only the vaguest ideas about their extent or the proportion of government revenue which was raised from them. Contrast this with the position in western Europe; from the time of the Carolingian polyptiques of the ninth century we have accounts from northern France and, by the eleventh century, from England, which enable us to form a very full idea of village life, society and economy.

The strength of the Arabic material lies in its grasp of narrative and its portrayal of character: individuals loom large in the account. They are also fully in control of their behaviour. Divine intervention works in a more distant fashion than in much Western medieval, or indeed, Syriac and Byzantine literature. Rarely is the hand of God directly and immediately involved in punishment of sinners; there is rather a strong sense of human responsibility, coupled with the idea that man is ultimately subject to God's will. The crimes which bring men low are foolish incompetence or, above all, arrogance and over-confidence. Fate strikes at those who feel that they have reached a position of eminence and security, but it is rarely a reward for moral failings or wickedness. The judgements of the Muslim historians are based on the premiss that man is a free agent who determines his own actions and, despite the deep religious faith of many of the authors, their writing is much more "humanist" than the historical tradition of the medieval West.

Sources for the History of the Prophet, the Rāshidūn and Umayyad Caliphs: the Classic Period of Islamic Historiography

The historiography of the early Islamic period is immensely full and rich. In many ways we have more information about it than any subsequent period before the appearance of documentary sources in late Mamluk Egypt and the Ottoman empire. But this historiography also presents a unique and baffling problem, or series of problems which have been the subject of a wide-ranging scholarly debate. The substance of the debate is that, while the accounts we have are very full and detailed, frequently including verbatim eyewitness reports, there is a significant time lag

between the events they describe and the time by which we know that they were written down, that is in the decades after the ʿAbbasid revolution of 132/750. Thus in the case of events surrounding the Life of the Prophet and his immediate successors, over a century had elapsed between the events and the first written record we have. Questions naturally arise as to the means by which these accounts were passed down in the interval and thence to the question of whether they are in fact genuine at all or invented later to justify a position or establish a usage. Were those who purported to record them simply those who made them up?

The problem would exist even if the events concerned were of no more than antiquarian interest but there is an additional complicating factor. The events of the Prophet's life, and, to a lesser but still important extent, those of his immediate successors were, and still are, normative for the behaviour of the Muslim community. Thus what Muḥammad did on a certain occasion, his last "Farewell" pilgrimage to Mecca, for example, has determined the correct way of performing the pilgrimage ever since and hence it is of vital importance for the Muslims that the accounts of the Farewell pilgrimage be accurate. The historicity of some incidents is extremely controversial. The question as to whether Muḥammad designated ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib as his successor, for example, is one such issue; Shīʿīs argue strongly that he did so, and that the accounts were deliberately suppressed by supporters of Abū Bakr, ʿUmar and the Sunnīs. Sunnī tradition, by contrast insists that no such designation was ever made.

Early Muslim authors were themselves very conscious of the problem of authenticity and aware that false traditions, especially about the life of the Prophet, were liable to creep into, or be inserted in, the corpus. In an effort to solve this problem, they took to citing their sources in the form of *isnāds*. The *isnād*, which introduced each section of the narrative, consisted of the name of the narrator from whom the author had taken it followed by those from whom he had taken it and so back to the original eye- or ear-witness in the form "I was told by *x* who was told by *y* who was told by *z* that he heard the Prophet saying . . .". In this way the authors attempted to establish the reliability of their information. To do this they worked to establish the dates and general character of the narrators. If the narrators in each stage of the *isnād* overlapped chronologically and if they were known to be of good character and not given to lying, then the account could be considered trustworthy. It is not hard to see the limitations of this approach as a method of historical criticism, but it did mean that Muslim authors, even after the formal *isnād* system had been largely abandoned in later

centuries, tended to be much more careful to acknowledge their sources than were their contemporaries in the medieval West.

In the last thirty years, the reliability and historicity of the Arabic sources for the first century of Islam has been the subject of a lively and sustained polemic. The debate was effectively opened with the publication in 1973 of Albrecht Noth's *Quellenkritische Studien zu Themen, Formen und Tendenzen frühislamicher geschichtsüberlieferung* (Bonn: this should now be used in the revised English edition by Lawrence Conrad, *The Early Arabic Historical Tradition* (Princeton, 1994)). Noth argued that many of the apparently detailed accounts of the events of the early Islamic period were essentially topoi, ancedotes and themes which appeared in different contexts as the author saw fit and his conclusions call into question many of the apparently realistic details of the history of the early Muslim conquests.

A much more radical critique of the early Muslim sources was advanced by J. Wansbrough with the publication of *Qur'ānic Studies*, Oxford, 1977 and *The Sectarian Milieu*, Oxford 1978, His ideas were developed and popularized by P. Crone and M. Cook in their *Hagarism: the Making of the Islamic World*, Cambridge 1977. The argument advanced by Cook and Crone rests on the fact that the sources on which we rely for our knowledge of early Islam are in their present form all much later than the events they purport to describe. Instead of being historical narratives, they are accounts generated in the ʿAbbasid period to give validity and identity to the emerging religion of Islam and, especially to differentiate it from Judaism and Christianity. From this premise it is possible to argue that the whole story of Muḥammad's life is a fiction, elaborated to provide the religion with a convincing historical origin. The authors argue that we should disregard the Muslim testimony concerning the life of Muḥammad, since this could be fabricated and is in any case full of internal contradictions, and look at non-Muslim accounts of the origins of Islam, particularly those given by contemporary Christian authors. Here we find no mention of a new religion or to events referred to in the *sīra* but rather a collection of accounts, usually very short, often confused, which clearly give no impression that Islam was, at that stage, a separate entity. There may be genuine historical information in the early Muslim accounts but it is impossible to separate from later polemic accretions.

The publication of Cook and Crone's work gave rise to a storm of controversy. Both Muslim scholars and some non-Muslims were affronted that the whole basis of our understanding of early Islam could be challenged in this way and for a time the academic community was polarized into two opposing camps. Gradually however, scholars have

attempted to move forward and to reach a new synthesis, or at least to develop new approaches. F. M. Donner's *Narratives of Islamic Origins* (Princeton, 1998) opens with a useful account of the whole debate and goes on to argue that the Muslim tradition should be used bearing in mind the purposes for which it was compiled: "the underlying purpose of the narratives of Islamic origins was to articulate the validity of the Muslims' communal identity" and that "Not by rejecting the whole Islamic tradition as 'opaque', but rather by patiently unravelling the strands and layers of the complex traditional material, will the Islamic origins story finally come, at least partially to light".

A different perspective is offered in Robert Hoyland's *Seeing Islam as Others Saw It* (Princeton, 1997). As the title suggests, this is an examination of the non-Muslim sources for the earliest Islamic period. He argues that non-Muslim sources are more supportive of the Islamic narratives than the sceptics have suggested and that "the testimony of Christian, Jewish and Zoroastrian writers can be used alongside that of Muslim authors to furnish us with an enriched and expanded vision of the history of the Middle East in early Islamic times, to offer us new perspectives on its character and to suggest to us new directions for study". The most recent major survey, Chase Robinson's *Islamic Historiography* argues that a work like Ibn Hishām's *Sira* may tell us more about the attitudes and concerns of the early ʿAbbasid period than about the facts of the Prophet's life, but he does not reject the historicity of the entire corpus.

The debate is certainly not over but certain issues seem to have been clarified. Few would now support the extreme sceptic position which says that we do not and cannot know anything about the early history of Islam. On the other hand, the old certainties have disappeared and it is clear that early Islamic sources have to be read with a much keener awareness of when, why and for whom they were composed.

The formation of the Muslim accounts of the life of the Prophet (the *Sīrat al-Nabī*, hereafter referred to simply as the *sīra*) and the account of the conquests and the early caliphate, was essentially a two-stage process. The first stage was represented by the development of short narratives, either oral or written, of incidents each with its own *isnād*. These were referred to as *khabar* (pl. *akhbār*) or, especially if they referred to words or deeds of the Prophet as *ḥadīth* (Tradition). These soon began to be collected, sometimes by the emerging class of religious scholars in Medina or Iraq, sometimes among tribes or families wishing to preserve the memory of the great deeds of their ancestors, or at the Umayyad court where caliphs from Muʿāwiya onwards encouraged the retelling and collection of *akhbār* both about the Prophet and

about secular subjects and poetry. The second stage was the attempt to fit such *akhbār* into an orderly chronological framework. This seems to have been begun in the Umayyad period; the form of the *sīra* may have been fixed as early as the time of ʿUrwa b. al-Zubayr (d. 94/712) and his pupil Muḥammad b. Muslim al-Zuhrī (d. 124/741). The earliest account of the *sīra* to have survived in its original form, however, is that of Muḥammad b. Isḥāq (d. 151/761) by which time we can be sure that the main outlines of the Prophet's life were established. The basic chronology of the Islamic conquests was established a generation or two later, possibly in the time of Muḥammad b. ʿUmar al-Wāqidī (d. 207/823), although we know that there were earlier accounts, like those of Ibn Isḥāq and Abū Mikhnaf (d. 157/774) which may have attempted to determine the sequence of events. These second/eighth-century compilers were faced with the formidable task of attempting to put the numerous, often very detailed *akhbār* at their disposal into a chronological framework. It is hardly surprising if different compilers sometimes came to different conclusions about the ordering of events which had happened a full century before their time.

The question as to how far the early *akhbār* were written down and how much they were simply passed on by oral tradition is a complex one, still unresolved. The Muslim sources often use verbs of speech like *dhakara* (he mentioned) or *qāla* (he said) to describe the early accounts but this does not necessarily mean that they were not written down; Arabic, like English, uses the metaphor, "he says in his book . . ." when no suggestion of speech is intended. In addition, there was a half-way stage between oral and written transmission which was common in Islamic intellectual life whereby a scholar would expound or dictate his work to his pupils who would copy it down from his spoken words. The evidence of surviving Arabic papyri suggests that the keeping of written records was commonplace in the first century of Islam and we should probably be right to think that many *akhbār* were written down at this time in collections which were then used by the collators of the second century to produce their chronological narratives. The loss of this first generation of Muslim historical literature need not surprise us, since when it had been incorporated in later compilations, the original was essentially redundant, just as the compilation of a cartulary meant that the monks of a medieval Western religious house could dispense with the bulky and inconvenient original charters. It should be remembered that the rate of loss among later Islamic historical writing has been depressingly high, and many of the surviving classics, the *Taʾrīkh* (History) of Khalīfa b. Khayyāṭ for example, are only represented by a single manuscript, so the disappearance of the original texts is no indication that they did not exist.

The Life of the Prophet Muḥammad poses further and unique historical problems. Our understanding of the Life is essentially based on the written work of four compilers:

1. The *Sīrat al-Nabī* of Ibn Isḥāq (d. 151/761) in the later recension of Ibn Hishām (d. 218/813), ed. F. Wüstenfeld, 2 vols, Göttingen 1858–60; also ed. M. al-Saqqa *et al.*, Cairo 1955. (There is an English translation by A. Guillaume, Karachi 1955).
2. The *Kitāb al-maghāzī* of al-Wāqidī (d. 207/823), ed. J. B. M. Jones, 3 vols, Oxford 1966.
3. Muḥammad b. Saʿd (d. 230/844), *Kitāb al-ṭabaqāt al-kabīr*, 9 vols, ed. E. Sachau, Leiden 1904–40.
4. Muḥammad b. Jarīr al-Ṭabarī (d. 310/923), *Taʾrīkh al-rusul waʾl-mulūk*, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1879–1901; the biography of Muḥammad is treated in Section 1, 1073–1816.

The material of the *sīra* is extremely impressive, both as regards its bulk and the detailed information it provides. The account of Ibn Isḥāq runs to something over 300,000 words in the English translation (compared, for example, with the Gospel according to St Matthew which is well under 30,000). We are given a vast amount of information, especially about the last part of Muḥammad's life from the *Hijra* (AD 622) onwards when he was leading the Muslim community in Medina and the names of numerous people who met him. We are also given a great deal of circumstantial anecdote to enliven the story and give context to events; for all its great length, the *sīra* makes very interesting reading.

As already noted, the reliability of the *sīra* as a historical source has been challenged by some modern scholarship. A particular problem stems from the complex relationship between the *sīra* and the Qur'ān. From the earliest time there has been debate as to the interpretation of some passages in the Qur'ān and the historical events to which they refer. At least some of the *sīra* material seems to be exegetical, that is to say that the narrative was developed to explain the context of a part of the Revelation rather than as a straightforward historical account, and it should not be treated as such. In some cases this may be true, although it is impossible to say which passages are historical and, simply because a passage explains the context of part of the Qur'ān, this does not mean that it is not at the same time a record of a historical event.

As with the life of Muḥammad, so the story of the first four caliphs of Islam is largely derived from a limited number of chronicles, although the problems concerned with using them change somewhat. Of the four major sources for the *sīra* discussed above, two are no longer of any use: the works of Ibn Isḥāq and al-Wāqidī effectively come to an end with

the Prophet's death. Ibn Saʿd gives biographies of numerous early Muslims, but of the four only al-Ṭabarī systematically continues his work beyond this period. This does not mean, however, that there is any dearth of records, for other writers appear who had either not treated the *sīra* at all, or who had given an abbreviated account which added little new material. In the main these writers lived in the third/ninth century and continued their narratives up to their own times so it is perhaps acceptable to discuss their entire works at this point.

For the period of the Rāshidūn, the Umayyads and the coming of the ʿAbbasids all these authors seem to have drawn, directly or indirectly, on a generation of historians whose original works are lost but whose writings survive in the books of later scholars. Among the most important of these were Abū Mikhnaf (d. 157/774), ʿAwāna b. al-Ḥakam (d. 147/764), Sayf b. ʿUmar (d. 180/796), al-Madā'inī (d. 225/839) and al-Haytham b. ʿAdī (d. 206/821). Of these works, only fragments of Sayf b. ʿUmar's *Kitāb al-Ridda wa'l-Futūḥ* (ed. Qasim al-Samarrai, 2 vols, Leiden 1995) survive in their original form. All these sources essentially use the *isnād* technique for establishing the genuineness of the material and their work takes the form of vivid but disjointed narrative accounts of incidents. Their works were composed in a number of different forms: collections of stories (*akhbār*) about individual incidents, studies of broader themes like the conquests or the *Ridda* wars, studies of the history of one area or city and even books about a whole era, like the Umayyad period. In later years, annalistic historiography (that is to say the arrangement of events under the years in which they took place) was to be the most important single form in Arabic historical narrative. How far that was the case among these earlier historians is not entirely clear; it has been suggested that the annalistic frame was developed by the end of the second/eighth century. It is possible, too, that this was a legacy of the Greek and Syrian historical tradition where, as in medieval Western historiography, the annalistic form had been developed in late antiquity.

Apart from the problems of transmission and apparent contradiction in the sources, a further problem is raised by the issue of deliberate bias and distortion. Factions and political groups soon emerged in early Islam and later authors certainly looked back to the formative years of the Islamic world for justification of their attitudes. In the first/seventh century there are perhaps two major issues on which Muslim opinion was divided, the battle of Ṣiffīn and the subsequent arbitration agreement, and the death of al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī. The historiography of Ṣiffīn has been discussed by E. L. Petersen (*ʿAlī and Muʿāwiya in early Arabic tradition*, Copenhagen 1964) who disentangled the various versions

and layers of narrative. The main points of difference concern basic and clearly stated moral issues such as whether ʿAlī was betrayed at the arbitration which followed Ṣiffīn, or indeed whether the arbitration was held at all, and the historiography has certainly been deeply influenced by later debates about the claims of the Umayyads, ʿAlids and ʿAbbasids to be considered as rightful caliphs. In the case of the death of al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī there is little dispute about the main facts. No one denied that al-Ḥusayn had been killed on the orders of the Umayyad governor of Iraq, that the Umayyad forces were vastly superior to his and that the people of Kūfa, on whom he had relied for help, took no action to save him. Authors allow their opinions to show in the way in which they embellish the story: pro-ʿAlid or Shīʿī authors will recount anecdotes to show the blameless nature of al-Ḥusayn's death, the sufferings he and his family underwent and the cruelty of the Umayyad soldiers. For the searcher after religious inspiration and moral example, these passages are of great importance, for the historian they are marginal except in so far as they illustrate the thinking of later commentators. In both these key incidents of early Islamic history, the main outlines of the events are not really in dispute. When it comes to circumstantial details and opinions, the author's feelings are usually apparent. If we understand the sources, how and why they were compiled, the question of deliberate bias becomes much less of a problem: of course the authors have opinions about the past, that is what makes them so interesting.

The issue of reliability has another dimension. It is easy to assume that eyewitnesses or participants in events must necessarily be accurate guides to what took place but a moment's reflection will show clearly that that is not so. One is reminded of the famous account of the battle of Waterloo in Stendhal's *Chartreuse de Parme* where the hero's confused impressions give us no idea of the overall plan of the campaign, the chronology of the battle or the issues at stake. Many of the reports we have of the incidents at Ṣiffīn must have been based on rumour, second-hand information, partly understood manoeuvres. The importance of this to the historians is that, obviously, we should not place uncritical trust in the narratives, however good the *isnād* may be, but it also points to another moral: we should not imagine that contradictions and confusions are the results of deliberate bias or of a conscious scheme to distort the truth. They are rather part of the very nature of oral testimony. They require a very different approach therefore from the careful sifting of deliberate chronicle evidence, an approach more similar to that of the police officer trying to reconstruct the exact details of a fast-moving crime from those who only witnessed a portion of the action.

Of course the editors of these accounts, from Abū Mikhnaf onwards, exercised their judgement in deciding which accounts they would include and which they would omit and this sort of censorship allowed them to attach weight to traditions which reflected well on ʿAlī or vice versa if they so wished, but it would seem that they did so within the limits of the material available, rather than simply inventing a more favourable version of events. In early ʿAbbasid Iraq it would have been effectively impossible for any one man to produce a "cover-up"; there were clearly too many others who would be aware that traditions had been falsified or important arguments omitted. Propaganda if such there is, is developed by selective choice of traditions and allowing them to speak for themselves; there are few, if any, of the passionate denunciations and attacks which are met with so frequently in Christian historiography, both Eastern and Western. The question of reliability in the Arabic sources is then very complex and this rich and tightly interwoven texture of narrative rarely allows one to say "Fulān's chronicle is pro-ʿAlī or pro-Muʿāwiya". Similarly attempts to differentiate different "schools" of historical writing, notably a Medina school and an Iraqi school, have not been entirely convincing. We must conclude that the early Islamic historiographical material is not tendentious propaganda, aimed to push a particular point of view, but it is rather the work of serious historians attempting to recover the truth, as they saw it, from a mass of different traditions, some written, some still in oral form, and to arrange them into a convincing narrative and chronological structure.

Not all early Islamic historiography is made up of *akhbār* introduced by *isnāds*, indeed the first work on Islamic history to survive in its entirety, the *Taʾrīkh* (History) of Khalīfa b. Khayyāṭ (d. 240/854–5), ed. Akram Ḍiyāʾ al-ʿUmarī, Najaf 1967, is brief and selective, often using abbreviated *isnāds*. His work is entirely annalistic, events being recorded under the year in which they took place, marking the coming of age of this genre of historical literature in Arabic. Slightly more discursive is the *Taʾrīkh* of Aḥmad b. Wāḍiḥ al-Yaʿqūbī (d. 284/895), ed. M. Houtsma, 2 vols, Leiden 1883 and 2 vols, Beirut 1960, which is arranged not annalistically but according to reigns of caliphs, and is almost entirely without *isnāds*. He is often described as pro-Shīʿī but what this really amounts to is that he gives considerable space to the sayings and deeds of some of the descendants of ʿAlī. Al-Yaʿqūbī's work is useful in that it provides a check on the fuller chronicle of al-Ṭabarī and sometimes, when establishing the names of governors of distant provinces like Armenia or Sind, for example, he supplies information unobtainable from al-Ṭabarī's much longer work. Contemporary with al-Yaʿqūbī was the Iranian author Aḥmad b. Dāwūd al-Dīnawarī

(d. 282/895). His *Akhbār al-ṭiwāl*, eds V. Guirgass and I. I. Krachkovskii, Leiden 1912; eds ʿAbd al-Munʿim ʿĀmir and Jamāl al-Dīn al-Shayyāl, Cairo 1960, is a general history in which the early Islamic sections are dealt with under the reigns of the caliphs and which has a pronounced interest in Iranian affairs.

Apart from al-Ṭabarī himself, the greatest figure in early Islamic historiography was Aḥmad b. Yaḥyā al-Balādhurī (d. 279/892). He wrote two major works, both of which appear to have survived in their entirety. The *Futūḥ al-buldān*, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1866; ed. Ṣalāh al-Dīn Munajjid, Cairo 1957; English trans. P. K. Hitti and F. C. Murgotten, *The origins of the Islamic state*, New York 1916, 1924, is the shorter and more accessible work, having been edited in its entirety. It is an account of the Islamic conquest of the different areas of the Muslim world, paying special attention to whether they were taken by force or by treaty since this affected their fiscal status. Most of the material relates to the period of the Rāshidūn caliphs, but he also includes events in the later Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid period which concern areas like the Byzantine frontier where there were still conquests to be made. He is also important in that he was one of the few authors to discuss the possession and history of landed estates, and much that we know of the estates of the Umayyad family, for example, comes from his work. A full and complete edition of his other work, the vast *Ansāb al-ashrāf*, is being published in ten volumes under the auspices of the Deutsche Morgenlandische Gesellschaft in the series Bibliotheca Islamica in Beirut from 1979 onwards. In the absence of a complete text, reference can also be made to previous editions: vol. I by Muḥammad Ḥamīdullāh, Cairo 1959 – this deals mostly with the Prophet and the editor also gives an extremely useful list of the contents of the entire work; vol. IV/2 by M. Schloessinger and M. J. Kister, Jerusalem 1971 and vol. V by S. D. Goitein, Jerusalem 1936. Vols IV/2 and V deal with the successors of Muʿāwiya and the revolt of Ibn al-Zubayr. The *Ansāb* is arranged according to genealogies, but the biographies of the caliphs are expanded to include lengthy discussions of events in their reigns. The wealth and importance of this vast work can hardly be exaggerated and it is a major source for Umayyad history.

The history of the Rāshidūn and the Umayyad caliphs is dominated by the *Taʾrīkh al-rusul waʾl-mulūk* (History of the Prophets and Kings) by al-Ṭabarī. His account is based on the work of earlier Traditionists and compilers like Abū Mikhnaf and Sayf b. ʿUmar already mentioned. The presentation is that of a vast collection of *akhbār* each introduced by its appropriate *isnād*. Al-Ṭabarī often gives different, sometimes conflicting, accounts of the same incidents; only rarely does he make

a judgement between them. In some ways his history of the Umayyad period is simply a compendium of sources, a sort of *Rolls Series* or *Monumenta Germanicae Historica* of the Islamic world, only compiled by a tenth-century Muslim rather than a team of nineteenth-century scholars. The question of how far al-Ṭabarī edited his material remains an open one; the issue is whether he selected the *akhbār* he used in order to develop and illustrate major themes about the history of the Islamic state or whether he incorporated into his text the available material, and his presentation simply reflects the weight of the sources at his disposal. The picture is further complicated in that we cannot be sure of the exact relationship between the edited text as we have it today and al-Ṭabarī's original. There is no complete surviving manuscript of the *Taʾrīkh* and the text has been reconstructed from a number of partial manuscripts by the team of editors led by M. J. de Goeje in Leiden in the late nineteenth century, in itself one of the great achievements of orientalist scholarship. This makes it more difficult than usual to assess the extent to which the text has been altered or abridged by copyists and it may well be that some distortions or omissions are a result of the transmission of the text rather than the author's considered opinion. This said, his work remains absolutely central to any discussion of early Islamic history and its full potential has hardly yet been investigated.

The Rāshidūn and Umayyad caliphs also receive extensive coverage in the *Kitāb al-futūḥ* (Book of conquests) of Aḥmad b. Aʿtham al-Kūfī (d. 314/926), ed. Muḥammad ʿAbd al-Muʿīd Khan *et al.*, 8 vols, Hyderabad 1968–75. Despite the similarity of title between Ibn Aʿtham's work and the *Futūḥ al-buldān* of al-Balādhurī, the form of the work is different. Whereas al-Balādhurī arranges his material by regions, Ibn Aʿtham's approach is broadly chronological. He also devotes very considerable attention to internal military affairs, like the revolt of al-Mukhtār against the Umayyads, as well as external conquests. He belongs to the classical school of Islamic history writing, basing himself firmly on *akhbār* introduced by their *isnāds*. He uses many of the same sources as al-Ṭabarī but seems to edit and abridge them with more freedom to emphasize religious and pietistic themes and motivations.

While these are the principal historical sources for the period of the Rāshidūn and the Umayyads, there are other works of a more literary kind which are none the less important for the general history. Perhaps the most important of these is the *Murūj al-dhahab* (Meadows of gold) of the polymath ʿAlī b. al-Ḥusayn al-Masʿūdī (d. 345/956), eds with French trans. C. Barbier de Meynard and A. Pavet de Courteille, 9 vols, Paris 1861–77, ed. C. Pellat, 4 vols, Beirut 1973, which is an anecdotal history of the early caliphate. Al-Masʿūdī was one of the most

wide-ranging of the intellectuals of the fourth/tenth century, and his work reflects a cultured mind and a broad range of interests.

Of great value is the magnificent *Kitāb al-aghānī* of Abū'l-Faraj ʿAlī b. al-Ḥusayn al-Iṣfahānī (d. 365/975), ed. I–XX, Būlāq 1867, XXI, ed. Brünnow, Leiden 1888 with index tables by I. Guidi, Leiden 1895–1900; ed. in 24 vols, Beirut 1955. The *Kitāb al-aghānī* (Book of songs) is essentially a book about poets and singers of the pre-Islamic, Umayyad and ʿAbbasid periods. For the historian, however, its value is much greater than the title would suggest, since the biographies are full of interesting and lively detail and allow us a rare glimpse into the underworld of early Islamic society. Many of the poets were men of obscure origin and disreputable behaviour, the sort of people who make little impression on the general narrative of political events, and the *Aghānī* provides a useful corrective to the general histories. By the same author is another important work, also very much *sui generis*, the *Maqātil al-Ṭālibiyīn*, ed. Aḥmad Ṣaqr, Cairo 1949. This is a more sombre work, giving an account of the circumstances of the killing of members of the ʿAlid family who met violent deaths in Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid times. It is full of direct and vivid narrative. It is a source of major importance for the history of the pro-ʿAlid movements of the time and successfully avoids the lachrymose tone which can dominate histories of the subject.

Another work which reflects a pro-ʿAlī viewpoint is the *Waqʿat Ṣiffīn* of Naṣr b. Muzāḥim al-Minqarī (d. 212/827), ed. ʿAbd al-Salām Hārūn, Cairo 1962. Naṣr was himself active in the ʿAlid cause and he selected traditions concerning the conflict between ʿAlī and Muʿāwiya which reflected that point of view. He is also a Traditional historian who was careful to quote Traditions in full with their appropriate *isnāds* and his work is an important source for the limited period it covers.

Sources for the ʿAbbasid Period 132–329/750–940

In many ways the coming of the ʿAbbasids marks the end of what might be called the classic phase of Arab historiography, the period when historical writing is dominated by compilation of ancient *akhbār*, introduced by their own *isnāds*. Some authors who had been extremely important sources for Umayyad and earlier history now ceased to be important if only because, like Abū Mikhnaf for example, they do not seem to have concerned themselves with the events of their own lifetime. Of the compilers, some whose records were very important up to this point fade out. Most importantly, al-Balādhurī soon ceases to be a major source, although his *Ansāb* has a good deal to say about al-Saffāḥ

and al-Manṣūr and the *Futūḥ* is important for the history of frontier regions. Likewise Ibn Aʿtham's account of the ʿAbbasids, although it includes events as late as Bābak's rebellion in the early third/ninth century, is much thinner than the comparable section on the Umayyads. Neither al-Dīnawarī nor Khalīfa b. Khayyāṭ devoted as much time to the ʿAbbasids as they did to the Umayyads and their works become increasingly brief and factual. The two works of al-Iṣfahānī, the *Aghānī* and the *Maqātil al-Ṭālibiyīn*, continue to be of great importance in the early ʿAbbasid period.

The change in the nature of historiography is most clearly apparent in the case of al-Ṭabarī. Unlike the other authorities on early Islamic history, al-Ṭabarī did not abandon interest when he came to the affairs of the ʿAbbasid caliphs, but his methods and approach are significantly different, the change becoming apparent not at the moment of the ʿAbbasid revolution in 132/750, but rather at the death of the Caliph al-Saffāḥ in 136/754. From this point al-Ṭabarī begins to abandon the classic technique of giving different *akhbār* about each event, but concentrates on giving a single narrative, sometimes from a named source, sometimes simply introduced by the phrase "Abū Jaʿfar (al-Ṭabarī) said", or no introduction at all. This does not mean that there was a total change; as before he sometimes includes the works of earlier historians verbatim; the use of ʿUmar b. Shabba's account of the rebellion of the ʿAlid Muḥammad the Pure Soul in 145/762 is a case in point. On controversial issues like the events which surrounded the death of the Caliph al-Hādī in 170/786 he continues to give different versions. But the practice is no longer general and a linear narrative comes to replace the mosaic of individual *akhbār*.

There is also something of a change in the background of al-Ṭabarī's informants. The early collectors of *akhbār*, Ibn Isḥāq and Abū Mikhnaf, for example, seem to have been men with a background in religious scholarship and men essentially of independent means, not directly connected with the caliphal court or dependent on official patronage. Such men continued to exist; al-Ṭabarī himself seems to have been one such independent author. Increasingly, however, his sources were men connected with government and with the bureaucracy, the *kuttāb* class. Whereas the heroes of early Islamic history are warriors and men of action, the heroes of ʿAbbasid history tend to be the great administrators, the most famous of them being the Barmakids. And just as the memory of the great tribal warriors of early Arabia and the Islamic conquests was kept alive by their tribesmen, anxious to bask in their reflected glory, so the memory of the Barmakids and their successors were kept alive among the *kuttāb* of Iraq and it was on such sources that al-Ṭabarī, who was

writing in Baghdad during the period when such *wazīrs* as Ibn al-Furāt and ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā enjoyed great power and prestige, drew. To say that al-Ṭabarī is biased in favour of the ʿAbbasids is misleading. He certainly did not want to deny the legitimacy of the ʿAbbasids or to incur the wrath of the ruling dynasty, but the Baghdad in which he wrote permitted a great variety of intellectual activity to take place and his was not a court chronicle, relying on government funds or gifts from the caliph to ensure the author's livelihood. On the contrary, he made sure of his economic independence by working as a scribe, copying forty pages of manuscript a day, and living on the revenues of the family estates in his native Ṭabaristān. It was rather that his information for the early ʿAbbasid period reflected a certain point of view, bureaucratic, metropolitan and keenly interested in the affairs of Iraq. Some of his history too seems to have been based on official government records of the appointment of governors and other detailed administrative matters. The compilers on whom he relied for the Umayyad sections of the *Ta'rīkh* were more varied in occupation, geographical distribution and in the range of their contacts than his ʿAbbasid sources. This perhaps accounts for a certain myopia in al-Ṭabarī's vision which allows little time for events away from Iraq and the capital. None the less, his achievement remains astonishing and it is impossible to read even the later stages of his chronicle without being full of admiration for his care and understanding.

While the old sources dry up or change their character, the coming of the ʿAbbasids also witnessed the development of new types of history. In one case this was a direct product of the ʿAbbasid movement itself. The anonymous *Akhbār al-ʿAbbās*, ed. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz al-Dūrī, Beirut 1972, was written to commemorate the various stages by which the ʿAbbasid *daʿwa* had emerged from obscurity to take over the Muslim world and to record the names of those who had served it. The material in it is detailed and allows us some insight into the processes by which the ʿAbbasids came to power. Other new writing developed out of the bureaucratic tradition; the most famous of these is the *Kitāb al-wuzarā'* (Book of *wazīrs*) of Muḥammad b. ʿAbdūs al-Jahshiyārī (d. 331/942), eds Muṣṭafā al-Sayqa *et al.*, Cairo 1938. Written at a time when the position of the *kuttāb* was being undermined by the decay of the Iraqi economy and the growing threat of military takeover of the ʿAbbasid state, at Jahshiyārī's work is a monument to the bureaucratic tradition. It is not clear how long the original was or was intended to be; the surviving sections deal with the ʿAbbasid *wazīrs* up until the time of al-Ma'mūn (d. 218/833). The tradition of writing biographies of the *kuttāb* was continued by Hilāl al-Ṣābī (d. 448/1056), but only a fragment of his *Ta'rīkh al-wuzarā'*, covering the early years of the reign of

the Caliph al-Muqtadir, has survived, ed. H. Amedroz, London 1904; ed. ʿAbd al-Sattār Farrāj, Cairo 1958. Besides biographical information, this work also contains the text of documents, especially valuable for the financial history of the caliphate. Court ceremonial is dealt with in another work of Hilāl's, the *Rusūm dār al-khilāfa* (Customs of the caliph's palace) ed. Mīkhā'īl ʿAwwād, Baghdad 1964; trs Elie A. Salem, Beirut 1977.

The bureaucratic milieu is reflected in the development of a tradition of administrative geography which detailed the various provinces, the routes between different centres and, frequently, the amount of tax revenue (*kharāj*) which could be expected from each one. The earliest of these to survive is *Kitāb al-masālik wa'l-mamālik* of ʿUbayd Allāh b. Khurdādhbih, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1889, of which the first edition was probably produced in 232/846 although it was subsequently revised by the author. This was followed in about 276/889–90 by the *Kitāb al-buldān* of al-Yaʿqūbī, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1892, already mentioned for his History. Yaʿqūbī's *Buldān* is especially important as the main primary source for the design and population of the great ʿAbbasid capitals of Baghdad and Sāmarrā. The bare bones of administrative geography were increasingly used as a framework for items of curious or entertaining information which can often be of great use to the historian; the most notable of the early geographers in this respect was Ibn al-Faqīh al-Hamadhānī whose *Kitab al-buldān* was completed around 290/903. It survives in an abbreviated form, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1885, which still, however, contains useful historical information on such subjects as the history of Ṭabaristān and the origins of the Barmakids. More fanciful and less practical for the historian (though not the student of imaginative literature) is the *Kitāb al-aʿlāq al-nafīsa* (The Book of precious objects) of Aḥmad b. Rusta which dates from around 290/903, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1892. Perhaps the most useful of all the geographical works of the period is the *Kitāb al-kharāj* (Book of taxes) of Qudāma b. Jaʿfar (d. 337/948), partial ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1889, full ed. Muḥammad Ḥusayn al-Zubaydī, Baghdad 1981, which is the most important single source for the taxation of various areas of the caliphate.

Part of Qudāma's work, along with the *Kitāb al-kharāj* of Yaḥya b. Ādam (d. 203/818) and the *Kitāb al-kharāj* of the *qāḍī* Abū Yūsuf Yaʿqūb b. Ibrāhīm al-Anṣārī (d. 182/798) have been translated into English with introductions and notes by A. Ben Shemesh, 3 vols, Leiden 1967–9. All three authors are concerned with the legal basis of taxation and incorporate many Traditions of the Prophet and the early caliphs. Abū Yūsuf, and to a lesser extent Qudāma, also deal with more practical

aspects of tax-gathering. Also important for the law of taxation and the history of coinage is the *Kitāb al-amwāl* of Abū ʿUbayd b. Sallām (d. 224/838) ed. Muḥammad Khalīl Harrās, Beirut 1988.

Both the histories of the *wazīrs* and the economic geographies show how much the development of Arabic culture owed to the bureaucratic élite which was attached to the ʿAbbasid court. The disintegration of the court in the fourth/tenth century meant the loss of this sort of cultural along with political unity but, by way of compensation, it did allow the development of regional centres which produced their own historiographical tradition. Despite its misfortunes, however, Baghdad continued to be surprisingly vital as a centre of intellectual activity and this is reflected as much in the writing of history as in any other sphere.

The Successors of al-Ṭabarī, and the Reichschronographie

The last entry in al-Ṭabarī's *Taʾrīkh* concerns an attack on the *ḥajj* by the supporters of the Qarāmiṭa in 302/915. The finish of this great work left a major gap in Islamic historiography but the annalistic tradition continued to flourish and a variety of authors emerged to fill the gap which the ending of the great man's work had caused. Some of these were avowedly continuations of al-Ṭabarī, notably the *Ṣilat taʾrīkh al-Ṭabarī* of the Spanish Muslim ʿArīb b. Saʿd al-Qurṭubī (d. *c.* 365/975), ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1897, which in fact starts some years earlier in 291/903 and continues until 320/932. Despite his distance from the scene of events, ʿArīb was astonishingly well informed about the affairs of the ʿAbbasids and his work is a major contribution to the understanding of the very well-documented crisis-ridden reign of the Caliph al-Muqtadir (295–320/908–32).

The most lasting continuation of al-Ṭabarī, however, is contained in the work of five authors whose chronicles seem to have been among the most impressive in the entire corpus of Arabic historical writing. This chronicle tradition was described by C. H. Becker as the *Reichschronographie*, because the centre of its interest lay in the caliphal capital of Baghdad. Four of these authors came from a family of Sabians, that is to say pagans from Ḥarrān in the northern Jazīra, who served successive caliphs as physicians. They were therefore in an excellent position to observe events without themselves being involved. The first member of the family to write history was Thābit b. Qurra (d. 288/901) who was asked by the Caliph al-Muʿtaḍid (279–89/892–902) to write an official history of his reign. This was a new and original departure in Islamic historiography. Hitherto historians had worked in religious or bureaucratic circles but they do not seem to have enjoyed

direct government patronage for their work. This work (now lost) seems to have begun the tradition of historical writing in the family.

Thābit's grandson, Thābit b. Sinān, continued the work of al-Ṭabarī until his death (probably 363/974) when it was continued in great detail by his relative Hilāl b. al-Muḥassin al-Ṣābī until his own death in 448/1056 when the chronicle, by now something of a family business, was continued by his son, Ghars al-Niʿma Muḥammad. Of this great work, only a fragment of Hilāl's writing covering the years 389–93/999–1003 survives in its original form, ed. with English trans. H. Amedroz and D. S. Margoliouth, *The eclipse of the Abbasid caliphate*, Oxford 1921, III, 334–460; trans. VI, 359–489, and this shows it to have been an extremely rich source, virtually an annotated diary of the political and social events in Baghdad. In this it differs greatly from earlier Islamic writing since it seems to be a meticulous record of contemporary events rather than a reconstruction of the past by means of Traditions and *akhbār*. The loss of this chronicle is not entirely surprising; its vast length must have made copying it extremely expensive and time-consuming and it is possible that it was among the works destroyed when the Mongols sacked Baghdad in 656/1258.

The chronicle survived for long enough to be, either directly or at second hand, the foundation of later accounts of the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries. Notable among these are the *Kāmil fī'l-ta'rīkh* of Ibn al-Athīr, ed. C. J. Tornberg, 14 vols, Leiden 1851–76, and the *Mir'at al-zamān* of Sibṭ Ibn al-Jawzī (d. 654/1256), of which the section dealing with the years 345–447 (956–1055) was edited by Jalāl Jamīl al-Hamawundi (Baghdad 1990). Ibn al-Qalānisī, the great twelfth-century chronicler of Damascus, also used Hilāl's work and his own writing is modestly entitled "Continuation (*dhayl*) of the History of Hilāl al-Ṣābī". In this way the shadow of the Sabian chronicle is visible in most later accounts of the period; it is extremely frustrating not to have more of the substance.

The closest we can come to the work of Thābit b. Sinān is through the *Tajārib al-umam* of Abū ʿAlī Miskawayh (d. 421/1030), ed. H. Amedroz and D. S. Margoliouth, *Eclipse*, I–II, trans. III–IV. Miskawayh's work is a history of Islam down to 369/980 when he was a young man in the service of the Buyid bureaucracy. The early sections are an edition of al-Ṭabarī with many of the *isnāds* and alternative versions omitted, and it is only after the end of al-Ṭabarī's chronicle that his work becomes an original source of great importance. His account of the fourth/tenth century seems to be based on Thābit b. Sinān's chronicle with the addition of other information and accounts which seemed relevant. As such it is by far the most important source for the history of the ʿAbbasids

and Buyids in this period as well as for the bedouin dynasties like the ʿUqaylids and Mazyadids. But there is more to Miskawayh's work than useful historical facts. He imposes on his material a strong ethical and philosophical point of view. It is very much a secular, bureaucratic view of history and the author, cautious, humane, tolerant and sympathetic, represents the best of the ideals of the *kuttāb* class. His heroes are the great administrators, ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā, "the good *wazīr*", Muʿizz al-Dawla's *wazīr* al-Muhallabī, Rukn al-Dawla's *wazīr* Ibn al-ʿAmīd the Elder and above all the Buyid prince ʿAḍud al-Dawla, the ideal bureaucrat-king. The villains are those who he felt had betrayed the traditions of the *kuttāb*, Bakhtiyār's *wazīr* Ibn Baqiyya and the younger Ibn al-ʿAmīd. His vision goes beyond personalities, however, and his work is as much a treatise on good government as it is a historical record. He constantly laments the passing of the old bureaucratic traditions, and Ibn Muqla, the ʿAbbasid *wazīr* and calligrapher, brutally tortured to death in 328/940, becomes a tragic figure in his account. He is also very critical of administrative abuse, the unrestricted granting of *iqṭāʿs* for example. With his vision of good government and high ideals of the responsibility of rulers, Miskawayh's work rises above the level of simple annals and distinguishes him, along with Ibn Khaldūn, as a real philosopher of history.

The work of Miskawayh was continued by Abū Shūjāʿ al-Rūdhrawārī, a *wazīr* of the Seljuks, but his work, eds H. Amedroz and D. S. Margoliouth, *Eclipse*, III; trans. VI, although extremely useful, has little of the depth of his great predecessor and it is considerably briefer and more limited in scope. This continuation in turn ends in 393/1003 where the manuscript breaks off. Thereafter we are dependent on later compilers like Ibn al-Athīr and Sibṭ Ibn al-Jawzī working from Hilāl b. al-Muḥassin's lost chronicle and other sources. We are fairly well informed about the main outlines of the history of Iraq and Baghdad in the first half of the fifth/eleventh century but our information lacks the depth and interest of the fourth/tenth-century material.

In addition to the great chronicles, there are a number of other historical works which emanate from Baghdad circles during this period. Among these is the *Kitāb al-awrāq* of the courtier Abū Bakr al-Ṣūlī (d. 335/946), partially published. The section on on the caliphs from al-Wāthiq to al-Muhtadī (227–56/842–70) has been edited by A. B. Khalidov, St Petersburg 1998 and the account of al-Rāḍī and al-Muttaqī (322–33/934–44), as *Akhbār al-Rāḍī wa'l-Muttaqī*, ed. J. Heyworth-Dunne, Cairo 1935; French trans. M. Canard, 2 vols, Algiers 1946, 1950. A complete edition remains a major desideratum. It is essentially a picture of life at the caliphs' court during the reigns of al-Rāḍī and

al-Muttaqī. It is entertaining, gossipy and much concerned with poetry and other literary themes. At the same time it is entirely devoid of the political understanding we find in Miskawayh. A typical example of this concerns the appointment of Ibn Rā'iq as *amīr al-umarā'* in 324/936; as Miskawayh (and probably Thābit b. Sinān before him) saw, this represented the real end of the political power of the ʿAbbasid family. For al-Ṣūlī, however, it is simply another incident in court life, the same as the appointment of any other official. If the ʿAbbasid caliphs were surrounded by courtiers with al-Ṣūlī's narrowness of vision and essentially frivolous attitudes, it is not, perhaps, surprising that they lost their political power.

From a rather different milieu come the anecdotes of the *qāḍī* Abū ʿAlī al-Tanūkhī (d. 384/995). He belonged to the court circle of ʿAḍud al-Dawla and may easily have met Miskawayh there but the perspectives of the two men were very different. Al-Tanūkhī composed two collections of anecdotes, the *Nishwār al-muḥāḍara*, ed. with English trans. D. S. Margoliouth, 2 vols, London 1922, and the *Faraj ba'd al-shidda*, ed. ʿAbbūd al-Shālijī, 5 vols, Beirut 1971–3. These are essentially anecdotes of social life mostly based on the theme of escapes from difficult situations and impending disasters. They are important for social history as well as giving some insight into the personalities of prominent political figures. While Miskawayh's contacts and outlook are those of a secular administrator, al-Tanūkhī's are those of a religious scholar and *qāḍī*; the distinction even applies to their literary style: al-Tanūkhī is careful to provide his information with *isnāds* in the classical style while Miskawayh only names his sources when it seems relevant.

"Official" historiography of the Buyids seems to be represented by the *Kitāb al-tājī* of yet another member of the Ṣābī family, Ibrāhīm b. Hilāl, grandfather of the chronicler Hilāl b. al-Muḥassin. This work only survives in an epitome made in the Yemen in the seventh/thirteenth century, ed. with English trans., M. S. Khan, Karachi 1995. Ibrāhīm was a *kātib* in the service of the unfortunate Buyid Bakhtiyār, and when his master was dispossessed and killed by ʿAḍud al-Dawla in 367/978 he was in disgrace and the writing of the *Kitāb al-tājī* may have been the price for being restored to favour. It seems to have been a sustained attempt at propaganda on behalf of the Buyid family with a determination to show that they could claim descent from the Sasanid prince and legendary hero, Bahrām Gūr. The material which survives in the epitome mostly concerns the activities of the ʿAlids in Ṭabaristān at the time of the rise of the Buyid dynasty since it was this, rather than details of the military and political history of the Buyids themselves, which interested the compiler.

The Buyid period also saw the flourishing of the art of official letter writing and three important collections survive, those of the *Ṣāḥib* Ibn ʿAbbād (d. 385/995), eds ʿAbd al-Wahhāb ʿAzzam and Shawqī Ḍayf, Cairo 1947, Ibrāhīm b. Hilāl al-Ṣābī, partial ed. Shakīb Arslān, Baʿabda 1898, mentioned above, and ʿAbd al-Azīz b. Yūsuf al-Shīrāzī (d. 388/998), which has not been edited. The *Ṣāḥib* was *wazīr* to the Buyid rulers of al-Jibāl and central Iran Mu'ayyid al-Dawla and Fakhr al-Dawla; Ibrāhīm served Bakhtiyār and then ʿAḍud al-Dawla and al-Shīrāzī succeeded Ibrāhīm in charge of the chancery of ʿAḍud al-Dawla. These three figures then were contemporaries and sometimes corresponded with each other. Their letter collections concern all sorts of diplomatic and political events and give considerable insight into the politics of the time as well as throwing light on subjects not mentioned by the chronicles; the correspondence of Ibn ʿAbbād, for example, contains the patent for the appointment of the local governor of Qazvīn which gives us information available nowhere else about the government of this small but important city. In the main, however, this correspondence has not been sufficiently utilized by historians.

The period which followed the disintegration of the caliphate produced a new generation of geographers. While in some cases they still retained the framework of the administrative geographies of the previous generation, they tend to be much fuller and in many cases to include first-hand personal observations which make them extremely useful for the general historian. The most useful authors are Ibn Ḥawqal (along with the closely related text of al-Iṣṭakhrī) and al-Muqaddasī. Ibn Ḥawqal, whose *Kitāb ṣūrat al-arḍ*, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1873; ed. J. Kramers, Leiden 1938–9; French trans. J. Kramers and G. Wiet, 2 vols, Paris 1964, was finished in about 378/988, may have been a Fatimid agent. He gives vivid and useful accounts of the areas through which he passed and is especially useful in his comments. He gives us a full, and none too optimistic, picture of the Jazīra under Hamdanid rule, including details of the otherwise entirely obscure taxation system, and he gives us a full account of the government system of the Qarāmiṭa in Baḥrayn which is a useful corrective to the generally negative reports we receive about these people from other sources. His contemporary al-Muqaddasī, whose *Aḥsan al-taqāsim*, ed. M. J. de Goeje, Leiden 1906, English trans., B. Collins, Reading 2001 was composed around 380/990, came from Jerusalem and was a notable local patriot, but he provides fresh and interesting information based on personal observation of many areas of the Muslim world. With their enquiring minds, their originality and the simple elegance of their Arabic prose both these authors are typical of the best of the writing of this period.

In the next century, travel writing is represented by the *Safar nāma* of Nāṣir-i Khusrau (394–*c.* 465/1003–4/1072), ed. with English trans., by W. M. Thackston. His work is a travel diary rather than a work of geography. He himself came from eastern Iran and wrote in Persian but he was a convert to Ismaʿilism and came west to visit the Fatimid court. He gives a glowing description of the wealth and magnificence of Cairo but also gives more general information about the condition and economy of the country he passed through. Perhaps the most striking feature of this is the contrasts he draws between the prosperity of the towns of Egypt and coastal Syria and the poverty of much of the eastern Islamic world. He is an important source for the increased commercial activity of the Syrian ports at the time.

Before leaving the field of general history, attention should be drawn to two late compilations which are essential research tools for anyone seeking to understand the early Islamic period. The first is the great geographical dictionary, the *Muʿjam al-buldān* of Yaʿqūb b. ʿAbd Allāh al-Yāqūt al-Ḥamawī (d. 626/1229), ed. F. Wüstenfeld, 6 vols, Leipzig 1866–73. This work is a mine of information, partly because it identifies most places whose names appear in the classical Arab sources and partly because it incorporates extracts from geographers whose original work is lost. The second compilation is the *Wafayāt al-aʿyān*, a biographical dictionary by Ibn Khallikān (d. 681/1282), ed. F. Wüstenfeld, 4 vols, Göttingen 1835–50; ed. M. M. Abd al-Hamid, 6 vols, Cairo 1948; English trans. Wm. McGuckin de Slane, 4 vols, Paris and London 1842–71. Like al-Yāqūt's work, Ibn Khallikān's dictionary contains material from sources now lost. While it is not of great importance for the Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid period, it is extremely useful for the fourth/tenth and fifth/eleventh centuries.

Local Histories

The sources described so far belong to what might be described as the metropolitan, in effect, Iraqi school of writing, connected either with the caliphal court and bureaucracy or with religious circles in Iraq. With the growing rate of conversion, and the increasing literacy in Arabic which resulted from it, there developed local schools of historical writing, moved by the desire to establish their home towns as centres of political importance and religious learning. Among the oldest of these is the *Taʾrīkh al-Mawṣil* (History of Mosul) of Abū Zakariyyā al-Azdī (d. 334/945), the surviving section of which has been edited by ʿAlī Ḥabība, Cairo 1968, and covers the years 101–224/719–839. It is an extremely full and mature piece of historical writing, skilfully interweaving

local history with events from the wider context of the Islamic world. It is lively, full of first-hand accounts quoted verbatim and contains many precious details about life in Mosul and its countryside. After al-Azdī the Mosul tradition seems to have been maintained by ʿAlī b. Muḥammad al-Shimshāṭī. Al-Shimshāṭī was a courtier and poet at the court of Abū Taghlib, the last Hamdanid ruler of Mosul, and he seems to have continued in the service of their successors the ʿUqaylids for he composed a history of Mosul which he dedicated to Qirwāsh b. al-Muqallad al-ʿUqaylī (391–442/1001–50). Unfortunately, his work only survives in fragments incorporated by later writers – a sad loss because we are very badly informed about Mosul in this period.

From the little town of Mayyāfāriqīn, on the southern fringes of the Anatolian uplands, we have the *Taʾrīkh Mayyāfāriqīn* of the local historian, Ibn al-Fāriqī (d. 572/1176). The early sections of his work *Taʾrīkh al-Fāriqī*, ed. B. A. ʿAwaḍ, Cairo 1959, are the fullest source for the Marwanid dynasty and, like the best local histories, it contains much incidental topographical and social history, which makes it a precious source not only for the doings of the dynasts but also for urban life and culture.

Damascus produced a vast biographical dictionary, the *Taʾrikh madīnat Dimashq* by Ibn ʿAsākir who died in 571/1175, ed. ʿUmar al-Amrawī, 80 vols, Beirut 1995–8. This contains an enormous range of historical traditions about people from the Prophet down to the author's own time who had some connection with Damascus. It incorporates material from earlier, now lost sources which makes it especially valuable. Only recently published in full, it is a source which has yet to be fully exploited by historians. For a useful discussion of the importance of this text for early Islamic history, see J. E. Lindsay (ed.), *Ibn ʿAsakir and Early Islamic History*, Princeton: Darwin Press, 2002.

Aleppo also produced a continuing school of local history which reached its climax in the works of Kamāl al-Dīn Ibn al-ʿAdīm (d. 660/1262) who incorporated earlier sources now lost. Ibn al-ʿAdīm left two works; the larger of these is a biographical dictionary, the *Bughyat al-ṭalab fī taʾrīkh Ḥalab*, ed. Suhayl Zakkār, 12 vols, Damascus 1988, which begins with a geographical introduction and then continues with the biographies of famous and worthy people connected with Aleppo and northern Syria. Much shorter is his chronological history of Aleppo, the *Zubdat al-ḥalab*, which gives an outline history of the city from the coming of Islam to 641/1243. Like the other great compilers of the seventh/thirteenth century, Ibn al-Athīr and Sibṭ Ibn al-Jawzī, Ibn al-ʿAdīm had access to a wealth of records which are now lost. His chronology of Aleppo under the Umayyads and ʿAbbasids, although brief, is still

valuable and the author fills out his text as it gets nearer his own time. His discussion of the Mirdasids and the troubled fifth/eleventh century in Aleppo is an essential source.

The Historians of Egypt

From early Islamic times Egypt developed a parallel but separate historical tradition from the metropolitan Iraqi one. This was slower to mature; not until the fourth/tenth century with the work of al-Kindī is there a significant local annalist; al-Kindī's work is very competent and accurate, if a little dull and lacking the anecdotal detail which makes al-Azdī of Mosul so interesting. Thereafter, however, the tradition matures rapidly; the Fatimid period was one of great historical writing, much of it now lost, and the tradition culminates in the great chroniclers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries, al-Maqrīzī, Abū'l-Maḥāsin Ibn Taghrī Bardī and al-Suyūṭī.

Apart from the account of the Muslim conquest of Egypt given by Ibn ʿAbd al-Ḥakam (d. 257/871), in his *Futūḥ Miṣr*, ed. C. Torrey, New Haven 1922, the main sources for the history of pre-Fatimid Egypt are the two parallel works of Muḥammad b. Yūsuf al-Kindī (d. 350/961), *Kitāb al-wulāt* (Book of governors) and *Kitāb al-quḍāt* (Book of judges). These survive in the same British Museum manuscript and have been edited in the same volume by R. Guest, Gibb Memorial Series (GMS), XIX, London 1912, repr. 1964. Al-Kindī came from an old-established Arab family in Egypt and seems to have access to a wealth of local tradition and government records in the country; his work is not in any way dependent on the Iraqi historians like al-Ṭabarī and he provides a useful check on them. He does not provide much in the way of social history or of topographical detail but he is very strong on basic chronology and the outline of political events, and his work is a worthy beginning to the great tradition of historical writing in Egypt. The Book of governors goes up to 334/946 while the Book of judges stops earlier in 246/861.

The period from the end of al-Kindī's chronicle to the death of the first Fatimid caliph of Egypt al-Muʿizz in 365/975 was covered in the now entirely lost chronicle of al-Ḥasan b. Zūlāq al-Laythī (d. 385/997). He wrote a history which included full biographies of both the Ikhshidid Muḥammad b. Ṭughj and the Fatimid Caliph al-Muʿizz. This work forms the basis of the accounts of this period in later annals like the work of al-Maqrīzī (on which see below, p. 370) and the *Nujūm al-zahira* of Ibn Taghrī Bardī, ed. Cairo, 1963–72, 16 vols) who explicitly acknowledges Ibn Zūlāq and quotes from him direct. Thereafter, the

history of Fatimid Egypt is based on more complex sources. As with contemporary Iraq, the historiography of this period is dominated by the ghost of a lost chronicle, in this case the work of Muḥammad b. ʿUbayd Allāh al-Musabbiḥī (d. 420/1029) which recounted the history of the Fatimids to 415/1025. Like his younger contemporary Hilāl al-Ṣābī in Iraq, al-Musabbiḥī was close to the centre of events at the Fatimid court, being director of the *Dīwān al-tartīb* (payments office), and wrote a very detailed account of events which is as much an official diary as a work of history. It was a vast work, running apparently to 40 volumes of 26,000 pages. Like Hilāl's also, two years of his work, 414 and 415 (1023–5) have been preserved in the original, so giving us a glimpse of the fullness and richness of the material it contained. The surviving portion has recently been edited from the unique Escorial Manuscript by Ayman Fu'ād Sayyid and T. Bianquis, as vol. XIII in the series *Textes Arabes et études Islamiques* of the Institut Français d'Archéologie Orientale du Caire, Cairo 1978.

Most of our knowledge of the work of al-Musabbiḥī, however, is gained from the later abbreviation of it made by the ninth/fifteenth-century Egyptian historian Aḥmad b. ʿAlī al-Maqrīzī in his history of the Fatimids entitled *Ittiʿāẓ al-ḥunafā'*, ed. Muḥammad Ḥilmī and Jamāl al-Dīn al-Shayyāl, 3 vols, Cairo 1967–73. Al-Maqrīzī, a famous historian in his own right, produced a condensation of the work of al-Musabbiḥī which is greatly superior to epitomes of the work of Hilāl al-Ṣābī which were produced in Iraq and Syria; while we must regret the loss of the original, we can only be grateful to al-Maqrīzī for having preserved so much. His account of the early Fatimids in North Africa and Egypt, as well as digressions on the Qarāmiṭa, are well written and full of interesting information. From the end of al-Musabbiḥī's work in 415/1025 al-Maqrīzī seems to have depended on the chronicle of Muḥammad b. Yūsuf b. Muyassar (d. 677/1258) which was in turn probably based on al-Musabbiḥī and from 415/1025 on a now entirely lost work of the fifth/eleventh century. Ibn Muyassar's work, ed. Ayman Fu'ād Sayyid, *Textes Arabes et études Islamiques*, XVII, Cairo 1981, was necessarily not as full as al-Musabbiḥī's but in the surviving sections, which cover some of the reign of al-Muʿizz and the period of the later Fatimid caliphate 439–553/1047–1158, it is revealed as a full and comprehensive chronicle. Interestingly, we know that al-Maqrīzī knew the work of Ibn Muyassar partly by comparison of his text with the surviving portions of Ibn Muyassar's work and partly because the unique manuscript of it is based on a copy made by al-Maqrīzī himself. This complex annalistic tradition means that we are very well informed about Fatimid politics despite the loss of most of the first-hand sources. Al-Musabbiḥī was probably an

Ismāʿīlī sympathizer but neither Ibn Muyassar nor al-Maqrīzī was. None the less both of them respected the Fatimids as rulers who had brought great prosperity to their country and the accounts they give are not significantly biased against the rulers they must have regarded as heretics. The limitations of this tradition are more geographical than ideological. Attention is concentrated on the activities of the Fatimid court and therefore mostly on Egypt. To get a fuller perspective on Fatimid policy in Palestine and Syria it is necessary to turn to local sources like Ibn al-Qalānisī of Damascus and Ibn al-ʿAdīm of Aleppo.

New Persian Historiography

By the end of the fourth/tenth century there had developed in Iran the beginnings of a Persian-language Muslim historiography, one of whose first achievements was the translation of al-Ṭabarī by Muḥammad al-Balʿamī, which exists in a number of manuscripts, ed. Muḥammad Taqī Bahār, Tehran 1974, French trans. H. Zotenberg, 4 vols, Paris 1867–74. Balʿamī edited al-Ṭabarī's work into a continuous narrative by removing most of the critical apparatus. He also added new material from Iranian sources, notably on the ʿAbbasid revolution and the story of Abū Muslim. For the history covered in this book, however, the Persian sources are not of very great value compared with those in Arabic. The reason for this is largely that the new Persian literature was developed further east at the courts of the Samanids and Ghaznavids while Arabic remained the language of administration and literature in the Buyid-controlled areas of western Iran. Miskawayh, for example, a bureaucrat of Iranian origin, might easily have followed the example of his young contemporary Bayhaqī (d. 470/1077) who wrote his history of the Ghaznavids in Persian (Muḥammad Bayhaqī, *Taʾrīkh-i Bayhaqī*, ed. ʿAlī Fayyād, Mashhad 1971). Miskawayh, however, being firmly within the Buyid sphere, wrote in Arabic. The Persian historical tradition is mostly of use in giving details of areas of Iran which tend to be neglected by the more general historians. Among such works are the anonymous *Taʾrīkh-i Sīstān*, ed. Malik al-Shuʾarā Bahār, Tehran 1935, the *Taʾrīkh-i Ṭabaristān* of Ibn Isfandiyār (d. after 613/1217), ed. ʿAbbās Iqbāl, Tehran 1944; abridged English trans. E. G. Browne, London 1905, which fills in gaps in our knowledge of events in the mountainous areas at the south end of the Caspian Sea, and the *Fārs-nāma* of Ibn al-Balkhī, ed. G. Le Strange and R. Nicholson, GMS, London 1927, which, although written in Seljuk times, is an important source for Fārs under the Buyids. Persian material can also be useful when it preserves, in part, lost Arabic chronicles. Among these are Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar

al-Narshakhī's *History of Bukhara*, English trans. R. Frye, Cambridge, Mass. 1954, which is useful for Transoxania in ʿAbbasid times and the *Ta'rīkh Qumm* of al-Ḥasan b. Muḥammad al-Qummī, which is interesting on taxation and the settlement of members of the ʿAlid family in the Qumm area (where they are still prominent) in the third/ninth century.

Christian Historiography and the Early Islamic Period

Most of the sources mentioned so far, whether in Arabic or Persian, were written by Muslims. There was, however, a strong indigenous Christian historical tradition which, although by no means as elegant, or as full, as the Muslim one, is none the less of value. In one sense it is somewhat artificial to class these non-Muslim sources together since they vary greatly in language, scope and content, from Syriac monastic chronicles written by monks whose acquaintance with the outside world hardly extended beyond the walls of their monasteries to sophisticated Arabic products of courtiers like Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd of Antioch. In the main, the Syriac language works tend to be more concerned with religious affairs and the internal affairs of the Christian community while the Arabic ones are more secular in tone and pay more attention to political history. There was no tradition of historical writing in Greek in Muslim lands, but some Byzantine authors are of importance.

There are a number of Christian sources which date from the period of the Islamic conquests and throw some light on them. Many of the Syriac sources have been collected and translated in A. Palmer, *The Seventh Century in the West-Syrian Chronicles*. From Egypt we have the *Chronicle* of the Copt John of Nikiou which survives only in an Ethiopic version, ed. Zotenberg, Jean de Nikiou, *Chronique*, in *Notices et extraits des MSS. de la Bibliothèque Nationale*, Paris 1883; English trans. R. H. Charles, 1916, an important source for the Arab conquest of Egypt. Another contemporary source, *The Armenian History attributed to Sebeos* has been translated by R. W. Thomson, Liverpool, 1999. The only Greek account, that of Theophanes, ed. De Boor, Berlin 1883–5; English trans. *The Chronicle of Theophanes* by C. Mango and R. Scott, was written almost two centuries after the event and certainly depends not on an independent Greek tradition but on Arabic or Syriac ones.

For the early ʿAbbasid period, there is an important Syriac Monophysite history which used to be known as the Chronicle of the Pseudo-Dionysius of Tell-Mahré, but is now known as the Chronicle of Zuqnīn after the monastery in which it was composed. This can now be consulted in the translation by A. Harrak, Toronto, 1999. It gives a vivid and

sometimes harrowing picture of rural life in the Jazīra and campaigns on the Byzantine frontier up to 157/774. It is of considerable interest for the information it gives on the practical effects of ʿAbbasid taxation on a rural community; the picture painted is not an optimistic one. Thereafter the Syriac tradition has a large gap which is only filled by the Chronicle of Michael the Syrian (who died in 595/1199), ed. with French trans. by J.-B. Chabot, 3 vols, Paris 1899–1910. While much of this is concerned with theological controversy and church affairs, the section dealing with the civil wars after the death of Hārūn al-Rashīd (193/809) seems to be based on the real chronicle of Dionysius of Tell-Mahré and is a historical source of considerable importance for the period. After the mid-third/ninth century, Michael's account becomes very thin, mostly concerned with church affairs, and not until the coming of the Seljuks does he again provide useful evidence.

Christian writing in Syria and the Jazīra is also represented by the Arabic *Kitāb al-ʿunwān* of Agapius (Maḥbūb) of Manbij, ed. with French trans. by A. Vasiliev in *Patrologia orientalis*, VIII, Paris 1911, 399–550, which covers Islamic history to around 158/775 and is especially good on the early ʿAbbasid period, describing the ʿAbbasid revolution and the subsequent disturbances from a non-Muslim viewpoint.

While the Christian historical tradition in Syria was intermittent, historical writing among the Christians of Egypt continued. In Egypt the ancient liturgical language of Coptic ceased to be used for historical work, unlike the Syriac of the Jacobite Christians which continued to be an important literary language for that community down to the time of Bar Hebraeus at the end of the seventh/thirteenth century. In Egypt Christians, both Monophysite (Coptic) and Diophysite (Melchite or Greek Orthodox) wrote in Arabic. Indeed it is an indication of the spread of the language, even in the Christian communities, that the two leading Christian writers of the fourth/tenth century, Saʿīd b. Biṭrīq and Severus b. al-Muqaffaʿ, should have chosen to express themselves in Arabic.

The Coptic tradition was represented by the *History of the Patriarchs of Alexandria*, ed. and trans. B. Evetts in *Patrologia Orientalis* I, 99–215; V, 1–216; X, 357–553); ed. also C. F. Seybold, *CSCO Scriptores Arabici* vols 8–9, Leiden 1962, a series of lives first collected by Severus b. al-Muqaffaʿ (fl. 955–87) and continued after his death by Michael, bishop of Tinnīs from 886 to 1046, and then others down to the thirteenth century. Severus himself was a *kātib* by the name of Abū Bishr before he became a monk with the name of Sāwīrus (Severus) and bishop of Ashmūnayn. He treats the history of the patriarchs by reigns and is essentially concerned with ecclesiastical history, touching on

secular affairs only when they impinged on the well-being of the church but providing an interesting light on the lives of non-élite members of society.

The Greek Orthodox tradition begins with the *Ta'rīkh* (also known as the *Naẓm al-Jawhar*) of Saʿīd b. Biṭrīq, ed. L. Cheikho, Leipzig 1906–9. He was a doctor who took the name of Eutychius when he entered the church where he became patriarch of Alexandria from 933 to 940. Like his Melchite (Orthodox) contemporary, Agapius of Manbij, Eutychius was more concerned with secular history than the Monophysites of Syria or Egypt. His chronicle deals with history from the creation of the world until his own time. The information on Muslim politics is abbreviated from Muslim accounts and presents little original material, but the work was of importance in being one of the first accounts of the Muslim world available in the West, being translated into Latin during the seventeenth century by Edward Pocooke, the first professor of Arabic at Oxford, as *Contextio Gemmarum, sive Eutychii Patriarchae Alexandrini Annales* 2 vols, Oxford, 1658–9 and it was used by, among others, Edward Gibbon in his account of the early Muslim state.

Saʿīd's work was continued by the most accomplished of the Christian Arabic historians, Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd, who may have been a relative of his. Like Thābit b. Sinān in Iraq and Saʿīd himself, Yaḥyā was a physician of some importance of the Fatimid court, but unlike Saʿīd, he never entered the church. He was probably born around 370/980 and was thus a fairly young man when, in 405/1014–15 he, like many other Christians, was obliged to leave Egypt because of the increasingly hostile behaviour of the Caliph al-Ḥākim. He went to settle in Antioch which the Byzantines had captured from the Muslims just over thirty years previously and where his Melkite faith would cause no problems. Antioch at this time must have been a very cosmopolitan city where Greeks and Arabs rubbed shoulders and it was here that he lived until his death in about 458/1066. His *Ta'rīkh*, ed. ʿUmar ʿAbd al-Salām Tadmurī, Tripoli (Lebanon) 1990, takes over where Eutychius left off and the surviving portions go up to 425/1034, but originally it seems to have continued beyond that date. Yaḥyā is an important primary source for the reign of al-Ḥākim, for events in Syria in Hamdanid times and later, and for Arab–Byzantine relations. He breaks away from the strictly annalistic formula used by most of his Muslim contemporaries and his approach is more thematic and discursive. Much of what he wrote was based on personal experience, especially the account of al-Ḥākim, but he also had access to a number of other Arabic sources, notably the *Reichschronographie* tradition in the work of Thābit b. Sinān, the work of al-Musabbiḥī, whom he must have known personally. Yaḥyā's career

and writing illustrate the best of the historiographical culture of the period, with his access to a wide variety of written sources and his skill at integrating them with his own experience.

The Archaeological Evidence for Early Islamic History

The archaeological evidence for early Islamic history is scattered and sometimes difficult to use but can be of great value. Much of the literature concentrates on individual buildings and structures and these have been tended to be seen in isolation, and studied as art-historical documents rather than as evidence for political or social history. None the less, more material is coming to light and the data can no longer be ignored by the historian. An attempt will be made here to deal with the most important sites and publications.

Until recently it was generally believed that there was little if any archaeological evidence for the early history of Islam to be found in the Hijaz and certainly the mosques at Mecca and Medina have been so thoroughly rebuilt as to give little idea of their original form. However, the picture has been changed by the excavation of two small urban settlements of the pre- and early Islamic period, Qaryat al-Fāw and al-Rabadha, which have revealed a surprisingly developed settled culture in the area. The Umayyads have left the two outstanding examples of religious architecture, the Dome of the Rock in Jerusalem, built by the Caliph ʿAbd al-Malik (65–86/685–705) and the Great Mosque in Damascus built by his son and successor al-Walīd (86–96/905–15). In addition to these there are several lesser mosques from the period of which traces remain or have been discovered, notably in Aleppo, Baʿalbak and at Amman, where the Umayyad mosque, sadly demolished in the 1920s, is known from photographs.

Along with the mosques, there are a number of palaces (*quṣūr*) dating from the Umayyad period which give the best idea of secular building of the period. These palaces fall into three distinct groups: urban centres of government, agricultural estates and desert palaces.

All traces of the Umayyad palace at Damascus have disappeared, although we know from literary descriptions that it was to be found immediately to the south of the mosque. An Umayyad urban palace in Jerusalem has been excavated but not fully published; this lies immediately to the south of al-Aqsā mosque, adjoining the outside wall of the Ḥarām al-Sharīf, and both because of its size and is position by the mosque, we can probably identify this with the palace of the local governor. A more fully documented example comes from Amman where the Umayyad palace was built into the remains of a Roman structure on the citadel hill.

Besides extensive remains of courts and living accommodation, there is also a magnificent audience chamber which survives almost to roof height.

Agricultural estates seem to be represented by at least four buildings: Khirbat al-Mafjar in the Jordan valley near Jericho, Khirbat al-Minya by the Sea of Galilee, Qaṣr al-Ḥayr al-Sharqī and Qaṣr al-Ḥayr al-Gharbī, both in the Palmyrena. Mafjar and Minya are in low-lying and extremely fertile areas and it is likely that they were built for members of the Umayyad family, both as country villas and as agricultural centres. It is argued elsewhere in this book that much of the revenue of the Umayyad government of Syria came from the ownership of estates rather than from taxation, and the existence of such buildings would seem to support this. From recent excavations it would seem that Qaṣr al-Ḥayr al-Sharqī, described in a now lost inscription by the rather grandiose title of *madīna* or city, was an agricultural settlement and staging post for caravans in an area where no settled habitation exists. It may be, too, that the small, beautifully planned and built city of ʿAnjar in the Biqāʿ valley in the Lebanon was also an agricultural centre but as yet we know little about the history and economy of this site.

The desert palaces are perhaps the most puzzling of these groups of buildings. They constitute a group of buildings in widely differing architectural styles, all of which lie in Jordan or southern Syria in the steppe land to the east of the limits of settled agriculture; some like Qaṣr al-Hallābāt are adaptations of Roman frontier forts, while others like the nearby Mshatta seem to owe more to Mesopotamian models. Others again, like the famous Quṣayr ʿAmra with its recently restored paintings, seem to be essentially bath-houses. What we can learn about the Umayyad state from these elegant ruins is problematic. While it is natural to attribute them to members of the ruling dynasty, at least some of them may have been built by chiefs of the great Yamanite tribes who supported the Umayyad caliphate in the late first/seventh century. They certainly demonstrate that the bedouin tribes and relations with the tribes were of vital importance to anyone who wished to carry weight in Umayyad politics. For these palaces were not purely for escapism and avoiding the plagues which decimated the Syrian towns. Like eighteenth-century English country houses, they were centres of power and influence where great men went to demonstrate their wealth and hospitality to those on whose support they depended. The palaces also tell us more, especially when contrasted with those of their ʿAbbasid successors; they speak of a mobile court in which most people continued to live in tents, and a court which had developed little of the pomp and remoteness that characterized their successors. In this way the archaeology serves to confirm and expand the impression of the literary sources. But more

work needs to be done and it will be many years before the palaces as a source of evidence can be said to have yielded up all their secrets.

ʿAbbasid archaeology offers evidence of a different kind. The ʿAbbasid court seems to have been more static and urban than the Umayyad and it is to the cities that we look for evidence of their activities. Of early ʿAbbasid Baghdad nothing remains and the site is now so built over that archaeology is unlikely to tell us more. Sāmarrā, however, is a different story. Here the great ruin-field stretches for miles outside the fairly small modern town, and palaces and mosques lie dotted among the ruins on both sides of the Tigris. Even the mapping of this huge site, whose outlines are clearly visible from aerial photographs, is still not finished and excavation has been very limited. But the vast extent of the built area alone, gives substance to chronicle accounts which might otherwise seem to be vastly exaggerated. While much survives in Sāmarrā, other Iraqi towns have produced much less. The site of ancient Baṣra has hardly been investigated, although it lies beyond the built-up area of the modern city. At Kūfa, the government house, the *Dār al-Imāra*, which lies next to the mosque where ʿAlī was assassinated, has been excavated and seems to date from late Umayyad and early ʿAbbasid times. There have also been some excavations at Wāsiṭ, revealing among other things, the plan of the great mosque. The ʿAbbasids also produced one desert palace, the great structure at al-Ukhayḍir, probably built for the exiled prince ʿĪsā b. Mūsā. Its vast extent compared with the Umayyad buildings shows clearly the different scale of ʿAbbasid court life. But the contrast does not stop there; for the builders of the Umayyad palaces, the desert was a place in which to exercise power and influence, for the ʿAbbasids it was only a place of retreat and exile.

The most important work in Iraq from the Islamic historian's point of view, is not based in the cities at all; but in the countryside. R. McC. Adams worked in the Diyālā valley and in *The land behind Baghdad* he explored the changing patterns of settlement in the area between Sumerian times and the Ottoman period. He did this, not by excavation, since this would have been impractical over so wide an area, but by surface reconnaissance and the collection of samples of pottery shards from which he was able to determine the extent of occupation at various times. Like R. Bulliett's work on *Conversion to Islam* in another field, it is possible to criticize some of the details of the analysis, but the size of the sample and the boldness of the approach offer ideas and hypotheses which illuminate important aspects of early Islamic society, untouched by the traditional chronicle sources. Impressive, too, is the way in which the archaeological data are linked to the written evidence and we can only regret that similar surveys have not been undertaken for other areas in

the eastern Islamic world. Since Adams wrote, more exact chronologies for early Islamic pottery have been developed from sites in Jordan, and it might be possible to use these to refine the chronology of surface reconnaissance. Adams's work underlines and confirms the impression we have of rural and agricultural decline in Iraq in the middle and late ʿAbbasid period, and adds substance to the accounts of the chroniclers.

In Khurāsān, cradle of the ʿAbbasid movement, the city of Marv has recently been surveyed and the standing monuments and walls recorded, revealing the relationship between the old Sasanian walled city and the unwalled early Muslim settlement to the west. Marv also boasts a number of *keshks* or fortified palaces which may have belonged to the local aristocracy of the early Islamic period. In Samargand, recent excavations have brought to light a palace on the ancient citadel which has been plausibly attributed to the work of Abū Muslim. Early Islamic religious architecture in Khurāsān is represented by the ninth-century mosque at Balkh.

The archaeological evidence for the bedouin and Kurdish dynasties is virtually non-existent; by their very nature they tended to leave little in the way of buildings or sites. The same is broadly true of the Buyids. Only the great Band-i Amīr dam in Fārs remains to illustrate the building activities and developments of ʿAḍud al-Dawla (338–72/949–83). This is not to say that more could not be done in changed and more settled conditions; a survey of Islamic settlement in Fārs, and Islamic fortification throughout the Zagros mountains, could greatly increase our understanding of the period. The major exception to this generally negative picture comes from the excavations undertaken by the British School of Archaeology in Iran at the Gulf port of Sīrāf. These excavations, on which only preliminary reports have so far been published, tell us much about the prosperity of the area and the nature of Indian Ocean trade in the Buyid period. Since the site is effectively deserted, the archaeologists had the opportunity to excavate the mosque, the town centre and a number of houses giving a fairly complete picture of urban life. Once again, the archaeological material provides substantial corroborative evidence for processes the written sources only hint at. A wealth of archaeological evidence on early Islamic towns has been uncovered by Russian scholars in Transoxania. Unhappily, little of this material is available outside the Soviet Union and it has made little impact on the general discussion.

The early Islamic archaeology of Egypt is comparatively rich. Among the standing monuments, there is the mosque of ʿAmr, whose architectural history is disputed but some parts of which go back to early ʿAbbasid times, and the mosque of Ibn Ṭūlūn (governor of Egypt,

254–70/868–84). The latter shows clearly the large scale of Ibn Ṭūlūn's building but it also demonstrates the extent to which he depended on Iraqi models, indeed the mosque of Ibn Ṭūlūn is the finest surviving example of the ʿAbbasid court style, being much better preserved than any of the Sāmarrā mosques. We know that the early Fatimids founded and developed the city of Cairo but nothing remains of their palaces or the original fortifications, although the position of these is well known. Only in the mosques can we find something of the early Fatimid imperial style, in some parts of the Azhar and in the vast, newly restored mosque of al-Ḥākim.

The original Islamic settlement at Fusṭāṭ, just south of Fatimid Cairo, is now largely deserted and has been partly excavated over many seasons by the American University in Cairo. Some interim reports have been published, which throw interesting light on street patterns, domestic architecture and water supplies. The excavations have now finished and definitive publication is being prepared.

The archaeological evidence for early Islamic history cannot be ignored. On the cultural side it provides evidence of the visual environment, often described but almost never illustrated in the texts. More important from the point of view of the general historian is the light it sheds on economic history, be it the agricultural developments of the Umayyads, the decline of agriculture in Iraq or Indian Ocean trade under the Buyids. Without the archaeological evidence, no account of these themes would be complete.

Principal Archaeological Reports from the Early Islamic Period

The bibliography on early Islamic archaeology and architectural history is vast and the following simply details some of the most important publications.

Good general introductions to the material culture of Islam include R. Ettinghausen and O. Gabar, *The Art and Architecture of Islam 650–1250*, Harmondsworth 1987 and R. Irwin, *Islamic Art*, London 1997. The classic survey of early Islamic building remains K. A. C. Creswell, *Early Muslim architecture*, 2 vols, Oxford 1932–40 which can now be supplemented by his *A Short Account of Early Muslim Architecture*, 2nd edn with much new material by J. Allan, Aldershot 1989. Creswell's work also gives a full bibliography of each site to which further reference can be made. For a more recent account see the excellent *Islamic Architecture* by R. Hillenbrand, Edinburgh 1994, which contains an encyclopaedic collection of plans and illustrations.

On early Arabia, A. R. Al-Ansary, *Qaryat al-Fau*, Riyadh 1982 and Saʿad bin ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz al-Rāshid, *Al-Rabadhah*, 1986. For the Umayyad palace in Jerusalem, B. Mazar and M. Ben-Dov, *Excavations in the Old City, Jerusalem*, Jerusalem 1971, 37–44. For the citadel palace at Amman, A. Almagro Gorbea, *El Palacio Omeya de Amman*, Madrid 1983 and A. Northedge, *Studies on Roman and Islamic Amman*, Oxford, 1992; for Khirbat al-Mafjar, R. W. Hamilton, *Khirbet al-Mafjar an Arabian mansion in the Jordan valley*, Oxford 1959, with an important discussion in R. Ettinghausen, *From Byzantium to Sassanian Iran and the Islamic world*, Leiden 1972. The most recent work at Khirbat al-Minya is by O. Grabar *et al.*, "Sondages à Khirbet el-Minyeh", *Israel Exploration Journal*, x, 1960, 226–43. On Qaṣr al-Ḥayr al-Gharbī, D. Schlumberger, *Qasr el-Heir El Gharbi*, Paris, 1986. Qaṣr al-Ḥayr al-Sharqī is fully described in O. Grabar, *City in the Desert*, Cambridge, Mass. 1978. For other *quṣūr*, K. Brisch, "Das omayyadische Schloss in Usais", *Mitteilungen des deutchschen Archäologischen Instituts*, Abteilung Kairo, xix (1963) 141–87 and xx (1965), 138–77; J. Bujard, Umm al-Walid et Khan az-Zabib, *Annual of the Department of Antiquities of Jordan*, xli (1997), 359–82; S. Urice, *Qasr Kharana in the Transjordan* (Durham 1987). Further research will certainly reveal more about the architecture of the *quṣūr* and their purpose and function.

The general purpose of these desert castles has caused a prolonged debate in which the most notable contributions are as follows: H. Lammens, "La 'Badia' et la 'hira' sous les Omayyades", *Études sur le siècle des Omeyyades*, Beirut 1930, 325–50; J. Sauvaget, "Châteaux Umayyades de Syrie", *Revue d'études islamiques*, xxxv, 1963, 1–52; H. Gaube, "ʿAmman, Harana und Qastal: vier frühislamische Bauwerke in Mitteljordanien", *Zeitschrift des Deutsche Palästina-Vereins*, xciii, 1977, 52–86; R. Hillenbrand, "La Dolce Vita in early Islamic Syria: the evidence of the later Umayyad palaces", *Art History*, v, 1982, 1–35. *History*, v, 1982, 1–35.

For the archaeology of the ʿAbbasid period, the best introduction is volume II of Creswell's *Early Muslim architecture*. On Sāmarrā see also G. Herzfeld, *Geschichte der Stadt Samarra*, Hamburg 1947; T. Al-Janabi, "Islamic Archaeology in Iraq: recent excavations at Samarra", *World Archaeology*, xiv, 1983, 305–27; C. F. Robinson, ed., *A Medieval Islamic City Reconsidered* (Oxford Studies in Islamic Art xiv, Oxford 2001); a full discussion of the topography of the city with numerous plans is currently being prepared by A. Northedge. On Kūfa, M. A. Mustafa, "Preliminary report on the excavations in Kufa during the third season", *Sumer*, xix, 1963, 36–65. On Wāsiṭ, F. Safar, *Wasit: the sixth season's*

excavation, Cairo 1945, which includes discussions of both mosque and palace. For patterns of settlement, R. McC. Adams, *The land behind Baghdad*, Chicago 1965.

The excavations at Sīrāf have only been published in a series of interim reports in the journal *Iran* by D. Whitehouse as follows: vi, 1968, 1–22; vii, 1969, 36–62; viii, 1970, 1–18; ix, 1971, 1–17; x, 1972, 63–87; xii, 1974, 1–30. For Soviet excavations in eastern Iran, G. A. Fedorov-Davydov, "Archaeological Research in Central Asia in the Muslim period", *World Archaeology*, xiv, 1983, 393–405, which contains full bibliographical details. On Marv, G. Herrmann, *Monuments of Merv*, London 1999; on the excavations in Samarqand, Y. Karev, "Un palais islamique du VIIIe siècle à Samarkand", *Studia Iranica* 29 (2000), 273–96.

The excavations at Fusṭāṭ have been conducted in numerous campaigns. See A. Bahgat and A. Gabriel, *Les fouilles d'al-Foustat*, Paris 1921. The excavations of the 1960s and 1970s by G. T. Scanlon are in course of full publication; in the interim reports can be found in the *Journal of the American Research in Egypt* as follows: iv, 1965, 7–30; v, 1966, 83–112; vi, 1967, 65–84; xi, 1974, 81–91; xiii, 1976, 69–89, and *Annales Islamologiques*, xvii, 1981, 407–36. See also G. T. Scanlon, "Housing and sanitation", in A. Hourani and S. Stern (eds), *The Islamic city*, Oxford 1970, 179–94. For the general development of the city, W. Kubiak, *Al-Fusṭāṭ: its foundation and early urban development*, Warsaw 1982, Cairo 1987.

Documentary Sources

As has already been pointed out, early Islamic history has left little in the way of archival sources, except for some official correspondence. The major exceptions to this view come from Egypt in the form of papyri and the material from the Cairo Geniza. Until the fourth/tenth century, when it was largely supplanted by paper, most of the administrative correspondence of Egypt was written on papyrus as it had been in classical times. Papyrus has a much better rate of preservation than paper and a considerable volume of Arabic papyri, and papyri written in Greek after the Islamic conquest, has been preserved. The most important of these from the point of view of administrative history date from the Umayyad period and, despite their fragmentary condition, give a real insight into the day-to-day administration of the province. They can also be useful for establishing dates of governors and official titles of caliphs and others, points about which chroniclers writing in a later period may

make mistakes. A. Grohmann, *From the World of Arabic Papyri*, Cairo 1952, remains a good introduction. See also R. Khoury, *Chrestomatie de papyrologie arabe*, Leiden 1993 and W. Diem, *Arabische Briefe aus dem 7.–10. Jahrhundert*, Corpus Papyrorum Raineri 16, Vienna 1993. The papyri, Greek, Coptic and Arabic, relevant to early Islamic history are detailed by P. M. Fraser in his new edition of A. J. Butler, *The Arab conquest of Egypt*, Oxford 1978, lxxvi–lxxxiii. See also Y. Raghib, *Marchands d'étoffe du Fayyoum*, 4 vols, Cairo 1982–96, for the use of papyri in the economic history of early Islamic Egypt. For a small but important collection from southern Palestine in the early Umayyad period, C. J. Kraemer, *Excavations at Nessana*, vol. 3, Non-Literary Papyri, Princeton 1958.

Papyri also preserve the oldest texts of Arabic historical writing, albeit in very fragmentary form. They are none the less useful for our understanding of the growth of the historiographical tradition; texts have been published, with translation and a very important introduction in N. Abbott, *Studies in Arabic literary papyri I: historical texts*, University of Chicago Oriental Institute Publications, LXXV, Chicago 1957.

The other source of documentary material is the Cairo Geniza. The Geniza documents are the correspondence, contracts and legal decisions of the Jewish community of Fusṭāṭ during the Fatimid times. Although paper documents, they were preserved because it was felt that any writings containing the name of God could not be thrown away but rather put in a storeroom above the synagogue. In this way a mass of material was preserved, much of it of an ephemeral nature, not the sort of thing that archivists normally preserve but fascinating for the historian. The Geniza material concerns all aspects of the life of the community, including extensive commercial and personal correspondence. It is also extremely difficult to use; this is only partly because of the language, which is mostly Arabic written in Hebrew characters, but because it was stored in a chaotic condition, as a dump, not a reference collection. Furthermore, it has passed in fragments to a large number of different libraries in Europe, including Russia, and America, distributed at random without any regard for the subject-matter. The best introduction to the wealth of detail to be found in these documents is S. D. Goitein, *A Mediterranean society*, 6 vols, Berkeley and Los Angeles 1967–93. Goitein's magisterial work is almost an original source in itself, a gold mine for anyone interested in the history of the Islamic world in the Fatimid period. For examples of the documents themselves, G. Khan, ed. and trans., *Arabic Legal and Administrative Documents from the Cambridge Genizeh Collection*, Cambridge 1993.

Numismatic and epigraphic evidence

Islamic coinage from the period covered by this book is abundant and much of it has been catalogued in many different places. There is as yet no handbook or synthesis to which the historian can turn for an overview of the material. After the time of the Umayyad Caliph ʿAbd al-Malik, Islamic coinage is almost entirely epigraphic in design, with inscriptions rather than pictures on its surfaces. It is useful, as the papyri and inscriptions on stone and textiles (*ṭirāz*) are useful, for establishing names, dates, and titles not only of rulers but of governors and indeed of rebels who were powerful enough to issue their own coins. The right to mint coins (*sikka*) was a government monopoly in early Islamic society and there was no equivalent to the private coinage of western Europe; the mention of a caliph or other ruler's name on the coinage was, along with the mention in the sermon or *khuṭba* at Friday prayers, one of the ways in which sovereignty was acknowledged. Apart from its epigraphic uses, coinage can also shed light on general economic trends, although the evidence must be used with care; coinage of low intrinsic value does not necessarily point to economic decline. Nonetheless we can be reasonably sure that, for example, the extreme fineness of Fatimid *dīnārs* reflects the wealth and stability of the state. The bibliography of Muslim coinage is very scattered. The classic account of the earliest Islamic coinage remains J. Walker, *A Catalogue of Muḥammadan Coins in the British Museum*, vol. i, *The Arab-Sassanian Coins*, London 1941; vol. ii, *The Arab-Byzantine and Post-reform Umaiyad Coins*, London 1956, but this should now be supplemented by the critique of M. Bates, "History, geography and Numismatics in the First Century of Islamic Coinage" in *Revue Suisse de Numismatique*, 65, 1986, 231–65. See also S. Heidemann, "The Merger of Two Currency Zones in early Islam" in *Iran* 36 (1998), 95–112. For the early coinage of Palestine, see I. Ilisch, *Sylloge Numorum Arabicorum Tübingen Palastina IV*, Tübingen 1993. ʿAbbasid coinage has been much less fully studied; for an introduction see T. S. Noonan, "Early ʿAbbasid Mint Output" in *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient*, xxix, 1986, 113–75. See also L. Treadwell, "Notes on the mint at Samarra" in C. F. Robinson (ed.), *A Mediaeval Islamic City Reconsidered* and T. El-Hibri, "Coinage reform under the ʿAbbāsid caliph al-Ma'mūn", *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient*, xxxvi, 1993, 58–83. G. C. Miles's *Numismatic history of Rayy*, New York 1938, is an important regional study and the article "Numismatics" by the same author in R. N. Frye (ed.), *Cambridge history of Iran*, IV, 1975, 364–77 contains useful references. On the

coinage of Egypt, see W. C. Schultz, "The monetary history of Egypt, 642–1517" in C. Petry (ed.), *Cambridge History of Egypt*, i, 318-38. There is a useful discussion of the literature on Sasanian and early Islamic coins in M. Morony, *Iraq after the Muslim conquest*, Princeton 1984, 548–53 and a bibliography of material on later coins in H. Busse, *Chalif und Grosskönig*, Beirut 1969, 543–6. The fifth/eleventh century coinage of the Jazīra is discussed in S. Heidemann, *Die Renaissance der Stadte in Nordsyrien und Nordmesopotamien*, Leiden 2002. For monumental and other non-numismatic inscriptions see E. Combe, J. Sauvaget and G. Wiet (eds), *Répertoire chronologique d'épigraphie arabe*, Cairo 1931–. For a general introduction to Islamic epigraphy, see S. S. Blair, *Islamic Inscriptions*, Edinburgh 1998. The Arabic inscriptions of Palestine are now being edited and published in alphabetical order by site name in M. Sharon, *Corpus Inscriptionum Arabicarum Palestinae*, Leiden 1997–.

SUGGESTED FURTHER READING

Abbreviations

BSOAS: Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies
GMS: Gibbs Memorial Series
IC: Islamic Culture
IJMES: International Journal of Middle East Studies
IQ: Islamic Quarterly
Islam: Der Islam
JAOS: Journal of the American Oriental Society
JESHO: Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient
JNES: Journal of Near Eastern Studies
JRAS: Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society
JSS: Journal of Semitic Studies
REI: Revue d'Etudes Islamiques
RSO: Rivista degli Studi Orientali
SI: Studia Islamica.

General

Ashtor, E., *Social and economic history of the Near East*, London 1976.
Barthold, V., *Turkestan down to the Mongol invasions*, *GMS* New Series v, London 1968.
Berkey, J., *The Formation of Islam*, Cambridge, Mass. 2003.
Bosworth, C. E., *The New Islamic dynasties*, Edinburgh 1996.
Browne, E. G., *A literary history of Persia*, I, II, Cambridge 1928.
Bulliet, R., *The camel and the wheel*, Cambridge, Mass. 1975.
Bulliet, R., *Conversion to Islam in the medieval period*, Cambridge, Mass. 1979.
Bulliet, R., *Islam: the view from the edge*, New York 1994.
Cambridge history of Egypt, C. Petry (ed.), I, Cambridge 1998.
Cambridge history of Iran, R. Frye (ed.), IV, Cambridge 1975.
Cornu, G., *Atlas du monde arabo–islamique à l'Epoque Classique IX–X siècles*, Leiden 1985.
Crone, P. and Cook, M., *Hagarism, the making of the Muslim world*, Cambridge 1977.
Dennett, D., *Conversion and poll-tax in early Islam*, Cambridge, Mass. 1950.
Eickelman, D., *The Middle East: an anthropological approach*, Englewood Cliffs, NJ 1981.
Firestone, R., *Jihad: the origin of holy war in Islam*, Oxford 1999.
Gil, M., *A history of Palestine, 643–1099*, trans. E. Broido, Cambridge 1992.

Goldziher, I., *Muslim Studies*, ed. and trans. C. R. Barber and S. M. Stern, 2 vols, London 1967, 1971.
Hodgson, M. G. S., *The Venture of Islam*, I, Chicago 1973.
Humphreys, R. S., *Islamic history: a framework for inquiry*, Princeton 1991.
Kennedy, H., *The armies of the caliphs*, London 2001.
Kennedy, H. (ed.), *An historical atlas of Islam*, Leiden 2002.
Kennedy, H., "Military pay and the economy of the early Islamic state", *Historical Research*, 75, 2002, 155–69.
Lambton, A. K. S., *Landlord and peasant in Persia*, Oxford 1953.
Le Strange, G., *Palestine under the Moslems*, London 1890.
Le Strange, G., *Lands of the eastern caliphate*, Cambridge 1905.
Shaban, M. A., *Islamic history: A new interpretation*, 2 vols, Cambridge 1971, 1976.
Watt, W. M., *The formative period of Islamic thought*, Edinburgh 1973.

In addition the reader should refer to the two editions of *The encyclopaedia of Islam*. The first edition, 4 vols and supplement, Leiden 1913–42, is complete but many of the articles are dated. The second edition, Leiden, 1954–, is now almost complete. It is also accessible on CD rom. A third edition is planned. Many of the articles are of great scholarly value and the *Encyclopaedia* should always be used to supplement other reading. Another important reference tool is the *Encyclopaedia Iranica*, ed. E. Yarshater (London and New York 1985–) which contains more discursive articles and is still incomplete. For bibliography, readers should use *Index Islamicus: a bibliography of books, articles and reviews of Islam and the Muslim World from 1906* (Published 1958 onwards and available on CD rom).

Historiography

Conrad, L. I., "The conquest of Arwād: a source-critical study in the historiography of the early medieval Near East", in A. Cameron and L. I. Conrad (eds), *The Byzantine and early Islamic Near East I: problems in the literary source material*, Princeton 1992, 317–401.
Cooperson, M., *Classical Arabic biography*, Cambridge 2000.
Donner, F. M., *Narratives of Islamic origins: the beginnings of Islamic historical writing*, Princeton 1998.
Duri, A. A., *The rise of historical writing among the Arabs*, ed. and trans. L. I. Conrad, Princeton 1983.
El-Hibri, T., *Reinterpreting Islamic historiography: Hārūn al-Rashīd and the narrative of the ʿAbbāsid caliphate*, Cambridge 1999.
Hoyland, R., *Seeing Islam as others saw it: a survey and evaluation of Christian, Jewish and Zoroastrian writings on early Islam*, Princeton 1997.
Meisami, J. S., *Persian historiography to the end of the twelfth century*, Edinburgh 1999.
Robinson, C. F., *Islamic historiography*, Cambridge 2003.

Historical and Geographical Sources in English Translation

Arabic and Persian

al-Balādhurī, *Futūḥ*: *The origins of the Islamic state*, trans. P. Hitti and F. Murgotten, 2 vols, New York 1916–24.

Ibn al-Ḥaytham, *Kitāb al-Munāẓarāt*: *the advent of the Fatimids*, trans. W. Madelung and P. E. Walker, London 2000.

Ibn Isḥāq, *Sīrat Rasūl Allāh*: *the life of Muhammad*, trans. A Guillaume, Karachi 1955, repr. 1967.

Ibn Khallikān, *Wafayāt al-aʿyān*: *Ibn Khallikān's biographical dictionary*, trans. M. de Slane, 4 vols, Paris 1842–71.

al-Māwardī, *Aḥkām al-Sulṭāniyya*: *the ordinances of government*, trans. W. H. Wahba, Reading 1996.

al-Masʿūdī, *Murūj al-dhabab*: *the meadows of gold: the Abbasids*, partial trans. P. Lunde and C. Stone, London and New York 1989.

Miskawayh, *Tajārib al-Umam*: *the eclipse of the ʿAbbasid caliphate*, trans., with the continuation by Abū Shujāʿ al-Rūdhrawārī, D. S. Margoliouth, 3 vols, London 1921.

al-Muqaddasī, *Aḥsan al-Taqāsim*: *the best divisions for knowledge of the regions*, trans. B. Collins, Reading 2001.

Nāṣir-i Khusraw, *Safarnāma*: *book of travels*, trans. W. M. Thackston, Costa Mesa 2001.

Qudāma b. Jaʿfar, *Kitāb al-Kharaj*: *taxation in Islam*, II trans. A. Ben Shemesh, Leiden 1965.

al-Ṭabarī, *Taʾrīkh: the history of al-Ṭabarī*, ed. Y. Yarshater, 38 vols, Albany 1985–2000.

Yaḥyā b. Ādam, *Kitāb al-Kharāj*: *taxation in Islam*, I trans. A. Ben Shemesh, Leiden 1967.

Abū Yūsuf Yaʿqūb b. Ibrāhīm, *Kitāb al-Kharāj*: *taxation in Islam*, III trans. A. Ben Shemesh, Leiden 1969.

Eastern Christian Sources

Anon., *The chronicle of Zuqnin Parts III and IV AD 488–773*, trans. A. Harrak, Toronto 1999.

Sebeos, *The Armenian history*, trans. R. W. Thomson with notes by J. Howard-Johnston, 2 vols, Liverpool 1999.

Theophanes, *The chronicle of Theophanes The Confessor: Byzantium and Near Eastern history AD 284–813*, trans. C. Mango and R. Scott, Oxford 1997.

Various, *The seventh century in Western Syrian chronicles*, trans, A Palmer, Liverpool 1993.

The Matrix of the Muslim World

Bowersock, G. W., *Roman Arabia*, Cambridge, Mass. 1982.

Bowersock, G. W., Brown, P. and Grabar, O. (eds), *Interpreting late antiquity: essays on the postclassical world*, Cambridge, Mass. 2001.

Cambridge History of Iran, III "The Seleucid, Parthian and Sasanian periods", ed. E. Yar-Shater, Cambridge 1983.
Foss, C., "The Near Eastern countryside in late antiquity: a review article", *Journal of Roman Archaeology, Supplementary Series*, 14, 1995, 213–34.
Foss, C., "Syria in Transition, AD 550–750", *Dumbarton Oaks Papers*, li, 1997, 189–270.
Fowden, G., *Empire to commonwealth: consequences of Monotheism in late antiquity*, Princeton 1993.
Frye, R., *The heritage of Persia*, London 1964.
Haldon, J., *Byzantium in the seventh century*, Cambridge 1990.
Hoyland, R., *Arabia and the Arabs: from the bronze age to the coming of Islam*, London 2001.
Keenan, J. G., *Egypt*, *Cambridge Ancient History*, XIV, A. Cameron, B. Ward-Perkins and M. Whitby (eds), Cambridge 2000, 612–37.
Kennedy, H., "From polis to medina: urban change in late antique and early Islamic Syria", *Past and Present*, 106, 1985, 3–27.
Kennedy, H., "Syria, Palestine and Mesopotamia", *Cambridge Ancient History*, XIV, A. Cameron, B. Ward-Perkins and M. Whitby (eds), Cambridge 2000, 588–611.
Morony, M., *Iraq after the Muslim conquest*, Princeton 1984.
Retso, J., *The Arabs in antiquity: their history from the Assyrians to the Umayyads*, London 2003.
Rubin Z., *The Sasanian monarchy*, *Cambridge Ancient History*, XIV, A. Cameron, B. Ward-Perkins and M. Whitby (eds), Cambridge 2000, 638–61.

Bedouin Society and the Birth of the Islamic State

Cole, D. P., *Nomads of the nomads: the Āl Murrah Bedouin of the Empty Quarter*, Chicago 1975.
Cook, M., *Muhammad*, Oxford 1983.
Conrad, L. L., *The Arabs*, *Cambridge Ancient History*, XIV, A. Cameron, B. Ward-Perkins and M. Whitby (eds), Cambridge 2000, 678–700.
Crone, P., *Meccan trade and the rise of Islam*, Oxford 1987.
Hawting, G. R., *The idea of idolatry and the emergence of Islam: from polemic to history*, Cambridge 1999.
Heck, G. W., "Gold mining in Arabia and the Rise of the Islamic State", *JESHO*, 42, 1999, 364–95.
Kister, M. J., *Studies in Jahiliyya and early Islam*, London 1980.
Lancaster, W., *The Rwala bedouin revisited*, Cambridge 1981.
Lings, M., *Muhammad: his life based on the earliest sources*, London 1983.
Peters, F. E., *Muhammad and the origins of Islam*, Albany 1994.
Rubin, U., *The eye of the beholder: the life of Muhammad as viewed by early Muslims – a textual analysis*, Princeton 1995.
Von Grunebaum, G. E., "The nature of Arab Unity before Islam", *Arabica*, x, 1963, 5–23.
Watt, W. M., *Muhammad at Mecca*, Oxford 1953.

Watt, W. M., *Muhammad at Medina*, Oxford 1956.
Watt, W. M., *Muhammad, prophet and statesman*, Oxford 1961.

Conquest and Division in the Time of the Rāshidūn Caliphs

Butler, A. J., *The Arab conquest of Egypt*, ed. P. M. Fraser, Oxford 1978.
Donner, F. M., *The early Islamic conquests*, Princeton 1981.
Hill, D. R., *The termination of hostilities in the early Arab conquests*, London 1971.
Hinds, G. M., "Kufan political alignments and their background in the mid-seventh century AD", *IJMES*, ii, 1971, 346–67.
Hinds, G. M., "The banners and battle cries of the Arabs at Siffin (657 AD)", *Al-Abhath*, xxiv, 1971, 3–42.
Hinds, G. M., "The Murder of the Caliph ʿUthmān", *IJMES*, iii, 1972, 450–69.
Hinds, G. M., "The Siffin arbitration agreement", *JSS*, xvii, 1972, 93–129.
Jafri, S. M., *The origins and early development of Shiʿa Islam*, London 1979.
Kaegi, W. E., *Byzantium and the early Islamic conquests*, Cambridge 1992.
Madelung, W., *The succession to Muḥammad: a study of the early caliphate*, Cambridge 1997.
Petersen, E. L., *ʿAlī and Muʿāwiya in early Arabic tradition*, Copenhagen 1964.
Shoufani, E., *Al-Riddah and the Muslim conquest of Arabia*, Toronto 1972.
Wellhausen, J., *The politico-religious factions in early Islam*, trans. R. C. Ostle, Amsterdam 1975.

The Umayyad Caliphate

Bosworth, C. E., "Raja ibn Ḥaywa al-Kindī and the Umayyad caliphate", *Islamic Quarterly*, xvi, 1972, 36–80.
Bosworth, C. E., "Ubaidallah b. Abi Bakra and the 'Army of Destruction' in Zabulistan (79/698)", *Der Islam*, 1973, 268–83.
Crone, P., *Slaves on Horses*, Cambridge 1980.
Crone, P., "Were the Qays and Yemen of the Umayyad period political parties?" *Der Islam*, 71, 1994, 1–57.
Crone, P. and Hinds G. M., *God's caliph: religious authority in the first centuries of Islam*, Cambridge 1986.
Gibb, H. A. R., "The fiscal rescript of ʿUmar II", *Arabica*, 2, 1955, 1–16.
Hamilton, R., *Walīd and his friends: an Umayyad tragedy*, Oxford: Oxford Studies in Islamic Art, VI, 1988.
Madelung, W., "Apocalyptic prophecies in Ḥimṣ in the Umayyad age", *JSS*, 31, 1986, 141–85.
Robinson, C., *Empire and elites after the Muslim conquest: the transformation of Northern Mesopotamia*, Cambridge 2000.
Rotter, G., *Die Umayyaden und der zweite Burgerkrieg*, Wiesbaden 1982.
Walmsley, A., "Production, exchange and regional trade in the Islamic East Mediterranean: old structures, new system?" in L. I. Hansen and C. J. Wickham (eds), *The long eighth century*, Leiden 2000.
Wellhausen, J., *The Arab kingdom and its fall*, trans. M. G. Weir, Calcutta 1927.

The Early ʿAbbasid Caliphate

Bonner, M., *Aristocratic violence and holy war. Studies in the jihad and the Arab-Byzantine frontier*, New Haven 1996.

Cobb, P. M., *White banners: contention in ʿAbbasid Syria, 750–880*, Albany 2001.

Daniel, E. L., *The political and social history of Khurasan under Abbasid rule*, Minneapolis and Chicago 1979.

El-Hibri, T., *Reinterpreting Islamic historiography: Hārūn al-Rashīd and the narrative of the ʿAbbāsid caliphate*, Cambridge 1999.

Kennedy, H., *The early Abbasid caliphate: a political history*, London 1981.

Kennedy, H., "Central government and provincial élites in the early ʿAbbāsid caliphate", *BSOAS*, 44, 1981, 26–38.

Lassner, J., *The topography of Baghdad in the early Middle Ages: text and studies*, Detroit 1970.

Lassner, J., *The shaping of ʿAbbāsid rule*, Princeton 1980.

Lassner, J., *Islamic revolution and historical memory: an inquiry into the art of ʿAbbāsid apologetics*, New Haven 1986.

Le Strange, G., *Baghdad during the Abbasid caliphate*, London 1909.

Omar, F., *The ʿAbbasid caliphate, 132/750–170/786*, Baghdad 1969.

Shaban, M. A., *The ʿAbbasid revolution*, Cambridge 1970.

Sharon, M., *Black banners from the East*, Leiden 1983.

Sharon, M., *Revolt: the social and military aspects of the ʿAbbasid revolution*, Jerusalem 1990.

Sourdel, D., *Le vizirat abbaside*, 2 vols, Damascus 1959–60.

The Middle ʿAbbasid Caliphate

Ayalon, D., "The military reforms of Caliph al-Muʿtaṣim: their background and consequences", in D. Ayalon (ed.), *Islam and the abode of war*, Aldershot 1994, 1–39.

Bowen, H., *The life and times of ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā, the good vizier*, Cambridge 1928.

Cobb, P. M., "Al-Mutawwakil's Damascus: a new ʿAbbāsid capital?" *JNES*, 58, 1999, 241–57.

Gordon, M. S., *The breaking of a thousand swords: a history of the Turkish military of Samarra (AH 200–275/815–889 CE)*, Albany 2001.

Herzfeld, E., *Geschichte der Stadt Samarra*, Berlin 1948.

Melchert, C., "Religious policies of the caliphs from al-Mutawwakil to al Muqtadir, AH 232–295/AD 847–908", *Islamic Law and Society*, iii, 1996, 316–42.

Popovic, A., *The revolt of the African slaves in Iraq in the 3rd/9th century*, London 1999.

Robinson, C. (ed.), *A medieval Islamic city reconsidered: an interdisciplinary approach to Samarra*, Oxford: Oxford Studies in Islamic Art XIV, 2001.

Stetkevych, S. P., *Abū Tammām and the poetics of the ʿAbbāsid age*, Leiden 1991.

Waines, D., "The third century internal crisis of the Abbasids", *JESHO*, xx, 1977, 282–306.

Zaman, M. Q., *Religion and politics under the early ʿAbbāsids: the emergences of the proto-Sunni élite*, Leiden 1997.

The Buyid Confederation

Bowen, H., "The last Buwayhids", *JRAS*, 1929, 225–45.
Bosworth, C. E., "Military organization under the Buyids of Persia and Iraq", *Oriens*, xviii–xix, 1965–6, 143–67.
Bürgel, J. C., *Die Hofkorrespondenz ʿAḍud ad-Daulas*, Wiesbaden 1965.
Busse, H., *Chalif und Grosskönig: die Buyiden im Iraq*, Beirut 1969.
Cahen, C., "L'évolution de l'*iqṭāʿ* du IX[e] au XIII[e] siècle", *Annales*, viii, 1953, 25–52.
Frye, R., *The golden age of Persia*, London 1975.
Kabir, M., *The Buwayhid dynasty of Baghdad*, Calcutta 1964.
Madelung, W., "The assumption of the title shāhanshāh by the Būyids", *JNES*, xxviii, 1969, 84–105, 168–83.
Makdisi, G., *Ibn ʿAqīl et la résurgence de l'Islam traditionaliste au XI[e] siècle*, Damascus 1962.
Mez, A., *The renaissance of Islam*, trans. Khuda Bakhsh, London 1937.
Minorsky, V., *La domination des Dailamites*, Paris 1932.
Mottahedeh, R., *Loyalty and leadership in an early Islamic society*, Princeton 2nd edn 2001.
Richards, D. S. (ed.), *Islamic civilisation, 950–1150*, Oxford 1973.

The Kurds and Āz̲arbayjān

Amedroz, H. F., "The Marwanid dynasty of Mayyāfāriqīn", *JRAS*, 1903, 123–54.
Madelung, W., "Abū Isḥāq al-Ṣābī on the Alids of Ṭabaristān and Gīlān", *JNES*, xxvi, 1967, 27–57.
Minorsky, V., *Studies in Caucasian history*, London 1953.
Minorsky, V., *A history of Sharvan and Darband in the 10th–11th Centuries*, Cambridge 1958.
Vanly, I. C., "Le déplacement du pays Kurde vers l'ouest", *RSO*, 1, 1976, 353–63.

The Hamdanids and the Byzantine Frontier

Bosworth, C. E., "The city of Tarsus and the Arab–Byzantine frontiers in early and middle ʿAbbasid times", *Oriens*, xxxiii, 268–86.
Canard, M., *Histoire de la dynastie des H'amdanides de Jazîra et de Syrie*, Paris 1953.
Dagron, G., "Minorités ethniques et religieuses dans l'Orient byzantin à la fin du X[e] et au XI[e] siècles: l'immigration syrienne", *Travaux et Memoirs*, vi, 1976, 177–216.
Haldon, J. F. and Kennedy, H., "The Arab–Byzantine frontier in the eighth and ninth centuries", *Recueil des travaux de l'Institut d'Etudes byzantines (Belgrade)*, xix, 1980, 79–116.
Honigmann, E., *Die Ostgrenze des byzantinischen Reiches*, Brussels 1961.

Von Sievers, P., "Merchants and nomads: the social evolution of the Syrian cities and countryside, 780–969/164–358", *Islam*, lvi, 1979, 212–44.
Von Sievers, P., "Taxation and trade in the ʿAbbasid Thughur", *JESHO*, xxv, 1982, 71–99.

Bedouin Political Movements and Dynasties

Cahen, Cl., "Mouvements populaires et autonomisme urbain dans l'Asie musulmane du moyen âge", *Arabica*, v, 1958, 225–50, vi, 1959, 25–56, 223–65.
Heidemann, S., *Die Renaissance der Stadte in Nordsyrien und Nordmesopotamien: Stadtische Entwicklung und wirtschaftliche Bedingungen in ar-Raqqa und Ḥarrān von der Zeit der beduinischen Vorherrschaft bis zu den Seldschuken*, Leiden 2002.
Makdisi, G., "Notes on Ḥilla and the Mazyadids in medieval Islam", *JAOS*, lxxiv, 1954, 249–62.
Zakkar, S., *The emirate of Aleppo 1004–1094*, Beirut 1971.

Early Islamic Egypt and the Fatimid Empire

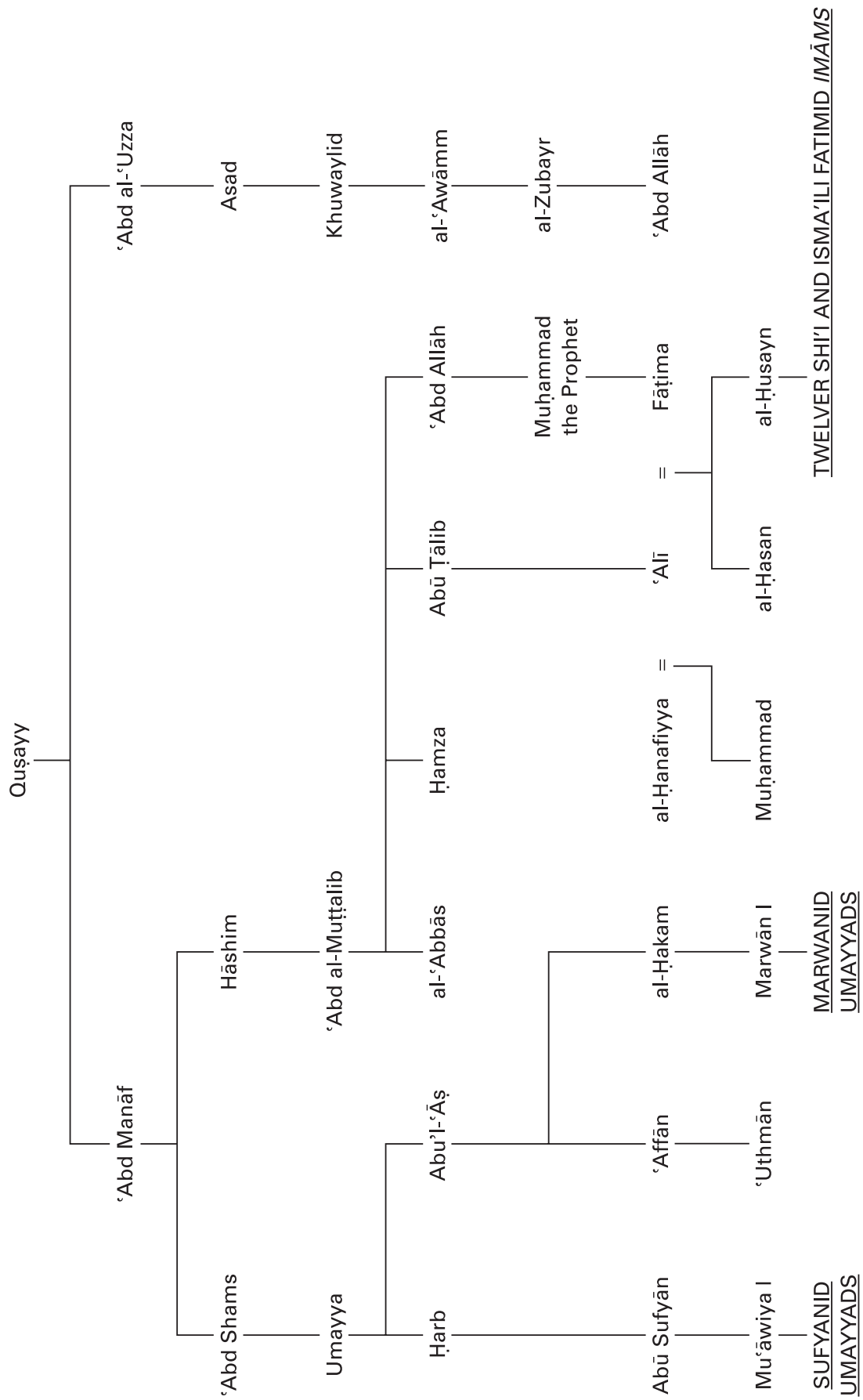
Abu-Izzeddin, N. M., *The Druzes. A new study of their history, faith and society*, Leiden 1984.
Bacharach, J. L., "The career of Muḥammad ibn Ṭughj al-Ikhshīd", *Speculum*, 50, 1975, 586–612.
Bareket, E., *Fustat on the Nile: the Jewish elite in medieval Egypt*, Leiden 1999.
Barrucand, M. (ed.), *Egypte fatimide: son art et son histoire*, Paris 2000.
Bianquis, T., "La prise de pouvoir par les Fatimides en Egypte", *JESHO*, 23, 1980, 67–101.
Bianquis, T., *Damas et la Syrie sous la domination Fatimide (359–468/969–1076)*, 2 vols, Damascus 1986–9.
Daftary, F., *The Ismāʾīlīs: their history and doctrines*, London 1990.
Goitein, S., *A mediterranean society*, 4 vols, Berkeley 1967–83.
Halm, H., *The empire of the Mahdi: the rise of the Fatimids*, Leiden 1996.
Halm, H., *The Fatimids and their traditions of learning*, London 1997.
Hassan, Z., *Les Tulunides*, Paris 1933.
Lev, Y., *State and society in Fatimid Egypt*, Leiden 1991.
Petry, C., *The Cambridge history of Egypt*, I, *Islamic Egypt, 640–1517*, Cambridge 1998.
Saunders, P., *Ritual, politics and the city in Fatimid Cairo*, Albany 1994.
Staffa, S., *Conquest and fusion: the social evolution of Cairo*, Leiden 1977.
Walker, P. E., *Exploring an Islamic empire: Fatimid history and its sources*, London 2002.

GLOSSARY

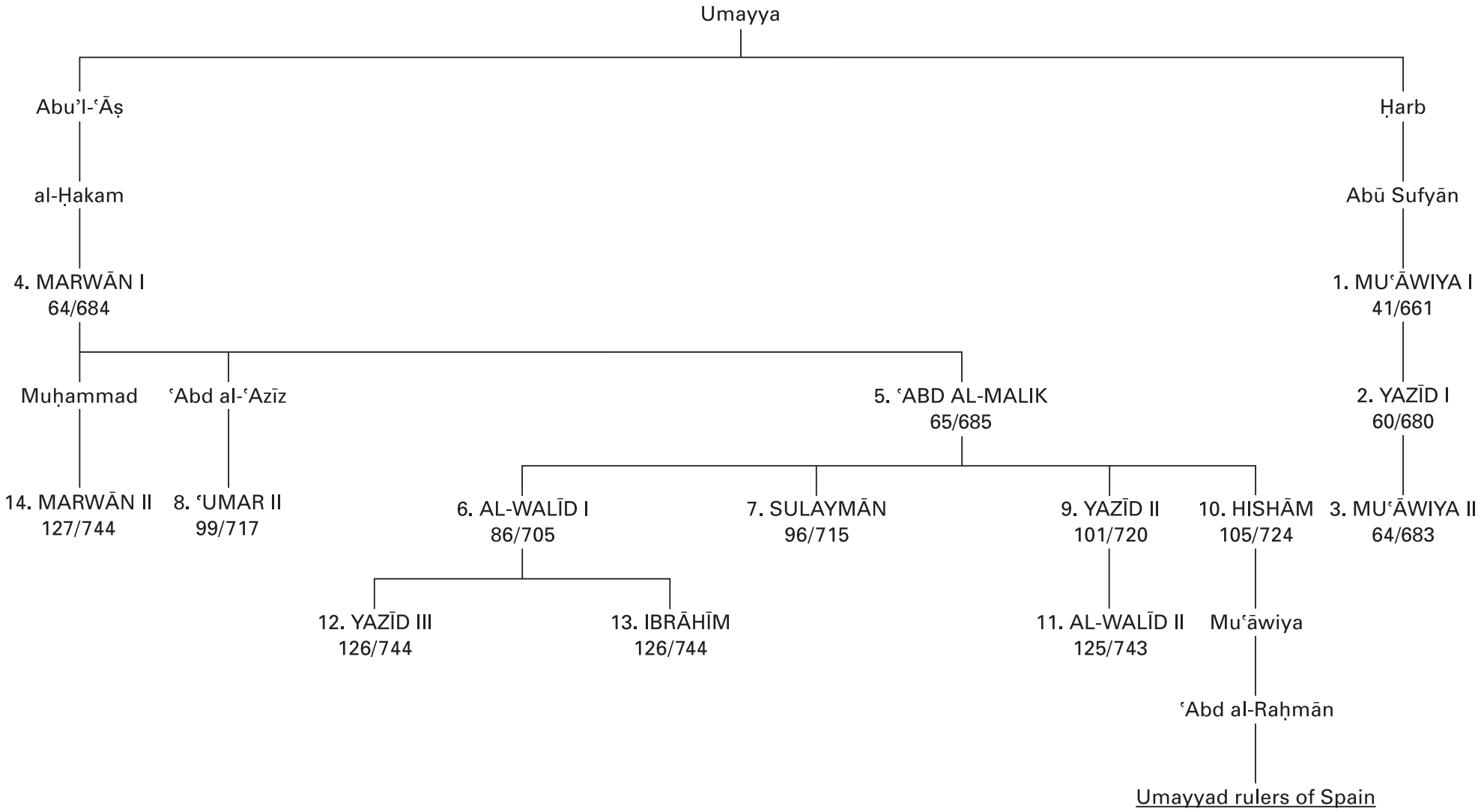
abnā' Literally "sons": used (a) of the descendants of Persian settlers in the Yemen at the time of Muḥammad, and (b) of the descendants of the Khurāsānīs who came west with the ʿAbbasid armies and settled in Baghdad.
aḥdāth An urban militia.
amīr Army commander, provincial governor or ruler of small independent state.
amīr al-umarā' Literally "commander of commanders": title given to those who took over secular authority in Baghdad from the ʿAbbasid caliphs after 324/936.
Anṣār Literally "helpers": the inhabitants of Medina who supported Muḥammad.
ashrāf See *sharīf*.
ʿaṭā' Salary paid to soldiers.
ʿayyār Originally a derogatory term meaning "vagabond" but later used of irregular troops and vigilante groups.
bayʿa Oath of allegiance to caliph or other ruler.
dāʿī Missionary, usually of clandestine religio-political movements.
daʿwa Missionary movement (cf. *dāʿī*).
dawla Dynasty or state, e.g. the ʿAbbasid *dawla* or the Fatimid *dawla*.
dehqan Persian term for landowners in Iran and Iraq, usually gentry rather than members of the higher aristocracy.
dihqān Arabic form of *dehqan*.
dīnār Standard gold coin.
dirham Standard silver coin.
dīwān Originally list of those entitled to state salaries. Also office or department of government.
ḍiyāʿ Plural of *ḍayʿa* meaning landed estate, usually applied to the lands owned by the ʿAbbasid caliphs (cf. *ṣawāfī*).
fitna Civil war or dispute within the Muslim community.
ghāzī A Muslim volunteer who fights in the *jihād*.
ghazw Bedouin tribal raid.
ghulām, pl. *ghilmān* Literally "young men" or "pages"; term used of Turkish soldiers especially in fourth/tenth century (cf. *mamlūk*).
ḥājib Door-keeper, chamberlain.
ḥajj The annual pilgrimage to Mecca.
ḥaram Sanctuary area, esp. around the Kaʿba in Mecca.
hijra The emigration of Muḥammad from Mecca to Medina in 622 which marks the beginning of the Muslim era.
ḥimāya Protection; once a form of lordship in which an important figure exercises fiscal rights over an area or community.
imām Spiritual leader of the Muslim community.

iqṭā' Assignment to an individual of right to collect taxes from an area or community, usually in exchange for military service.
Jāhiliyya Period of ignorance or savagery in Arabia before the coming of Islam.
jizya Poll-tax levied on non-Muslims.
jund Army; one of the administrative districts of Syria and Palestine.
kātib Secretary.
kharāj Land-tax.
khuṭba Address in mosque at Friday prayer which included mention of the ruler's name, a sign of sovereignty.
kuttāb Pl. of *kātib*.
Maghāriba Troops recruited in North Africa.
mamlūk A slave soldier; this term, occasionally used in early Islamic history, came to replace the term *ghulām* from the fifth/eleventh century onwards.
mawlā, pl. *mawālī* Originally "client", often non-Arab client of an Arab tribe, hence the use of *mawālī* to describe non-Arab Muslims in the first century of Islam. Later more commonly "freedmen" in the ʿAbbasid period, the term passes out of general use in the fourth/tenth century.
Muhājir, pl. *Muhājirūn* Those who participated in the *Hijra*, that is the Meccans who accompanied Muḥammad to settle in Medina.
naqīb Representative; used (a) of those in Medina appointed by Muḥammad to look after his interests before the *Hijra*, and (b) of those who led the ʿAbbasid movement in Khurāsān during Umayyad times.
qāḍī Muslim judge.
qurrā' A term of disputed etymology, probably meaning (Qur'ān) readers; used of the early Muslim settlers in Iraq, some of whom later joined the Khawārij.
ra'īs al-balad Unofficial leader of the native civilian population of a town.
Ridda Apostasy from Islam; hence the wars in Arabia which followed Muḥammad's death are known as the *Ridda* wars.
sābiqa Precedence, especially precedence in conversion to Islam, i.e. the earlier a person was converted, the greater his *sābiqa*.
ṣadaqa The payment of alms enjoined by Muslim law.
Saqāliba Slaves of Slav or western European origin.
ṣawāfī Lands belonging to the Muslim community or to the caliph especially in Iraq in early Islamic times (cf. *ḍiyāʿ*).
Sharīʿa Muslim religious law.
sharīf, pl. *ashrāf* In Umayyad times, tribal leader, chief: by the fourth/tenth century the title is usually confined to descendants of ʿAlī.
shūra A council formed to choose a caliph.
shurṭa Police force or military escort.
Sunna The sayings and actions of Muḥammad used as legal precedents.
sūq Market.
umma The Muslim community.
wāsiṭa Literally intermediary; hence in Fatimid Egypt the intermediary between the caliph and his subjects, chief minister.
wazīr Chief minister in the ʿAbbasid and Buyid governments.

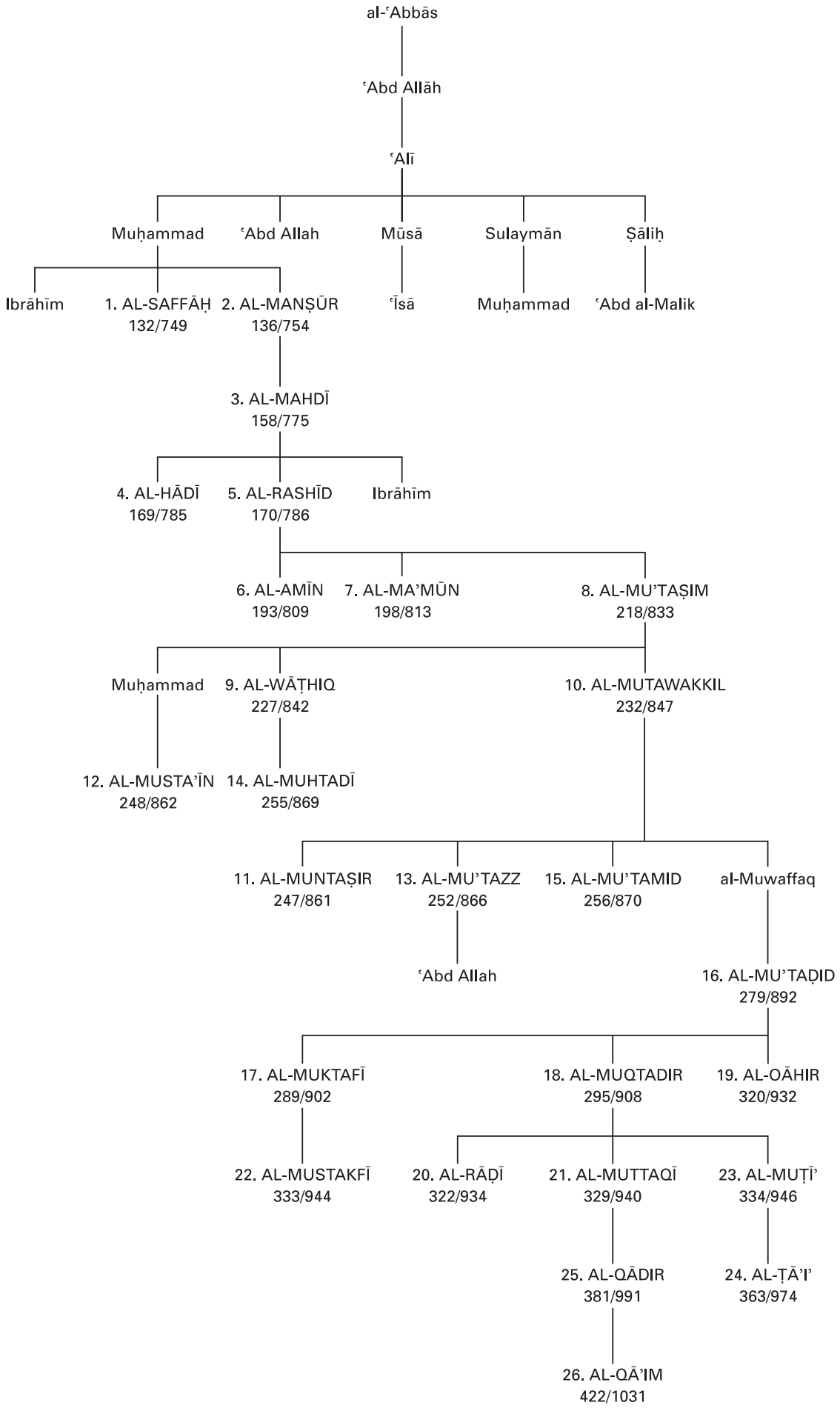
GENEALOGICAL TABLES



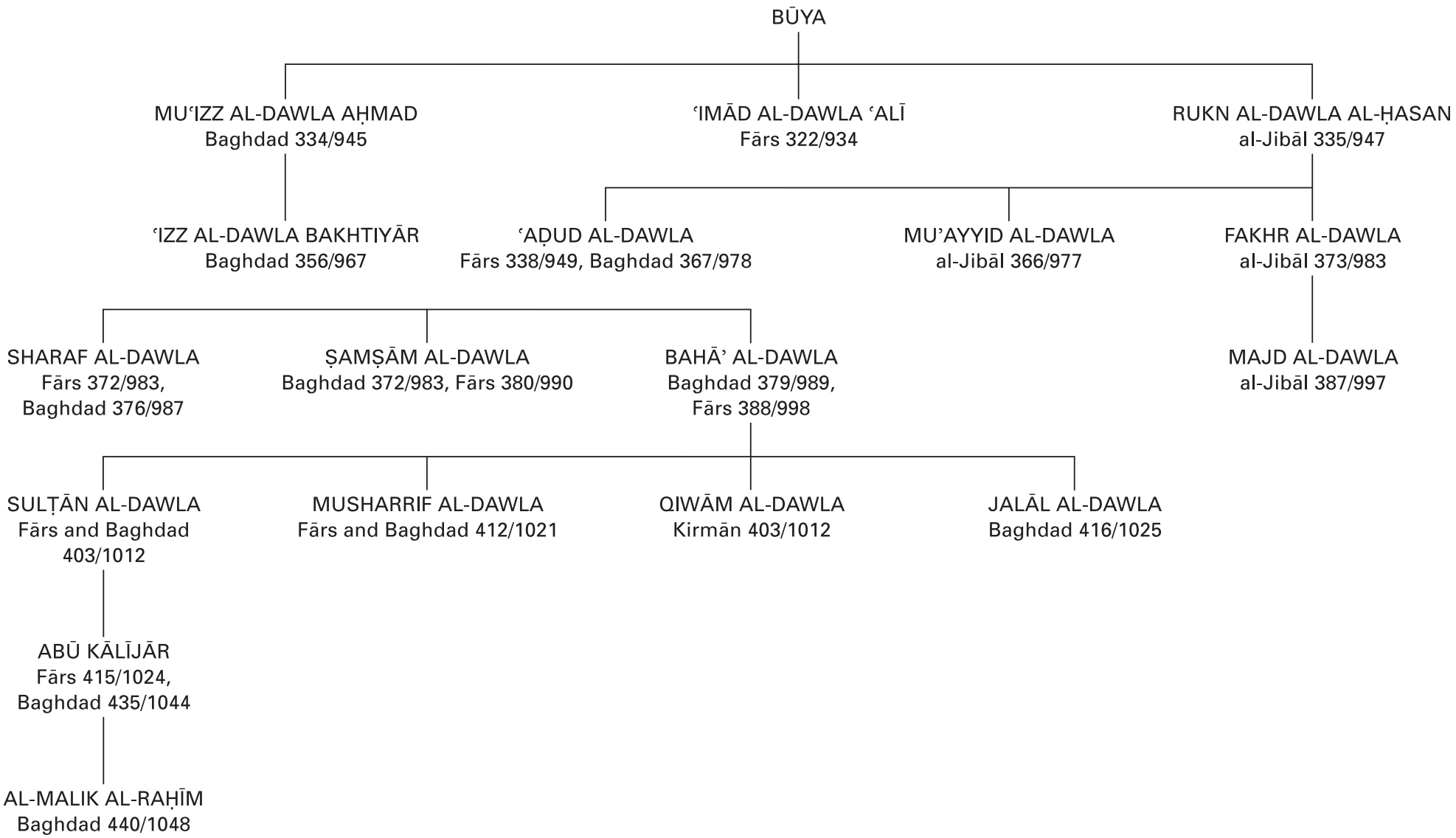
1 Muḥammad and the Descent of the Caliphs



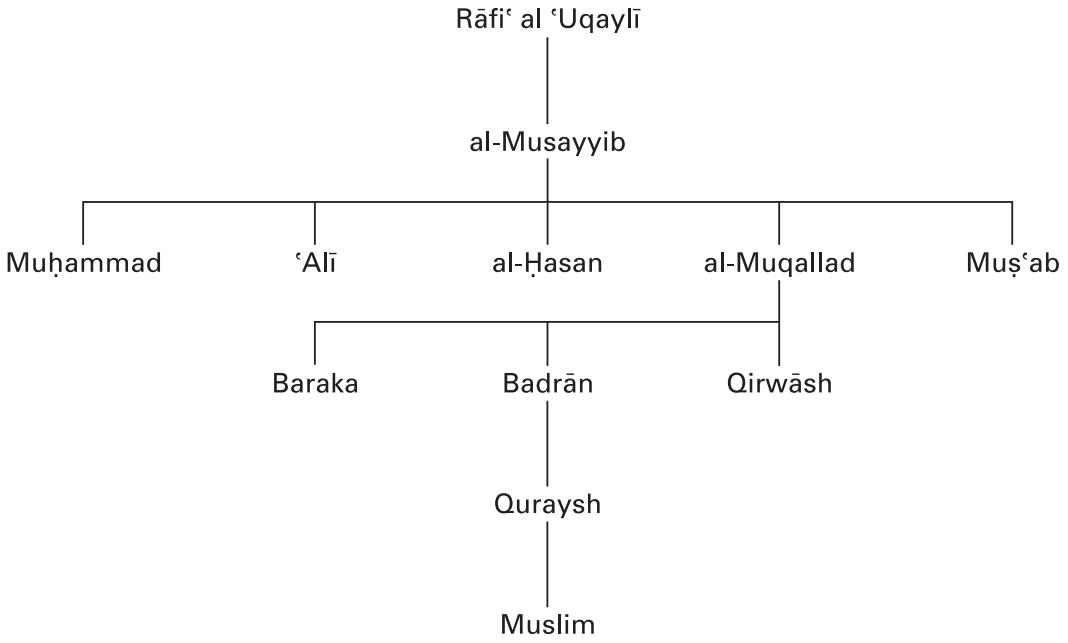
2 The Umayyad Caliphs (reigning caliphs are numbered with dates of accession)



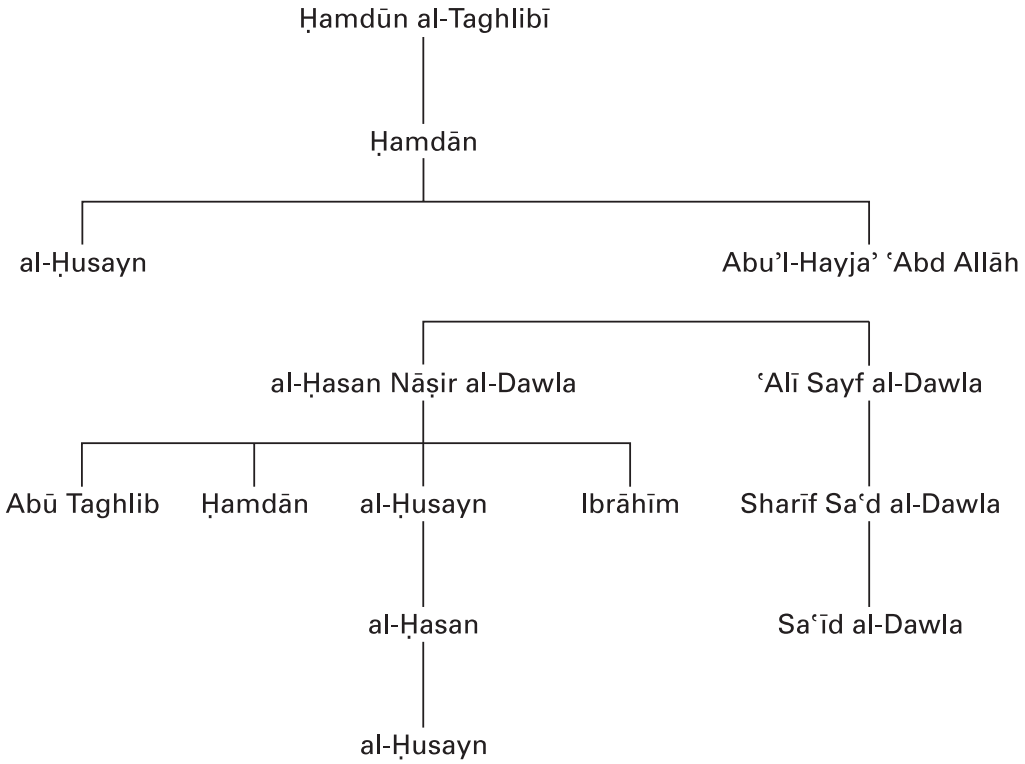
3 The ʿAbbasid Caliphs (reigning caliphs are numbered with dates of accession)



4 The Principal Buyid Rulers (with dates of accession)



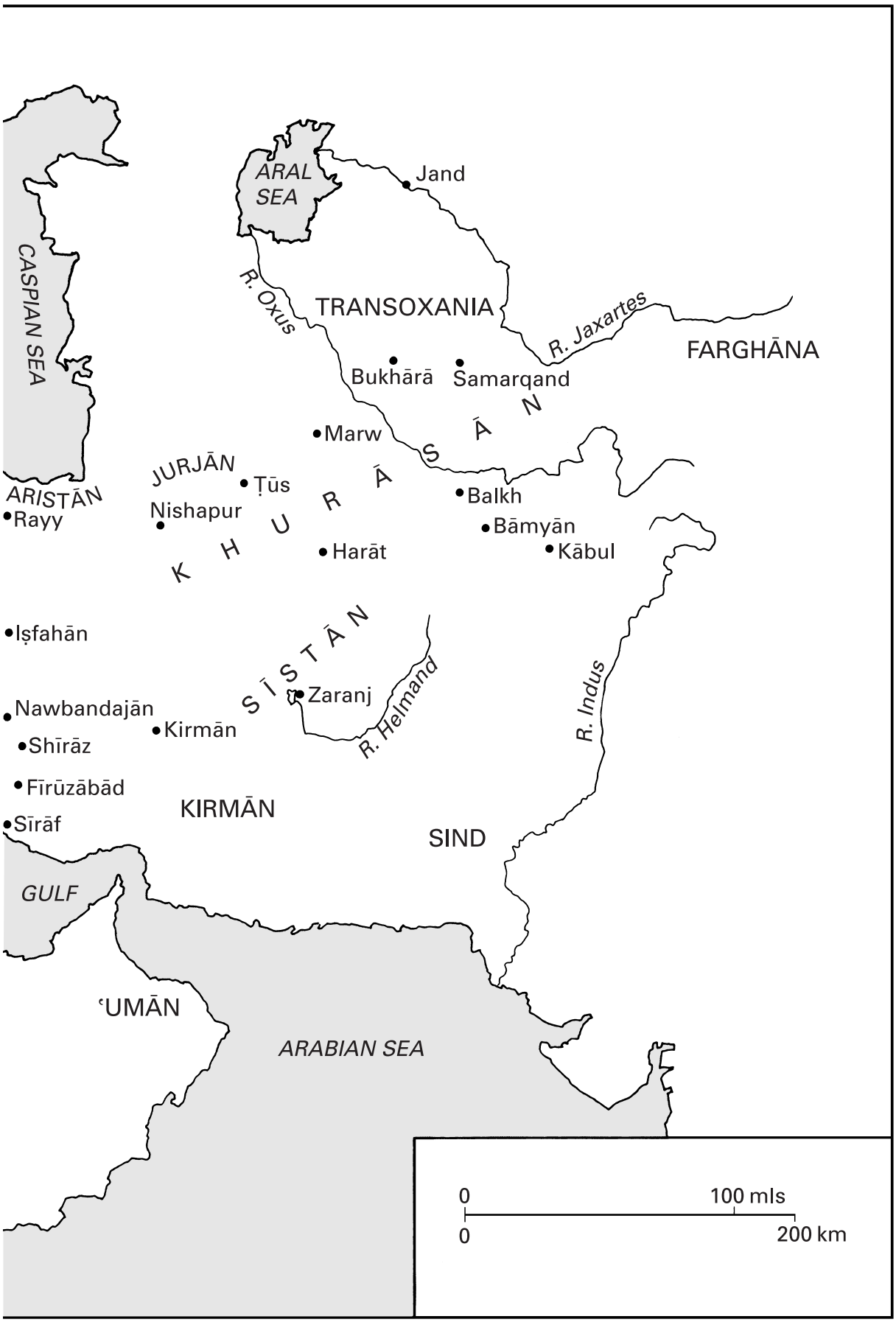
5 The ʿUqaylids of Mosul



6 The Hamdanids of Aleppo and Mosul

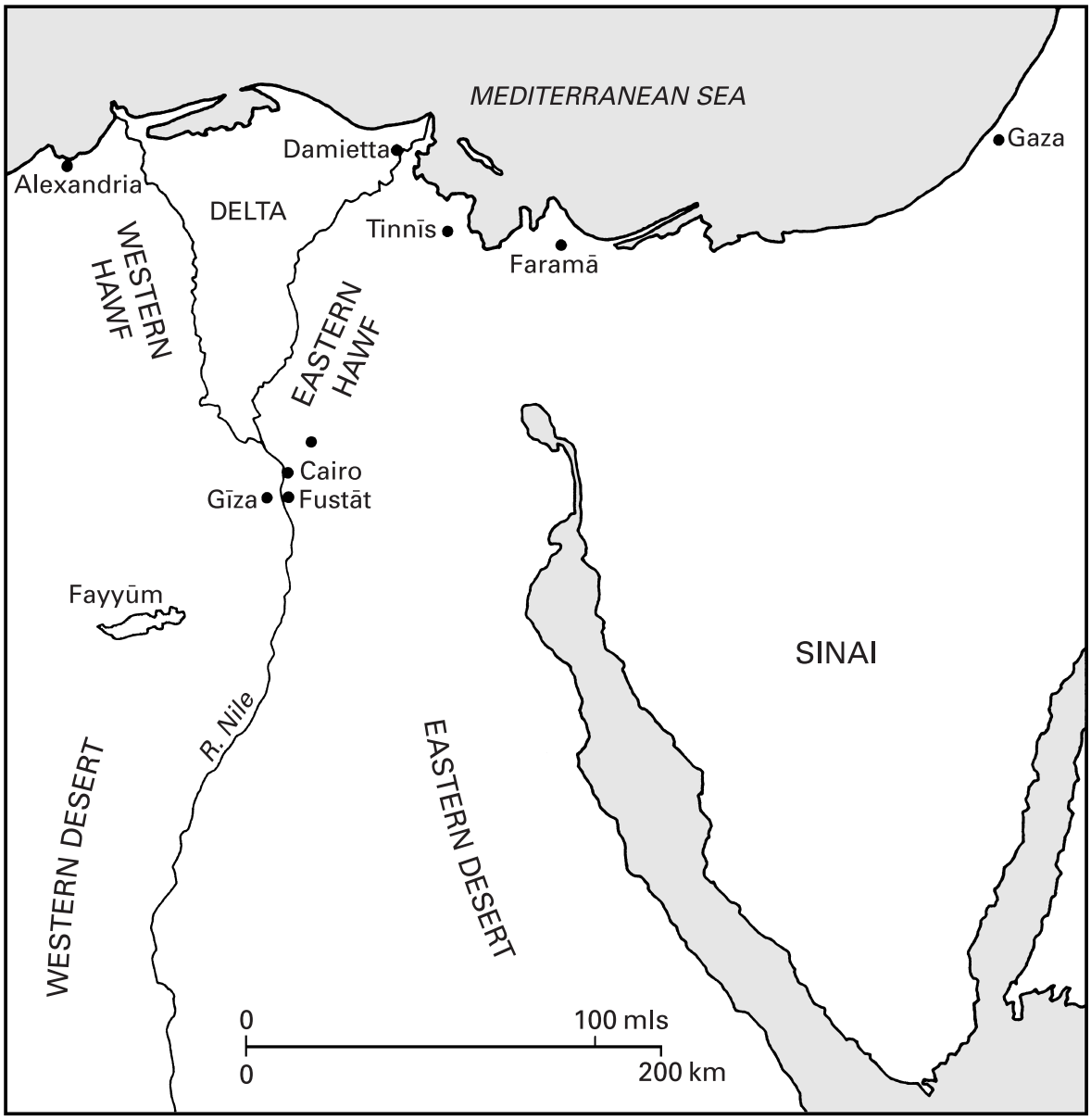
MAPS

1. Provinces of the Early Islamic world


ARAL SEA
Jand
CASPIAN SEA
R. Oxus
TRANSOXANIA
R. Jaxartes
FARGHĀNA
Bukhārā
Samarqand
Marw
JURJĀN
Ṭūs
Nishapur
Rayy
ARISTĀN
Balkh
Bāmyān
Kābul
Harāt
Iṣfahān
SĪSTĀN
Zaranj
R. Helmand
R. Indus
Nawbandajān
Kirmān
Shīrāz
Fīrūzābād
Sīrāf
KIRMĀN
SIND
GULF
ʿUMĀN
ARABIAN SEA
0
100 mls
0
200 km

2. Syria, Palestine and the Western Jazira

3. Iraq and Western Iran


MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Damietta
Gaza
Alexandria
DELTA
Tinnīs
Faramā
WESTERN HAWF
EASTERN HAWF
Cairo
Gīza
Fustāt
Fayyūm
SINAI
R. Nile
WESTERN DESERT
EASTERN DESERT
0
100 mls
0
200 km

4. Egypt

INDEX

al-ʿAbbās b. ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib, 124
al-ʿAbbās b. Fasānjas, 213
al-ʿAbbās b. al-Ḥasan al-Jarjarāʾī, 185, 186
al-ʿAbbās b. al-Maʾmūn, 157, 165
Abuʾl-ʿAbbās al-Shīʿī, 311Ð13
ʿAbd Allāh b. al-ʿAbbās, 125
ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib, 29
ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿAlī al-ʿAbbāsī, 128, 129, 130
ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿĀmir b. Qurayẓ, 71, 84Ð5
ʿAbd Allāh b. Darrāj, 94
ʿAbd Allāh b. Masʿūd, 73
ʿAbd Allāh b. Muʿāwiya al-Ṭālibī, 114, 115, 123
ʿAbd Allāh b. al-Mūʿtazz, 186, 191
ʿAbd Allāh b. Ṭāhir, 154, 156Ð60, 162, 166
ʿAbd Allāh b. Ubayy, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40
ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿUmar (II) b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, 113, 114
ʿAbd Allāh b. ʿUmar (I) b. al-Khaṭṭāb, 75, 80
ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Marwān, 92, 99, 103
ʿAbd al-Dār, 28
ʿAbd al-Qays, tribe, 44
ʿAbd al-Malik b. Marwān, Umayyad Caliph, 93Ð103, 104, 105, 116, 120, 133
ʿAbd Manāf, 28
ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib, 29, 30
ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. ʿAwf, 31, 36, 41, 48, 74
ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. Khālid b. al-Walīd, 86Ð7
ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. Muʿāwiya, 128
ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Ashʿath, 101Ð2, 104
ʿAbd Shams, 26, 28, 29, 31
abnā, 45, 54, 134, 144Ð53, 158, 163, 164, 168, 393
Abraha, 25, 29
Adhruḥ, 78
ʿAḍud al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 205, 207, 213, 226, 230Ð4, 292Ð5, 298
al-Afshīn, 157, 166
Agapius of Manbij, 111, 373
aḥdāth, 208, 246, 301, 322, 393
Aḥmad b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Abī Dulaf, 182
Aḥmad b. ʿAlī al-Jarjarāʾī, 302, 335, 337Ð9
Aḥmad b. Būya *see* Muʿizz al-Dawla
Aḥmad b. Abī Duʾād, 162, 166, 167
Aḥmad b. al-Furāt, 175, 180
Aḥmad b. Ḥanbal, 162
Aḥmad b. Ibrāhīm al-Ḍabbī, 227
Aḥmad b. ʿIsa b. Shaykh, 182
Aḥmad b. Isrāʾīl, 170, 172Ð3
Aḥmad b. Kayghalagh, 311, 312
Aḥmad b. al-Khaṣīb, 170Ð1
Abū Aḥmad al-Mūsawī, 239
Aḥmad b. Naṣr al-Khuzāʿī, 163, 168
Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn, 172, 174, 177, 204, 308Ð10, 312
Ahwāz, 67, 97, 131, 160, 176, 193, 197, 223, 234Ð5
ʿĀʾisha, 46, 52, 75Ð6
Ajnādayn, battle of, 60
Akhlāṭ, 63, 260
al-ʿAlāʾ b. al-Ḥaḍramī, 55
al-ʿAlāʾ b. al-Ḥasan, 235
Alamūt, 217
ʿAlawiyya, Mirdasid princess, 303
Alexandria, 3, 6, 65, 122, 154, 307, 319
Aleppo, 15, 61, 184, 207
  under the Hamdanids, 273Ð80
  under the Mirdasids, 291, 300Ð4
ÒAlī b. Aḥmad al-Mādharāʾī, 310
ʿAlī b. Būya *see* ʿImād al-Dawla
ʿAlī b. al-Furāt, 175, 180, 186, 189, 191Ð2, 287
ʿAlī b. al-Ḥusayn, 95
ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā, Òthe good wazirÓ, 180, 186, 187, 189Ð92, 194, 287
ʿAlī b. ʿĪsā b. Māhān, 144, 147Ð8, 158, 160, 204
Abū ʿAlī b. Ismāʿīl, al-Muwaffaq, 236
ʿAlī al-Jarawī, 154
ʿAlī b. Kāma, 244
ʿAlī b. Mazyad, 293Ð4
ʿAlī b. Muḥammad, leader of the Zanj, 178Ð9
ʿAlī b. Muḥammad the ʿUqaylid, 296
ʿAlī b. Mūsā al-Riḍā, 152Ð3

ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭālib, 31, 51, 52, 53, 70, 82, 83, 84, 169
  Caliphate of, 75Ð81
ʿAlid family, 95, 114, 124, 127, 131Ð2, 139, 152, 153, 161, 171, 178, 225Ð6, 285Ð6
Alptakīn, 205, 224, 321Ð2
Āmid, 1, 182, 239, 249, 261, 263
al-Amīn, ʿAbbasid Caliph, 142Ð3, 147Ð50
Amīna, mother of the Prophet, 30
amīr al-mu'minīn, 52, 78, 79, 161
amīr al-umar ā', 195Ð6, 214, 215, 270
ʿAmir b. Ḍubāra al-Murrī, 115, 126
ʿAmr b. al-ʿĀṣ, 42, 44, 57, 60, 61, 64Ð5, 68, 69, 74, 78, 80, 87
ʿAmr b. Layth the Saffarid, 176, 182Ð3
Abū ʿAmra Kaysān, 96
ʿAnnazids, 251Ð2, 298
Anṣār 34Ð6, 43Ð4, 48, 51Ð5, 57Ð8, 61, 63, 66, 67, 70, 75Ð6, 80, 87, 90, 131, 137, 139
Antioch, 3, 4, 5, 11, 61, 90, 122, 223, 278, 279, 280
Anūshtakīn al-Dizbarī, 205Ð6, 301, 302, 305, 336Ð8
ÒAqaba (by Mecca), 33
ʿAqrabā', battle of, 55
Arabic language, 4, 15Ð16, 117, 119, 120, 199, 202
Aramaic, 4, 13, 119, 202
Ardabīl, 164, 254, 255
Ardamusht, 266, 272
ʿArīb b. Saʿd al-Qurṭubī, 367
Armenia, 5, 8, 87, 92, 108Ð9, 114, 115, 128, 182, 190, 192, 253Ð6, 347
Arrajān, 235, 241
Asad, tribe, 26, 53, 55, 63, 178, 224, 229, 233, 283, 288, 292Ð5
Asad al-Qasrī, 110
al-Ashʿath b. Qays al-Kindī, 45, 54, 56, 58, 67, 71, 74, 78, 84, 94
Ashināṣ, 156, 157, 158, 159, 163, 166, 167
Ashot the Bagratid, 109, 115
ashrāf, 20, 58, 77, 81, 84, 93, 94, 95, 96, 101, 102, 393
ʿaṭā', 68, 70, 71, 85, 88, 101Ð2, 111, 112, 159, 203, 284, 305, 393
ʿAwāna' b. al-Ḥakam, 353
ʿAwāṣim, 143, 181
Aws, tribe, 33, 40
ʿayyārūn, 149, 173, 175, 238
Aẕarbayjān, 9, 74, 114, 164, 190, 191, 194, 253Ð8
Azāriqa, 98
Azd, tribe, 45, 66, 98, 102, 105
al-Azdī, Abū Zakariyyā, 367Ð8
al-ʿAzīz, Fatimid Caliph, 321Ð8

Bābak, 9, 164, 165, 253
Babylon (Egypt), 65
Badhghīs, 135
Badr
  battle of, 35Ð6, 48, 54
  fair at, 39
Badr, freedman of al-Mutawwakil, 183, 184
Badr b. Ḥasanūya, 203, 233, 250Ð2
Badr al-Jamālī, 340
Badrān b. al-Muqallad al-ʿUqaylī, 298
Baghdād
  foundation of, 134Ð5
  sieges of, 149Ð50, 172
  return of Caliphate to, 180Ð1
  under the Buyids, 219Ð20, 224Ð5, 229Ð34, 236Ð40
Bahā' al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 218, 219, 229, 235Ð7, 239, 241
Baḥīra the monk, 30
Bahrām Chōbin, 7, 11, 13, 14
Bahrām b. MāÞnnā, 242
Baḥrayn, 8, 44, 53, 54, 56, 58, 185, 191, 287Ð90
Bajīla, tribe, 56, 66, 67, 108
Bajkam, *amīr al-umar ā'*, 195Ð7
Bākhamrā, battle of, 131
Bakhrā', 113
Bakhtiyār ʿIzz al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 218, 222Ð30, 232Ð3
Bakjūr, 324
al-Balādhurī, Aḥmed b. Yaḥyā, 356Ð9
Balʿamī, Muḥammad, 371
Abū Bakr, 31, 33, 46, 48, 51, 58, 59, 60, 61, 76
  caliphate of, 52Ð7
Bakr b. Wā'il, tribe, 17, 24, 44, 45, 64, 66
Balī, tribe, 42
Bālis, 300, 302
Baltakīn, 324
Balūch, 213, 231
Bamyān, 176
Barīdī family, 193Ð6, 207, 214
Barjuwān, 327Ð9
Barmakids, 132Ð3, 134, 137, 140Ð3, 147, 148

Barmecides *see* Barmakids
Barzikānī Kurds, 233
Baṣra, 68, 71, 73, 76, 80, 84, 98, 101, 115, 131, 178–9, 191, 231–2
al-Basāsīrī, 345
Bāyikbāk, 172, 308
Berbers, 109, 116, 158, 174, 313–14, 318–20, 328, 331, 336
Bishr b. Marwān, 99
Bīsutūn the Ziyarid, 243
Bostra, 3, 23, 30, 41
Bridge, Battle of the, 67, 95
Buʿāth, battle of, 33
Budhdh, 165
Bughā the Elder, 166, 173
Bughā the younger, 166, 168, 171, 172
Bukayr b. Māhān, 126
Bukhārā, 103, 110
Buṣīr, 115
Buṣrā *see* Bostra
Bust, 175
Buwayhids *see* Buyids
Byzantine Empire
  in pre-Islamic times, 1–6, 7, 9, 10, 11, 13, 15, 17, 19, 23, 24, 27
  hostilities with, 61–4, 71, 77–8, 83, 87, 99, 106, 108, 110, 138, 143–4, 146, 158, 164, 177, 204
  expansion of, 223, 274–9, 280–1
  relations with Mirdasids, 302–4
  relations with Fatimids, 318, 325, 328–9, 338
Byzantine frontier districts, 92, 114, 126, 128, 151, 171, 181, 191, 274–9
Būyids, 195, 209–47

Caesarea (Palestine), 61
Cairo, foundation of, 317
  see also Fusṭāṭ
Camel, Battle of, 76
Canton, 121
Carmathians *see* Qarāmiṭa
Caspian Sea, 8, 72, 108, 138, 139, 165, 210, 211
Caucasus, Mountains, 8, 108, 109, 168, 258
Charlemagne, 146
China, 120, 121
Church of the Holy Sepulchre, Jerusalem, 329, 331
coinage, 88, 98–9, 388–94
Constantinople, 2, 5, 11, 87, 105, 106, 110, 117, 122, 143
Constitution of Medina, 34
conversion to Islam, 199–201, 307
Coptic, 4, 64, 119, 120, 373
Copts, 5, 64–5, 202, 307
Crete, 87, 154, 171
Cteisphon, 5, 10, 14, 214
  see also Madāʾin
Cyrus, Patriarch of Alexandria, 6, 64

al-Ḍaḥḥāk b. Qays al-Fihrī, 87, 91, 92
al-Ḍaḥḥāk b. Qays al-Shaybānī, 114
Damascus
  Muslim conquest of, 59, 61, 62
  under the Umayyads, 83, 92, 103, 116
  under the ʿAbbasids, 168, 184–5, 289–91
  under the Fatimids, 318, 321–4, 325, 327–8, 335, 336–7, 338
Daylam, 72, 139, 210–1
Daylamites, 13, 194–5, 210–47, 254–7
Dayr ʿĀqūl, 176, 293
Dayr al-Jāthalīq, battle of, 98
Dayr al-Jamājim, battle of, 101
Daysam the Kurd, 255
dehqān see dihqān
Dhū Qār, battle of, 27
dihqān, 11, 68, 102, 118, 135, 223
Dimashq *see* Damascus
al-Dīnawarī, Aḥmad b. Dāwūd, 335
Dīvdād b. Muḥammad b. Abi'l-Sāj, 184
dīwān, 57, 69, 70, 98–9, 110, 159, 172, 220, 393
Diyarbakr *see* Āmid
Diyār Bakr, 64
Diyār Muḍar, 64
Diyār Rabīʿa, 64
Dizbar the Daylamite, 279, 336
Dome of the Rock, Jerusalem, 103, 104, 118
Druzes, 302, 334
Dubays b. ʿAfīf al-Asadī, 292
Dubays b. ʿAlī the Mazyadid, 294, 298, 306
Dujayl canal, 181
Dulaƀds, 176, 182–3
Dushmanziyār, 244
Dwin, 249, 255, 258–9

Edessa, 4, 23, 63, 304
Egypt
  under Byzantine rule, 3, 4, 5, 6
  Muslim conquest of, 57, 64–5, 81
  governors of, 69, 80, 95, 99
  rulers of, 307–42

Elephant, Day of, 29
Ethiopia, 17, 24, 25, 26, 32
Eutychius of Alexandria, 122, 374

al-Faḍl b. Marwān, 143, 161
al-Faḍl b. al-Rabīʿ, 142, 147
al-Faḍl b. Sahl, 143, 147, 149Ð53
al-Faḍl b. Ṣāliḥ, 323, 324, 327, 331Ð2
al-Faḍl b. Yaḥyā the Barmakid, 140Ð2, 144
Faḍlūya b. ʿAlī, 242
Fakhr al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 219, 230, 233, 243Ð5
Fakhr al-Mulk, governor of Baghdad, 237, 294
Family of the Prophet, 89, 112, 114, 116, 124Ð7, 131, 136Ð7, 141, 152, 316
Faramā, 65
Farewell pilgrimage, 46, 348
Farghana, 104, 312
Fārs, 3, 6, 7, 13, 71, 72, 98, 117, 118, 131, 160, 176, 181, 183, 184, 187, 188, 190, 194, 197
  under the Buyids, 212Ð15, 217, 230Ð2, 233, 235, 237Ð8, 241Ð3
Farwa b. Musayk al-Murādī, 45
Fasānjas, family of, 213, 220, 242
al-Fatḥ b. Khāqān, 168, 169, 171
Fātik, 206
Fāṭima, 51, 96, 124
Fatimids, 122, 288, 289, 313Ð42
Fayrūz the Daylamite, 45
Fiḥl, battle of, 61
Fijār, war of, 27, 30
Fīrūzābād, 242
France, Arab raids on, 110, 121
Banu'l-Furāt, 175, 180, 186, 221, 224, 316
Fusṭāṭ, 65, 154, 159, 307, 309, 310, 317

Ganja, 249, 258Ð9
Gaza, 23, 26, 35, 60, 325
Georgians, 8, 258, 261
Ghadīr Khumm, 226, 227, 320
Ghassān, tribe, 61
Ghassanids, 1, 3, 4, 16, 20, 21, 24
Ghaṭafān, tribe, 17, 38, 39, 53, 55
ghazw, 21, 22, 59, 393
ghulām (pl. *ghilmān*), 204Ð9, 249, 269, 283, 295, 324, 325, 337, 345, 393
Ghuzz Turks, 242Ð3, 247, 248, 257, 294, 298Ð9, 345
Gīlān, 210
Gulf, 8, 15, 23, 79, 97, 232

Ḥadath, 143, 276, 277
Hadhbānī Kurds, 249, 253, 256, 298
al-Hādi, ʿAbbasid caliph, 138Ð40, 141
Hajar, 287
al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf al-Thaqafī, 98, 101Ð4, 105, 113, 116, 132, 143
al-Ḥakam b. al-Walīd, 112
al-Ḥākim, Fatimid caliph, 327Ð35
Ḥalab *see* Aleppo
Ḥalīma, 29
Hamadhān, 71, 149, 243, 244Ð5, 249, 251
Ḥamāh, 186
Ḥamdān b. Ḥamdūn al-Taghlibī, 184, 268Ð9
Hamdanids, 182, 185, 191, 194, 196, 205, 207, 219, 232Ð3, 339
  rulers of Mosul, 265Ð73
  rulers of Aleppo, 273Ð82
Ḥāmid b. al-ʿAbbās, 189, 190
Ḥamza, 38
Hanbalis, 227
Ḥanīfa, tribe, 17, 22, 44, 47, 53, 54, 55, 56, 97, 178
Hanẓala b. Ṣafwān, 109
ḥaram, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 31, 34, 41, 43, 46, 393
Ḥarbiyya quarter of Baghdad, 149
A-Ḥārith b. al-Ḥakam, 75
Ḥarra, battle of, 90, 91
Ḥarrān, 64, 111, 114, 116, 295, 304, 305, 362
Harthama b. Aʿyan, 145, 149Ð51
Hārūn b. Khumārawayh the Tulunid, 181, 185
Hārūn al-Rashīd *see* al-Rashīd
Ḥasā', 287, 290
al-Ḥasan b. ʿAlī, called Ibn al-ʿAmmār, 318, 327Ð8
al-Ḥasan b. ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭalib, 51, 80, 89, 96
al-Ḥasan b, ʿAlī al-Utrūsh, 211
al-Ḥasan al-Aʿṣam, 289
al-Ḥasan al-ʿAskarī, the ʿAlid, 225
al-Ḥasan b. Būya *see* Rukn al-Dawla
al-Ḥasan b. al-Ḥusayn al-Ḥamdānī, 303, 338Ð9
al-Ḥasan b. Marwān the Marwanid, 260Ð1
al-Ḥasan b. Muhammad al-Muhāllabī, 221, 222, 227
al-Ḥasan b. Sahl, 152Ð3
Hasanuyids, 207, 209, 230, 233, 244, 249, 250Ð2

Hāshim b. ʿAbd Manāf, 23, 26, 28, 29, 31, 32
Abū Hāshim b. Muḥammad b. al-Ḥanaƀyya, 124, 125
Hashimites, 124
Hāshimiyya, 134
Ḥassān b. Mālik b, Baḥdal al-Kalbī, 87, 90, 91, 92, 93
Hawāzin, 30, 43, 56
Hawdha b. ʿAlī, 55
Ḥawrān, 3, 91, 291
Ḥawwārīn, 90
al-Haytham b. ʿAdī, 353
Heraclius, Byzantine emperor, 5, 6, 7, 14, 42, 57, 61, 63, 64, 65, 66
Hijra, 5, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 52
Hilāl al-Ṣābī, 186, 242, 360Ð1, 363
Ḥilf al-Fuḍūl, 29, 30
Ḥilla, 207, 292, 295
ḥimāya, 208Ð9, 249, 294, 300, 393
Ḥims *see* Homs
Himyarites, 17, 24
Ḥīra, 8, 11, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 23, 24, 25, 27, 59, 66, 68
Hirā, mount, 30
Hishām b. ʿAbd al-Malik, Umayyad caliph, 99, 108Ð12, 113, 116, 128, 132, 143
Homs, 16, 62, 63, 87, 90, 92, 114, 181, 300
Hormizd IV, Sasanian king, 13
Ḥudaybiyya, 41Ð2, 46
Ḥujr b. ʿAdī al-Kindī, 78, 84
Ḥumayma, 125, 126
Ḥunayn, battle of, 43Ð4
al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī b. al-Hasan, 139
al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī b. al-Maghribī, 202, 228, 262, 299, 332Ð3
al-Ḥusayn b. ʿAlī b. Abī Ṭalib, 51, 89, 95, 96, 111, 123, 124, 126
al-Ḥusayn b. Ḥamdān, 182, 185, 191, 266Ð7

Ibn ʿAbd al-Ḥakam, 64
Ibn al-ʿAdīm, 368
Ibn al-ʿAmīd the Elder, 230, 244Ð5, 364
Ibn al-ʿAmīd the Younger, 245, 368
Ibn ʿAsākir, 374
Ibn al-Athīr, 368
Ibn Aʿtham al-Kūfī, 357
Ibn al-Balkhī, 231, 243, 371
Ibn Baqiyya, 222, 223, 364
Ibn al-Faqīh al-Hamadhānī, 361
Ibn al-Fāriqī, 262, 368
Ibn Ḥawqal, 202, 269, 270, 276, 291, 295, 366
Ibn Isḥāq, 60, 119, 351Ð2, 352
Ibn Kākūya, 244, 245
Ibn Khallikān, 367
Ibn Maʿrūf, *qāḍī* of Baghdad, 234
Ibn al-Mudabbir, 308
Ibn Muqla, ʿAbbasid *wazīr*, 190, 194
Ibn al-Muʿtazz *see* ʿAbd Allah b. al-Muʿtazz
Ibn Muyassar, 370
Ibn al-Nadīm, 199
Ibn al-Qalānisī, 205, 363
Ibn Rā'iq *see* Muḥammad b. Rā'iq
Ibn Rusta, 352, 367
Ibn Saʿd, 355, 358
Ibn Ṣāliḥān, 237
Ibn Abī Sarḥ, 74
Ibn Shīrzād, 196, 215
Ibn Sīnā (Avicenna), 199, 245
Ibn Ṭabāṭabā *see* Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm
Ibn Ṭūlūn *see* Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn
Ibn Ustādh-hurmuz, 236Ð7, 239, 251, 291, 293Ð4
Ibn al-Zayyāt *see* Muḥammad b. al-Zayyāt
Ibn al-Zubayr *see* ʿAbd Allāh b. al-Zubayr
Ibn Ẓulāq al-Laythī, 369
Ibrāhīm b. ʿAbd Allāh the ʿAlid, 131
Ibrāhīm b. Hilāl al-Ṣābī, 366
Ibrāhīm al-Khaṭṭjī, 185
Ibrāhīm b. al-Mahdī, 151, 153, 158
Ibrāhīm b. Mālik al-Ashtar, 94, 96, 97
Ibrāhīm b. Muḥammad al-ʿAbbāsī, 126, 127
Ibrāhīm b. al-Walīd b. ʿAbd al-Malik, 114
Ifrīqiya, 128, 145, 313, 314, 315, 326
Idrīs b. ʿAbd Allāh the ʿAlid, 139
Ikhshidids, 311Ð13, 318
ʿIkrima b. Abī Jahl, 42Ð3, 54, 56, 58
īlāf, 26
ʿImād al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 211Ð15, 216, 219
Indian Ocean, 23, 121, 344
iqṭāʿ, 138, 190, 203, 207, 220, 221, 223, 230, 236, 333
Iran
  under the Sasanians, 6Ð14
  Muslim conquest of, 67Ð8, 71Ð2, 84Ð6, 103Ð4, 109Ð10

Iraq
  under the Sasanians, 8Ð17
  Muslim conquest of, 66Ð8
  economic decline of, 187Ð8
  under the Buyids, 214, 219Ð30, 232Ð41
ʿĪsā b. Mūsā al-ʿAbbāsī, 129, 136
ʿĪsā b. Nasṭūris, 327, 328
ʿĪsā al-Nawsharī, 183
ʿĪsā b. Zayd the ʿAlid, 136
Iṣfahān, 67, 71, 178, 181, 182, 183, 212, 217, 243, 244
al-Iṣfahānī, Abu'l-Faraj, 199, 245
Isḥāq b. Ibrāhīm the Tahirid, 160
Isḥāq b. Kundājīq, 174, 177, 182
Isḥāq b. Muslim al-ʿUqaylī, 109, 115, 128
Ismāʿīlīs, 124, 285Ð6, 313, 319Ð20
Ismāʿīl b. ʿAbbād *see* Ṣāḥib b. ʿAbbād
Ismāʿīl b. Aḥmad the Samanid, 183
Ismāʿīl b. Bulbul, 174Ð5, 182
Ispabādhs of Ṭabaristān, 217
Ītākh, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 166, 167, 169
ʿIyāḍ b. Ghanm, 62Ð3
ʿIzz al-Dawla *see* Bakhtiyār

Jābiya, 62, 63, 64, 91, 92, 110
Jacobite church *see* Monophysites
Jaʿfar b. al-Faḍl b. al-Furāt, 316
Jaʿfar b. Fallāḥ, 318
Abū Jaʿfar al-Ḥajjāj, 251
Jaʿfar b. Mūsā al-Hādī, 140
Jaʿfar al-Ṣādiq, 132, 225, 240
Jaʿfar b. Abī Ṭālib, 42, 123
Jaʿfar b. Yaḥyā the Barmakid, 140Ð1
Abū Jahl, 31, 35, 36, 37
al-Jahshiyārī, Muḥammad b. ʿAbdūs, 360
Jalāl al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 238, 241, 298
Jalūlā', battle of, 67
Jand, 343
Jarīr b. ʿAbd Allāh al-Bajalī, 43, 66, 67, 71, 78, 84
Banu'l-Jarrāḥ (family of *kuttāb*), 175, 180, 186Ð7, 191, 221
BanuÕl-Jarāḥ (chiefs of Ṭayy), 304, 333, 336Ð7
Jawhar, Fatimid general, 316Ð17, 318, 320, 322
Jaxartes, R., 122, 343Ð4
Jaysh b. Khumārawayh the Tulunid, 181
Jaysh b. al-Ṣamṣāma, 328, 331
Jazīra
  Muslim conquest of, 62Ð4, 81, 87
  Khawārij in, 114, 141, 255, 266
  under the Hamdanids, 265Ð73
  under the ʿUqaylids, 219, 295Ð300
Jews, 12Ð13, 117, 119, 162, 167, 319, 323, 329Ð30
  in Medina, 28, 33, 34, 36Ð40
jizya, 45, 68, 107, 269, 394
St John of Damascus, 118
John of Nikiou, 64
Judhām, tribe, 41, 42, 60, 61, 92, 283
Julanda, sons of, 53, 54
Jurjān, 138, 247
Justanids, 217

Kaʿba, 20, 26, 41, 42, 43, 98, 192, 288
Kābul, 85, 176
Kāfūr al-Ikhshīdī, 312Ð13, 316
Kalb, tribe, 41, 92, 99, 100, 105, 109, 114, 274, 283, 302
Abū Kālījār Marzbān, Buyid ruler, 238Ð41
Karaj, 183, 212
Karbalā', 89, 90, 228
Kāren family, 11
Kavād I, Sasanian king, 9
Kayghalagh, 174
Kaysūm, 154
Kāzirūn, 213, 231, 242
Khadīja, 30, 32
Khafāja, tribe, 229, 293, 294, 297, 298, 305
Khālid b. ʿAbd Allāh al-Qasrī, 108, 110, 111, 112, 116, 128
Khālid b. Saʿīd b. al-ʿAṣ, 45
Khālid b. al-Walīd, 37, 42, 43, 54, 55, 56, 58, 60Ð1, 62, 66, 86
Khalīfa b. Khayyāt, 355
Khalīfat Rasūl Allāh, 52, 54
khandaq, battle of the, 39, 40, 41
kharāj, 68, 94, 107, 181, 189Ð90, 220
Kharijites *see* Khawārij
al-Khaṣībī, *wazīr*, 192
Khawārij, 79Ð80, 84, 97, 98, 100, 109, 113, 114, 115, 145, 175, 182, 255, 266
Khaybar, 22, 38
al-Khayzurān, 140
Khazars, 108Ð9, 156
Khāzir, river, battle of, 94
Khazraj, tribe, 33
Khirbet al-Mafjar, 118, 376

Khumārawayh b. Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn, 177, 181, 184, 310, 312
Khunāṣira, 300
Khusrau I Anūshirvān, 8, 9, 10
Khusrau II Parvēz, 5, 7, 11, 13, 14, 66
Khurāsān
  under the Sasanians, 10, 14
  Muslim conquest of, 72, 85, 86, 87, 103Ð4, 109Ð10
  under the ʿAbbasids, 115, 124Ð7, 130, 135Ð6, 144, 148Ð9, 159Ð60
Khurāsāniyya, 127Ð38, 144, 153, 155
Khurramiyya, 9
Khuzāʿa, tribe, 26
Khūzistān, 67, 219, 221, 333
Khwārazm, 103
Kināna, tribe, 26
Kilāb, tribe, 92, 274, 281Ð2, 283, 284, 287, 289, 291, 300Ð5, 336
Kinda, kings of, 17, 24
Kinda, tribe, 45, 78
al-Kindī, Muḥammad b. Yūsuf, 158Ð9, 369
Kirmān, 8, 72, 176, 213, 231, 236, 241Ð2
Kūfa
  under the *Rāshidūn* caliphs, 20, 63, 68Ð9, 71, 73, 76Ð80
  under the Umayyads, 84Ð6, 89, 93Ð7, 100Ð2, 111Ð12, 115
  under the Mazyadids and ʿUqaylids, 292, 297, 298
Kūfa, governors of, 69, 71, 73, 74, 85
al-Kulaynī, 225
kūra, 10
Kurds, 13, 119, 182, 206, 242, 244
  Kurdish rulers, 248Ð64
kuttāb, 137Ð8, 161, 170, 175, 185, 186, 192, 193, 316, 328, 329, 394

Abū Lahab, 29, 31, 32
Lakhm, tribe, 42, 56, 60, 61, 283
Lakhmids, 1, 8, 11, 13, 14, 17, 24, 66
Lu'lu', ruler of Aleppo, 281Ð2

Madā'in, 10, 67, 68, 297
  see also Ctesiphon
Mādharā'ī family, 188, 189, 310, 311, 312, 313
maghāriba, 170, 172, 315, 394
Māh al-Kūfa, 84
mahdī, 95, 96, 123, 124, 178, 285
al-Mahdī, ʿAbbasid caliph, 133, 135, 136Ð9, 140, 142, 145, 148
al-Mahdī, Fatimid caliph *see* ʿUbayd Allāh
Maḥmūd of Ghazna, 228, 240, 241, 242, 244
Majd al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 244
Makhzūm, clan of Quraysh, 28, 31, 42, 54, 58, 97
Malaṭiya, 64, 143, 276, 278, 279
Mālik al-Ashtar, 74, 77, 78, 80, 84
al-Malik al-Raḥīm, Buyid ruler, 345
mamlūk see ghulām
al-Ma'mūn, ʿAbbasid caliph, 142, 147Ð57, 158, 160, 161, 162, 164Ð5, 174
Manbij, 90
Manjūtakīn, 325, 328
al-Manṣūr, ʿAbbasid caliph, 127Ð36, 137, 140, 145, 164
Manṣūr b. Jumhūr al-Kalbī, 113, 115
Manṣūr b. Lu'lu', ruler of Aleppo, 281
al-Maqrīzī, 369, 370
Marāgha, 164
Marʿash, 143, 276, 278
Mardāvīj b. Ziyār, 195, 201, 211Ð12, 214
Mārib, 24, 211Ð12
Marj Rāhiṭ, battle of, 92, 100, 105
Marv, 8, 72, 86, 103, 115, 147, 151Ð2
Marwanids of Mayyāfāriqīn, 207, 209, 249, 261Ð4
Marwān (I) b. al-Ḥakam, Umayyad caliph, 75, 83, 90, 91Ð3, 99, 109
Marwān (II) b. Muḥammad, Umayyad caliph, 110, 111, 114Ð16, 117, 128, 129, 130
marzbān, 8, 10
Marzbān b. MusāÞr, 255Ð7, 258
Maronites, 6
Mashhad, 153, 228
Maslama b. ʿAbd al-Malik, 106, 108, 110, 111
Maslama b. Mukhallad al-Anṣārī, 87
Maṣṣīṣa, 143, 275, 277
Masts, Battle of the, 71
al-Mas ʿūdī, ʿAlī b. al-Ḥusayn, 199, 357
mawlā, (pl. *mawālī*), 88, 94, 95, 96, 102, 105, 106Ð7, 109, 112, 114, 115, 138
Masẉil *see* Mosul
Mayyāfāriqīn, 260Ð3
Mazdakites, 9
Mazyadids, 207, 290, 292Ð5
Māzyār b. Qārin, 165

Mecca
in pre-Islamic times, 21Ð8
in the time of Muḥammad, 29Ð49, 97, 100, 333
Medina
Muḥammad in, 33Ð49
as capital of the *Rāshidūn* Caliphs, 50Ð81, 90, 131, 136, 139
Mediterranean Sea, 23, 24, 71, 120, 122, 326, 341
Michael the Syrian, 373
Abū Mikhnaf, 119, 353, 355
Mirdasids of Aleppo, 207, 291, 300Ð6
Miskawayh, Abū ʿAlī, 186, 188, 221, 228, 244, 363
Monophysite Christianity, 4, 5, 6, 20, 64Ð5, 117, 119, 278, 373
see also Copts
Mosul, 63, 67, 94, 133, 164, 177, 182, 191, 194, 197
under the Hamdanids, 219, 221, 223, 233, 265Ð73
under the ʿUqaylids, 236, 295Ð299
Muʿāwiya b. Ḥudayj al-Kindī, 74
Muʿāwiya b. Abī Sufyān, Umayyad caliph, 35, 48, 58
as governor of Syria, 62, 63, 64, 69, 76Ð7, 78, 79, 80, 81
caliphate of, 82Ð9, 93, 94, 98, 105, 110, 120, 227
Muʿāwiya (II) b. Yazīd, Umayyad caliph, 90
al-Muʾayyad b. al-Mutawwakil, 167
Muʾayyid al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 219, 233, 245
Muḍar, tribe, 16, 26, 64
al-Mughīra b. Shuʿba al-Thaqafī, 67Ð8, 84Ð5, 86, 100
Muhājir b. Abī Umayya, 56
muhājirūn, 33, 34, 35, 36, 38, 48, 50, 51, 52, 54, 55, 57, 70, 132, 139, 394
al-Muhallab b. Abī Ṣufra, 98, 100
family of, 128, 134, 156, 223
Muḥammad b. ʿAbd Allāh, the Prophet of Allāh, 5, 19, 20, 22, 23, 25Ð8, 51, 52, 54, 55, 56, 59, 66, 81, 84, 89
early life of, 29Ð33
in Medina, 33Ð49
Muḥammad b. ʿAbd Allāh, the Pure Soul, 130Ð2, 139
Muḥammad b. Aḥmad b. ʿĪsā b. Shaykh, 182
Muḥammad b. ʿAlī al-ʿAbbāsī, 124, 125
Muḥammad b. Dāwud the Jarrahid, 180, 186
Muḥammad b. al-ḤanaÞyya, 95Ð7, 123, 124
Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan b. Fasānjas, 232
Muḥammad b. al-Ḥasan al-Ṭūsī, 226
Muḥammad b. Ibrāhīm b. Ṭabāṭabā, 152
Muḥammad b. Ilyās, 213, 231
Muḥammad b. Khālid al-Qasrī, 128
Muḥammad b. Marwān, the Umayyad, 93, 99, 109
Muḥammad b. Rāʾiq, 195, 204
Muḥammad b. Abi'l-Sāj, 182
Muḥammad b. Sulaymān *al-kātib*, 181, 184Ð5
Muḥammad b. Ṭāhir, 176
Muḥammad b. Ṭughj, *al-Ikhshīd*, 185, 194, 196, 311Ð12, 315
Muḥammad b. ʿUmar al-ʿAlawī, 234Ð5
Muḥammad b. Wāṣil al-Tamīmī, 176
Muḥammad b. Yāqūt, 196
Muḥammad b. Yūsuf al-Thaqafī, 104
Muḥammad b. al-Zayyāt, 161, 166, 167, 168, 170
al-Muḥassin b. ʿAlī b. al-Furāt, 191Ð2
al-Muhtadī, ʿAbbasid caliph, 158, 170, 173
al-Muʿizz, Fatimid caliph, 316, 319Ð20
Muʿizz al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 194, 196, 212, 216, 218, 219Ð21, 227, 232
Mukhtār b. Abī ʿUbayd, 93Ð7, 101, 123, 124
Mukhtāra, 178Ð9
al-Muktafī, ʿAbbasid caliph, 147, 183Ð5, 186, 187
munāÞqūn, 36
al-Mundhir b. Sāwā, 53, 54
Muʾnis al-Muẓaffar, 186Ð7, 188, 191Ð2, 311
MuntaÞq, tribe, 290
al-Muntaṣir, ʿAbbasid caliph, 167, 169Ð71
al-Muqaddasī, 199, 202, 231, 320, 366
al-Muqallad b. ʿAlī the Mazyadid, 294
al-Muqallad b. Kāmil the Mirdasid, 303
al-Muqallad b. al-Musayyib the ʿUqaylid, 236, 296Ð7
al-Muqannaʿ, 135Ð6
al-Muqtadir, ʿAbbasid caliph, 183, 185Ð93, 227
Abū Mūsā al-Ashʿarī, 67, 69, 71, 74, 79
Mūsā b. Bughā the Elder, 172Ð4, 176, 179, 195, 196, 204

Muṣʿab b. al-Zubayr, 93, 96, 97, 98
al-Musabbiḥī, Muḥammad b. ʿUbayd Allāh, 370Đ1
Musaylima, 44, 47, 53, 54, 55, 60, 178
Musharrif al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 237Đ8
Abū Muslim, 115, 126, 127, 129Đ30, 135, 136, 159
al-Mustaʿīn, ʿAbbasid caliph, 171Đ2, 173
al-Mustakfī, ʿAbbasid caliph, 196, 215Đ16, 217
Muʾta, battle of, 42, 46
al-Muʿtaḍid, ʿAbbasid caliph, 179Đ84, 186
al-Muʿtamid, ʿAbbasid caliph, 174Đ9
al-Muʿtaṣim, ʿAbbasid caliph, 143, 154Đ5, 156Đ60, 163Đ6, 171, 181
al-Mutawwakil, ʿAbbasid caliph, 159, 160, 160, 162, 167Đ71, 240
Muʿtazila, -ism, 141, 161Đ2, 167, 240
al-Muʿtazz, ʿAbbasid caliph, 167, 170, 172Đ3
al-Muthanna b. Ḥāritha al-Shaybānī, 66
al-Muṭīʿ, ʿAbbasid caliph, 223, 239
al-Muttaqī, ʿAbbasid caliph, 196
al-Muwaffaq the ʿAbbasid, 172Đ4, 176, 177, 179Đ80
al-Muwaffaq Abū ʿAlī *see* Abū ʿAlī Ismāʿīl

Naḍīr, tribe, 33, 38
Nahrawān, 79
Nahrawān Canal, 197
Najd, 53, 54, 55, 67
Najdiyya, 97Đ8
Najrān, 21, 45, 56
Nakhla, 26
naqībs, 33, 125, 394
al-Narshakhī, Muḥammad b. Jaʿfar, 372
Nāṣir al-Dawla, Hamdanid ruler, 196, 219, 270Đ3
Nāṣir-i Khusrau, 203, 339
Naṣr al-Dawla, Marwānid ruler, 261Đ8
Abū Naṣr Khwāshāda, 237
Naṣr b. Ṣāliḥ the Mirdasid, 302
Naṣr b. Sayyār, 111, 115, 145
Naṣar b. Shabath al-ʿUqaylī, 154
naṣṣ, 125
al-Nawbakhtī, 225
Nawbandajān, 212
Nawfal, clan, 26, 28
Nestorian church, 12, 175
Nihāvand, battle of, 71
Nīmrūz, 14
Nīshāpūr, 72, 176
Niṣībīn, 1, 8, 13, 63, 295, 298, 300
Nubāta b. Hanẓala al-Kilābī, 112, 126
Nubia, 71, 121
al-Nuʿmān, Lakhmid ruler, 14, 27
al-Nuʿmān b. Muḥammad, the *qāḍī*, 315, 319
  family of, 319, 327, 332
Numayr, tribe, 295

Oman *see* ʿUmān
Ostūn, 10
Oxus river, 110, 135

Palmyra, 23, 60
Palmyrena, 92, 100
Peacock Army, 101
Pella *see* Fiḥl
Pelusium, 65
Persian Empire *see* Sasanians
Persians in pre-Islamic Arabia, 15, 17, 25, 45, 53, 54, 56, 133
Persian language, 125, 133, 371Đ2
plague, 2, 62, 115
Poitiers, battle of, 121, 122

Qābus b. Vushmgīr, Ziyarid ruler, 233, 243
qāḍīs, 133, 162, 166, 185, 210, 234, 239, 246
  of Egypt, 307, 315, 316, 317, 320
al-Qādir, ʿAbbasid caliph, 229, 239Đ41
Qādisiyya, battle of, 67
al-Qāhir, ʿAbbasid caliph, 191, 193Đ4
Qaḥṭaba b. Shabīb al-Ṭayyī, 115, 126
al-Qāʾim, ʿAbbasid caliph, 241
Qarāmiṭa, 178, 183Đ4, 185, 191Đ2, 266Đ7, 285Đ90, 313Đ14, 318, 320
Qarmīsīn, 250, 252
Qarqīsiyyā, 92, 94, 99
Qarqūya, ruler of Aleppo, 280Đ1
al-Qāsim b. ʿUbayd Allāh, *wazīr*, 180, 184, 185, 188
Qaynuqāʾ, tribe, 33, 36
Qayrawān, 109, 314, 315
Qays, tribal group, 16, 63, 86, 91Đ4, 99, 100, 103, 105, 106, 111, 117, 125, 128, 129, 130, 132, 149, 151, 154, 168
Qays b. Saʿd b. Ubāda, 76
Qazvīn, 71, 183, 245, 246
Qinnasrīn, 16, 61, 90, 92, 181
Qirwāsh b. al-Muqallad al-ʿUqaylī, 202, 238, 239, 293Đ4, 297Đ300

Qiwām al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 241
Qudāma b. Jaʿfar, 361
Qufṣ, 213, 231
Qumm, 185, 228
al-Qummī, al-Ḥasan b. Muḥammad, 372
Qurʾān, 16, 30, 38, 41, 43, 70, 73, 74, 78, 111, 113, 116, 118, 123, 161Ð2
Quraysh, tribe
  in pre-Islamic times, 17, 21, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 46
  in opposition to Muḥammad, 30Ð2, 35, 36, 40, 44
  in the early Islamic state, 48, 51, 56, 58, 61, 62, 66, 70, 75, 76, 80, 82, 86Ð7, 89, 96, 97
Qurayẓa, tribe, 33, 39
Quṣayy, 25, 26, 28, 29
Qutayba b. Muslim, 105, 128

Rabīʿa, tribe, 64
al-Rabīʿ b. Yūnus, 137, 139
al-Rāḍī, ʿAbbasid caliph, 142Ð3, 194
RāÞʿ b. Layth, 145
Raḥba, 300, 302
raʾīs al-balad, 208, 246, 301, 394
Rajāʾ b. Ḥaywa al-Kindī, 105
Ramla, 99, 106, 111, 289, 322, 323
Rāmhurmuz, 231
Raqqa, 63, 78, 134, 144, 174, 177, 182, 191, 196
al-Rashīd, ʿAbbāsid caliph, 133, 138, 140Ð7, 158
Rashīq al-Nasīmī, 279
Rawanduz, 256
Rawḥ b. Zinbāʿ al-Judhāmī, 93
Rawwadids, 207, 256Ð7
Rayy, 11, 71, 135, 137, 148Ð9, 178, 183, 184, 194
  Buyid kingdom of, 211, 214Ð15, 217, 230, 233, 243Ð6
Red Sea, 23, 344
Rhodes, 87
Ridda wars, 45, 54Ð7, 58, 60, 61, 66, 67, 68, 134
Risāla al-Qādiriyya, 239Ð40
Rukn al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 212, 214, 216, 217, 218, 219, 229, 243Ð5, 278
Russia, Russians, 108, 256
Rustam, Persian general, 67
Rūzbahān b. Vindād-Khurshīd, 217, 221

sābiqa, 48, 58, 69, 70, 75, 394
Sabuktakin of Baghdad, 206, 223Ð4, 228, 251
Sabuktakīn of Ghazna, 223
Sābūr b. Ardashīr, 118, 212, 226
Saʿd al-Dawla, Hamdanid ruler, 205, 280Ð1
Saʿd b. Muʿādh, 36, 40, 43
Saʿd b. Ubāda, 43, 44, 48, 76
Saʿd b. Abī Waqqāṣ, 31, 57, 67Ð8, 75
ṣadaqa, 44, 45, 53, 54, 63, 94, 107, 394
al-Saffāḥ, ʿAbbasid caliph, 115, 127Ð9, 130, 136
Saffarids, 175Ð6, 182Ð8, 184, 190
Ṣafwān b. Umayya, 42Ð3, 48
Ṣāḥib b. ʿAbbād, 219, 221, 245, 246, 366
Saʿīd b. al-ʿĀṣ, 71, 73, 74
Saʿīd b. al-Biṭrīq *see* Eutychius
Saʿīd al-Dawla, Hamdanid ruler, 281
Abū Saʿīd al-Jannābī, 287, 289
Ṣāʿid b. Makhlad, 174
Sajāḥ, prophetess, 54
Sajids, 182
  see also Yūsuf b. Abi'l-Sāj
Abū Salama, 126, 127
Ṣāliḥ b. ʿAlī al-ʿAbbāsī, 132
Ṣāliḥ b. Mirdās, Mirdasid ruler, 281, 291, 301Ð2, 336
Ṣāliḥ b. al-Waṣīf, 172, 173, 196
Sālim b. Mustafād, 301
Seljuks, 343Ð5
Salmās, 249
Samanids, 183, 211, 213, 218, 243, 271
Samarqand, 103, 110
Sāmarrā, 135, 153, 160, 162Ð3, 167Ð73, 174, 175, 180, 197, 377, 380
Ṣamṣām al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 234Ð6
Saqāliba, 314, 394
Abu'l-Sarāyā, 152
Sāriyya, 165
Sarjūn b. Manṣūr, 87
Sasanian Empire, 1, 5, 6Ð14, 17, 19, 23, 24, 27, 68, 72, 73, 117, 212, 214, 221
Sawād of Iraq, 12, 16, 66, 68, 73, 74, 79, 99, 112, 134, 175, 187Ð8, 197, 293
Ṣawāfī, 10, 68, 73, 88, 110, 111, 133
Sayf al-Dawla, Hamdanid ruler, 205, 273Ð80, 290
Sayf b. ʿUmar, 358
Sea of Galilee, 99
Severus b. al-Muqaffaʿ, 379

Shabānkāra Kurds, 254
Shaddadids, 249, 258–9
Shahrazūr, 251
shāhanshāh, 217–19
Shākiriyya, 170, 171
Sharaf al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 219, 234–5
sharīf see ashrāf
Sharīf al-Rāḍī, 226
Sharīf al-Murtaḍā, 226
Sharwa b. Mamma, 261
Shaybān, tribe, 18, 19, 66, 114, 155, 182, 183, 224, 233
Shaykh al-Mufīd, 226
Shi'ism, under the Buyids, 225–9, 238–40
al-Shamshāṭī, 'Alī b. Muḥammad, 368
Shīrāz, 199, 217, 218, 219, 222, 231, 242
al-Shīrāzī, 'Abd al-'Azīz b. Yūsuf, 366
Shujā' b. al-Qāsim, 171
Shuraḥbīl b. Ḥasana, 60, 62
Shuraḥbīl b. al-Simṭ al-Kindī, 87
shurṭa, 85
Sibṭ Ibn al-Jawzī, 363
Ṣiffīn, battle of, 78, 80
Sī'ird, 249, 261
al-Simṭ b. al-Aswad al-Kindī, 62
Sinbad the Sailor, 122
Sind, 81, 104, 121, 145, 176
Sinjar, 63
Ṣinnabra, 110
Sīrāf, 179, 199, 231, 232, 287, 378, 381
Sīstān, 8, 11, 12, 72, 85, 101, 175, 176, 371
Sitt al-Mulk, 335
Soghdia, Soghdians, 8, 166
Sophronius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, 61
Spain, 81, 103, 110, 121, 128
Subkarā, 190
Abū Sufyān b. Harb, 31, 35, 37, 39, 42, 43, 48, 82, 84
Sufyān b. Mu'awiya al-Muhallabī, 115
Sulaym, tribe, 26, 39, 63, 92, 100, 284
Sulaymān b. 'Abd Allāh b. Ṭāhir, 172
Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-Malik, Umayyad caliph, 99, 103–6, 111
Sulaymān b. 'Alī al-'Abbāsī, 131
Sulaymān b. Hishām b. 'Abd al-Malik, 112, 113, 114, 116
Sulaymān b. Ja'far b. al-Fallāḥ, 323, 328
Sulaymān b. Wahb, 174
al-Ṣūlī, Abū Bakr, 364
Sulṭān al-Dawla, Buyid ruler, 237–8, 241
Sumaysāṭ, 63, 277, 278
Sunna, 75, 112, 116, 124
Sunnism, under the Buyids, 225–9, 238–40
Sūq al-Ahwāz *see* Ahwaz
Suren family, 11
Syr Darya *see* Jaxartes River
Syria
  under the Byzantines, 3–6, 9, 14, 16, 17, 21, 23, 24, 26, 28, 29
  Muslim conquest of, 40–1, 44–6, 53, 57–62, 66
  governors of, 62, 69, 82
  under the Umayyads, 82–3, 86–7, 91–2, 114
  under the Hamdanids, 273–82
  under the Fatimids, 317–18, 321–6, 328–42

al-Ṭabarī, Muḥammad b. Jarīr, 112, 164, 166, 352, 355–7, 359–60, 362
Ṭabaristān, 72, 165, 183
Tadmur *see* Palmyra
Tabrīz, 166
Taghlib, tribe, 21, 44, 45, 63, 92, 100, 182, 265–7, 268–9
Abū Taghlib, Hamdanid ruler, 223, 224, 232–3, 270–2, 323
Ṭāhir b. 'Abd Allāh b. Ṭāhir, 159, 166
Ṭāhir b. al-Ḥusayn, 148–50, 153–4
Abū Ṭāhir al-Jannābī, 191, 287–8
Ṭāhir b. Muḥammad the Saffarid, 183
Tahirids, 153–4, 159–60, 165, 166, 167, 171–2, 175–6
Ṭā'if, 22, 26, 27, 32, 37, 43, 48, 54, 58, 66, 84, 85, 95
Talas, battle of, 122
Ṭalḥa b. Khuwaylid al-Asadī, 55, 58, 67
Ṭalḥa b. Ṭāhir, 156, 159
Ṭalḥa b. 'Ubayd Allāh, 75, 76
Abū Ṭālib, 29, 30, 31, 32
Tamīm, tribe, 17, 19, 20, 24, 26, 27, 44, 53, 54, 55, 56, 63, 66, 178, 283
Abū Tammām, poet, 164
Tanūkh, tribe, 21, 92, 283
al-Tanūkhī, Abū 'Alī, 365
Tarsus, 143, 151, 181, 185, 223, 276–7, 278
Ṭārum, 255, 256
taxation
  Byzantine, 2
  Sasanian, 9, 10
  Muslim taxation

taxation (*continued*)
in Iraq, 68Ð9
in Khurāsān, 72, 73
under the ʿAbbasids, 132Ð3, 143Ð4, 159, 160Ð1, 187Ð90, 194Ð5
under the Hamdanids, 269Ð70
in Egypt, 308, 329Ð30
Taym, clan, 31
Tayma, 22
Ṭayy, tribe, 26, 53, 55, 283, 284, 302, 304
Thābit b. Qurra al-Ṣābī, 362Ð3
Thābit b. Sinān al-Ṣābī, 363
Thaqīf, tribe, 26, 37, 43, 48, 56, 58, 66, 67, 84, 85, 86, 111
Thimāl b. Ṣāliḥ the Mirdasid, 302Ð3, 304, 338
Thousand and One Nights, 146
Tripoli (Lebanon), 61, 325, 329
Ṭughj b. Juff, 185
Tughril Beg, 344Ð5
Tulunids, 176Ð7, 184Ð5, 308Ð10
Turks, 8, 72, 108, 109, 117, 121, 156Ð8, 160, 167, 169Ð73, 174, 204Ð6, 213, 308, 312, 321Ð2
Turgesh, 109, 110, 125
TŸrkmen, 301, 306, 343Ð5
Tustar, 101
Tyre, 325, 328
Tūzūn, 195Ð6, 204, 214Ð15

Abū ʿUbayd al-Thaqafī, 67, 95
ʿUbayd Allāh al-Mahdī, Fatimid caliph, 285, 313Ð14
ʿUbayd Allāh b. Sulaymān b. Wahb, 179Ð80, 183Ð4, 188
ʿUbayd Allāh b. Yaḥyā b. Khāqān, 168, 169, 174
ʿUbayd Allāh b. al-Sarrī b. al-Ḥakam, 154
ʿUbayd Allāh b. Ziyād, 86, 89, 91, 93, 94, 96, 110
ʿAbū ʿUbaycla b. al-Jarrāḥ, 51, 53, 57, 60, 61, 62, 69, 82
Ubulla, 121
Uḥud, battle of, 37Ð8, 55
ʿUkāẓ, fair at, 26, 27
Ukhayḍir, 137, 377
ʿUmān, 22, 44, 53, 54, 56, 58, 80, 97, 98, 234
ʿUmar (II) b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, Umayyad caliph, 103, 105, 106Ð7, 108, 110, 113, 116
ʿUmar b. Aḥmad b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Abī Dulaf, 184
ʿUmar b. Hubayra al-Fazārī, 106, 108
ʿUmar (I) b. al-Khaṭṭāb, 48, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55
caliphate of, 57Ð69, 70, 71, 73, 74, 84, 95, 106, 159
ʿUmayr b. Saʿd, 63
Umayya b. ʿAbd Shams, clan, 28, 31, 35, 48, 70, 75, 76, 83, 89, 90, 91, 93
Umayyad family, 102, 111, 113, 127Ð8
umma, 34, 40, 43, 44, 46, 47, 48, 50, 51, 52, 56, 57, 70, 71, 117, 126, 394
ʿUqayl, tribe, 92, 229, 233, 234, 236Ð7, 283, 284, 287, 291, 304Ð5
ʿUqaylids, 208, 236, 293Ð300
Uqḥuwāna, battle of, 301, 305, 337
Urmiyya, lake, 249
Usāma b. Zayd, 46, 53
Ushrūisana, 166, 253
ʿUslūj b. al-Ḥasan al-Kutāmī, 319
Ustādhsīs, 135
Utāmish, 171
ʿUtba b. Ghazwān, 67
ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān, 48, 52, 55
caliphate of, 63, 69Ð75, 77, 79, 80, 83, 85, 91, 93, 94, 113, 119, 144, 150
ʿUthmān b. al-Walīd, 112

Vahrīz, 25
Van, lake, 63, 255, 258, 261, 276
Vushmgīr, Ziyarid ruler, 214, 243

al-Walīd (I) b. ʿAbd al-Malik, Umayyad caliph, 104Ð5
Walīd b. Ṭarīf, 145
al-Walīd (II) b. Yazīd, Umayyad caliph, 111, 112Ð13, 150
Wallāda, mother of al-Walīd I, 104
al-Wāqidī, Muḥammad b. ʿUmar, 60, 351, 352
Waṣīf, 157, 167, 169, 170Ð2, 185
Wāsiṭ, 99, 102, 107, 115, 128, 131, 135, 172, 174, 178, 195, 219, 224, 233, 238, 242
al-Wāthiq, ʿAbbasid caliph, 143, 159, 161, 167, 171, 185
wazīrs, 166, 171, 172, 174, 175, 179, 183, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 207, 213, 221, 222, 235

Yamāma, 8, 17, 22, 28, 44, 53, 55, 56, 97, 178, 179
Yaman, tribal group, 16, 17, 60–2, 86, 87, 91–3, 99–112, 125, 128, 130, 132, 149
Yaḥyā b. ʿAbd Allāh the ʿAlid, 139, 142
Yaḥyā b. Khālid the Barmakid, 137, 139, 140
Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd al-Anṭākī, 122, 278, 279, 330, 374–5
, Yaʿqūb b. Dāwud, 136–7
Yaʿqūb b. Killis, 313, 319, 321–4
Yaʿqūb b. Layth the Saffarid, 176–7
al-Yaʿqūbī, Aqmad b. Wāḍiḥ, 355, 361
Yāqūt al-Ḥamawī, 367
Yarmūk, battle of, 61, 62, 92
Yathrib *see* Medina
Yazdgard III, Sasanian king, 7, 64, 71
Yazīd (II) b. ʿAbd al-Malik, Umayyad , caliph, 107–8, 111, 113
Yazīd b. Mazyad al-Shaybānī, 133, 141
Yazīd (I) b. Muʿāwiya, Umayyad caliph, 87, 88–90, 97, 100, 110
Yazīd b. al-Muhallab, 103, 105, 106, 107–8, 128
Yazīd b. Abī Sufyān, 48, 58, 60, 62, 69, 82
Yazīd b. ʿUmar b. Hubayra, 115, 128
Yazīd (III) b. al-Walīd, Umayyad caliph, 113–14
Yemen, 8, 15, 21, 22, 24, 25, 26, 45, 54, 56, 74, 97, 159, 313
Yūsuf b. Damna, 261–4
Yūsuf b. Abi'l-Sāj, 182, 190, 192, 211, 253–4, 258
Yūsuf b. ʿUmar al-Thaqafī, 111, 112, 113

Zāb, river, 249
  battle of, 115, 128, 130
Zābulistān, 101
Zagros mountains, 11, 13, 71, 74, 84, 201, 248–9, 252
al-Ẓāhir, Fatimid caliph, 335–7
Zamzam, well, 27, 29
Zanj, 177–9
Zanjān, 164
Zanzibar, 121
Zarafshān river, 137
Zaranj, 8, 175
Zayd b. ʿAlī, 111–12, 113, 124, 126
Zayd b. ʿAlī al-Nawbandajānī, 212–14
Zayd b. Ḥāritha, 31, 42, 53
Ziyād b. Abīhi, 85–6, 94, 104, 108
Zikrawayh al-Qarmaṭī, 286–7
Zirids, 326
Ziyarids, 214, 243
Zoroastrians, 11–12, 68, 117, 201, 214
Zubayd, tribe, 45
al-Zubayr b. ʿAbd al-Muṭṭalib, 29
al-Zubayr b. al-ʿAwwām, 57, 65, 75, 76, 77, 89
Zufar b. al-Ḥārith al-Kilābī, 92, 94, 99
Zuhra, clan, 31
Zunbīl, prince of Zābulistān, 101